

# Symbolic algebra and Mathematics with Xcas

Renée De Graeve, Bernard Parisse<sup>1</sup>,  
Jay Belanger<sup>2</sup>  
Sections written by Luka Marohnić<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Université de Grenoble, initial translation of parts of the French user manual

<sup>2</sup>Full translation and improvements

<sup>3</sup>Optimization, signal processing. The graph theory is in a separate manual.

© 2002, 2007 Renée De Graeve, Bernard Parisse  
[renee.degraeve@wanadoo.fr](mailto:renee.degraeve@wanadoo.fr)  
[bernard.parisse@ujf-grenoble.fr](mailto:bernard.parisse@ujf-grenoble.fr)

# Contents

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>1 Index</b>  | <b>31</b> |
| <b>2 Introduction</b>   | <b>47</b> |
| 2.1 Notations used in this manual . . . . .   | 47        |
| 2.2 Interfaces for the <code>giac</code> library . . . . .  | 48        |
| 2.2.1 The <code>Xcas</code> interface . . . . .   | 48        |
| 2.2.2 The command-line interface . . . . .  | 49        |
| 2.2.3 The Firefox interface . . . . .   | 49        |
| 2.2.4 The <code>TeXmacs</code> interface . . . . .  | 50        |
| 2.2.5 Checking the version of <code>giac</code> that you are using: <code>version</code> ,<br><code>giac</code> . . . . . | 50        |
| <b>3 The <code>Xcas</code> interface</b>  | <b>51</b> |
| 3.1 The entry levels . . . . .  | 51        |
| 3.2 The starting window . . . . .   | 52        |
| 3.3 Getting help . . . . .  | 54        |
| 3.4 The menus . . . . .   | 55        |
| 3.4.1 The <code>File</code> menu . . . . .  | 55        |
| 3.4.2 The <code>Edit</code> menu . . . . .  | 57        |
| 3.4.3 The <code>Cfg</code> menu . . . . .   | 58        |
| 3.4.4 The <code>Help</code> menu . . . . .  | 59        |
| 3.4.5 The <code>Toolbox</code> menu . . . . .   | 61        |
| 3.4.6 The <code>Expression</code> menu . . . . .  | 61        |
| 3.4.7 The <code>Cmds</code> menu . . . . .  | 61        |
| 3.4.8 The <code>Prg</code> menu . . . . .   | 61        |
| 3.4.9 The <code>Graphic</code> menu . . . . .   | 61        |
| 3.4.10 The <code>Geo</code> menu . . . . .  | 61        |
| 3.4.11 The <code>Spreadsheet</code> menu . . . . .  | 62        |
| 3.4.12 The <code>Phys</code> menu . . . . .   | 62        |
| 3.4.13 The <code>Highschool</code> menu . . . . .   | 62        |
| 3.4.14 The <code>Turtle</code> menu . . . . .   | 62        |
| 3.5 Configuring <code>Xcas</code> . . . . .   | 62        |
| 3.5.1 The number of significant digits: <code>Digits DIGITS</code> . . . . .  | 62        |
| 3.5.2 The language mode: <code>xcas_mode</code> . . . . .   | 62        |
| 3.5.3 The units for angles: <code>angle_radian</code> . . . . .   | 63        |
| 3.5.4 Exact or approximate values: <code>approx_mode</code> . . . . .   | 63        |
| 3.5.5 Complex numbers: <code>complex_mode</code> . . . . .  | 63        |
| 3.5.6 Complex variables: <code>complex_variables</code> . . . . .   | 64        |

|          |   |           |
|----------|---|-----------|
| 3.5.7    | Configuring the computations . . . . .  | 65        |
| 3.5.8    | Configuring the graphics . . . . .  | 67        |
| 3.5.9    | More configuration . . . . .  | 68        |
| 3.5.10   | The configuration file: <code>widget_size cas_setup xcas_mode xyzrange</code> . . . . .           | 69        |
| 3.6      | Printing and saving . . . . .   | 70        |
| 3.6.1    | Saving a session . . . . .  | 70        |
| 3.6.2    | Saving a spreadsheet . . . . .  | 71        |
| 3.6.3    | Saving a program . . . . .  | 71        |
| 3.6.4    | Printing a session . . . . .  | 71        |
| 3.7      | Translating to other computer languages . . . . .   | 71        |
| 3.7.1    | Translating an expression to $\text{\LaTeX}$ : <code>latex</code> . . . . .                       | 72        |
| 3.7.2    | Translating the entire session to $\text{\LaTeX}$ . . . . .                                       | 72        |
| 3.7.3    | Translating graphical output to $\text{\LaTeX}$ : <code>graph2tex graph3d2tex</code>              | 72        |
| 3.7.4    | Translating an expression to MathML: <code>mathml</code> . . . . .                                | 72        |
| 3.7.5    | Translating a spreadsheet to MathMML . . . . .  | 73        |
| 3.7.6    | Export to presentation or content MathML: <code>export_mathml</code>                              | 73        |
| 3.7.7    | Indent a XML string : <code>xml_print</code> . . . . .  | 74        |
| 3.7.8    | Translating a Maple file to Xcas: <code>maple2xcas</code> . . . . .                               | 75        |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Entry in <code>xcas</code></b>   | <b>77</b> |
| 4.1      | Suppressing output . . . . .  | 77        |
| 4.2      | Entering comments . . . . .   | 77        |
| 4.3      | Editing expressions . . . . .   | 78        |
| 4.3.1    | Entering expressions in the editor . . . . .  | 78        |
| 4.3.2    | Subexpressions . . . . .  | 79        |
| 4.3.3    | Manipulating subexpressions . . . . .   | 80        |
| 4.4      | Previous results . . . . .  | 81        |
| 4.5      | Spreadsheet . . . . .   | 82        |
| 4.5.1    | Opening a spreadsheet . . . . .   | 82        |
| 4.5.2    | The spreadsheet window . . . . .  | 82        |
| 4.6      | Variables . . . . .   | 83        |
| 4.6.1    | Variable names . . . . .  | 83        |
| 4.6.2    | The <code>CST</code> variable . . . . .   | 83        |
| 4.6.3    | Assigning values: <code>:= =&gt; = assign sto Store</code> . . . . .                              | 83        |
| 4.6.4    | Assignment by reference: <code>=&lt;</code> . . . . .   | 85        |
| 4.6.5    | Copying values of list: <code>copy</code> . . . . .   | 85        |
| 4.6.6    | Incrementing variables: <code>+= -= *= /=</code> . . . . .  | 86        |
| 4.6.7    | Storing and recalling variables and their values: <code>archive unarchive</code> . . . . .        | 86        |
| 4.6.8    | Copying variables: <code>CopyVar</code> . . . . .   | 87        |
| 4.6.9    | Assumptions on variables: <code>about additionally assume purge supposons and or</code> . . . . . | 87        |
| 4.6.10   | Unassigning variables: <code>VARS purge DelVar del restart rm_a_z rm_all_vars</code> . . . . .    | 89        |
| 4.7      | Functions . . . . .   | 90        |
| 4.7.1    | Defining functions . . . . .  | 90        |
| 4.7.2    | Defining piecewise defined functions . . . . .  | 91        |

|                 |          |
|-----------------|----------|
| <b>CONTENTS</b> | <b>5</b> |
|-----------------|----------|

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>4.8 Directories . . . . .</b>  | <b>92</b>  |
| <b>4.8.1 Working directories . . . . .</b>  | <b>92</b>  |
| <b>4.8.2 Reading files: <code>read</code> <code>load</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>93</b>  |
| <b>4.8.3 Internal directories: <code>NewFold</code> <code>SetFold</code> <code>GetFold</code> <code>DelFold</code> <code>VARS</code> . . . . .</b>      | <b>93</b>  |
| <b>5 The CAS functions . . . . .</b>  | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>5.1 Symbolic constants : <code>e</code> <code>pi</code> <code>infinity</code> <code>inf</code> <code>i</code> <code>euler_gamma</code> . . . . .</b> | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>5.2 Booleans . . . . .</b>   | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>5.2.1 The values of a boolean : <code>true</code> <code>false</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>5.2.2 Tests : == != &gt; &gt;= &lt; =&lt; . . . . .</b>  | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>5.2.3 Boolean operators : <code>or</code> <code>xor</code> <code>and</code> <code>not</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>96</b>  |
| <b>5.2.4 Transform a boolean expression to a list : <code>exp2list</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>97</b>  |
| <b>5.2.5 Transform a list into a boolean expression: <code>list2exp</code> . . . . .</b>  | <b>97</b>  |
| <b>5.2.6 Evaluate booleans : <code>evalb</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>98</b>  |
| <b>5.3 Bitwise operators . . . . .</b>  | <b>98</b>  |
| <b>5.3.1 Operators <code>bitor</code> <code>bitxor</code> <code>bitand</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>98</b>  |
| <b>5.3.2 Bitwise Hamming distance : <code>hamdist</code> . . . . .</b>  | <b>99</b>  |
| <b>5.4 Strings . . . . .</b>  | <b>100</b> |
| <b>5.4.1 Character and string : "</b>   | 100        |
| <b>5.4.2 The newline character: \n . . . . .</b>  | 100        |
| <b>5.4.3 The length of a string: <code>size</code> <code>length</code> . . . . .</b>  | 100        |
| <b>5.4.4 The left and right parts of a string: <code>left</code> <code>right</code> . . . . .</b>   | 101        |
| <b>5.4.5 First character, middle and end of a string : <code>head</code> <code>mid</code> <code>tail</code> . . . . .</b>                               | 101        |
| <b>5.4.6 Concatenation of a sequence of words : <code>cumSum</code> . . . . .</b>   | 102        |
| <b>5.4.7 ASCII code of a character : <code>ord</code> . . . . .</b>   | 102        |
| <b>5.4.8 ASCII code of a string : <code>asc</code> . . . . .</b>  | 103        |
| <b>5.4.9 String defined by the ASCII codes of its characters : <code>char</code> . . . . .</b>  | 103        |
| <b>5.4.10 Find a character in a string : <code>inString</code> . . . . .</b>  | 104        |
| <b>5.4.11 Concat objects into a string : <code>cat</code> . . . . .</b>   | 104        |
| <b>5.4.12 Add an object to a string : + . . . . .</b>   | 105        |
| <b>5.4.13 Transform an integer into a string : <code>cat</code> + . . . . .</b>   | 105        |
| <b>5.4.14 Transform a string into a number : <code>expr</code> . . . . .</b>  | 106        |
| <b>5.5 Write an integer in base <math>b</math>: <code>convert</code> . . . . .</b>  | <b>107</b> |
| <b>5.6 Integers (and Gaussian Integers) . . . . .</b>   | <b>108</b> |
| <b>5.6.1 The factorial : <code>factorial</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>108</b> |
| <b>5.6.2 GCD : <code>gcd</code> <code>igcd</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>108</b> |
| <b>5.6.3 GCD : <code>Gcd</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>110</b> |
| <b>5.6.4 GCD of a list of integers : <code>lgcd</code> . . . . .</b>  | <b>110</b> |
| <b>5.6.5 The least common multiple : <code>lcm</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>110</b> |
| <b>5.6.6 Decomposition into prime factors : <code>ifactor</code> . . . . .</b>  | <b>110</b> |
| <b>5.6.7 List of prime factors : <code>ifactors</code> . . . . .</b>  | <b>111</b> |
| <b>5.6.8 Matrix of factors : <code>maple_ifactors</code> . . . . .</b>  | <b>111</b> |
| <b>5.6.9 The divisors of a number : <code>idivis</code> <code>divisors</code> . . . . .</b>   | <b>112</b> |
| <b>5.6.10 The integer Euclidean quotient: <code>iquo</code> <code>intDiv</code> <code>div</code> . . . . .</b>  | <b>112</b> |
| <b>5.6.11 The integer Euclidean remainder: <code>irem</code> <code>remain</code> <code>smod</code> <code>mods</code> <code>mod</code> % . . . . .</b>   | <b>113</b> |

|        |   |     |
|--------|---|-----|
| 5.6.12 | Euclidean quotient and euclidean remainder of two integers : <code>iqorem</code>                    | 114 |
| 5.6.13 | Test of evenness : <code>even</code>  | 114 |
| 5.6.14 | Test of oddness : <code>odd</code>  | 114 |
| 5.6.15 | Test of pseudo-primality : <code>is_pseudoprime</code>  | 115 |
| 5.6.16 | Test of primality : <code>is_prime</code> <code>isprime</code> <code>isPrime</code>                 | 115 |
| 5.6.17 | The smallest pseudo-prime greater than $n$ : <code>nextprime</code>                                 | 116 |
| 5.6.18 | The greatest pseudo-prime less than $n$ : <code>prevprime</code>                                    | 117 |
| 5.6.19 | The $n$ -th pseudo-prime number : <code>ithprime</code>   | 117 |
| 5.6.20 | The number of pseudo-primes less than or equal to $n$ : <code>nprimes</code>                        | 117 |
| 5.6.21 | Bézout's Identity : <code>iegcd</code> <code>igcdex</code>  | 118 |
| 5.6.22 | Solving $au+bv=c$ in $\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>iabcuv</code>   | 118 |
| 5.6.23 | Chinese remainders : <code>ichinrem</code> <code>ichrem</code>                                      | 118 |
| 5.6.24 | Chinese remainders for lists of integers : <code>chrem</code>                                       | 120 |
| 5.6.25 | Solving $a^2 + b^2 = p$ in $\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>pa2b2</code>  | 121 |
| 5.6.26 | The Euler indicatrix : <code>euler_phi</code>   | 121 |
| 5.6.27 | Legendre symbol : <code>legendre_symbol</code>  | 121 |
| 5.6.28 | Jacobi symbol : <code>jacobi_symbol</code>  | 122 |
| 5.6.29 | Listing all compositions of an integer into $k$ parts : <code>icomp</code>                          | 123 |
| 5.7    | Combinatorial analysis  | 123 |
| 5.7.1  | Factorial : <code>factorial !</code>  | 123 |
| 5.7.2  | Binomial coefficients : <code>binomial</code> <code>comb</code> <code>nCr</code>                    | 124 |
| 5.7.3  | Permutations : <code>perm</code> <code>nPr</code>   | 124 |
| 5.7.4  | Random integers : <code>rand</code>   | 124 |
| 5.7.5  | Wilf-Zeilberger pairs: <code>wz_certificate</code>  | 125 |
| 5.8    | Rationals   | 126 |
| 5.8.1  | Transform a floating point number into a rational : <code>exact</code> <code>float2rational</code>  | 126 |
| 5.8.2  | Integer and fractional part : <code>propfrac</code> <code>propFrac</code>                           | 127 |
| 5.8.3  | Numerator of a fraction after simplification : <code>numergetNum</code>                             | 127 |
| 5.8.4  | Denominator of a fraction after simplification : <code>denom</code> <code>getDenom</code>           | 128 |
| 5.8.5  | Numerator and denominator of a fraction : <code>f2nd</code> <code>fxnd</code>                       | 128 |
| 5.8.6  | Simplification of a pair of integers : <code>simp2</code>   | 128 |
| 5.8.7  | Continued fraction representation of a real : <code>dfc</code>                                      | 129 |
| 5.8.8  | Transform a continued fraction representation into a real : <code>dfc2f</code>                      | 131 |
| 5.8.9  | The $n$ -th Bernoulli number : <code>bernoulli</code>   | 132 |
| 5.8.10 | Access to PARI/GP commands: <code>pari</code>   | 132 |
| 5.9    | Real numbers  | 133 |
| 5.9.1  | Eval a real at a given precision : <code>evalf</code> and <code>Digits</code> , <code>DIGITS</code> | 133 |
| 5.9.2  | Usual infix functions on reals : <code>+, -, *, /, ^</code>   | 134 |
| 5.9.3  | Usual prefixed functions on reals : <code>rdiv</code>   | 136 |
| 5.9.4  | $n$ -th root : <code>root</code>  | 136 |
| 5.9.5  | The exponential integral function: <code>Ei</code>  | 137 |
| 5.9.6  | The logarithmic integral function: <code>Li</code>  | 138 |
| 5.9.7  | The cosine integral function: <code>Ci</code>   | 138 |

|         |   |     |
|---------|---|-----|
| 5.9.8   | The sine integral function: <code>Si</code>                               | 139 |
| 5.9.9   | The Heaviside function: <code>Heaviside</code>                            | 139 |
| 5.9.10  | The Dirac distribution: <code>Dirac</code>                                | 140 |
| 5.9.11  | Error function : <code>erf</code>   | 140 |
| 5.9.12  | Complementary error function: <code>erfc</code>                           | 141 |
| 5.9.13  | The $\Gamma$ function : <code>Gamma</code>                                | 142 |
| 5.9.14  | The upper incomplete $\gamma$ function: <code>ugamma</code>               | 143 |
| 5.9.15  | The lower incomplete $\gamma$ function: <code>igamma</code>               | 143 |
| 5.9.16  | The $\beta$ function : <code>Beta</code>                                  | 144 |
| 5.9.17  | Derivatives of the DiGamma function : <code>Psi</code>                    | 144 |
| 5.9.18  | The $\zeta$ function : <code>Zeta</code>                                  | 145 |
| 5.9.19  | Airy functions : <code>Airy_Ai</code> and <code>Airy_Bi</code>            | 145 |
| 5.10    | Permutations  | 146 |
| 5.10.1  | Random permutation : <code>randperm</code> , <code>shuffle</code>         | 147 |
| 5.10.2  | Previous permutation: <code>prevperm</code>                               | 147 |
| 5.10.3  | Next permutation: <code>nextperm</code>                                   | 147 |
| 5.10.4  | Decomposition as a product of disjoint cycles : <code>permu2cycles</code> | 147 |
| 5.10.5  | Product of disjoint cycles to permutation: <code>cycles2permu</code>      | 148 |
| 5.10.6  | Transform a cycle into permutation : <code>cycle2perm</code>              | 148 |
| 5.10.7  | Transform a permutation into a matrix : <code>permu2mat</code>            | 149 |
| 5.10.8  | Checking for a permutation : <code>is_permu</code>                        | 149 |
| 5.10.9  | Checking for a cycle : <code>is_cycle</code>                              | 149 |
| 5.10.10 | Product of two permutations : <code>p1op2</code>                          | 150 |
| 5.10.11 | Composition of a cycle and a permutation : <code>c1op2</code>             | 150 |
| 5.10.12 | Composition of a permutation and a cycle : <code>p1oc2</code>             | 150 |
| 5.10.13 | Product of two cycles : <code>c1oc2</code>                                | 151 |
| 5.10.14 | Signature of a permutation : <code>signature</code>                       | 151 |
| 5.10.15 | Inverse of a permutation : <code>perminv</code>                           | 151 |
| 5.10.16 | Inverse of a cycle : <code>cycleinv</code>                                | 152 |
| 5.10.17 | Order of a permutation : <code>permuorder</code>                          | 152 |
| 5.10.18 | Group generated by two permutations : <code>groupermu</code>              | 152 |
| 5.11    | Complex numbers   | 152 |
| 5.11.1  | Usual complex functions : <code>+, -, *, /, ^</code>                      | 153 |
| 5.11.2  | Real part of a complex number: <code>re real</code>                       | 153 |
| 5.11.3  | Imaginary part of a complex number : <code>im imag</code>                 | 153 |
| 5.11.4  | Write a complex as <code>re(z) + i*im(z)</code> : <code>evalc</code>      | 153 |
| 5.11.5  | Modulus of a complex number: <code>abs</code>                             | 154 |
| 5.11.6  | Argument of a complex number : <code>arg</code>                           | 154 |
| 5.11.7  | The normalized complex number: <code>normalize unitV</code>               | 154 |
| 5.11.8  | Conjugate of a complex number : <code>conj</code>                         | 154 |
| 5.11.9  | Multiplication by the complex conjugate: <code>mult_c_conjugate</code>    | 155 |
| 5.11.10 | Barycenter of complex numbers : <code>barycenter</code>                   | 155 |
| 5.12    | Algebraic numbers   | 156 |
| 5.12.1  | Definition  | 156 |
| 5.12.2  | Minimum polynomial of an algebraic number: <code>pmin</code>              | 156 |
| 5.13    | Algebraic expressions   | 157 |
| 5.13.1  | Evaluate an expression : <code>eval</code>                                | 157 |
| 5.13.2  | Change the evaluation level: <code>eval_level</code>                      | 157 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 5.13.3 Evaluate algebraic expressions : <code>evala</code>   | 158 |
| 5.13.4 Prevent evaluation : <code>quote hold '</code>  | 158 |
| 5.13.5 Force evaluation : <code>unquote</code>   | 159 |
| 5.13.6 Distribution : <code>expand fdistrib</code>   | 159 |
| 5.13.7 Canonical form : <code>canonical_form</code>  | 159 |
| 5.13.8 Multiplication by the conjugate quantity : <code>mult_conjugate</code>                            | 160 |
| 5.13.9 Separation of variables : <code>split</code>  | 160 |
| 5.13.10 Factorization : <code>factor</code>  | 161 |
| 5.13.11 Complex factorization : <code>cFactor</code>   | 162 |
| 5.13.12 Zeros of an expression : <code>zeros</code>  | 163 |
| 5.13.13 Complex zeros of an expression : <code>cZeros</code>   | 164 |
| 5.13.14 Regrouping expressions: <code>regroup</code>   | 164 |
| 5.13.15 Normal form : <code>normal</code>  | 165 |
| 5.13.16 Simplify : <code>simplify</code>   | 165 |
| 5.13.17 Automatic simplification: <code>autosimplify</code>  | 166 |
| 5.13.18 Normal form for rational fractions : <code>ratnormal</code>                                      | 167 |
| 5.13.19 Substitute a variable by a value: <code> </code>   | 167 |
| 5.13.20 Substitute a variable by a value : <code>subst</code>  | 168 |
| 5.13.21 Substitute a variable by a value: <code>()</code>  | 169 |
| 5.13.22 Substitute a variable by a value (Maple and Mupad compatibility) : <code>subs</code>             | 169 |
| 5.13.23 Substitute a subexpression by another expression: <code>algsubs</code>                           | 171 |
| 5.13.24 Eliminate one or more variables from a list of equations: <code>eliminate</code>                 | 171 |
| 5.14 Values of $u_n$   | 173 |
| 5.14.1 Array of values of a sequence : <code>tablefunc</code>  | 173 |
| 5.14.2 Values of a recurrence relation or a system: <code>seqsolve</code>                                | 174 |
| 5.14.3 Values of a recurrence relation or a system: <code>rsolve</code>                                  | 175 |
| 5.14.4 Table of values and graph of a recurrent sequence: <code>tableseq</code> and <code>plotseq</code> | 176 |
| 5.15 Operators or infix functions  | 177 |
| 5.15.1 Usual operators <code>+, -, *, /, ^</code>  | 177 |
| 5.15.2 Xcas operators  | 177 |
| 5.15.3 Define an operator: <code>user_operator</code>  | 178 |
| 5.16 Functions and expressions with symbolic variables   | 179 |
| 5.16.1 The difference between a function and an expression   | 179 |
| 5.16.2 Transform an expression into a function : <code>unapply</code>                                    | 179 |
| 5.16.3 Top and leaves of an expression : <code>sommet feuille op</code>                                  | 181 |
| 5.17 Functions   | 182 |
| 5.17.1 Context-dependent functions.  | 182 |
| 5.17.2 Usual functions   | 183 |
| 5.17.3 Defining algebraic functions  | 184 |
| 5.17.4 Composition of two functions: <code>@</code>  | 187 |
| 5.17.5 Repeated function composition: <code>@@</code>  | 187 |
| 5.17.6 Define a function with the history : <code>as_function_of</code>                                  | 187 |
| 5.18 Functions from $\mathbb{R}$ to $\mathbb{R}$   | 189 |

|         |   |     |
|---------|---|-----|
| 5.18.1  | The domain of a function: <code>domain</code>   | 189 |
| 5.18.2  | Table of variations of a function: <code>tabvar</code>  | 190 |
| 5.19    | Derivation and applications.  | 191 |
| 5.19.1  | Functional derivative : <code>function_diff</code>  | 191 |
| 5.19.2  | Length of an arc : <code>arcLen</code>  | 192 |
| 5.19.3  | Maximum and minimum of an expression: <code>fMax fMin</code>                                    | 193 |
| 5.19.4  | Table of values and graph : <code>tablefunc</code> and <code>plotfunc</code>                    | 194 |
| 5.19.5  | Derivative and partial derivative   | 195 |
| 5.19.6  | Implicit differentiation : <code>implicitdiff</code>  | 197 |
| 5.20    | Integration   | 199 |
| 5.20.1  | Antiderivative and definite integral : <code>integrate int</code><br><code>Int</code>           | 199 |
| 5.20.2  | Primitive and definite integral : <code>risch</code>  | 201 |
| 5.20.3  | Discrete summation: <code>sum</code>  | 202 |
| 5.20.4  | Riemann sum : <code>sum_riemann</code>  | 204 |
| 5.20.5  | Integration by parts : <code>ibpdv</code> and <code>ibpu</code>                                 | 205 |
| 5.20.6  | Change of variables : <code>subst</code>  | 207 |
| 5.21    | Calculus of variations  | 207 |
| 5.21.1  | Determining whether a function is convex : <code>convex</code>                                  | 207 |
| 5.21.2  | Euler-Lagrange equation(s) : <code>euler_lagrange</code>  | 210 |
| 5.21.3  | Jacobi equation : <code>jacobi_equation</code>  | 214 |
| 5.21.4  | Finding conjugate points : <code>conjugate_equation</code>                                      | 215 |
| 5.21.5  | An example : finding the surface of revolution with minimal area                                | 216 |
| 5.22    | Limits  | 219 |
| 5.22.1  | Limits : <code>limit</code>   | 219 |
| 5.22.2  | Integral and limit  | 221 |
| 5.23    | Rewriting transcendental and trigonometric expressions  | 222 |
| 5.23.1  | Expand a transcendental and trigonometric expression :<br><code>texpand tExpand</code>          | 222 |
| 5.23.2  | Combine terms of the same type : <code>combine</code>   | 224 |
| 5.24    | Trigonometry  | 225 |
| 5.24.1  | Trigonometric functions   | 225 |
| 5.24.2  | Expand a trigonometric expression : <code>trigexpand</code>                                     | 225 |
| 5.24.3  | Linearize a trigonometric expression : <code>tlin</code>  | 225 |
| 5.24.4  | Increase the phase by $\pi/2$ in a trigonometric expression:<br><code>shift_phase</code>        | 226 |
| 5.24.5  | Put together sine and cosine of the same angle : <code>tcollect</code><br><code>tCollect</code> | 227 |
| 5.24.6  | Simplify : <code>simplify</code>  | 227 |
| 5.24.7  | Simplify trigonometric expressions : <code>trigsimplify</code>                                  | 228 |
| 5.24.8  | Transform arccos into arcsin : <code>acos2asin</code>   | 228 |
| 5.24.9  | Transform arccos into arctan : <code>acos2atan</code>   | 228 |
| 5.24.10 | Transform arcsin into arccos : <code>asin2acos</code>   | 228 |
| 5.24.11 | Transform arcsin into arctan : <code>asin2atan</code>   | 229 |
| 5.24.12 | Transform arctan into arcsin : <code>atan2asin</code>   | 229 |
| 5.24.13 | Transform arctan into arccos : <code>atan2acos</code>   | 229 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 5.24.14 Transform complex exponentials into sin and cos : <code>sincos</code>  | 229 |
| <code>exp2trig</code> . . . . .  | 229 |
| 5.24.15 Transform $\tan(x)$ into $\sin(x)/\cos(x)$ : <code>tan2sincos</code> . . .   | 230 |
| 5.24.16 Transform $\sin(x)$ into $\cos(x)*\tan(x)$ : <code>sin2costan</code> . . .   | 230 |
| 5.24.17 Transform $\cos(x)$ into $\sin(x)/\tan(x)$ : <code>cos2sintan</code> . . .   | 230 |
| 5.24.18 Rewrite $\tan(x)$ with $\sin(2x)$ and $\cos(2x)$ : <code>tan2sincos2</code>  | 231 |
| 5.24.19 Rewrite $\tan(x)$ with $\cos(2x)$ and $\sin(2x)$ : <code>tan2cossin2</code>  | 231 |
| 5.24.20 Rewrite sin, cos, tan in terms of $\tan(x/2)$ : <code>halftan</code> . . .   | 231 |
| 5.24.21 Rewrite trigonometric functions as function of $\tan(x/2)$ and<br>hyperbolic functions as function of $\exp(x)$ : <code>halftan_hyp2exp</code> | 232 |
| 5.24.22 Transform inverse trigonometric functions into logarithms<br>: <code>atrig2ln</code> . . . . .   | 232 |
| 5.24.23 Transform trigonometric functions into complex exponen-<br>tials : <code>trig2exp</code> . . . . .   | 232 |
| 5.24.24 Simplify and express preferentially with sine : <code>trigsin</code> .   | 233 |
| 5.24.25 Simplify and express preferentially with cosine : <code>trigcos</code>   | 233 |
| 5.24.26 Simplify and express preferentially with tangents : <code>trigtan</code>   | 233 |
| 5.24.27 Rewrite an expression with different options : <code>convert</code><br><code>convertir =&gt;</code> . . . . .                                  | 234 |
| 5.25 Fourier transformation . . . . .  | 235 |
| 5.25.1 Fourier coefficients : <code>fourier_an</code> and <code>fourier_bn</code><br>or <code>fourier_cn</code> . . . . .                              | 235 |
| 5.25.2 Continuous Fourier Transform : <code>fourier</code> , <code>ifourier</code> .   | 238 |
| 5.25.3 Discrete Fourier Transform . . . . .  | 244 |
| 5.25.4 Fast Fourier Transform : <code>fft</code> . . . . .   | 249 |
| 5.25.5 Inverse Fast Fourier Transform : <code>ifft</code> . . . . .  | 250 |
| 5.25.6 An exercise with <code>fft</code> . . . . .   | 250 |
| 5.26 Audio Tools . . . . .   | 252 |
| 5.26.1 Creating audio clips : <code>createwav</code> . . . . .   | 252 |
| 5.26.2 Reading WAV files from disk : <code>readwav</code> . . . . .  | 253 |
| 5.26.3 Writing WAV files to disk : <code>writewav</code> . . . . .   | 253 |
| 5.26.4 Audio playback : <code>playsnd</code> . . . . .   | 253 |
| 5.26.5 Averaging channel data : <code>stereo2mono</code> . . . . .   | 253 |
| 5.26.6 Audio clip properties : <code>channels</code> , <code>bit_depth</code> , <code>samplerate</code> ,<br><code>duration</code> . . . . .           | 253 |
| 5.26.7 Extracting samples from audio clips : <code>channel_data</code> .   | 254 |
| 5.26.8 Changing the sampling rate : <code>resample</code> . . . . .  | 254 |
| 5.26.9 Visualizing waveforms : <code>plotwav</code> . . . . .  | 255 |
| 5.26.10 Visualizing power spectra : <code>plotspectrum</code> . . . . .  | 256 |
| 5.27 Signal Processing . . . . .   | 256 |
| 5.27.1 Boxcar function : <code>boxcar</code> . . . . .   | 256 |
| 5.27.2 Rectangle function : <code>rect</code> . . . . .  | 257 |
| 5.27.3 Triangle function : <code>tri</code> . . . . .  | 257 |
| 5.27.4 Cardinal sine function : <code>sinc</code> . . . . .  | 258 |
| 5.27.5 Cross-correlation of two signals : <code>cross_correlation</code>   | 258 |
| 5.27.6 Auto-correlation of a signal : <code>auto_correlation</code> ..   | 259 |
| 5.27.7 Convolution of two signals or functions : <code>convolution</code>  | 259 |
| 5.27.8 Low-pass filtering : <code>lowpass</code> . . . . .   | 261 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 5.27.9 High-pass filtering : <code>highpass</code> . . . . .  | 261 |
| 5.27.10 Apply a moving average filter to a signal : <code>moving_average</code>                                 | 261 |
| 5.27.11 Perform thresholding operations on an array : <code>threshold</code>                                    | 262 |
| 5.27.12 Bartlett-Hann window function : <code>bartlett_hann_window</code>                                       | 265 |
| 5.27.13 Blackman-Harris window function : <code>blackman_harris_window</code>                                   | 265 |
| 5.27.14 Blackman window function : <code>blackman_window</code> . . .   | 265 |
| 5.27.15 Bohman window function : <code>bohman_window</code> . . . . .   | 266 |
| 5.27.16 Cosine window function : <code>cosine_window</code> . . . . .   | 266 |
| 5.27.17 Gaussian window function : <code>gaussian_window</code> . . . .   | 266 |
| 5.27.18 Hamming window function : <code>hamming_window</code> . . . .   | 267 |
| 5.27.19 Hann-Poisson window function : <code>hann_poisson_window</code>   | 267 |
| 5.27.20 Hann window function : <code>hann_window</code> . . . . .   | 267 |
| 5.27.21 Parzen window function : <code>parzen_window</code> . . . . .   | 268 |
| 5.27.22 Poisson window function : <code>poisson_window</code> . . . . .   | 268 |
| 5.27.23 Riemann window function : <code>riemann_window</code> . . . . .   | 268 |
| 5.27.24 Triangular window function: <code>triangle_window</code> . . .  | 269 |
| 5.27.25 Tukey window function : <code>tukey_window</code> . . . . .   | 269 |
| 5.27.26 Welch window function : <code>welch_window</code> . . . . .   | 269 |
| 5.27.27 An example : static noise removal by spectral subtraction .   | 270 |
| 5.28 Exponentials and Logarithms . . . . .  | 272 |
| 5.28.1 Rewrite hyperbolic functions as exponentials : <code>hyp2exp</code>                                      | 272 |
| 5.28.2 Expand exponentials : <code>expexpand</code> . . . . .   | 272 |
| 5.28.3 Expand logarithms : <code>lnexpand</code> . . . . .  | 272 |
| 5.28.4 Linearize exponentials : <code>lin</code> . . . . .  | 273 |
| 5.28.5 Collect logarithms : <code>lncollect</code> . . . . .  | 273 |
| 5.28.6 Expand powers : <code>powexpand</code> . . . . .   | 273 |
| 5.28.7 Rewrite a power as an exponential : <code>pow2exp</code> . . . .   | 274 |
| 5.28.8 Rewrite $\exp(n \ln(x))$ as a power : <code>exp2pow</code> . . . .                                       | 274 |
| 5.28.9 Simplify complex exponentials : <code>tsimplify</code> . . . .   | 274 |
| 5.29 Polynomials . . . . .  | 274 |
| 5.29.1 Polynomials of a single variable: <code>poly1</code> . . . . .   | 274 |
| 5.29.2 Polynomials of several variables: <code>%%%{ %%%}</code> . . . .   | 275 |
| 5.29.3 Convert to a symbolic polynomial : <code>r2e poly2symb</code> .  | 275 |
| 5.29.4 Convert from a symbolic polynomial : <code>e2r symb2poly</code>  | 276 |
| 5.29.5 Transform a polynomial in internal format into a list, and<br>conversely: <code>convert</code> . . . . . | 277 |
| 5.29.6 Coefficients of a polynomial: <code>coeff coeffs</code> . . . .  | 277 |
| 5.29.7 Polynomial degree : <code>degree</code> . . . . .  | 278 |
| 5.29.8 Polynomial valuation : <code>valuation ldegree</code> . . . .  | 278 |
| 5.29.9 Leading coefficient of a polynomial : <code>lcoeff</code> . . . .  | 279 |
| 5.29.10 Trailing coefficient degree of a polynomial : <code>tcoeff</code> ..                                    | 279 |
| 5.29.11 Evaluation of a polynomial : <code>peval polyEval</code> . . .  | 280 |
| 5.29.12 Factorize $x^n$ in a polynomial : <code>factor_xn</code> . . . .  | 280 |
| 5.29.13 GCD of the coefficients of a polynomial : <code>content</code> ..                                       | 280 |
| 5.29.14 Primitive part of a polynomial : <code>primpارت</code> . . . .  | 281 |
| 5.29.15 Factorization : <code>collect</code> . . . . .  | 281 |
| 5.29.16 Factorization : <code>factor factoriser</code> . . . . .  | 282 |
| 5.29.17 Square-free factorization : <code>sqrfree</code> . . . . .  | 283 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 5.29.18 List of factors : <code>factors</code>   | 284 |
| 5.29.19 Evaluate a polynomial : <code>horner</code>  | 284 |
| 5.29.20 Rewrite in terms of the powers of $(x-a)$ : <code>ptayl</code>   | 285 |
| 5.29.21 Compute with the exact root of a polynomial : <code>rootof</code>  | 285 |
| 5.29.22 Exact roots of a polynomial : <code>roots</code>   | 286 |
| 5.29.23 Coefficients of a polynomial defined by its roots : <code>pcoeff</code><br><code>pcoef</code>                                    | 287 |
| 5.29.24 Truncate of order $n$ : <code>truncate</code>  | 287 |
| 5.29.25 Convert a series expansion into a polynomial : <code>convert</code><br><code>convertir</code>                                    | 287 |
| 5.29.26 Random polynomial : <code>randpoly</code> <code>randPoly</code>  | 288 |
| 5.29.27 Change the order of variables : <code>reorder</code>   | 288 |
| 5.29.28 Random list : <code>ramm</code>  | 289 |
| 5.29.29 Lagrange's polynomial : <code>lagrange</code> <code>interp</code>  | 289 |
| 5.29.30 Trigonometric interpolation : <code>triginterp</code>  | 290 |
| 5.29.31 Natural splines: <code>spline</code>   | 291 |
| 5.29.32 Rational interpolation : <code>thiele</code>   | 293 |
| 5.30 Arithmetic and polynomials  | 294 |
| 5.30.1 The divisors of a polynomial : <code>divis</code>   | 294 |
| 5.30.2 Euclidean quotient : <code>quo</code>   | 295 |
| 5.30.3 Euclidean quotient : <code>Quo</code>   | 295 |
| 5.30.4 Euclidean remainder : <code>rem</code>  | 296 |
| 5.30.5 Euclidean remainder: <code>Rem</code>   | 297 |
| 5.30.6 Quotient and remainder : <code>quorem</code> <code>divide</code>  | 297 |
| 5.30.7 GCD of two polynomials with the Euclidean algorithm: <code>gcd</code>   | 298 |
| 5.30.8 GCD of two polynomials with the Euclidean algorithm : <code>Gcd</code>  | 298 |
| 5.30.9 Choosing the GCD algorithm of two polynomials : <code>ezgcd</code><br><code>heugcd</code> <code>modgcd</code> <code>psrgcd</code> | 299 |
| 5.30.10 LCM of two polynomials : <code>lcm</code>  | 300 |
| 5.30.11 Bézout's Identity : <code>egcd</code> <code>gcDEX</code>   | 301 |
| 5.30.12 Solving $au+bv=c$ over polynomials: <code>abcvu</code>   | 301 |
| 5.30.13 Chinese remainders : <code>chinrem</code>  | 302 |
| 5.30.14 Cyclotomic polynomial : <code>cyclotomic</code>  | 303 |
| 5.30.15 Sturm sequences and number of sign changes of $P$ on $(a, b]$<br>: <code>sturm</code>  | 304 |
| 5.30.16 Number of zeros in $[a, b]$ : <code>sturmab</code>   | 304 |
| 5.30.17 Sturm sequences : <code>sturmseq</code>  | 305 |
| 5.30.18 Sylvester matrix of two polynomials : <code>sylvester</code>   | 306 |
| 5.30.19 Resultant of two polynomials : <code>resultant</code>  | 307 |
| 5.31 Orthogonal polynomials  | 310 |
| 5.31.1 Legendre polynomials: <code>legendre</code>   | 310 |
| 5.31.2 Hermite polynomial : <code>hermite</code>   | 311 |
| 5.31.3 Laguerre polynomials: <code>laguerre</code>   | 311 |
| 5.31.4 Tchebychev polynomials of the first kind: <code>tchebyshev1</code>  | 312 |
| 5.31.5 Tchebychev polynomial of the second kind: <code>tchebyshev2</code>  | 313 |
| 5.32 Gröbner basis and Gröbner reduction   | 313 |
| 5.32.1 Gröbner basis : <code>gbasis</code>   | 313 |
| 5.32.2 Gröbner reduction : <code>greduce</code>  | 314 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 5.32.3 Test if a polynomial or list of polynomials belongs to an ideal given by a Gröbner basis: <code>in_ideal</code> | 315 |
| 5.32.4 Build a polynomial from its evaluation : <code>genpoly</code>   | 316 |
| 5.33 Rational fractions  | 317 |
| 5.33.1 Numerator : <code>getNum</code>   | 317 |
| 5.33.2 Numerator after simplification : <code>numer</code>   | 317 |
| 5.33.3 Denominator : <code>getDenom</code>   | 317 |
| 5.33.4 Denominator after simplification : <code>denom</code>   | 318 |
| 5.33.5 Numerator and denominator : <code>f2nd fxnd</code>  | 318 |
| 5.33.6 Simplify : <code>simp2</code>   | 318 |
| 5.33.7 Common denominator : <code>comDenom</code>  | 319 |
| 5.33.8 Integer and fractional part : <code>propfrac</code>   | 319 |
| 5.33.9 Partial fraction expansion : <code>partfrac</code>  | 319 |
| 5.33.10 Partial fraction expansion over $\mathbb{C}$ : <code>cpartfrac</code>  | 320 |
| 5.34 Exact roots of a polynomial   | 320 |
| 5.34.1 Exact bounds for complex roots of a polynomial: <code>complexroot</code>  | 320 |
| 5.34.2 Exact bounds for real roots of a polynomial : <code>realroot</code>   | 321 |
| 5.34.3 Exact bounds for real roots of a polynomial: <code>VAS</code>   | 322 |
| 5.34.4 Exact bounds for positive real roots of a polynomial: <code>VAS_positive</code>                                 | 322 |
| 5.34.5 An upper bound for the positive real roots of a polynomial: <code>posubLMQ</code>                               | 323 |
| 5.34.6 A lower bound for the positive real roots of a polynomial: <code>poslbdLMQ</code>                               | 323 |
| 5.34.7 Exact values of rational roots of a polynomial : <code>rationalroot</code>                                      | 324 |
| 5.34.8 Exact values of the complex rational roots of a polynomial: <code>crationalroot</code>                          | 325 |
| 5.35 Exact roots and poles   | 325 |
| 5.35.1 Roots and poles of a rational function : <code>froot</code>   | 325 |
| 5.35.2 Rational function given by roots and poles : <code>fcoeff</code>  | 326 |
| 5.36 Computing in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ or in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$   | 326 |
| 5.36.1 Expand and reduce : <code>normal</code>   | 327 |
| 5.36.2 Addition in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ or in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : <code>+</code>                         | 327 |
| 5.36.3 Subtraction in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ or in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : <code>-</code>                      | 327 |
| 5.36.4 Multiplication in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ or in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : <code>*</code>                   | 328 |
| 5.36.5 Euclidean quotient : <code>quo</code>   | 328 |
| 5.36.6 Euclidean remainder : <code>rem</code>  | 329 |
| 5.36.7 Euclidean quotient and euclidean remainder : <code>quorem</code>  | 329 |
| 5.36.8 Division in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ or in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : <code>/</code>                         | 329 |
| 5.36.9 Power in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ and in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : <code>^</code>                           | 330 |
| 5.36.10 Compute $a^n \bmod p$ : <code>powmod powermod</code>   | 330 |
| 5.36.11 Inverse in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>inv inverse</code> or <code>/</code>                               | 331 |
| 5.36.12 Rebuild a fraction from its value modulo $p$ : <code>fracmod iratrecon</code>                                  | 331 |
| 5.36.13 GCD in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : <code>gcd</code>  | 331 |
| 5.36.14 Factorization over $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : <code>factor factoriser</code>                                | 332 |
| 5.36.15 Determinant of a matrix in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>det</code>   | 332 |
| 5.36.16 Inverse of a matrix with coefficients in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>inv inverse</code>                   | 333 |
| 5.36.17 Row reduction to echelon form in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>rref</code>                                  | 333 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 5.36.18 Construction of a Galois field : <code>GF</code>  | 334 |
| 5.36.19 Factorize a polynomial with coefficients in a Galois field :<br><code>factor</code>     | 335 |
| 5.37 Compute in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ using Maple syntax                                  | 336 |
| 5.37.1 Euclidean quotient : <code>Quo</code>  | 336 |
| 5.37.2 Euclidean remainder: <code>Rem</code>  | 336 |
| 5.37.3 GCD in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : <code>Gcd</code>                                    | 337 |
| 5.37.4 Factorization in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : <code>Factor</code>                       | 338 |
| 5.37.5 Determinant of a matrix with coefficients in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>Det</code> | 338 |
| 5.37.6 Inverse of a matrix in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>Inverse</code>                   | 339 |
| 5.37.7 Row reduction to echelon form in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>Rref</code>            | 339 |
| 5.38 Taylor and asymptotic expansions   | 340 |
| 5.38.1 Division by increasing power order : <code>divpc</code>                                  | 340 |
| 5.38.2 Taylor expansion : <code>taylor</code>   | 340 |
| 5.38.3 Series expansion : <code>series</code>   | 341 |
| 5.38.4 The inverse of a series: <code>revert</code>   | 343 |
| 5.38.5 The residue of an expression at a point : <code>residue</code>                           | 344 |
| 5.38.6 Padé expansion: <code>pade</code>  | 344 |
| 5.39 Ranges of values   | 346 |
| 5.39.1 Definition of a range of values: <code>a1..a2</code>                                     | 346 |
| 5.39.2 Boundaries of a range of values: <code>left right</code>                                 | 346 |
| 5.39.3 Center of a range of values: <code>interval2center</code>                                | 347 |
| 5.39.4 Ranges of values defined by their center : <code>center2interval</code>                  | 348 |
| 5.40 Intervals  | 348 |
| 5.40.1 Defining intervals: <code>i []</code>  | 348 |
| 5.40.2 The endpoints of an interval: <code>left,right</code>                                    | 349 |
| 5.40.3 Adding intervals   | 349 |
| 5.40.4 The negative of an interval  | 349 |
| 5.40.5 Multiplying intervals  | 350 |
| 5.40.6 The reciprocal of an interval  | 350 |
| 5.40.7 The midpoint of an interval: <code>midpoint</code>                                       | 351 |
| 5.40.8 The union of intervals: <code>union</code>   | 351 |
| 5.40.9 The intersection of intervals: <code>intersect</code>                                    | 351 |
| 5.40.10 Test if an object is in an interval: <code>contains</code>                              | 352 |
| 5.40.11 Convert a number to an interval: <code>convert</code>                                   | 352 |
| 5.41 Sequences  | 353 |
| 5.41.1 Definition : <code>seq[] ()</code>   | 353 |
| 5.41.2 Concat two sequences : ,   | 353 |
| 5.41.3 Get an element of a sequence : [ ], [ [] ]   | 353 |
| 5.41.4 Sub-sequence of a sequence : [ ]   | 354 |
| 5.41.5 Make a sequence or a list : <code>seq \$</code>  | 354 |
| 5.41.6 Transform a sequence into a list : [ ] <code>nop</code>                                  | 357 |
| 5.41.7 The + operator applied on sequences  | 358 |
| 5.42 Sets   | 358 |
| 5.42.1 Definition : <code>set []</code>   | 358 |
| 5.42.2 Union of two sets or of two lists : <code>union</code>                                   | 359 |
| 5.42.3 Intersection of two sets or of two lists : <code>intersect</code>                        | 359 |
| 5.42.4 Difference of two sets or of two lists : <code>minus</code>                              | 360 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 5.42.5 Defining an <i>n</i> -tuple: <code>tuple</code>                             | 360 |
| 5.43 Lists and vectors   | 361 |
| 5.43.1 Definition  | 361 |
| 5.43.2 Define a list: <code>makelist</code>  | 362 |
| 5.43.3 Flatten a list: <code>flatten</code>  | 363 |
| 5.43.4 Get an element or a sub-list of a list : <code>at []</code>                 | 363 |
| 5.43.5 Extract a sub-list : <code>mid</code>                                       | 364 |
| 5.43.6 Get the first element of a list : <code>head</code>                         | 364 |
| 5.43.7 Remove an element in a list : <code>suppress</code>                         | 365 |
| 5.43.8 Insert an element into a list or a string: <code>insert</code>              | 365 |
| 5.43.9 Remove the first element : <code>tail</code>                                | 365 |
| 5.43.10 The right and left portions of a list: <code>right, left</code>            | 366 |
| 5.43.11 Reverse order in a list : <code>revlist</code>                             | 366 |
| 5.43.12 Reverse a list starting from its n-th element : <code>rotate</code>        | 366 |
| 5.43.13 Permut list from its n-th element : <code>shift</code>                     | 367 |
| 5.43.14 Modify an element in a list : <code>subsop</code>                          | 367 |
| 5.43.15 Transform a list into a sequence : <code>op makesuite</code>               | 368 |
| 5.43.16 Transform a sequence into a list : <code>makevector []</code>              | 369 |
| 5.43.17 Length of a list : <code>size nops length</code>                           | 369 |
| 5.43.18 Sizes of a list of lists : <code>sizes</code>                              | 369 |
| 5.43.19 Concatenate two lists or a list and an element : <code>concat</code>       |     |
| <code>augment</code>   | 370 |
| 5.43.20 Append an element at the end of a list : <code>append</code>               | 370 |
| 5.43.21 Prepend an element at the beginning of a list : <code>prepend</code>       | 371 |
| 5.43.22 Sort : <code>sort</code>   | 371 |
| 5.43.23 Sort a list by increasing order: <code>SortA</code>                        | 372 |
| 5.43.24 Sort a list by decreasing order: <code>SortD</code>                        | 372 |
| 5.43.25 Select the elements of a list : <code>select</code>                        | 373 |
| 5.43.26 Remove elements of a list : <code>remove</code>                            | 373 |
| 5.43.27 Test if a value is in a list : <code>member</code>                         | 374 |
| 5.43.28 Test if a value is in a list : <code>contains</code>                       | 374 |
| 5.43.29 Sum of list (or matrix) elements transformed by a function                 |     |
| <code>: count</code>   | 374 |
| 5.43.30 Number of elements equal to a given value : <code>count_eq</code>          | 376 |
| 5.43.31 Number of elements smaller than a given value : <code>count_inf</code>     | 376 |
| 5.43.32 Number of elements greater than a given value : <code>count_sup</code>     | 376 |
| 5.43.33 Sum of elements of a list : <code>sum add</code>                           | 376 |
| 5.43.34 Cumulated sum of the elements of a list : <code>cumSum</code>              | 377 |
| 5.43.35 Product : <code>product mul</code>   | 377 |
| 5.43.36 Apply a function of one variable to the elements of a list :               |     |
| <code>map apply of</code>  | 379 |
| 5.43.37 Apply a bivariate function to the elements of two lists : <code>zip</code> | 380 |
| 5.43.38 Fold operators : <code>foldl, foldr</code>                                 | 381 |
| 5.43.39 Make a list with zeros : <code>newList</code>                              | 381 |
| 5.43.40 Make a list of integers: <code>range</code>                                | 382 |
| 5.43.41 Make a list with a function : <code>makelist</code>                        | 383 |
| 5.43.42 Make a random vector or list : <code>randvector</code>                     | 384 |
| 5.43.43 List of differences of consecutive terms : <code>deltalist</code>          | 384 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 5.43.44 Make a matrix with a list : <code>list2mat</code>  | 385 |
| 5.43.45 Make a list with a matrix : <code>mat2list</code>  | 385 |
| <b>5.44 Functions for vectors</b>  | 385 |
| 5.44.1 Norms of a vector : <code>maxnorm</code> <code>l1norm</code> <code>l2norm</code> <code>norm</code>  | 385 |
| 5.44.2 Normalize a vector : <code>normalize</code> <code>unitV</code>  | 386 |
| 5.44.3 Term by term sum of two lists : <code>+</code> <code>.+</code>  | 386 |
| 5.44.4 Term by term difference of two lists : <code>-</code> <code>.-</code>   | 387 |
| 5.44.5 Term by term product of two lists : <code>.*</code>   | 388 |
| 5.44.6 Term by term quotient of two lists : <code>./</code>  | 388 |
| 5.44.7 Scalar product: <code>scalar_product</code> * <code>dotprod</code> <code>dot</code><br><code>dotP</code> <code>scalar_Product</code>  | 388 |
| 5.44.8 Cross product: <code>cross</code> <code>crossP</code> <code>crossproduct</code>   | 389 |
| <b>5.45 Statistics functions : <code>mean</code>, <code>variance</code>, <code>stddev</code>, <code>stddevp</code>, <code>median</code>, <code>quantile</code>, <code>qua</code></b> |     |
| <b>5.46 Table with strings as indexes : <code>table</code></b>   | 392 |
| <b>5.47 Usual matrix</b>   | 392 |
| 5.47.1 Identity matrix : <code>idn</code> <code>identity</code>  | 393 |
| 5.47.2 Zero matrix : <code>newMat</code> <code>matrix</code>   | 393 |
| 5.47.3 Random matrix : <code>ranm</code> <code>randMat</code> <code>randmatrix</code>  | 393 |
| 5.47.4 Diagonal of a matrix or matrix of a diagonal : <code>BlockDiagonal</code><br><code>diag</code>  | 394 |
| 5.47.5 Jordan block : <code>JordanBlock</code>   | 395 |
| 5.47.6 Hilbert matrix : <code>hilbert</code>   | 395 |
| 5.47.7 Vandermonde matrix : <code>vandermonde</code>   | 395 |
| <b>5.48 Creating matrices and extracting elements</b>  | 395 |
| 5.48.1 Creating matrices and modifying elements by assignment  | 395 |
| 5.48.2 Changing a matrix by multi-assigment  | 397 |
| 5.48.3 Build a matrix with a function : <code>makemat</code>   | 398 |
| 5.48.4 Define a matrix : <code>matrix</code>   | 398 |
| 5.48.5 Modify an element or row of a matrix assigned to a variable: <code>::=</code> , <code>=&lt;</code>  | 399 |
| <b>5.49 Arithmetic and matrices</b>  | 401 |
| 5.49.1 Evaluate a matrix : <code>evalm</code>  | 401 |
| 5.49.2 Addition and subtraction of two matrices : <code>+</code> <code>-</code> <code>.+</code> <code>.-</code>  | 401 |
| 5.49.3 Multiplication of two matrices : <code>*</code> <code>&amp;*</code>   | 402 |
| 5.49.4 Addition of elements of a column of a matrix : <code>sum</code>   | 402 |
| 5.49.5 Cumulated sum of elements of each column of a matrix :<br><code>cumSum</code>   | 402 |
| 5.49.6 Multiplication of elements of each column of a matrix :<br><code>product</code>   | 402 |
| 5.49.7 Power of a matrix : <code>^</code> <code>&amp;^</code>  | 403 |
| 5.49.8 Hadamard product : <code>hadamard</code> , <code>product</code>   | 403 |
| 5.49.9 Hadamard product (infixed version): <code>.*</code>   | 403 |
| 5.49.10 Hadamard division (infixed version): <code>./</code>   | 404 |
| 5.49.11 Hadamard power (infixed version): <code>.^</code>  | 404 |
| 5.49.12 Extracting element(s) of a matrix : <code>[]</code> at   | 404 |
| 5.49.13 Modify an element or a row of a matrix : <code>subsop</code>   | 407 |
| 5.49.14 Extract rows or columns of a matrix (Maple compatibility)<br><code>: row</code> <code>col</code>   | 409 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 5.49.15 Remove rows or columns of a matrix : <code>delrows delcols</code>   | 410 |
| 5.49.16 Extract a sub-matrix of a matrix (TI compatibility) : <code>subMat</code>   | 411 |
| 5.49.17 Resize a matrix or vector: <code>REDIM, redim</code> . . . . .  | 412 |
| 5.49.18 Replacing part of a matrix or vector: <code>REPLACE, replace</code>   | 412 |
| 5.49.19 Add a row to another row : <code>rowAdd</code> . . . . .  | 413 |
| 5.49.20 Multiply a row by an expression : <code>mRow, scale, SCALE</code>   | 413 |
| 5.49.21 Add $k$ times a row to an another row : <code>mRowAdd, scaleadd,</code><br><code>SCALEADD</code> . . . . .  | 414 |
| 5.49.22 Exchange two rows : <code>rowSwap, rowswap, swaprow</code>  | 414 |
| 5.49.23 Exchange two columns: <code>colSwap, colswap, swapcol</code>  | 414 |
| 5.49.24 Make a matrix with a list of matrices : <code>blockmatrix</code> . .  | 415 |
| 5.49.25 Make a matrix from two matrices : <code>semi_augment</code> . . .   | 416 |
| 5.49.26 Make a matrix from two matrices : <code>augment concat</code> .   | 416 |
| 5.49.27 Append a column to a matrix : <code>border</code> . . . . .   | 417 |
| 5.49.28 Count the elements of a matrix verifying a property : <code>count</code>  | 418 |
| 5.49.29 Count the elements equal to a given value : <code>count_eq</code> .   | 418 |
| 5.49.30 Count the elements smaller than a given value : <code>count_inf</code>  | 418 |
| 5.49.31 Count the elements greater than a given value : <code>count_sup</code>  | 419 |
| 5.49.32 Statistics functions acting on column matrices : <code>mean,</code><br><code>stddev, variance, median, quantile, quartiles,</code><br><code>boxwhisker</code> . . . . . | 419 |
| 5.49.33 Dimension of a matrix : <code>dim</code> . . . . .  | 421 |
| 5.49.34 Number of rows : <code>rowdim rowDim nrows</code> . . . . .   | 421 |
| 5.49.35 Number of columns : <code>coldim colDim ncols</code> . . . . .  | 422 |
| 5.50 Sparse matrices . . . . .  | 422 |
| 5.50.1 Defining sparse matrices . . . . .   | 422 |
| 5.50.2 Operations on sparse matrices . . . . .  | 423 |
| 5.51 Linear algebra . . . . .   | 424 |
| 5.51.1 Transpose of a matrix : <code>tran transpose</code> . . . . .  | 424 |
| 5.51.2 Inverse of a matrix : <code>inv /</code> . . . . .   | 424 |
| 5.51.3 Trace of a matrix : <code>trace</code> . . . . .   | 424 |
| 5.51.4 Determinant of a matrix : <code>det</code> . . . . .   | 424 |
| 5.51.5 Determinant of a sparse matrix : <code>det_minor</code> . . . . .  | 425 |
| 5.51.6 Rank of a matrix : <code>rank</code> . . . . .   | 426 |
| 5.51.7 Transconjugate of a matrix : <code>trn</code> . . . . .  | 426 |
| 5.51.8 Equivalent matrix : <code>changebase</code> . . . . .  | 426 |
| 5.51.9 Basis of a linear subspace : <code>basis</code> . . . . .  | 427 |
| 5.51.10 Basis of the intersection of two subspaces : <code>ibasis</code> . .  | 427 |
| 5.51.11 Image of a linear function : <code>image</code> . . . . .   | 427 |
| 5.51.12 Kernel of a linear function : <code>kernel nullspace ker</code>   | 427 |
| 5.51.13 Kernel of a linear function : <code>Nullspace</code> . . . . .  | 428 |
| 5.51.14 Subspace generated by the columns of a matrix: <code>colspace</code>  | 428 |
| 5.51.15 Subspace generated by the rows of a matrix : <code>rowspace</code>  | 429 |
| 5.52 Linear Programming . . . . .   | 429 |
| 5.52.1 Simplex algorithm: <code>simplex_reduce</code> . . . . .   | 429 |
| 5.52.2 Solving general linear programming problems: <code>lpsolve</code>  | 432 |
| 5.52.3 Solving transportation problems: <code>tpsolve</code> . . . . .  | 441 |
| 5.53 Nonlinear optimization . . . . .   | 442 |

|   |   |                              |                              |     |
|---|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|-----|
| 5.53.1 Global extrema: <code>minimize</code>  | <code>maximize</code> . . . . .   | 442                          |                              |     |
| 5.53.2 Local extrema: <code>extrema</code>  | . . . . .   | 445                          |                              |     |
| 5.53.3 Global extrema without using derivatives : <code>nlp_solve</code>                  | . . . . .   | 447                          |                              |     |
| 5.53.4 Minimax polynomial approximation: <code>minimax</code>                             | . . . . .   | 448                          |                              |     |
| 5.54 Different matrix norms   | . . . . .   | 449                          |                              |     |
| 5.54.1 The Frobenius norm: <code>frobenius_norm</code>                                    | . . . . .   | 449                          |                              |     |
| 5.54.2 $l^2$ matrix norm : <code>norm</code>  | <code>l2norm</code> . . . . .   | 450                          |                              |     |
| 5.54.3 $l^\infty$ matrix norm : <code>maxnorm</code>                                      | . . . . .   | 450                          |                              |     |
| 5.54.4 Matrix row norm : <code>rownorm</code>   | <code>rowNorm</code> . . . . .  | 450                          |                              |     |
| 5.54.5 Matrix column norm : <code>colnorm</code>  | <code>colNorm</code> . . . . .  | 451                          |                              |     |
| 5.54.6 The operator norm of a matrix: <code>matrix_norm</code> , <code>l1norm</code> ,    | <code>l2norm</code> , <code>norm</code> , <code>specnorm</code> , <code>linfnorm</code> . . . . . | 451                          |                              |     |
| 5.55 Matrix reduction   | . . . . .   | 453                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.1 Eigenvalues : <code>eigvals</code>   | . . . . .   | 453                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.2 Eigenvalues : <code>egvl</code>  | <code>eigenvalues</code>  | <code>eigVl</code> . . . . . | 453                          |     |
| 5.55.3 Eigenvectors : <code>egv</code>  | <code>eigenvectors</code>   | <code>eigenvecs</code>       | <code>eigVc</code> . . . . . | 454 |
| 5.55.4 Rational Jordan matrix : <code>rat_jordan</code>                                   | . . . . .   | 454                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.5 Jordan normal form : <code>jordan</code>   | . . . . .   | 457                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.6 Powers of a square matrix: <code>matpow</code>                                     | . . . . .   | 458                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.7 Characteristic polynomial : <code>charpoly</code>                                  | . . . . .   | 459                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.8 Characteristic polynomial using Hessenberg algorithm : <code>pqr_hessenberg</code> | . . . . .   | 459                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.9 Minimal polynomial : <code>pmin</code>   | . . . . .   | 460                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.10 Adjoint matrix : <code>adjoint_matrix</code>                                      | . . . . .   | 461                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.11 Companion matrix of a polynomial : <code>companion</code>                         | . . . . .   | 462                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.12 Hessenberg matrix reduction : <code>hessenberg</code>                             | . . . . .   | 462                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.13 Hermite normal form : <code>ihermite</code>                                       | . . . . .   | 463                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.14 Smith normal form in $\mathbb{Z}$ : <code>ismith</code>                           | . . . . .   | 463                          |                              |     |
| 5.55.15 Smith normal form: <code>smith</code>   | . . . . .   | 464                          |                              |     |
| 5.56 Isometries   | . . . . .   | 465                          |                              |     |
| 5.56.1 Recognize an isometry : <code>isom</code>  | . . . . .   | 465                          |                              |     |
| 5.56.2 Find the matrix of an isometry : <code>mkisom</code>                               | . . . . .   | 466                          |                              |     |
| 5.57 Matrix factorizations  | . . . . .   | 467                          |                              |     |
| 5.57.1 Cholesky decomposition : <code>cholesky</code>                                     | . . . . .   | 467                          |                              |     |
| 5.57.2 QR decomposition : <code>qr</code>   | . . . . .   | 468                          |                              |     |
| 5.57.3 QR decomposition (for TI compatibility) : <code>QR</code>                          | . . . . .   | 469                          |                              |     |
| 5.57.4 LQ decomposition (HP compatible): <code>LQ</code>                                  | . . . . .   | 469                          |                              |     |
| 5.57.5 LU decomposition : <code>lu</code>   | . . . . .   | 470                          |                              |     |
| 5.57.6 LU decomposition (for TI compatibility) : <code>LU</code>                          | . . . . .   | 471                          |                              |     |
| 5.57.7 Singular values (HP compatible): <code>SVL</code> , <code>svl</code>               | . . . . .   | 472                          |                              |     |
| 5.57.8 Singular value decomposition : <code>svd</code>                                    | . . . . .   | 472                          |                              |     |
| 5.57.9 Short basis of a lattice : <code>ll1</code>  | . . . . .   | 473                          |                              |     |
| 5.58 Quadratic forms  | . . . . .   | 474                          |                              |     |
| 5.58.1 Matrix of a quadratic form : <code>q2a</code>                                      | . . . . .   | 474                          |                              |     |
| 5.58.2 Transform a matrix into a quadratic form : <code>a2q</code>                        | . . . . .   | 474                          |                              |     |
| 5.58.3 Reduction of a quadratic form : <code>gauss</code>                                 | . . . . .   | 475                          |                              |     |
| 5.58.4 The conjugate gradient algorithm: <code>conjugate_gradient</code>                  | . . . . .   | 475                          |                              |     |
| 5.58.5 Gram-Schmidt orthonormalization : <code>gramschmidt</code>                         | . . . . .   | 476                          |                              |     |
| 5.58.6 Graph of a conic : <code>conic</code>  | . . . . .   | 476                          |                              |     |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 5.58.7 Conic reduction : reduced_conic . . . . .  | 477 |
| 5.58.8 Graph of a quadric: quadric . . . . .  | 478 |
| 5.58.9 Quadric reduction : reduced_quadric . . . . .  | 478 |
| 5.59 Multivariate calculus . . . . .  | 480 |
| 5.59.1 Gradient: derive deriver diff grad . . . . .   | 480 |
| 5.59.2 Laplacian : laplacian . . . . .  | 481 |
| 5.59.3 Hessian matrix : hessian . . . . .   | 481 |
| 5.59.4 Divergence : divergence . . . . .  | 482 |
| 5.59.5 Rotational : curl . . . . .  | 482 |
| 5.59.6 Potential : potential . . . . .  | 482 |
| 5.59.7 Conservative flux field : vpotential . . . . .   | 483 |
| 5.60 Equations . . . . .  | 483 |
| 5.60.1 Define an equation : equal . . . . .   | 483 |
| 5.60.2 Transform an equation into a difference : equal2diff . . . . .                                   | 483 |
| 5.60.3 Transform an equation into a list : equal2list . . . . .   | 484 |
| 5.60.4 The left member of an equation : left gauche lhs . . . . .                                       | 484 |
| 5.60.5 The right member of an equation : right droit rhs . . . . .                                      | 484 |
| 5.60.6 Solving equation(s): solve . . . . .   | 485 |
| 5.60.7 Equation solving in C : cSolve . . . . .   | 487 |
| 5.61 Linear systems . . . . .   | 487 |
| 5.61.1 Matrix of a system : syst2mat . . . . .  | 488 |
| 5.61.2 Gauss reduction of a matrix : ref . . . . .  | 488 |
| 5.61.3 Gauss-Jordan reduction: rref gaussjord . . . . .   | 489 |
| 5.61.4 Solving A*X=B : simult . . . . .   | 490 |
| 5.61.5 Step by step Gauss-Jordan reduction of a matrix : pivot . . . . .                                | 491 |
| 5.61.6 Linear system solving: linsolve . . . . .  | 491 |
| 5.61.7 Solving a linear system using the Jacobi iteration method: jacobi_linsolve . . . . .             | 492 |
| 5.61.8 Solving a linear system using the Gauss-Seidel iteration method: gauss_seidel_linsolve . . . . . | 493 |
| 5.61.9 The least squares solution of a linear system: LSQ, lsq . . . . .                                | 493 |
| 5.61.10 Finding linear recurrences : reverse_rsolve . . . . .   | 495 |
| 5.62 Differential equations . . . . .   | 496 |
| 5.62.1 Solving differential equations : desolve deSolve dsolve . . . . .                                | 496 |
| 5.62.2 Laplace transform and inverse Laplace transform : laplace ilaplace invlaplace . . . . .          | 504 |
| 5.62.3 Solving linear homogeneous second-order ODE with rational coefficients : kovacicsols . . . . .   | 506 |
| 5.63 The Z-transform . . . . .  | 510 |
| 5.63.1 The Z-transform of a sequence: ztrans . . . . .  | 510 |
| 5.63.2 The inverse Z-transform of a rational function: invztrans . . . . .                              | 511 |
| 5.64 Other functions . . . . .  | 512 |
| 5.64.1 Replace small values by 0: epsilon2zero . . . . .  | 512 |
| 5.64.2 List of variables : lname indets . . . . .   | 512 |
| 5.64.3 List of variables and of expressions : lvar . . . . .  | 513 |
| 5.64.4 List of variables of an algebraic expressions: algvar . . . . .                                  | 513 |
| 5.64.5 Test if a variable is in an expression : has . . . . .   | 514 |
| 5.64.6 Numeric evaluation : evalf . . . . .   | 514 |

|   |           |            |
|---|-----------|------------|
| 5.64.7 Rational approximation : <code>float2rational exact</code>   | . . . . . | 515        |
| 5.65 The day of the week: <code>dayofweek</code>  | . . . . . | 515        |
| <b>6 Metric properties of curves</b>  |           | <b>517</b> |
| 6.1 The center of curvature   | . . . . . | 517        |
| 6.2 Computing the curvature and related values: <code>curvature, osculating_circle, evolute</code>                      | . . . . . | 517        |
| <b>7 Graphs</b>   |           | <b>521</b> |
| 7.1 Generalities  | . . . . . | 521        |
| 7.2 The graphic screen  | . . . . . | 522        |
| 7.3 Graph and geometric objects attributes  | . . . . . | 523        |
| 7.3.1 Individual attributes   | . . . . . | 523        |
| 7.3.2 Global attributes   | . . . . . | 524        |
| 7.4 Graph of a function: <code>plotfunc funcplot DrawFunc Graph</code>  | . . . . . | 525        |
| 7.4.1 2-d graph   | . . . . . | 525        |
| 7.4.2 3-d graph   | . . . . . | 526        |
| 7.4.3 3-d graph with rainbow colors   | . . . . . | 527        |
| 7.4.4 4-d graph.  | . . . . . | 527        |
| 7.5 2d graph for Maple compatibility : <code>plot</code>  | . . . . . | 528        |
| 7.6 3d surfaces for Maple compatibility <code>plot3d</code>   | . . . . . | 529        |
| 7.7 Graph of a line and tangent to a graph  | . . . . . | 529        |
| 7.7.1 Draw a line : <code>line</code>   | . . . . . | 529        |
| 7.7.2 Draw an 2D horizontal line : <code>LineHorz</code>  | . . . . . | 530        |
| 7.7.3 Draw a 2D vertical line : <code>LineVert</code>   | . . . . . | 531        |
| 7.7.4 Tangent to a 2D graph : <code>LineTan</code>  | . . . . . | 531        |
| 7.7.5 Tangent to a 2D graph : <code>tangent</code>  | . . . . . | 531        |
| 7.7.6 Plot a line with a point and the slope: <code>DrawSlp</code>  | . . . . . | 532        |
| 7.7.7 Intersection of a 2D graph with the axis  | . . . . . | 532        |
| 7.8 Graph of inequalities with 2 variables: <code>plotinequation inequationplot</code>                                  | . . . . . | 532        |
| 7.9 The area under a curve: <code>area</code>   | . . . . . | 533        |
| 7.10 Graph of the area below a curve : <code>plotarea areaplot</code>   | . . . . . | 534        |
| 7.11 Contour lines: <code>plotcontour contourplot DrwCtour</code>   | . . . . . | 535        |
| 7.12 2-d graph of a 2-d function with colors: <code>plotdensity densityplot</code>                                      | . . . . . | 536        |
| 7.13 Implicit graph: <code>plotimplicit implicitplot</code>   | . . . . . | 536        |
| 7.13.1 2D implicit curve  | . . . . . | 536        |
| 7.13.2 3D implicit surface  | . . . . . | 537        |
| 7.14 Parametric curves and surfaces: <code>plotparam paramplot DrawParm</code>  | . . . . . | 538        |
| 7.14.1 2D parametric curve  | . . . . . | 538        |
| 7.14.2 3D parametric surface: <code>plotparam paramplot DrawParm</code>   | . . . . . | 539        |
| 7.15 Bezier curves: <code>bezier</code>   | . . . . . | 539        |
| 7.16 Curve defined in polar coordinates : <code>plotpolar polarplot DrawPol courbe_polaire</code>                       | . . . . . | 540        |
| 7.17 Graph of a recurrent sequence: <code>plotseq seqplot graphe_suite</code>   | . . . . . | 541        |
| 7.18 Tangent field : <code>plotfield fieldplot</code>   | . . . . . | 541        |
| 7.19 Plotting a solution of a differential equation: <code>plotode odeplot</code>                                       | . . . . . | 542        |
| 7.20 Interactive plotting of solutions of a differential equation: <code>interactive_plotode interactive_odeplot</code> | . . . . . | 543        |

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
| 7.21     | Animated graphs (2D, 3D or "4D") . . . . .  | 543        |
| 7.21.1   | Animation of a 2D graph : <code>animate</code> . . . . .  | 543        |
| 7.21.2   | Animation of a 3D graph : <code>animate3d</code> . . . . .  | 544        |
| 7.21.3   | Animation of a sequence of graphic objects : <code>animation</code>                                   | 544        |
| <b>8</b> | <b>Statistics</b>   | <b>549</b> |
| 8.1      | One variable statistics . . . . .   | 549        |
| 8.1.1    | The mean: <code>mean</code> . . . . .   | 549        |
| 8.1.2    | Variance and standard deviation: <code>variance stdev</code> . . .                                    | 550        |
| 8.1.3    | The population standard deviation: <code>stddevp stdDev</code> .                                      | 551        |
| 8.1.4    | The median: <code>median</code> . . . . .   | 552        |
| 8.1.5    | Quartiles: <code>quartiles quartile1 quartile3</code> . . .   | 552        |
| 8.1.6    | Quantiles: <code>quantile</code> . . . . .  | 553        |
| 8.1.7    | The boxwhisker: <code>boxwhisker mustache</code> . . . . .  | 553        |
| 8.1.8    | Classes: <code>classes</code> . . . . .   | 554        |
| 8.1.9    | Histograms: <code>histogram histogramme</code> . . . . .  | 554        |
| 8.1.10   | Accumulating terms: <code>accumulate_head_tail</code> . . . .   | 555        |
| 8.1.11   | Frequencies: <code>frequencies frequences</code> . . . . .  | 555        |
| 8.1.12   | Cumulative frequencies: <code>cumulated_frequencies frequences_cumulees</code>                        | 556        |
| 8.1.13   | Bar graphs: <code>bar_plot</code> . . . . .   | 557        |
| 8.1.14   | Pie charts: <code>camembert</code> . . . . .  | 558        |
| 8.2      | Two variable statistics . . . . .   | 559        |
| 8.2.1    | Covariance and correlation: <code>covariance correlation covariance_correlation</code> . . . . .      | 559        |
| 8.2.2    | Scatterplots: <code>scatterplot nuaged_points batons</code>   | 560        |
| 8.2.3    | Polygonal paths: <code>polygonplot ligne_polygonale linear_interpolate listplot plotlist</code> . . . | 561        |
| 8.2.4    | Linear regression: <code>linear_regression linear_regression_plot</code>                              | 562        |
| 8.2.5    | Exponential regression: <code>exponential_regression exponential_regression_plot</code> . . . .       | 563        |
| 8.2.6    | Logarithmic regression: <code>logarithmic_regression logarithmic_regression_plot</code> . . . .       | 564        |
| 8.2.7    | Power regression: <code>power_regression power_regression_plot</code>                                 | 565        |
| 8.2.8    | Polynomial regression: <code>polynomial_regression polynomial_regression_plot</code>                  | 566        |
| 8.2.9    | Logistic regression: <code>logistic_regression logistic_regression_plot</code>                        | 566        |
| 8.3      | Random numbers . . . . .  | 567        |
| 8.3.1    | Producing uniformly distributed random numbers: <code>rand random alea hasard</code> . . . . .        | 567        |
| 8.3.2    | Initializing the random number generator: <code>srand randseed RandSeed</code> . . . . .              | 569        |
| 8.3.3    | Producing random numbers with the binomial distribution: <code>randbinomial</code> . . . . .          | 569        |
| 8.3.4    | Producing random numbers with a multinomial distribution: <code>randmultinomial</code> . . . . .      | 570        |
| 8.3.5    | Producing random numbers with a Poisson distribution: <code>randpoisson</code> . . . . .              | 570        |
| 8.3.6    | Producing random numbers with a normal distribution: <code>randnorm randNorm</code> . . . . .         | 570        |

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
| 8.3.7    | Producing random numbers with an exponential distribution: <code>randexp</code>           | 571        |
| 8.3.8    | Producing random matrices: <code>randmatrix</code> <code>ranm</code> <code>randMat</code> | 571        |
| 8.3.9    | Random variables: <code>random_variable</code> <code>randvar</code>                       | 572        |
| 8.4      | Density and distribution functions  | 578        |
| 8.4.1    | The binomial distribution   | 578        |
| 8.4.2    | The negative binomial distribution  | 579        |
| 8.4.3    | The multinomial probability function: <code>multinomial</code>                            | 580        |
| 8.4.4    | The Poisson distribution  | 581        |
| 8.4.5    | Normal distributions  | 582        |
| 8.4.6    | Student's distribution  | 583        |
| 8.4.7    | The $\chi^2$ distribution   | 585        |
| 8.4.8    | The Fisher-Snédécor distribution  | 586        |
| 8.4.9    | The gamma distribution  | 587        |
| 8.4.10   | The beta distribution   | 588        |
| 8.4.11   | The geometric distribution  | 589        |
| 8.4.12   | The Cauchy distribution   | 590        |
| 8.4.13   | The uniform distribution  | 591        |
| 8.4.14   | The exponential distribution  | 592        |
| 8.4.15   | The Weibull distribution  | 593        |
| 8.4.16   | The Kolmogorov-Smirnov distribution: <code>kolmogorovd</code>                             | 594        |
| 8.4.17   | The Wilcoxon or Mann-Whitney distribution   | 594        |
| 8.4.18   | The Wilcoxon test polynomial: <code>wilcoxonp</code>                                      | 594        |
| 8.4.19   | Moment generating functions for probability distributions: <code>mgf</code>               | 596        |
| 8.4.20   | Cumulative distribution functions: <code>cdf</code>                                       | 596        |
| 8.4.21   | Inverse distribution functions: <code>icdf</code>   | 597        |
| 8.4.22   | Kernel density estimation : <code>kernel_density</code> , <code>kde</code>                | 597        |
| 8.4.23   | Distribution fitting by maximum likelihood : <code>fitdistr</code>                        | 600        |
| 8.4.24   | Markov chains: <code>markov</code>  | 601        |
| 8.4.25   | Generating a random walks: <code>randmarkov</code>  | 601        |
| 8.5      | Hypothesis testing  | 602        |
| 8.5.1    | General   | 602        |
| 8.5.2    | Testing the mean with the Z test: <code>normalt</code>                                    | 602        |
| 8.5.3    | Testing the mean with the T test: <code>studentt</code>                                   | 603        |
| 8.5.4    | Testing a distribution with the $\chi^2$ distribution: <code>chisquaret</code>            | 604        |
| 8.5.5    | Testing a distribution with the Kolmogorov-Smirnov distribution: <code>kolmogorovt</code> | 606        |
| <b>9</b> | <b>Numerical computations</b>   | <b>607</b> |
| 9.1      | Floating point representation.  | 607        |
| 9.1.1    | Digits  | 607        |
| 9.1.2    | Representation by hardware floats   | 608        |
| 9.1.3    | Examples of representations of normalized floats  | 608        |
| 9.1.4    | Difference between the representation of (3.1-3) and of 0.1                               | 609        |
| 9.2      | Approx. evaluation : <code>evalf</code> <code>approx</code> and <code>Digits</code>       | 610        |
| 9.3      | Numerical algorithms  | 611        |
| 9.3.1    | Approximate solution of an equation : <code>newton</code>                                 | 611        |

|           |  |            |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 9.3.2     | Approximate computation of the derivative number : <code>nDeriv</code>   | 611        |
| 9.3.3     | Approximate computation of integrals : <code>romberg</code> <code>nInt</code>  | 612        |
| 9.3.4     | Approximate integral with an adaptive Gaussian quadrature at 15 points: <code>gaussquad</code>                               | 612        |
| 9.3.5     | Approximate solution of $y' = f(t,y)$ : <code>odesolve</code>  | 613        |
| 9.3.6     | Approximate solution of the system $v' = f(t,v)$ : <code>odesolve</code>   | 614        |
| 9.3.7     | Approximate solution of a nonlinear second-order boundary value problem : <code>bvpsole</code>                               | 615        |
| 9.4       | Solve equations with <code>fsolve</code> <code>nSolve</code>   | 617        |
| 9.4.1     | <code>fsolve</code> or <code>nSolve</code> with the option <code>bisection_solver</code>                                     | 618        |
| 9.4.2     | <code>fsolve</code> or <code>nSolve</code> with the option <code>brent_solver</code>   | 618        |
| 9.4.3     | <code>fsolve</code> or <code>nSolve</code> with the option <code>falsepos_solver</code>                                      | 618        |
| 9.4.4     | <code>fsolve</code> or <code>nSolve</code> with the option <code>newton_solver</code>  | 618        |
| 9.4.5     | <code>fsolve</code> or <code>nSolve</code> with the option <code>secant_solver</code>  | 619        |
| 9.4.6     | <code>fsolve</code> or <code>nSolve</code> with the option <code>steffenson_solver</code>                                    | 619        |
| 9.5       | Solve systems with <code>fsolve</code>   | 620        |
| 9.5.1     | <code>fsolve</code> with the option <code>dnewton_solver</code>  | 620        |
| 9.5.2     | <code>fsolve</code> with the option <code>hybrid_solver</code>   | 620        |
| 9.5.3     | <code>fsolve</code> with the option <code>hybrids_solver</code>  | 620        |
| 9.5.4     | <code>fsolve</code> with the option <code>newtonj_solver</code>  | 621        |
| 9.5.5     | <code>fsolve</code> with the option <code>hybridj_solver</code>  | 621        |
| 9.5.6     | <code>fsolve</code> with the option <code>hybridsj_solver</code>   | 621        |
| 9.6       | Solving equations or systems over $\mathbb{C}$ : <code>cfsolve</code>  | 621        |
| 9.7       | Numeric roots of a polynomial : <code>proot</code>   | 622        |
| 9.8       | Numeric factorization of a matrix : <code>cholesky</code> <code>qr</code> <code>lu</code> <code>svd</code>                   | 622        |
| <b>10</b> | <b>Unit objects and physical constants</b>   | <b>623</b> |
| 10.1      | Unit objects   | 623        |
| 10.1.1    | Notation of unit objects   | 623        |
| 10.1.2    | Computing with units   | 624        |
| 10.1.3    | Convert units into MKSA units : <code>mksa</code>  | 624        |
| 10.1.4    | Convert units : <code>convert</code> , <code>=&gt;</code>  | 625        |
| 10.1.5    | Convert between Celsius and Fahrenheit: <code>Celsius2Fahrenheit</code> ,<br><code>Fahrenheit2Celsius</code>                 | 625        |
| 10.1.6    | Factorize a unit : <code>ufactor</code>  | 626        |
| 10.1.7    | Simplify a unit : <code>usimplify</code>   | 626        |
| 10.1.8    | Unit prefixes  | 626        |
| 10.2      | Constants  | 627        |
| 10.2.1    | Notation of physical constants   | 627        |
| 10.2.2    | Constants Library  | 627        |
| <b>11</b> | <b>Programming</b>   | <b>629</b> |
| 11.1      | Functions, programs and scripts  | 629        |
| 11.1.1    | The program editor   | 629        |
| 11.1.2    | Functions: <code>function</code> , <code>endfunction</code> , <code>{ }</code> , <code>local</code> ,<br><code>return</code> | 629        |
| 11.1.3    | Local variables  | 630        |
| 11.1.4    | Default values of the parameters   | 631        |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 11.1.5 Programs . . . . .   | 631 |
| 11.1.6 Scripts . . . . .  | 631 |
| 11.1.7 Code blocks . . . . .  | 631 |
| 11.2 Basic instructions . . . . .   | 631 |
| 11.2.1 Comments: // . . . . .   | 631 |
| 11.2.2 Input: input, Input, InputStr, textinput, output, Output . . . . .   | 632 |
| 11.2.3 Reading a single keystroke: getKey . . . . .   | 632 |
| 11.2.4 Checking conditions: assert . . . . .  | 632 |
| 11.2.5 Checking the type of the argument: type, subtype, compare, getType . . . . .   | 633 |
| 11.2.6 Printing: print, Disp, ClrIO . . . . .   | 634 |
| 11.2.7 Displaying exponents: printpow . . . . .   | 635 |
| 11.2.8 Infixed assignments: =>, :=, =< . . . . .  | 636 |
| 11.2.9 Assignment by copying: copy . . . . .  | 637 |
| 11.2.10 The difference between := and =< . . . . .  | 638 |
| 11.3 Control structures . . . . .   | 639 |
| 11.3.1 if statements: if, then, else, end, elif . . .   | 639 |
| 11.3.2 The switch statement: switch, case, default .  | 640 |
| 11.3.3 The for loop: for, from, to, step, do, end_for   | 641 |
| 11.3.4 The repeat loop: repeat, until . . . . .   | 642 |
| 11.3.5 The while loop: while . . . . .  | 642 |
| 11.3.6 Breaking out of a loop: break . . . . .  | 642 |
| 11.3.7 Going to the next iteration of a loop: continue . . . . .  | 643 |
| 11.3.8 Changing the order of execution: goto, label . . . . .   | 643 |
| 11.4 Other useful instructions . . . . .  | 643 |
| 11.4.1 Define a function with a variable number of arguments: args . . . . .  | 643 |
| 11.4.2 Assignments in a program . . . . .   | 644 |
| 11.4.3 Writing variable values to a file: write . . . . .   | 645 |
| 11.4.4 Writing output to a file: fopen, fclose, fprintf .   | 645 |
| 11.4.5 Using strings as names: # . . . . .  | 646 |
| 11.4.6 Using strings as commands: expr . . . . .  | 647 |
| 11.4.7 Converting an expression to a string: string . . . . .   | 648 |
| 11.4.8 Converting a real number into a string: format . . . . .   | 649 |
| 11.4.9 Working with the graphics screen: DispG, DispHome, ClrGraph, ClrDraw . . . . .   | 650 |
| 11.4.10 Pausing a program: Pause, WAIT . . . . .  | 650 |
| 11.4.11 Dealing with errors: try, catch, throw, error, ERROR . . . . .  | 650 |
| 11.5 Debugging . . . . .  | 652 |
| 11.5.1 Starting the debugger: debug, sst, in, sst_in, cont, kill, break, breakpoint, halt, rmbrk, rmbreakpoint, watch, rmwtch . . . . . | 652 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>12 Two-dimensional Graphics</b>  | <b>655</b> |
| 12.1 Introduction . . . . .   | 655        |
| 12.1.1 Points, vectors and complex numbers . . . . .  | 655        |
| 12.2 Basic commands . . . . .   | 656        |
| 12.2.1 Clear the DispG screen: <code>erase</code> . . . . .   | 656        |
| 12.2.2 Toggle the axes: <code>switch_axes</code> . . . . .  | 656        |
| 12.2.3 Draw unit vectors in the plane: <code>Ox_2d_unit_vector</code><br><code>Oy_2d_unit_vector</code> <code>frame_2d</code> . . . . . | 656        |
| 12.2.4 Draw dotted paper: <code>dot_paper</code> . . . . .  | 657        |
| 12.2.5 Draw lined paper: <code>line_paper</code> . . . . .  | 657        |
| 12.2.6 Draw grid paper: <code>grid_paper</code> . . . . .   | 658        |
| 12.2.7 Draw triangular paper: <code>triangle_paper</code> . . . . .   | 658        |
| 12.3 Display features of graphics . . . . .   | 659        |
| 12.3.1 Graphic features . . . . .   | 659        |
| 12.3.2 Parameters for changing features . . . . .   | 659        |
| 12.3.3 Commands for global display features . . . . .   | 663        |
| 12.4 Define geometric objects without drawing them: <code>nodisp</code> . . . . .   | 666        |
| 12.5 Geometric demonstrations: <code>assume</code> . . . . .  | 667        |
| 12.6 Points in the plane . . . . .  | 668        |
| 12.6.1 Points and complex numbers . . . . .   | 668        |
| 12.6.2 The point in the plane: <code>point</code> . . . . .   | 668        |
| 12.6.3 The difference and sum of two points in the plane: <code>+, -</code> . . . . .   | 669        |
| 12.6.4 Define random points in the plane: <code>point2d</code> . . . . .  | 670        |
| 12.6.5 Points in polar coordinates: <code>polar_point</code> , <code>point_polar</code> . . . . .                                       | 670        |
| 12.6.6 Find a point of intersection of two objects in the plane:<br><code>single_inter</code> <code>line_inter</code> . . . . .         | 671        |
| 12.6.7 Find the points of intersection of two geometric objects in<br>the plane: <code>inter</code> . . . . .                           | 671        |
| 12.6.8 Find the orthocenter of a triangle in the plane: <code>orthocenter</code> . . . . .  | 672        |
| 12.6.9 Find the midpoint of a segment in the plane: <code>midpoint</code> . . . . .   | 672        |
| 12.6.10 The barycenter in the plane: <code>barycenter</code> . . . . .  | 672        |
| 12.6.11 The isobarycenter of $n$ points in the plane: <code>isobarycenter</code> . . . . .  | 673        |
| 12.6.12 The center of a circle in the plane: <code>center</code> . . . . .  | 673        |
| 12.6.13 The vertices of a polygon in the plane: <code>vertices</code> , <code>vertices_abc</code> . . . . .                             | 673        |
| 12.6.14 The vertices of a polygon in the plane, closed: <code>vertices_abca</code> . . . . .  | 674        |
| 12.6.15 A point on a geometric object in the plane: <code>element</code> . . . . .  | 674        |
| 12.7 Lines in plane geometry . . . . .  | 675        |
| 12.7.1 Lines and directed lines in the plane: <code>line</code> . . . . .   | 675        |
| 12.7.2 Half-lines in the plane: <code>half_line</code> . . . . .  | 676        |
| 12.7.3 Line segments in the plane: <code>segment</code> <code>Line</code> . . . . .   | 676        |
| 12.7.4 Vectors in the plane: <code>segment</code> <code>vector</code> . . . . .   | 677        |
| 12.7.5 Parallel lines in the plane: <code>parallel</code> . . . . .   | 678        |
| 12.7.6 Perpendicular lines in the plane: <code>perpendicular</code> . . . . .   | 678        |
| 12.7.7 Tangents to curves in the plane: <code>tangent</code> . . . . .  | 679        |
| 12.7.8 The median of a triangle in the plane: <code>median_line</code> . . . . .  | 680        |
| 12.7.9 The altitude of a triangle: <code>altitude</code> . . . . .  | 680        |
| 12.7.10 The perpendicular bisector of a segment in the plane: <code>perpen_bisector</code> . . . . .                                    | 680        |
| 12.7.11 The angle bisector: <code>bisector</code> . . . . .   | 681        |

|         |  |     |
|---------|--|-----|
| 12.7.12 | The exterior angle bisector: <code>exbisector</code>   | 681 |
| 12.8    | Triangles in the plane   | 682 |
| 12.8.1  | Arbitrary triangles in the plane: <code>triangle</code>  | 682 |
| 12.8.2  | Isosceles triangles in the plane: <code>isosceles_triangle</code>  | 682 |
| 12.8.3  | Right triangles in the plane: <code>right_triangle</code>  | 683 |
| 12.8.4  | Equilateral triangles in the plane: <code>equilateral_triangle</code>  | 685 |
| 12.9    | Quadrilaterals in the plane  | 685 |
| 12.9.1  | Squares in the plane: <code>square</code>  | 686 |
| 12.9.2  | Rhombuses in the plane: <code>rhombus</code>   | 686 |
| 12.9.3  | Rectangles in the plane: <code>rectangle</code>  | 687 |
| 12.9.4  | Parallelograms in the plane: <code>parallelogram</code>  | 689 |
| 12.9.5  | Arbitrary quadrilaterals in the plane: <code>quadrilateral</code>  | 690 |
| 12.10   | Other polygons in the plane  | 690 |
| 12.10.1 | Regular hexagons in the plane: <code>hexagon</code>  | 690 |
| 12.10.2 | Regular polygons in the plane: <code>isopolygon</code>   | 691 |
| 12.10.3 | General polygons in the plane: <code>polygon</code>  | 692 |
| 12.10.4 | Polygonal lines in the plane: <code>open_polygon</code>  | 693 |
| 12.10.5 | Convex hulls: <code>convexhull</code>  | 693 |
| 12.11   | Circles  | 694 |
| 12.11.1 | Circles and arcs in the plane: <code>circle</code>   | 694 |
| 12.11.2 | Circular arcs: <code>arc</code>  | 696 |
| 12.11.3 | Circles (TI compatibility): <code>Circle</code>  | 697 |
| 12.11.4 | Inscribed circles: <code>incircle</code>   | 698 |
| 12.11.5 | Circumscribed circles: <code>circumcircle</code>   | 698 |
| 12.11.6 | Excircles: <code>excircle</code>   | 698 |
| 12.11.7 | The power of a point relative to a circle: <code>powerpc</code>  | 699 |
| 12.11.8 | The radical axis of two circles: <code>radical_axis</code>   | 699 |
| 12.12   | Other conic sections   | 699 |
| 12.12.1 | The ellipse in the plane: <code>ellipse</code>   | 699 |
| 12.12.2 | The hyperbola in the plane: <code>hyperbola</code>   | 701 |
| 12.12.3 | The parabola in the plane: <code>parabola</code>   | 702 |
| 12.13   | Coordinates in the plane   | 704 |
| 12.13.1 | The affix of a point or vector: <code>affix</code>   | 704 |
| 12.13.2 | The abscissa of a point or vector in the plane: <code>abscissa</code>  | 704 |
| 12.13.3 | The ordinate of a point or vector in the plane: <code>ordinate</code>  | 705 |
| 12.13.4 | The coordinates of a point, vector or line in the plane: <code>coordinates</code>  | 705 |
| 12.13.5 | The rectangular coordinates of a point: <code>rectangular_coordinates</code>   | 707 |
| 12.13.6 | The polar coordinates of a point: <code>polar_coordinates</code>   | 707 |
| 12.13.7 | The Cartesian equation of a geometric object in the plane: <code>equation</code>   | 708 |
| 12.13.8 | The parametric equation of a geometric object in the plane: <code>parameq</code>   | 708 |
| 12.14   | Measurements   | 709 |
| 12.14.1 | Measurement and display: <code>distanceat</code> <code>distanceatraw</code> <code>angleat</code> <code>angleatraw</code> <code>areaat</code> <code>areaatraw</code> <code>perimeterat</code> <code>perimeteratraw</code> <code>slopeat</code> <code>slopeatraw</code> <code>extract_measure</code> | 709 |
| 12.14.2 | The distance between objects in the plane: <code>distance</code>   | 710 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 12.14.3 The length squared of a segment in the plane: <code>distance2</code>                               | 712 |
| 12.14.4 The measure of an angle in the plane: <code>angle</code>   | 712 |
| 12.14.5 The graphical representation of the area of a polygon: <code>plotareaareaplot</code>               | 713 |
| 12.14.6 The area of a polygon: <code>area</code>   | 714 |
| 12.14.7 The perimeter of a polygon: <code>perimeter</code>   | 715 |
| 12.14.8 The slope of a line: <code>slope</code>  | 716 |
| 12.14.9 The radius of a circle: <code>radius</code>  | 716 |
| 12.14.10 The length of a vector: <code>abs</code>  | 717 |
| 12.14.11 The angle of a vector: <code>arg</code>   | 717 |
| 12.14.12 Normalize a complex number: <code>normalize</code>  | 717 |
| 12.15 Transformations  | 717 |
| 12.15.1 General remarks  | 717 |
| 12.15.2 Translations in the plane: <code>translation</code>  | 718 |
| 12.15.3 Reflections in the plane: <code>reflection</code>  | 718 |
| 12.15.4 Rotation in the plane: <code>rotation</code>   | 720 |
| 12.15.5 Homothety in the plane: <code>homothety</code>   | 721 |
| 12.15.6 Similarity in the plane: <code>similarity</code>   | 722 |
| 12.15.7 Inversion in the plane: <code>inversion</code>   | 723 |
| 12.15.8 Orthogonal projection in the plane: <code>projection</code>  | 725 |
| 12.16 Properties   | 726 |
| 12.16.1 Check if a point is on an object in the plane: <code>is_element</code>                             | 726 |
| 12.16.2 Check if three points are collinear in the plane: <code>is_collinear</code>                        | 727 |
| 12.16.3 Check if four points are concyclic in the plane: <code>is_concyclic</code>                         | 727 |
| 12.16.4 Check if a point is in a polygon or circle: <code>is_inside</code>                                 | 728 |
| 12.16.5 Check if an object is an equilateral triangle in the plane:<br><code>is_equilateral</code>         | 728 |
| 12.16.6 Check if an object in the plane is an isosceles triangle:<br><code>is_isosceles</code>             | 729 |
| 12.16.7 Check if an object in the plane is a right triangle or a rect-<br>angle: <code>is_rectangle</code> | 730 |
| 12.16.8 Check if an object in the plane is a square: <code>is_square</code>                                | 731 |
| 12.16.9 Check if an object in the plane is a rhombus: <code>is_rhombus</code>                              | 731 |
| 12.16.10 Check if an object in the plane is a parallelogram: <code>is_parallelogram</code>                 | 732 |
| 12.16.11 Check if two lines in the plane are parallel: <code>is_parallel</code>                            | 733 |
| 12.16.12 Check if two lines in the plane are perpendicular: <code>is_perpendicular</code>                  | 734 |
| 12.16.13 Check if two circles in the plane are orthogonal: <code>is_orthogonal</code>                      | 734 |
| 12.16.14 Check if elements are conjugates: <code>is_conjugate</code>                                       | 735 |
| 12.16.15 Check if four points form a harmonic division: <code>is_harmonic</code>                           | 736 |
| 12.16.16 Check if lines are in a bundle: <code>is_harmonic_line_bundle</code>                              | 736 |
| 12.16.17 Check if circles are in a bundle: <code>is_harmonic_circle_bundle</code>                          | 736 |
| 12.17 Harmonic division  | 737 |
| 12.17.1 Find a point dividing a segment in the harmonic ratio $k$ :<br><code>division_point</code>         | 737 |
| 12.17.2 The cross ratio of four collinear points: <code>cross_ratio</code>                                 | 737 |
| 12.17.3 Harmonic division: <code>harmonic_division</code>  | 738 |
| 12.17.4 The harmonic conjugate: <code>harmonic_conjugate</code>  | 739 |
| 12.17.5 Pole and polar: <code>pole_polar</code>  | 739 |
| 12.17.6 The polar reciprocal: <code>reciprocation</code>   | 740 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 12.18 Loci and envelopes . . . . .  | 741        |
| 12.18.1 Loci: <code>locus</code> . . . . .  | 741        |
| 12.18.2 Envelopes: <code>envelope</code> . . . . .  | 744        |
| 12.18.3 The trace of a geometric object: <code>trace</code> . . . . .   | 745        |
| <b>13 Three-dimensional Graphics</b>  | <b>747</b> |
| 13.1 Introduction . . . . .   | 747        |
| 13.2 Change the view . . . . .  | 748        |
| 13.3 The axes . . . . .   | 748        |
| 13.3.1 Draw unit vectors: <code>Ox_3d_unit_vector</code> <code>Oy_3d_unit_vector</code><br><code>Oz_3d_unit_vector</code> <code>frame_3d</code> . . . . . | 748        |
| 13.4 Points in space . . . . .  | 749        |
| 13.4.1 Define a point in three-dimensions: <code>point</code> . . . . .   | 749        |
| 13.4.2 Define a random point in three-dimensions: <code>point3d</code> . .  | 750        |
| 13.4.3 Find an intersection point of two objects in space: <code>single_inter</code><br><code>line_inter</code> . . . . .                                 | 750        |
| 13.4.4 Find the intersection points of two objects in space: <code>inter</code>   | 752        |
| 13.4.5 Find the midpoint of a segment in space: <code>midpoint</code> . . .   | 753        |
| 13.4.6 Find the isobarycenter of a set of points in space: <code>isobarycenter</code>   | 753        |
| 13.4.7 Find the barycenter of a set of points in space: <code>barycenter</code>   | 753        |
| 13.5 Lines in space . . . . .   | 754        |
| 13.5.1 Lines and directed lines in space: <code>line</code> . . . . .   | 754        |
| 13.5.2 Half lines in space: <code>half_line</code> . . . . .  | 755        |
| 13.5.3 Segments in space: <code>segment</code> . . . . .  | 756        |
| 13.5.4 Vectors in space: <code>vector</code> . . . . .  | 756        |
| 13.5.5 Parallel lines and planes in space: <code>parallel</code> . . . . .  | 758        |
| 13.5.6 Perpendicular lines and planes in space: <code>perpendicular</code>  | 760        |
| 13.5.7 Planes orthogonal to lines and lines orthogonal to planes in<br>space: <code>orthogonal</code> . . . . .   | 761        |
| 13.5.8 Common perpendiculars to lines in space: <code>common_perpendicular</code>   | 762        |
| 13.6 Planes in space . . . . .  | 763        |
| 13.6.1 Planes in space: <code>plane</code> . . . . .  | 763        |
| 13.6.2 The bisector plane in space: <code>perpen_bisector</code> . . . .  | 764        |
| 13.6.3 Tangent planes in space: <code>tangent</code> . . . . .  | 764        |
| 13.7 Triangles in space . . . . .   | 766        |
| 13.7.1 Draw a triangle in space: <code>triangle</code> . . . . .  | 766        |
| 13.7.2 Isosceles triangles in space: <code>isosceles_triangle</code> . .  | 766        |
| 13.7.3 Right triangles in space: <code>right_triangle</code> . . . . .  | 768        |
| 13.7.4 Equilateral triangles in space: <code>equilateral_triangle</code>  | 770        |
| 13.8 Quadrilaterals in space . . . . .  | 770        |
| 13.8.1 Squares in space: <code>square</code> . . . . .  | 771        |
| 13.8.2 Rhombuses in space: <code>rhombus</code> . . . . .   | 771        |
| 13.8.3 Rectangles in space: <code>rectangle</code> . . . . .  | 773        |
| 13.8.4 Parallelograms in space: <code>parallelogram</code> . . . . .  | 775        |
| 13.8.5 Arbitrary quadrilaterals in space: <code>quadrilateral</code> . .  | 775        |
| 13.9 Polygons in space . . . . .  | 776        |
| 13.9.1 Hexagons in space: <code>hexagon</code> . . . . .  | 776        |
| 13.9.2 Regular polygons in space: <code>isopolygon</code> . . . . .   | 777        |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 13.9.3 General polygons in space: <code>polygon</code>  | 778 |
| 13.9.4 Polygonal lines in space: <code>open_polygon</code>  | 778 |
| 13.10 Circles in space: <code>circle</code>   | 779 |
| 13.11 Conics in space   | 780 |
| 13.11.1 Ellipses in space: <code>ellipse</code>   | 780 |
| 13.11.2 Hyperbolas in space: <code>hyperbola</code>   | 781 |
| 13.11.3 Parabolas in space: <code>parabola</code>   | 781 |
| 13.12 Three-dimensional coordinates   | 782 |
| 13.12.1 The abscissa of a three-dimensional point: <code>abscissa</code>                                | 782 |
| 13.12.2 The ordinate of a three-dimensional point: <code>ordinate</code>                                | 782 |
| 13.12.3 The cote of a three-dimensional point: <code>cote</code>  | 783 |
| 13.12.4 The coordinates of a point, vector or line in space: <code>coordinates</code>                   | 783 |
| 13.12.5 The Cartesian equation of an object in space: <code>equation</code>                             | 784 |
| 13.12.6 The parametric equation of an object in space: <code>parameq</code>                             | 784 |
| 13.12.7 The length of a segment in space: <code>distance</code>   | 785 |
| 13.12.8 The length squared of a segment in space: <code>distance2</code>                                | 785 |
| 13.12.9 The measure of an angle in space: <code>angle</code>  | 786 |
| 13.13 Properties  | 786 |
| 13.13.1 Check if an object in space is on another object: <code>is_element</code>                       | 786 |
| 13.13.2 Check if points and/or lines in space are coplanar: <code>is_coplanar</code>                    | 787 |
| 13.13.3 Check if lines and/or planes in space are parallel: <code>is_parallel</code>                    | 788 |
| 13.13.4 Check if lines and/or planes in space are perpendicular:<br><code>is_perpendicular</code>       | 788 |
| 13.13.5 Check if two lines or two spheres in space are orthogonal:<br><code>is_orthogonal</code>        | 789 |
| 13.13.6 Check if three points in space are collinear: <code>is_collinear</code>                         | 790 |
| 13.13.7 Check if four points in space are cocyclic: <code>is_concyclic</code>                           | 790 |
| 13.13.8 Check if five points in space are cospherical: <code>is_cospherical</code>                      | 791 |
| 13.13.9 Check if an object in space is an equilateral triangle: <code>is_equilateral</code>             | 791 |
| 13.13.10 Check if an object in space is an isosceles triangle: <code>is_isosceles</code>                | 792 |
| 13.13.11 Check if an object in space is a right triangle or a rectangle:<br><code>is_rectangle</code>   | 792 |
| 13.13.12 Check if an object in space is a square: <code>is_square</code>                                | 793 |
| 13.13.13 Check if an object in space is a rhombus: <code>is_rhombus</code>                              | 794 |
| 13.13.14 Check if an object in space is a parallelogram: <code>is_parallelgram</code>                   | 794 |
| 13.14 Transformations in space  | 795 |
| 13.14.1 General remarks   | 795 |
| 13.14.2 Translation in space: <code>translation</code>  | 796 |
| 13.14.3 Reflection in space with respect to a plane, line or point:<br><code>reflection symmetry</code> | 796 |
| 13.14.4 Rotation in space: <code>rotation</code>  | 797 |
| 13.14.5 Homothety in space: <code>homothety</code>  | 797 |
| 13.14.6 Similarity in space: <code>similarity</code>  | 798 |
| 13.14.7 Inversion in space: <code>inversion</code>  | 798 |
| 13.14.8 Orthogonal projection in space: <code>projection</code>   | 799 |
| 13.15 Surfaces  | 800 |
| 13.15.1 Cones: <code>cone</code>  | 800 |
| 13.15.2 Half-cones: <code>half_cone</code>  | 800 |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| 13.15.3 Cylinders: <code>cylinder</code> . . . . .                            | 801        |
| 13.15.4 Spheres: <code>sphere</code> . . . . .                                | 801        |
| 13.15.5 The graph of a function of two variables: <code>funcplot</code> . . . | 802        |
| 13.15.6 The graph of parametric equations in space: <code>paramplot</code>    | 802        |
| 13.16 Solids . . . . .  | 803        |
| 13.16.1 Cubes: <code>cube</code> . . . . .                                    | 803        |
| 13.16.2 Tetrahedrons: <code>tetrahedron</code> <code>pyramid</code> . . . . . | 805        |
| 13.16.3 Parallelepipeds: <code>parallelepiped</code> . . . . .                | 806        |
| 13.16.4 Prisms: <code>prism</code> . . . . .                                  | 807        |
| 13.16.5 Polyhedra: <code>polyhedron</code> . . . . .                          | 807        |
| 13.16.6 Vertices: <code>vertices</code> . . . . .                             | 808        |
| 13.16.7 Faces: <code>faces</code> . . . . .                                   | 808        |
| 13.16.8 Edges: <code>line_segments</code> . . . . .                           | 809        |
| 13.17 Platonic solids . . . . .   | 809        |
| 13.17.1 Centered tetrahedra: <code>centered_tetrahedron</code> . . . . .      | 810        |
| 13.17.2 Centered cubes: <code>centered_cube</code> . . . . .                  | 810        |
| 13.17.3 Octahedra: <code>octahedron</code> . . . . .                          | 811        |
| 13.17.4 Dodecahedra: <code>dodecahedron</code> . . . . .                      | 812        |
| 13.17.5 Icosahedra: <code>icosahedron</code> . . . . .                        | 812        |
| <b>14 Multimedia</b> . . . . .  | <b>815</b> |
| 14.1 Sounds . . . . .   | 815        |
| 14.1.1 Reading a wav file: <code>readwav</code> . . . . .                     | 815        |
| 14.1.2 Writing a wav file: <code>writewav</code> . . . . .                    | 816        |
| 14.1.3 Listening to a digital sound: <code>playsnd</code> . . . . .           | 816        |
| 14.1.4 Preparing digital sound data: <code>soundsec</code> . . . . .          | 816        |
| 14.2 Images . . . . .   | 817        |
| 14.2.1 Image structure in Xcas . . . . .                                      | 817        |
| 14.2.2 Reading images: <code>readrgb</code> . . . . .                         | 817        |
| 14.2.3 Viewing images . . . . .   | 817        |
| 14.2.4 Creating or recreating images: <code>writergb</code> . . . . .         | 818        |
| <b>15 Using <code>giac</code> inside a program</b> . . . . .                  | <b>821</b> |
| 15.1 Using <code>giac</code> inside a C++ program . . . . .                   | 821        |
| 15.2 Defining new <code>giac</code> functions . . . . .                       | 822        |

# **Chapter 1**

## **Index**

# Index

|                                       |                                  |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| , 96                                  | ? :, 91                          |
| ', 158                                | [], 353                          |
| '*', 183                              | [], 346, 353, 354, 357, 361, 369 |
| '+', 153, 177, 182                    | 177, 187                         |
| '-', 153, 177, 182                    | #, 646                           |
| '/', 183                              | \$, 177, 196, 354                |
| (, 169, 353                           | %, 113, 177, 326, 336            |
| *, 183, 328, 360, 388, 402            | %%%{ %%% }, 275                  |
| *=, 86                                | %{ %}, 358                       |
| +, 105, 153, 177, 182, 327, 358, 386, | %e, 95                           |
| 401, 669                              | %i, 95                           |
| +,-,*/,^, 134                         | %pi, 95                          |
| +=, 86                                | &*, 402                          |
| +infinity, 95                         | &&, 96                           |
| ,, 353                                | &^, 403                          |
| -, 153, 177, 182, 327, 387, 401, 669  | ^, 153, 177, 330, 403            |
| -=, 86                                | _-, 623, 627                     |
| ->, 90, 179                           | !, 123                           |
| -inf, 95                              | !=, 95, 96                       |
| -infinity, 95                         | ", 100                           |
| .*, 388, 403                          | \n, 100                          |
| .+, 386, 401                          | { }, 629                         |
| .-, 387, 401                          | a2q, 474                         |
| ., 346, 354                           | abcuv, 301                       |
| ./, 388, 404                          | about, 87, 238                   |
| .^, 404                               | abs, 154, 183, 717               |
| /, 183, 329, 331, 424                 | abscissa, 704, 782               |
| //, 78, 631                           | accumulate_head_tail, 555        |
| /=, 86                                | acos, 184, 225                   |
| ::=, 399                              | acos2asin, 228                   |
| ::, 77                                | acos2atan, 228                   |
| :=, 83, 90, 179, 636                  | acosh, 184                       |
| <, 95                                 | acot, 225                        |
| <=, 95                                | acsc, 225                        |
| =, 83                                 | add, 376                         |
| =<, 85, 399, 636                      | additionally, 87                 |
| ==, 95                                | additionally, 88                 |
| =>, 83, 90, 234, 625, 636             | addtable, 243                    |
| >, 95                                 | adjoint_matrix, 461              |
| >=, 95                                |                                  |

affix, 704  
Airy\_Ai, 145  
Airy\_Bi, 145  
alea, 567  
algsubs, 171  
algvar, 513  
altitude, 680  
and, 87, 96  
angle, 712, 786  
angle\_radian, 63  
angleat, 709  
angleatraw, 709  
animate, 543  
animate3d, 544  
animation, 544  
ans, 81  
append, 370  
apply, 379  
approx, 610  
approx\_mode, 63  
arc, 696  
arccos, 184, 225  
arccosh, 184  
archive, 86  
arcLen, 192  
arcsin, 184, 225  
arcsinh, 184  
arctan, 184, 225  
arctanh, 184  
area, 533, 714  
areaat, 709  
areaatraw, 709  
areaplot, 534, 713  
arg, 154, 717  
args, 643  
as\_function\_of, 187  
asc, 103  
asec, 225  
asin, 184, 225  
asin2acos, 228  
asin2atan, 229  
asinh, 184  
assert, 632  
assign, 83  
assume, 87, 237, 238, 630, 667  
at, 363, 404  
atan, 184, 225  
atan2acos, 229  
atan2asin, 229  
atanh, 184  
atrig2ln, 232  
augment, 370, 416  
auto\_correlation, 259  
autosimplify, 166  
axes, 524  
bar\_plot, 557  
bareiss, 424  
bartlett\_hann\_window, 265  
barycenter, 155, 672, 753  
base, 107  
basis, 427  
batons, 560  
begin, 631  
bernoulli, 132  
Beta, 144  
betad, 588  
betad\_cdf, 588  
betad\_icdf, 588  
bezier, 539  
*Binary*, 178  
binomial, 124, 578  
binomial\_cdf, 579  
binomial\_icdf, 579  
bisection\_solver, 618  
bisector, 681  
bit\_depth, 253  
bitand, 98  
bitor, 98  
bitxor, 98  
black, 523  
blackman\_harris\_window, 265  
blackman\_window, 265  
BlockDiagonal, 394  
blockmatrix, 415  
blue, 523  
bohman\_window, 266  
border, 417  
boxcar, 256  
boxwhisker, 389, 419, 553  
break, 642, 652  
breakpoint, 652  
brent\_solver, 618  
bvpsolve, 615  
c1oc2, 151  
c1op2, 150

camembert, 558  
 canonical\_form, 159  
 cap\_flat\_line , 523  
 cap\_round\_line, 523  
 cap\_square\_line, 523  
 cas\_setup, 69  
 case, 640  
 cat, 104, 105  
 catch, 650  
 cauchy, 590  
 cauchy\_cdf, 590  
 cauchy\_icdf, 591  
 cauchyd, 590  
 cauchyd\_cdf, 590  
 cauchyd\_icdf, 591  
 cd, 92  
 cdf, 596  
 ceil, 184  
 ceiling, 184  
 Celsius2Fahrenheit, 625  
 center, 673  
 center2interval, 348  
 centered\_cube, 810  
 centered\_tetrahedron, 810  
 cFactor, 162  
 cfactor, 63  
 cfsolve, 621  
 changebase, 426  
 channel\_data, 254  
 channels, 253  
 char, 103  
 charpoly, 459  
 chinrem, 302  
 chisquare, 585  
 chisquare\_cdf, 585  
 chisquare\_icdf, 585  
 chisquaret, 604  
 cholesky, 467  
 chrem, 120  
 Ci, 138  
 Circle, 697  
 circle, 694, 779  
 circumcircle, 698  
 classes, 554  
 ClrDraw, 650  
 ClrGraph, 650  
 ClrIO, 634  
 coeff, 277  
 coeffs, 277  
 col, 409  
 colDim, 422  
 coldim, 422  
 collect, 281  
 colNorm, 451  
 colnorm, 451  
 color, 664  
*color, 523*  
*, 618*  
 colspace, 428  
 colSwap, 414  
 colswap, 414  
 comb, 124  
 combine, 224  
 comDenom, 319  
 comment, 78  
 comments, 77, 631  
 common\_perpendicular, 762  
 companion, 462  
 compare, 633  
 complex, 633  
 complex\_mode, 63  
 complex\_variables, 64  
 complexroot, 320  
 concat, 370, 416  
 cone, 800  
*confrac, 129*  
 conic, 476  
 conj, 154  
 conjugate\_equation, 215  
 conjugate\_gradient, 475  
 cont, 652  
 contains, 352, 374  
 content, 280  
 contourplot, 535  
 convert, 107, 234, 277, 287, 352, 625  
 convertir, 234, 287  
 convex, 207  
 convexhull, 693  
 convolution, 259  
 coordinates, 705, 783  
 copy, 85, 637  
 CopyVar, 87  
 correlation, 559  
 cos, 225  
*cos, 224, 234*  
 cos2sintan, 230

cosh, **184**  
cosine\_window, **266**  
cot, **225**  
cote, **783**  
count, **374**, **418**  
count\_eq, **376**, **418**  
count\_inf, **376**, **418**  
count\_sup, **376**, **419**  
courbe\_polaire, **540**  
covariance, **559**  
covariance\_correlation, **559**  
cpartfrac, **320**  
creationalroot, **325**  
createwav, **252**  
cross, **389**  
cross\_correlation, **258**  
cross\_point, **523**  
cross\_ratio, **737**  
crossP, **389**  
crossproduct, **389**  
csc, **225**  
cSolve, **487**  
CST, **83**  
cube, **803**  
cumSum, **102**, **377**, **402**  
cumulated\_frequencies, **556**  
curl, **482**  
curvature, **517**  
*curve*, **613**  
cyan, **523**  
cycle2perm, **148**  
cycleinv, **152**  
cycles2perm, **148**  
cyclotomic, **303**  
cylinder, **801**  
cZzeros, **164**  
  
dash\_line, **523**  
dashdot\_line, **523**  
dashdotdot\_line, **523**  
dayofweek, **515**  
debug, **652**  
debugger, **631**  
default, **640**  
degree, **278**  
del, **89**  
delcols, **410**  
*Delete*, **178**  
  
DelFold, **93**  
delrows, **410**  
deltalist, **384**  
DelVar, **89**  
denom, **128**, **318**  
densityplot, **536**  
derive, **195**, **480**  
deriver, **195**, **480**  
deSolve, **496**  
desolve, **496**  
Det, **338**  
det, **332**, **424**  
det\_minor, **425**  
dfc, **129**  
dfc2f, **131**  
diag, **394**  
diff, **195**, **480**  
DIGITS, **62**, **133**, **610**  
Digits, **62**, **133**, **610**  
dim, **421**  
Dirac, **140**  
directories, **92**  
Disp, **634**  
DispG, **72**, **650**  
DispHome, **650**  
display, **664**  
*display*, **523**  
distance, **710**, **785**  
distance2, **712**, **785**  
distanceat, **709**  
distanceatraw, **709**  
div, **112**  
divergence, **482**  
divide, **297**  
divis, **294**  
division\_point, **737**  
divisors, **112**  
divpc, **340**  
dnewton\_solver, **dnewton\_solver**, **620**  
do, **641**  
dodecahedron, **812**  
DOM\_COMPLEX, **633**  
DOM\_FLOAT, **633**  
DOM\_FUNC, **633**  
DOM\_IDENT, **633**  
DOM\_INT, **633**  
DOM\_LIST, **633**  
DOM\_RAT, **633**

DOM\_STRING, 633  
 DOM\_SYMBOLIC, 633  
 domain, 189  
 dot, 388  
 dot\_paper, 657  
 dotP, 388  
 dotprod, 388  
 double, 633  
 DrawFunc, 525  
 DrawParm, 538, 539  
 DrawPol, 540  
 DrawSlp, 532  
 droit, 484  
 DrwCtour, 535  
 dsolve, 496  
 duration, 253  
  
 e, 95  
 e2r, 276  
 egcd, 301  
 egv, 454  
 egvl, 453  
 Ei, 137  
 eigenvals, 453  
 eigenvalues, 453  
 eigenvectors, 454  
 eigenvecs, 454  
 eigVc, 454  
 eigVi, 453  
 element, 674  
 elif, 639  
 eliminate, 171  
 ellipse, 699, 780  
 else, 639  
 end, 631, 639  
 end\_for, 641  
 endfunction, 629  
 envelope, 744  
 epsilon, 512  
 epsilon2zero, 512  
 equal, 483  
 equal2diff, 483  
 equal2list, 484  
 equation, 708, 784  
 equilateral\_triangle, 685, 770  
 erase, 656  
 erf, 140  
 erfc, 141  
  
 ERROR, 650  
 error, 650  
 euler, 121  
 euler\_gamma, 95  
 euler\_lagrange, 210  
 eval, 157  
 eval\_level, 157  
 evala, 158  
 evalb, 98  
 evalc, 153  
 evalf, 88, 126, 133, 514, 610  
 evalm, 401  
 even, 114  
 evolute, 517  
 exact, 126, 515  
 exbisector, 681  
 excircle, 698  
 exp, 184  
 exp, 224, 234  
 exp2list, 97  
 exp2pow, 274  
 exp2trig, 229  
 expand, 159  
 expexpand, 272  
 expln, 234  
 exponential, 592  
 exponential\_cdf, 592  
 exponential\_icdf, 593  
 exponential\_regression, 563  
 exponential\_regression\_plot, 563  
 exponentiald, 592  
 exponentiald\_cdf, 592  
 exponentiald\_icdf, 593  
 export\_mathml, 73  
 EXPR, 633  
 expr, 106, 647  
 expression, 633  
 expression editor, 78  
 expression tree, 79  
 extract\_measure, 709  
 extrema, 445  
 ezgcd, 299  
  
 f2nd, 128, 318  
 faces, 808  
 Factor, 338  
 factor, 161, 282, 332, 335  
 factor\_xn, 280

factorial, 108, 123  
factoriser, 282, 332  
factors, 284  
Fahrenheit2Celsius, 625  
FALSE, 95  
false, 95  
*falsepos\_solver*, 618  
fclose, 645  
fcoeff, 326  
fdistrib, 159  
feuille, 181, 346  
fft, 249  
fieldplot, 541  
filled, 523  
fisher, 586  
fisher\_cdf, 586  
fisher\_icdf, 587  
fisherd, 586  
fitdistr, 600  
flatten, 363  
float2rational, 126, 515  
floor, 183  
fMax, 193  
fMin, 193  
foldl, 381  
foldr, 381  
fopen, 645  
for, 641  
format, 649  
fourier, 238  
fourier\_an, 235  
fourier\_bn, 235  
fourier\_cn, 236  
fPart, 184  
fprintf, 645  
frac, 184  
fracmod, 331  
frame\_2d, 656  
frame\_3d, 748  
*frames*, 659  
*frames*, 543, 544  
frequencies, 555  
frequencies\_cumulees, 556  
frequencies, 555  
frobenius\_norm, 449  
from, 641  
froot, 325  
fsolve, 617, 620  
*fullparfrac*, 234  
FUNC, 633  
func, 633  
funcplot, 525, 802  
function, 629  
function\_diff, 191  
fxnd, 128, 318  
Gamma, 142  
gammad, 587  
gammad\_cdf, 587  
gammad\_icdf, 588  
gauche, 484  
gauss, 475  
gauss\_seidel\_linsolve, 493  
gaussian\_window, 266  
gaussjord, 489  
gaussquad, 612  
gbasis, 313  
Gcd, 110, 298, 337  
gcd, 108, 298, 331  
gcdex, 301  
geometric, 589  
geometric\_cdf, 589  
geometric\_icdf, 589  
getDenom, 128, 317  
GetFold, 93  
getKey, 632  
getNum, 127, 317  
getType, 633  
GF, 334  
giac, 50  
*gl\_material*, 523  
*gl\_quaternion*, 524  
*gl\_rotation*, 524  
*gl\_shownames*, 524  
*gl\_texture*, 524, 659  
*gl\_texture*, 523  
*gl\_x*, 524  
*gl\_x\_axis\_name*, 524  
*gl\_x\_axis\_unit*, 524  
*gl\_x\_tick*, 524  
*gl\_y*, 524  
*gl\_y\_axis\_name*, 524  
*gl\_y\_axis\_unit*, 524  
*gl\_y\_tick*, 524  
*gl\_z*, 524  
*gl\_z\_axis\_name*, 524

*gl\_z\_axis\_unit*, 524  
*gl\_z\_tick*, 524  
 goto, 643  
 grad, 480  
 gramschmidt, 476  
 Graph, 525  
 graph2tex, 72  
 graph3d2tex, 72  
 graphe\_suite, 541  
 greduce, 314  
 green, 523  
 grid\_paper, 658  
 groupermu, 152  
  
 hadamard, 403  
 half\_cone, 800  
 half\_line, 676, 755  
 halftan, 231  
 halftan\_hyp2exp, 232  
 halt, 652  
 hamdist, 99  
 hamming\_window, 267  
 hann\_poisson\_window, 267  
 hann\_window, 267  
 harmonic\_conjugate, 739  
 harmonic\_division, 738  
 has, 514  
 hasard, 124, 567  
 head, 101, 364  
 Heaviside, 139  
 hermite, 311  
 hessenberg, 462  
 hessian, 481  
 heugcd, 299  
 hexagon, 690, 776  
 hidden\_name, 523  
 highpass, 261  
 hilbert, 395  
 histogram, 554  
 histogramme, 554  
 hold, 158  
 homothety, 721, 797  
 horner, 284  
 hybrid\_solverhybrid\_solver, 620  
 hybridj\_solverhybridj\_solver, 621  
 hybrids\_solverhybrids\_solver, 620  
 hybridsj\_solverhybridsj\_solver, 621  
 hyp2exp, 272  
  
 hyperbola, 701, 781  
 i, 95  
 i[], 348  
 iabcuv, 118  
 ibasis, 427  
 ibpdv, 205  
 ibpu, 206  
 icdf, 597  
 ichinrem, 118  
 ichrem, 118  
 icomp, 123  
 icosahedron, 812  
 id, 184  
 identifier, 633  
 identity, 393  
 idivis, 112  
 idn, 393  
 iegcd, 118  
 if, 639  
 ifactor, 110  
 ifactors, 111  
 ifft, 250  
 ifourier, 238  
 IFTE, 92  
 ifte, 91  
 igamma, 143  
 igcd, 108  
 igcdex, 118  
 ihermite, 463  
 ilaplace, 504  
 im, 153  
 imag, 153  
 image, 427  
 implicitplot, 536  
 in, 652  
 in\_ideal, 315  
 incircle, 698  
 indets, 512  
 inequationplot, 532  
 inf, 95  
 infinity, 95  
 Input, 632  
 input, 632  
 InputStr, 632  
 insert, 365  
 inString, 104  
 Int, 199

int, 199  
 intDiv, 112  
 integer, 235, 633  
*integer*, 88  
 integrate, 199  
 inter, 671, 752  
 interactive\_odeplot, 543  
 interactive\_plotode, 543  
 internal directories, 93  
 interp, 289  
 intersect, 351, 359  
 interval2center, 347  
 inv, 331, 333, 424  
 Inverse, 339  
 inverse, 333  
 inversion, 723, 798  
 invisible\_point, 523  
 invlaplace, 504  
 invztrans, 511  
 iPart, 183  
 quo, 112  
 iquorem, 114  
 iratrecon, 331  
 irem, 113  
 is\_collinear, 727, 790  
 is\_concyclic, 727, 790  
 is\_conjugate, 735  
 is\_coplanar, 787  
 is\_cospherical, 791  
 is\_cycle, 149  
 is\_element, 726, 786  
 is\_equilateral, 728, 791  
 is\_harmonic, 736  
 is\_harmonic\_circle\_bundle, 736  
 is\_harmonic\_line\_bundle, 736  
 is\_inside, 728  
 is\_isosceles, 729, 792  
 is\_orthogonal, 734, 789  
 is\_parallel, 733, 788  
 is\_parallelogram, 732, 794  
 is\_permu, 149  
 is\_perpendicular, 734, 788  
 is\_Prime, 115  
 is\_prime, 115  
 is\_pseudoprime, 115  
 is\_rectangle, 730, 792  
 is\_rhombus, 731, 794  
 is\_square, 731, 793  
 ismith, 463  
 isobarycenter, 673, 753  
 isom, 465  
 isopolygon, 691, 777  
 isosceles\_triangle, 682, 766  
 ithprime, 117  
 jacobi\_equation, 214  
 jacobi\_linsolve, 492  
 jacobi\_symbol, 122  
 jordan, 457  
 JordanBlock, 395  
 jusqua, 642  
 kde, 597  
 ker, 427  
 kernel, 427  
 kernel\_density, 597  
 kill, 652  
 kolmogorovd, 594  
 kolmogorovt, 606  
 kovacicsols, 506  
 l1norm, 386, 451  
 l2norm, 386, 450, 451  
 label, 643  
*labels*, 524  
 lagrange, 289  
*lagrange*, 424  
 laguerre, 311  
 laplace, 504  
 laplacian, 481  
 LaTeX, 72  
 latex, 72  
 lcm, 110, 300  
 lcoeff, 279  
 ldegree, 278  
 left, 101, 346, 349, 366, 484  
 legend, 663  
*legend*, 524  
 legendre, 310  
 legendre\_symbol, 121  
 length, 100, 369  
 lgcd, 110  
 lhs, 484  
 Li, 138  
 ligne\_polygonale, 561  
 limit, 219, 221  
 lin, 273

Line, 676  
 line, 529, 675, 754  
 line\_inter, 671, 750  
 line\_paper, 657  
 line\_segments, 809  
 line\_width\_1, 523  
 line\_width\_2, 523  
 line\_width\_3, 523  
 line\_width\_4, 523  
 line\_width\_5, 523  
 line\_width\_6, 523  
 line\_width\_7, 523  
 linear\_interpolate, 561  
 linear\_regression, 562  
 linear\_regression\_plot, 562  
 LineHorz, 530  
 LineTan, 531  
 LineVert, 531  
 linsolve, 491  
*linsolve*, 424  
 LIST, 633  
 list2exp, 97  
 list2mat, 385  
 listplot, 561  
 lists, 361  
 lll, 473  
 ln, 184  
*ln*, 224, 234  
 lname, 512  
 Incollect, 273  
 lnexpand, 272  
 load, 93  
 local, 629  
 locus, 741  
 log, 184  
*log*, 224  
 log10, 184  
 logarithmic\_regression, 564  
 logarithmic\_regression\_plot, 564  
 logb, 184  
 logistic\_regression, 566  
 logistic\_regression\_plot, 566  
 loi\_normal, 582  
 lowpass, 261  
 lpsolve, 432  
 LQ, 469  
 LSQ, 493  
 lsq, 493  
 LU, 471  
 lu, 470  
 lvar, 513  
 magenta, 523  
 makelist, 362, 383, 645  
 makemat, 398  
 makesuite, 368  
 makevector, 369  
 map, 379  
 Maple, 75  
 maple2xcas, 75  
 maple\_ifactors, 111  
 markov, 601  
 MAT, 633  
 mat2list, 385  
 MathML, 72  
 mathml, 72  
 matpow, 458  
 matrix, 398  
*matrix*, 234  
 matrix\_norm, 451  
 max, 183  
 maximize, 442  
 maxnorm, 385, 450  
 mean, 389, 419, 549  
 median, 389, 419, 552  
 median\_line, 680  
 member, 374  
 mgf, 596  
 mid, 101, 364  
 midpoint, 351, 672, 753  
 min, 183  
 minimax, 448  
 minimize, 442  
*minor\_det*, 424  
 minus, 360  
 mkisom, 466  
 mksa, 624  
 mod, 113, 336  
 modgcd, 299  
 mods, 113  
 moving\_average, 261  
 mRow, 413  
 mRowAdd, 414  
 mul, 377  
 mult\_c\_conjugate, 155  
 mult\_conjugate, 160

multinomial, 580  
mustache, 553  
  
ncols, 422  
nCr, 124  
nDeriv, 611  
negbinomial, 579  
negbinomial\_cdf, 580  
negbinomial\_icdf, 580  
NewFold, 93  
newList, 381  
newMat, 393  
newton, 611  
newton\_solvernewton\_solver, 618  
newtonj\_solvernewtonj\_solver, 621  
nextperm, 147  
nextprime, 116  
nInt, 612  
nlpsolve, 447  
nodisp, 77, 666  
noise removal, 270  
NONE, 633  
nop, 357  
nops, 369  
norm, 385, 450, 451  
normal, 165, 327, 328, 330  
normal\_cdf, 582  
normal\_icdf, 583  
normald, 582  
normald\_cdf, 582  
normald\_icdf, 583  
normalize, 154, 386, 717  
normalt, 602  
not, 96  
nPr, 124  
nprimes, 117  
nrows, 421  
nSolve, 617  
*nstep*, 659  
*nstep*, 525  
nuage\_points, 560  
Nullspace, 428  
nullspace, 427  
NUM, 633  
numer, 127, 317  
  
octahedron, 811  
odd, 114  
odeplot, 542  
  
odesolve, 613, 614  
of, 379  
op, 181, 346, 368  
open\_polygon, 693, 778  
or, 87, 96  
ord, 102  
order\_size, 340, 341  
ordinate, 705, 782  
orthocenter, 672  
orthogonal, 761  
osculating\_circle, 517  
Output, 632  
output, 632  
Ox\_2d\_unit\_vector, 656  
Ox\_3d\_unit\_vector, 748  
Oy\_2d\_unit\_vector, 656  
Oy\_3d\_unit\_vector, 748  
Oz\_3d\_unit\_vector, 748  
  
p1oc2, 150  
p1op2, 150  
pa2b2, 121  
pade, 344  
parabola, 702, 781  
parallel, 678, 758  
parallelepiped, 806  
parallelogram, 689, 775  
parameq, 708, 784  
paramplot, 538, 539, 802  
parfrac, 234  
pari, 132  
part, 173  
partfrac, 319  
partfrac, 234  
parzen\_window, 268  
Pause, 650  
pcar, 459  
pcar\_hessenberg, 459  
pcoef, 287  
pcoeff, 287  
perimeter, 715  
perimeterat, 709  
perimeteratraw, 709  
perm, 124  
perminv, 151  
permu2cycles, 147  
permu2mat, 149, 470  
permuorder, 152

perpen\_bisector, 680, 764  
 perpendicular, 678, 760  
 peval, 280  
 phi, 121  
 pi, 95  
 PIC, 633  
 piecewise, 92  
 piecewise defined functions, 91  
 plane, 763  
 playsnd, 253, 816  
 plot, 528  
 plot3d, 529  
 plotarea, 534, 713  
 plotcontour, 535  
 plottdensity, 536  
 plotfield, 541  
 plotfunc, 194, 525  
 plotimplicit, 536  
 plotinequation, 532  
 plotlist, 561  
 plotode, 542  
 plotparam, 538, 539  
 plotpolar, 540  
 plotseq, 176, 541  
 plotspectrum, 256  
 plotwav, 255  
 plus\_point, 523  
 pmin, 156, 460  
 point, 668, 749  
 point2d, 670  
 point3d, 750  
*point\_milieu*, 534  
 point\_point, 523  
 point\_polar, 670  
 point\_width\_1, 523  
 point\_width\_2, 523  
 point\_width\_3, 523  
 point\_width\_4, 523  
 point\_width\_5, 523  
 point\_width\_6, 523  
 point\_width\_7, 523  
 poisson, 581  
 poisson\_cdf, 581  
 poisson\_icdf, 581  
 poisson\_window, 268  
 polar, 739  
 polar\_coordinates, 707  
 polar\_point, 670  
 polarplot, 540  
 pole, 739  
 poly1, 274  
 poly2symb, 275  
 polyEval, 280  
 polygon, 692, 778  
 polygonplot, 561  
 polyhedron, 807  
*polynom*, 234, 287  
 polynomial\_regression, 566  
 polynomial\_regression\_plot, 566  
 poslbdLMQ, 323  
 posubLMQ, 323  
 potential, 482  
 pow2exp, 274  
 power\_regression, 565  
 power\_regression\_plot, 565  
 powermod, 330  
 powerpc, 699  
 powexpand, 273  
 powmod, 330  
 prepend, 371  
 preval, 172  
 prevperm, 147  
 prevprime, 117  
 primpart, 281  
 print, 634  
 printpow, 635  
 prism, 807  
 product, 377, 402, 403  
 program, 631  
 projection, 725, 799  
 proot, 622  
 propFrac, 127  
 propfrac, 127, 319  
 Psi, 144  
 psrgcd, 299  
 ptayl, 285  
 purge, 87, 89, 238, 630  
 pwd, 92  
 pyramid, 805  
 q2a, 474  
 QR, 469  
 qr, 468  
 quadric, 478  
 quadrilateral, 690, 775  
 quadrant1, 523

quadrant2, 523  
quadrant3, 523  
quadrant4, 523  
quantile, 389, 419, 553  
quartile1, 552  
quartile3, 552  
quartiles, 389, 419, 552  
quest, 81  
Quo, 295, 336  
quo, 295, 328  
quorem, 297, 329  
quote, 100, 158  
  
r2e, 275  
radical\_axis, 699  
radius, 716  
rand, 124, 567  
randbinomial, 569  
randexp, 571  
randmarkov, 601  
randMat, 393, 571  
randmatrix, 393, 571  
randmultinomial, 570  
randNorm, 570  
randnorm, 570  
random, 567  
random\_variable, 572  
randperm, 147  
randpoisson, 570  
randPoly, 288  
randpoly, 288  
RandSeed, 569  
randseed, 569  
randvar, 572  
randvector, 384  
range, 382  
rank, 426  
ranm, 289, 393, 571  
rat\_jordan, 454  
rational, 633  
*rational\_det*, 424  
rationalroot, 324  
ratnormal, 167  
rdiv, 136  
re, 153  
read, 93  
readrgb, 817  
readwav, 253, 815  
  
real, 153, 633  
realroot, 321  
reciprocation, 740  
rect, 257  
rectangle, 687, 773  
*rectangle\_droit*, 534  
*rectangle\_gauche*, 534  
rectangular\_coordinates, 707  
red, 523  
REDIM, 412  
redim, 412  
reduced\_conic, 477  
reduced\_quadric, 478  
ref, 488  
reflection, 718, 796  
regroup, 164  
Rem, 297, 336  
rem, 296, 329  
remain, 113  
remove, 373  
reorder, 288  
repeat, 642  
repeater, 642  
REPLACE, 412  
replace, 412  
resample, 254  
residue, 344  
resoudre, 162, 480, 532  
restart, 89  
resultant, 307  
return, 629  
reverse\_rsolve, 495  
revert, 343  
revlist, 366  
rhombus, 686, 771  
*rhombus\_point*, 523  
rhs, 484  
riemann\_window, 268  
right, 101, 346, 349, 366, 484  
right\_triangle, 683, 768  
risch, 201  
rm\_a\_z, 89  
rm\_all\_vars, 89  
rmbreakpoint, 652  
rmbrk, 652  
rmwatch, 653  
rmwtch, 652  
romberg, 612

root, 136  
 rootof, 285  
 roots, 286  
 rotate, 366  
 rotation, 720, 797  
 round, 183  
 row, 409  
 rowAdd, 413  
 rowDim, 421  
 rowdim, 421  
 rowNorm, 450  
 rownorm, 450  
 rowspace, 429  
 rowSwap, 414  
 rowswap, 414  
 Rref, 339  
 rref, 333, 489  
 rsolve, 175  
 samplerate, 253  
 scalar\_product, 388  
 scalarProduct, 388  
 SCALE, 413  
 scale, 413  
 SCALEADD, 414  
 scaleadd, 414  
 scatterplot, 560  
 sec, 225  
 secant\_solversecant\_solver, 619  
 segment, 676, 677, 756  
 select, 373  
 semi\_augment, 416  
 seq, 354  
 seq[], 353  
 seqplot, 541  
 seqsolve, 174  
 series, 341  
 set[], 358  
 SetFold, 93  
 shift, 367  
 shift\_phase, 226  
 shuffle, 147  
 Si, 139  
 sign, 183  
 signature, 151  
 similarity, 722, 798  
 simp2, 128, 318  
 simplex\_reduce, 429  
 simplify, 165, 227  
 simult, 490  
 sin, 184, 225  
 sin, 224, 234  
 sin2costan, 230  
 sinc, 258  
 sincos, 229  
 sincos, 234  
 single\_inter, 671, 750  
 sinh, 184  
 size, 100, 369  
 sizes, 369  
 slope, 716  
 slopeat, 709  
 slopeatraw, 709  
 smith, 464  
 smod, 113  
 snedecor, 586  
 snedecor\_cdf, 586  
 snedecor\_icdf, 587  
 snedecord, 586  
 solid\_line, 523  
 solve, 162, 480, 485, 532  
 sommet, 181, 346  
 sort, 371  
 SortA, 372  
 SortD, 372  
 soundsec, 816  
 specnorm, 451  
 sphere, 801  
 spline, 291  
 split, 160  
 spreadsheet, 82  
 sq, 184  
 sqrfree, 283  
 sqrt, 184  
 square, 686, 771  
 square\_point, 523  
 srand, 569  
 sst, 652  
 sst\_in, 652  
 star\_point, 523  
 stdDev, 551  
 stddev, 389, 419  
 stddevp, 389, 551  
 stdev, 550  
 steffenson\_solver, 619  
 step, 641

stereo2mono, 253  
sto, 83  
Store, 83  
STR, 633  
string, 633, 648  
*string*, 234  
student, 583  
student\_cdf, 584  
student\_icdf, 584  
studentd, 583  
studentt, 603  
sturm, 304  
sturmab, 304  
sturmseq, 305  
subexpression, 79  
subexpressions, 79, 80  
subMat, 411  
subs, 169  
subsop, 367, 407  
subst, 168  
subtype, 633  
sum, 202, 376, 402  
sum\_riemann, 204  
supposons, 87  
suppress, 365  
surd, 184  
svd, 472  
SVL, 472  
svl, 472  
swapcol, 414  
swaprow, 414  
switch, 640  
switch\_axes, 656  
sylvester, 306  
symb2poly, 276  
*symbol*, 630  
symmetry, 796  
syst2mat, 488  
  
table, 392  
tablefunc, 173, 194  
tableseq, 176  
tabvar, 190  
tail, 101, 365  
tan, 184, 225  
*tan*, 234  
tan2cossin2, 231  
tan2sincos, 230  
  
tan2sincos2, 231  
tangent, 531, 679, 764  
tanh, 184  
taylor, 340  
tchebyshev1, 312  
tchebyshev2, 313  
tcoeff, 279  
tCollect, 227  
tcollect, 227  
tetrahedron, 805  
tExpand, 222  
texpand, 222  
textinput, 632  
then, 639  
*thickness*, 659  
thiele, 293  
threshold, 262  
throw, 650  
*title*, 524  
tlin, 225  
to, 641  
tpsolve, 441  
trace, 424, 745  
tran, 424  
translation, 718, 796  
transpose, 424  
*trapeze*, 534  
tri, 257  
triangle, 682, 766  
triangle\_paper, 658  
triangle\_point, 523  
triangle\_window, 269  
*trig*, 224  
trig2exp, 232  
trigcos, 233  
trigexpand, 225  
trigsimplify, 228  
trgsin, 233  
trigtan, 233  
trn, 426  
TRUE, 95  
true, 95  
trunc, 184  
truncate, 287  
try, 650  
tsimplify, 274  
*tstep*, 659  
tukey\_window, 269

tuple, 360  
type, 633  
ufactor, 626  
ugamma, 143  
unapply, 179  
unarchive, 86  
unfactored, 536  
uniform, 591  
uniform\_cdf, 591  
uniform\_icdf, 592  
uniformd, 591  
uniformd\_cdf, 591  
uniformd\_icdf, 592  
union, 351, 359  
unitV, 154, 386  
unquote, 159  
Unquoted, 646  
until, 642  
user\_operator, 178  
usimplify, 626  
ustep, 659  
UTPC, 586  
UTPF, 587  
UTPN, 583  
UTPT, 584  
valuation, 278  
vandermonde, 395  
VAR, 633  
variable, 83  
variance, 389, 419, 550  
VARS, 89, 93  
VAS, 322  
VAS\_positive, 322  
vector, 633, 677, 756  
vectors, 361  
version, 50  
vertices, 673, 808  
vertices\_abc, 673  
vertices\_abca, 674  
vpotential, 483  
vstep, 659  
WAIT, 650  
watch, 652  
weibull, 593  
weibull\_cdf, 593  
weibull\_icdf, 594  
weibulld, 593  
weibulld\_cdf, 593  
weibulld\_icdf, 594  
welch\_window, 269  
when, 92  
while, 642  
white, 523  
widget\_size, 69  
wilcoxonp, 594  
wilcoxons, 595  
wilcoxont, 595  
write, 645  
writergb, 818  
writewav, 253, 816  
wz\_certificate, 125  
xcas\_mode, 62, 69  
xml\_print, 74  
xor, 96  
xstep, 659  
xstep, 525  
xyzrange, 69  
yellow, 523  
ystep, 659  
ystep, 525  
zeros, 163  
zeta, 145  
zip, 380  
zstep, 659  
zstep, 525  
ztrans, 510

# Chapter 2

## Introduction

### 2.1 Notations used in this manual

In this manual, the information that you enter will be typeset in typewriter font. User input typically takes one of three forms:

- Commands that you enter on the command line.  
For example, to compute the sin of  $\pi/4$ , you can type

`sin(pi/4)`

- Commands requiring a prefix key.  
These will be indicated by separating the prefix key and the standard key with a plus +. For example, to exit an Xcas session, you can type the control key along with the q key, which will be denoted

`Ctrl+Q`

- Menu commands.  
When denoting menu items, submenus will be connected using ►. For example, from within Xcas you can choose the File menu, then choose the Open submenu, and then choose the File item. This will be indicated by

`File ► Open ► File`

The index will use different typefaces for different parts of the language. The commands themselves will be written with normal characters, command options will be written in italics and values of commands or options will be written in typewriter font. For example (as you will see later), you can draw a blue parabola with the command

`plotfunc(x^2,color = blue)`

In the index, you will see

- `plotfunc`, the command, written in normal text.
- `color`, the command option, written in italics.
- `blue`, the value given to the option, written in typewriter font.

## 2.2 Interfaces for the `giac` library

The `giac` library is a C++ mathematics library. It comes with two interfaces for users to use it directly; a graphical interface and a command-line interface.

The graphical interface is called `Xcas`, and is the most full-featured interface. As well being able to do symbolic and numeric calculations, it has its own programming language, it can draw graphs, it has a built-in spreadsheet, it can do dynamic geometry and turtle graphics.

The command-line interface can be run inside a terminal. It can also do symbolic and numeric calculations and works with the programming language. In a graphical environment, the command-line interface can also be used to draw graphs.

There is also a web version, which can be run through a browser, either over the internet or from local files. Other programs (for example, `TeXmacs`) have interfaces for the command-line version.

### 2.2.1 The `Xcas` interface

How you run `Xcas` in a graphical environment depends on which operating system you are using.

- If you are using Unix, you can usually find an entry for the program in a menu provided by the environment. Otherwise, you can start it from a terminal by typing

```
xcas &
```

If for some reason `Xcas` becomes unresponsive, you can open a terminal and type

```
killall xcas
```

That will kill any running `Xcas` processes. When you restart `Xcas`, you will be asked if you want to resume where you left off using an automatic backup file.

- If you are running Windows, you can use the explorer to go to the directory where `Xcas` is installed. In that directory will be a file called `xcas.bat`. Clicking on that file will start `Xcas`.
- If you are running Mac OS, you can use the Finder to go to the `xcas_image.dmg` file and double-click it. Then double-click the `Xcas` disk icon. Finally, to launch `Xcas`, double-click the `Xcas` program.

When you start `Xcas`, a window will pop up with menu entries across the top, a bar indicating information about the current `Xcas` configuration, and an entry line you can use to enter commands. This interface will be described in more detail later, and you can get help from within `Xcas` with the menu item

Help▶Interface

### 2.2.2 The command-line interface

In Unix and MacOS you can run `giac` from a terminal with the command `icas` (the command `giac` also works). There are two ways to use the command-line interface.

If you just want to evaluate one expression, you can give `icas` the expression (in quotes) as a command line argument. For example, to factor the polynomial  $x^2 - 1$ , you can type

```
icas 'factor(x^2-1)'
```

at a command prompt. The result will be

```
(x-1) * (x+1)
```

and you will be returned to the operating system command line.

If you want to evaluate several commands, you can enter an interactive `giac` session by entering the command `icas` (or `giac`) by itself at a command prompt. You will then be given a prompt specifically for `giac` commands, which will look like

```
0>>
```

You can enter a `giac` command at this prompt and get the result.

```
0>> factor(x^2-1)
(x-1) * (x+1)
1>>
```

After the result, you will be given another prompt for `giac` commands. You can exit this interactive session by typing `Ctrl+D`.

You can also run `icas` in batch mode; that is, you can have `icas` run `giac` commands stored in a file. This can be done in Windows as well as Unix and Mac OS. To do this, simply enter

```
icas filename
```

at a command prompt, where *filename* is the name of the file containing the `giac` commands.

### 2.2.3 The Firefox interface

You can run `giac` without installing it by using a javascript-enabled web browser. Using Firefox for this is highly recommended; Firefox will run `giac` several times faster than Chrome, for example, and Firefox also supports MathML natively.

To run `giac` through Firefox, you can open the url <https://www-fourier.ujf-grenoble.fr/~parisse/giac/xcasen.html>. At the top of this page is a button which will open a quick tutorial; the tutorial will also tell you how to install the necessary files to run `giac` through Firefox without being connected to the internet.

### 2.2.4 The TeXmacs interface

TeXmacs (<http://www.texmacs.org>) is a sophisticated word processor with special mathematical features. As well as being designed to nicely typeset mathematics, it can be used as a frontend for various mathematics programs, such as giac.

Once you've started TeXmacs, you can interactively run `giac` within TeXmacs with the menu command `Insert▶Session▶Giac`. Once started, you can enter `giac` commands as you would in the command-line interface. The TeXmacs interface will also have a menu specifically for `giac` commands.

Within TeXmacs, you can combine `giac` commands and output with ordinary text. To enter normal text within a `giac` session, use the menu item `Focus▶Insert Text Field Above`. You can reenter a `giac` entry line by clicking on it with a mouse.

### 2.2.5 Checking the version of `giac` that you are using: `version`, `giac`

The `version` (or `giac`) command returns the version of `giac` that is running.  
Input:

```
version()
```

Output:

```
"giac 1.5.0, (c) B. Parisse and R. De Graeve, Institut Fourier, Universite de Grenoble I"
```

# Chapter 3

## The Xcas interface

### 3.1 The entry levels

The Xcas interface can run several independent calculation sessions, each session will be contained in a separate tab. Before you understand the Xcas interface, it would help to be familiar with the components of a session.

Each session can have any number of input levels. Each input level will have a number to the left of it; the number is used to identify the input level. Each level can have one of the following:

- A command line.

This is the default; you can open a new command line with Alt+N.

You can enter a giac command (or a series of commands separated by semicolons) on a command line and send it to be evaluated by hitting enter. You can also scroll through the command history with Shift+Up and Shift+Down.

If the output is a number or an expression, then it will appear in blue text in a small area below the input region; this area is an expression editor. There will be a scrollbar and a small M to the right of this area; the M is a menu which gives you various options.

If the output is a graphic, then it will appear in a graphing area below the input region. To the right of the graphic will be a control panel allowing you to manipulate the graphic.

- An expression editor.

You can open an expression editor with Alt+E.

- A two-dimensional geometry screen.

You can open up such a screen with Alt+G. This level will have a screen, as well as a control panel, menus and a command line to control the screen.

- A three-dimensional geometry screen.

You can open up such a screen with Alt+H. This level will have a screen, as well as a control panel, menus and a command line to control the screen.

- A turtle graphics screen.

You can open up such a screen with Alt+D. This level will have a screen, as well as a program editor and command line.

- A spreadsheet.

You can open up a spreadsheet with Alt+T. A spreadsheet will be able to open a graphic screen.

- A program editor.

You can open up a program editor with Alt+P.

- A comment line. You can open up a comment line with Alt+C.

Using commands discussed later, different types of levels can be combined to form a single hybrid level. Levels can also be moved up or down in a session, or even moved to a different session.

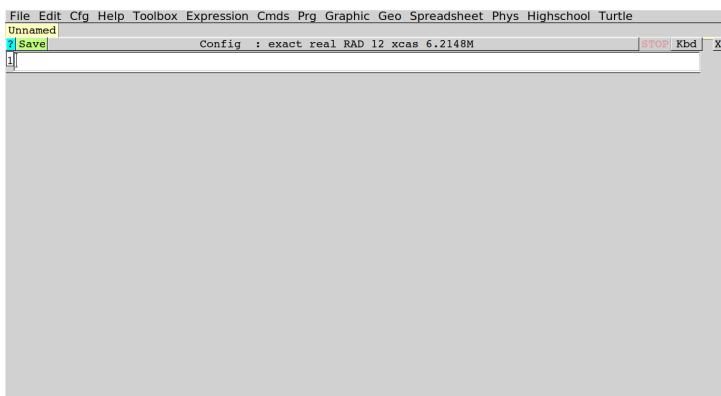
The level containing the cursor is the *current level*. The current level can be evaluated or re-evaluated by typing enter.

A level can be selected (for later operations) by clicking on the number in the white box to the left of the level. Once selected, the box containing the number will turn black. You can select a range of levels by clicking on the number for the beginning level, and then holding the shift key while you click on the number for the ending level.

You can copy the instructions in a range of levels by selecting the range, and then clicking the middle mouse button on the number of the target level.

## 3.2 The starting window

When you first start Xcas, you will be given a largely blank window.



The first row will be the main menus; you can save and load Xcas sessions, configure Xcas and its interface and run various commands with entries from these menus.

The second row will be tabs; one tab for each session that you are running in Xcas. The tabs will contain the name of the sessions, or Unnamed if a session has no name. The first time you start Xcas, there will be only one unnamed session.

The third row will contain various buttons.

- The first button, , will open the help index. (The same as the Help▶Index menu entry.) If there is a command on the command line, the help index (see help index ,p.55) will open at this command.

- The second button **Save**, will save the session in a file. The first time you click on it, you will be prompted for a file name ending in `.xws` to save the session in. The button will be pink if the session is not saved or if it has changed since the last change, it will be green once the session is saved. The name in the title will be the name of the file used to save the session.

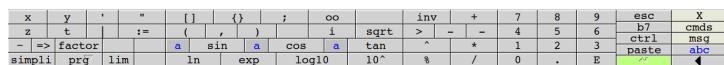
- The third button, which in the picture above is

`Config : exact real RAD 12 xcas 6.2148M`, is a status line indicating the current Xcas configuration. (See section 3.5.) If the session is unsaved, it will begin with `Config :`; if the session is saved in a file `filename.xws`, this button will begin with `Config filename.xws :`. Other information on this status line:

- `exact` or `approx`. (See subsection 3.5.4.) This tells you whether Xcas will give you exact values, such as  $\sqrt{2}$ , when possible or to give you decimal approximations.
- `real`, `cplx` or `CPLX`. (See subsections 3.5.5 and 3.5.6.) When this shows `real`, then (for example) Xcas will by default only find real solutions of equations. When this shows `cplx`, the Xcas will find complex solutions of equations. When this shows `CPLX`, then Xcas will regard variables as complex; for example, it won't simplify `re(z)` (the real part of the variable `z`) to `z`.
- `RAD` or `DEG`. (See subsection 3.5.3.) This tells you whether angles, as in trigonometric arguments, are measured in radians or degrees.
- An integer. (See subsection 3.5.1, indicating how many significant digits will be used in floating point calculations.
- `xcas`, `maple`, `mupad` or `ti89`. (See subsection 3.5.2.) This tells you what syntax Xcas will use. Xcas can be set to emulate the languages of Maple, MuPAD or the TI89 series of calculators.
- The last item indicates how much memory Xcas is using.

Clicking on this status line button will open a window where you can configure the settings shown on this line as well as some other settings; you can do the same with the menu item `Cfg▶CAS Configuration`. (See subsection 3.5.7.)

- The fourth button, **STOP** (in red), can be used to halt a computation which is running on too long.
- The fifth button, **Kbd**, can be used to toggle an on-screen scientific keyboard at the bottom of the window.



Along the right hand side of the keyboard are some keys that can be used to change the keyboard.

- The **X** key will hide the keyboard, just like pressing the **Kbd** button again.

- The `cmds` key will toggle a menu bar at the bottom of the screen which can be used as an alternate menu or persistent submenu. This bar will contain buttons, `home`, `<<`, some menu titles, `>>`, `var`, `cust` and `X`. The `<<` and `>>` buttons will scroll through menu items. Clicking on one of the menu buttons will perform the appropriate action or replace the menu items by submenu items. When submenu items appear, there will also be a `BACK` button to return to the previous menu. Clicking on the `home` button returns the menu buttons to the main menu.  
After the menu buttons is a `var` button. This will replace the menu buttons by buttons representing the variables that you have defined. After that is a `cust` button, which will display commands that you store in a list variable `CST` (see section ??).  
The last button, `X`, will close the menu bar.
- The `msg` key will bring up a message window at the bottom of the window which will give you helpful messages; for example, if you save a graphic, it will tell you the name of the file it is saved in and how to include it in a `LATEX` file.
- The `abc` key will toggle the keyboard between the scientific keyboard and an alphabetic keyboard.
- The fifth button, `[X]`, will close the current session.

### 3.3 Getting help

Xcas is an extensive program, but you can get help in several different ways. The help menu (see section 3.4.4) has several submenus for various forms of help, some of which are mentioned below.

#### Toolips

If you hover the mouse cursor over certain parts of the Xcas window, a temporary window will appear with information about the part. For example, if you move the mouse cursor over the status line, you will get a message saying `Current CAS status. Click to modify.`

If you type a function name into the Xcas command line, a similar temporary window will appear with information about the function.

#### HTML help

If you hit the `F12` button, you will be given a window in which you can use to search the html version of the manual. If you type a string in the search area, you will be given a list of help topics that contain the string. If you choose a topic and click `View`, your web browser will show the appropriate page of the manual.

You can also get HTML help with the menu entry `Help▶Find word in HTML help`.

### The help index

If you click on the **[?]** button on the status line you will get the help index.

The help index is a list of the `giac` function and variable names. Along with the list, the help index window has an area listing words related to any chosen word and words synonymous to the chosen word.

You can scroll through the help index items and click on the word that you want. There is also a line in the help index window that you can use to search the index; you can enter some text and be taken to the part of the index with words beginning with that text. The **?** button next to this search line will open the HTML help window.

Below the search line, there is an area which will have a description of the chosen command, and below that is an area which will have examples of the command being used. If the command is a function, then between the description and examples will be some boxes in which you can enter arguments for the command. Filling in these boxes and hitting enter will put the function on the command line.

At the top of the help index window is a **Details** button. If you click on that, a web page will open up in your browser with the relevant portion of the manual. If you click on the **[?]** next to the search line, you will be taken to the HTML help window.

Besides clicking on the **[?]** on the status line, there are other ways to get to the help index.

- You can get to the help index by using the menu item **Help▶Index**.
- You can press the tab button while at the `Xcas` command line to get to the help index. If you have entered part of a command name, you will be at the part of the index with words beginning with the text that you entered.
- If you select a command from the menu, then as well as putting the command on the command line, you will be taken to the help index window with the command chosen.

### **findhelp**

You can get help from `Xcas` by using the `findhelp` function. If you enter `findhelp(function)` (or equivalently `?function`) at the command input, where `function` is the name of a `giac` function, then some notes on `function` will appear in the answer portion and the appropriate page of the manual will appear in your web browser.

## 3.4 The menus

### 3.4.1 The **File** menu

The **File** menu contains commands that are used to save sessions and parts of sessions and load previously saved sessions. This menu contains the following entries:

- **New Session**

This will create and open a new session. This session will be in a new tab labeled Unnamed until you save it (using the menu item **File▶Save** or the keystroke **Alt+S**).

- **Open**

This will open a previously saved session. There will be a submenu with a list of saved session files in the primary directory that you can open, as well as a **File** item which will open a directory browser you can use to find a session file. This directory browser can also be opened with **Alt-O**.

- **Import**

This will allow you to open a session that was created with the Maple CAS, a TI89 calculator or a Voyage200 calculator. These sessions can then be executed with the **Edit▶Execute Session** menu entry, but it may be better to execute the commands one at a time to see if any modifications need to be done.

- **Clone**

This will create a copy of the current session in a Firefox interface; either using the server at <http://www-fourier.ujf-grenoble.fr/~parisse/xcasen.html> (Online) or a local copy (Offline).

- **Insert**

This allows you to insert a previously saved session, a link to a Firefox session, or a previously saved figure, spreadsheet or program.

- **Save (Alt+S)**

This will save the current session.

- **Save as**

This will save the current session under a different name.

- **Save all**

This will save all of the sessions.

- **Export as**

This will allow you to save the current session in different formats; either standard Xcas format, Maple format, MuPAD format or TI89 format.

- **Kill**

This will kill the current session.

- **Print**

This will allow you to save the session in various ways. **preview** will save an image of the current session in a file that you name. **print** will send an image of the current session to the printer. **preview selected levels** will save the images of the commands and outputs of the current session, each in a separate file.

- **LaTeX**

This will render the session in **L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X** and give you the result in various ways.

`latex preview` will display a compiled L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X version of the current session. `latex print` will send a copy of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>Xed session to a printer. `latex print selection` will save a copy.

- Screen capture  
This will create a screenshot that will be saved in various formats.
- Quit and update Xcas  
This will quit Xcas after checking for a newer version.
- Quit (Ctrl+Q)  
This will quit Xcas.

### 3.4.2 The Edit menu

The Edit menu contains commands that are used to execute and undo parts of the current session. This menu contains the following entries:

- Execute worksheet (Ctrl-F9)  
This will recalculate each level in the session.
- Execute worksheet with pauses  
This will recalculate each level in the session, pausing between calculations.
- Execute below  
This will recalculate the current level and each level below it.
- Remove answers below  
This will remove the answers to the current level and the levels below it.
- Undo (Ctrl+Z)  
This will undo the latest edit done to the levels, including the deletion of levels. It can be repeated to undo more than one edit.
- Redo (Ctrl+Y)  
This will redo the undone editing.
- Paste  
This will paste the contents of the system clipboard to the cursor position.
- Del selected levels  
This will delete any entry levels that you have selected.
- selection -> LaTeX (Ctrl+T)  
If you select a level, part of a level, or answer with the mouse (click and drag), this menu item will put a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X version of the selection on the system clipboard.
- New entry (Alt+N)  
This will insert a new entry level above the current one.
- New parameter (Ctrl+P)  
This will bring up a window in which you can enter a name and conditions for a new parameter.

- Insert newline. This will insert a newline below the cursor. Note that simply typing return will cause the current entry to be evaluated rather than inserting a newline.
- Merge selected levels. This will merge the selected levels into a single level.

### 3.4.3 The Cfg menu

The Cfg menu contains commands that are used to set the behaviour of Xcas. This menu contains the following entries:

- Cas configuration

This will open a window that you can use to configure how Xcas performs calculations. This is the same window you get when you click on the status line.

- Graph configuration

This will open a window that you can use to configure the default settings for a graph. This includes such things as the initial ranges of the variables. Each graph will also have a cfg button to configure the settings on a per graph basis.

- General configuration

This will open a window that you can use to configure various non-computational aspects of Xcas, such as the fonts, the default paper size, and the like.

- Mode (syntax)

This will allow you to change the default syntax. To begin with, it is Xcas syntax, but you can change it to Maple syntax, MuPAD syntax or TI89 syntax.

- Show

This will allow you to control parts of Xcas to show.

- DispG

This will show the graphics display screen. This screen will show all graphical commands from the session together.

- keyboard

This will show the on-screen keyboard; the same as clicking on the Kbd button on the status line.

- bandeau

This will show the menu buttons at the bottom of the window; the same as clicking on cmds on the on-screen keyboard.

- msg

This will show the messages window; the same as clicking on msg on the on-screen keyboard.

- Hide

This will hide the same items that you can show with Show.

- Index language  
This will let you choose a language in which to display the help index.
- Colors  
This will let you choose colors for various parts of the display.
- Session font  
This will let you choose a font for the sessions.
- All fonts  
This will let you choose a font for the session, the main menu and the keyboard.
- browser  
This will let you choose a browser that Xcas will use when needed. If this is blank, then Xcas will use its own internal browser.
- Save configuration  
This will save the configurations that you chose with the Cfg menu or by clicking on the status line.

#### 3.4.4 The Help menu

The Help menu contains commands that let you get information about Xcas from various sources. This menu contains the following entries:

- Index  
This will bring up the help index. (See help index , p.55)
- Find word in HTML help (F12)  
This will bring up a page which will help you search for keywords in the html documentation that came with Xcas. The help will be displayed in your browser.
- Interface  
This will bring up a tutorial for the Xcas interface. The tutorial will be displayed in your browser.
- Reference card, fiches  
This will bring up (in your browser) a pdf reference card for Xcas.
- Manuals  
This will let you choose from a variety of manuals for XCAS. They will appear in your browser unless otherwise noted.
  - CAS reference  
This will bring up a manual for Xcas.
  - Algorithmes (HTML)  
This will bring up a manual for the algorithms used by Xcas.
  - Algorithmes (PDF)  
This will bring up a pdf version of the manual for the algorithms used by Xcas.

- Geometry  
This will bring up a manual for two-dimensional geometry in Xcas.
  - Programmation  
This will bring up a manual for programming in Xcas.
  - Simulation  
This will bring up a manual for statistics and using the Xcas spreadsheet.
  - Turtle  
This will bring up a manual for using the Turtle drawing screen in Xcas.
  - Exercices  
This will bring up a page of exercises that you can do with Xcas.
  - Amusement  
This will bring up a page of mathematical amusements that you can work through with Xcas.
  - PARI-GP  
This will bring up documentation for the GP/PARI functions.
- Internet  
The Internet menu contains commands that take you to various web pages related to Xcas. Among them are the following entries:
    - Forum  
This will take you to the Xcas forum.
    - Update help  
This will install updated help files (retrieved from the Xcas website).
  - Start with CAS  
This menu has the following entries.
    - Tutorial  
This opens up the tutorial.
    - solutions  
This opens up the solutions to the exercises in the tutorial.
  - Tutoriel algo  
This opens up a tutorial on algorithms and programming with Xcas.
  - Rebuild help cache  
This will rebuild the help index.
  - About  
This will display a message window with information about Xcas.
  - Examples  
This will allow you to choose from a variety of example worksheets, which will then be copied to your current directory and opened.

### 3.4.5 The Toolbox menu

The Toolbox menu contains commands that are used to insert operators into the session. This menu includes the following entries:

- New entry (Alt+N)  
This will insert a new level after the current one.
- New comment (Alt+C)  
This will insert a new comment level after the current level.

The other entries allow you to insert mathematical operations into the current level. When you do that, you will also be taken to the help index (See help index , p.55) with help on the chosen command.

### 3.4.6 The Expression menu

The Expression menu contains commands that are used to transform expressions. The first entry is New expression (which is equivalent to Alt+E), which will insert a new level above the current level and bring up the on-screen keyboard. The rest of the entries can be used to insert a transformation.

### 3.4.7 The Cmds menu

The Cmds menu contains various giac functions and constants.

### 3.4.8 The Prg menu

The Prg menu contains commands that are used to write giac programs. The first entry, Prg►New program (equivalent to Alt+P) , will insert a program level and bring up the program editor. The other entries are useful commands for writing giac programs.

### 3.4.9 The Graphic menu

The Graphic menu contains commands that are used to create graphs. The first entry, Graphic►Attributs (equivalent to Alt+K) , will bring up a window contains different attributes of the graph (such as line width, color, etc.) The other entries are commands for creating and manipulating graphs.

### 3.4.10 The Geo menu

The Geo menu contains commands that are used to work with two- and three-dimensional geometric figures. The first two entries, Geo►New figure 2d (equivalent to Alt+G) and Geo►New figure 3d (equivalent to Alt+H) will create a level for creating two- and three-dimensional figures, respectively. The other menu items are for working with the figures.

### 3.4.11 The Spreadsheet menu

The Spreadsheet menu contains commands that are used to work with spreadsheets. The first menu item, **Spreadsheet▶New spreadsheet** (equivalent to **Alt+T**), will bring up a window where you can set the size and other attributes of a spreadsheet and then one will be created. The submenus contain commands for working with spreadsheets. Notice that the spreadsheet itself will have menus that are the same as these submenus.

### 3.4.12 The Phys menu

The **Phys** menu contains submenus with various categories of constants, as well as functions for converting units.

### 3.4.13 The Highschool menu

The **Highschool** menu contains computer algebra commands that are useful at different levels of highschool. There is also a **Program** submenu with some program control functions.

### 3.4.14 The Turtle menu

The **Turtle** menu contains the commands that are used to in a Turtle screen. The first menu item, **Turtle▶New turtle**, will create a Turtle drawing screen, the other menu items contain commands for working with the screen.

## 3.5 Configuring Xcas

### 3.5.1 The number of significant digits: **Digits DIGITS**

By default Xcas uses and displays 12 significant digits, but you can set the number of digits to other positive integers. If you set the number of significant digits to a number less than 14, then Xcas will use the computer's floating point hardware, and so calculations will be done to more significant digits than you asked for, but only the number of digits that you asked for will be displayed. If you set the number of significant digits to 14 or higher, then both the computations and the display will use that number of digits.

You can set the number of significant digits for Xcas by using the CAS configuration screen (see subsection 3.5.7). The number of significant digits is stored in the variable **DIGITS** or **Digits**, so you can also set it by giving the variable **DIGITS** a new value, as in **DIGITS:= 20**. The value will be stored in the configuration file (see subsection 3.5.10), and so can also be set there.

### 3.5.2 The language mode: **xcas\_mode**

Xcas has its own language which it uses by default, but you can have it use the language used by Maple, MuPAD or the TI89 calculator.

You can set which language Xcas uses in the CAS configuration screen (see subsection 3.5.7). You can also use the function **xcas\_mode**. If you give it an

argument of 0, `xcas_mode(0)`, then Xcas will use its own language. If you give it an argument of 1, `xcas_mode(1)`, then Xcas will use the Maple language. If you give it an argument of 2, `xcas_mode(2)`, then Xcas will use the MuPAD language. Finally, if you give it an argument of 3, `xcas_mode(3)`, then Xcas will use the TI89 language.

The language you want to use will be stored in the configuration file (see subsection 3.5.10), and so can also be set there.

### 3.5.3 The units for angles: `angle_radian`

By default, Xcas will assume that any angles you give (for example, as the argument to a trigonometric function) is being measured in radians. If you want, you can have Xcas use degrees.

You can set which angle measure Xcas uses in the CAS configuration screen (see subsection 3.5.7). Your choice will be stored in the variable `angle_radian`; this will be 1 if you measure your angles in radians and 0 if you measure your angles in degrees. You can also change which angle measure you use by setting the variable `angle_radian` to the appropriate value. The angle measure you want to use will be stored in the configuration file (see subsection 3.5.10), and so can also be set there.

### 3.5.4 Exact or approximate values: `approx_mode`

Some number, such as  $\pi$  and  $\sqrt{2}$ , can't be written down exactly as a decimal number. When computing with such numbers, Xcas will leave them in exact, symbolic form. If you want, you can have Xcas automatically give you decimal approximations for these numbers.

You can set whether or not Xcas will give you exact or approximate values from the CAS configuration screen. Your choice will be stored in the variable `approx_mode`, where a value of 0 means that Xcas should give you exact answers when possible and a value of 1 means that Xcas should give you decimal approximations. Your choice will be stored in the configuration file (see subsection 3.5.10), and so can also be set there.

### 3.5.5 Complex numbers: `complex_mode`

When factoring polynomials, Xcas won't introduce complex numbers if they aren't already being used. For example,

```
factor(x^2 + 2)
```

will simply return

```
x^2 + 2
```

but if an expression already involves complex numbers then Xcas will use them;

```
factor(i*x^2 + 2*i)
```

will return

```
(x - i*sqrt(2))*(i*x - sqrt(2))
```

Xcas also has ways of finding complex roots even when complex numbers are not present; for example, the command `cfactor` will factor over the complex numbers

```
cfactor(x^2 + 2)
```

will return

$$(x - i\sqrt{2}) * (x + i\sqrt{2})$$

If you want Xcas to use complex numbers by default, you can turn on complex mode. In complex mode,

```
factor(x^2 + 2)
```

will return

$$(x - i\sqrt{2}) * (x + i\sqrt{2})$$

You can turn on complex mode from the CAS configuration screen. This mode is determined by the value of `complex_mode`; if this is 1 then complex mode is on, if this variable is 0 then complex mode is off. This option will be stored in the configuration file (see subsection 3.5.10), and so can also be set there.

### 3.5.6 Complex variables: `complex_variables`

New variables will be assumed to be real; functions which work with the real and imaginary parts of variables will assume that a variable is real. For example, `re` returns the real part of its argument and `im` returns the imaginary part, and so

```
re(z)
```

returns

$$\mathbf{z}$$

and

```
im(z)
```

returns

$$\mathbf{0}$$

If you want variables to be complex by default, you can have Xcas use complex variable mode. You can set this from the CAS configuration screen. Your choice will be stored in the variable `complex_variables`, where a value of 0 means that Xcas will assume that variables are real and a value of 1 means that Xcas will assume that values are complex. Your choice will be stored in the configuration file (see subsection 3.5.10), and so can also be set there.

### 3.5.7 Configuring the computations

You can configure how Xcas computes by using the menu item `Cfg▶Cas configuration` or by clicking on the status line. You will then be given a window in which you can change the following options:

- `Prog style` (default: `Xcas`)

You will have a menu from which you can choose a different language to program in; you can choose from `Xcas`, `Xcas (Python)`, `Maple`, `Mupad` and `TI89/92`.

- `eval` (default: 25)

You can type in a positive integer indicating the maximum number of recursions allowed when evaluating expressions.

- `prog` (default: 1)

You can type in a positive integer indicating the maximum number of recursions allowed when executing programs.

- `recurs` (default: 100)

You can type in a positive integer indicating the maximum number of recursive calls.

- `debug` (default: 0)

You can type in an integer, 0 or 1. If this is 1, then `Xcas` will display intermediate information on the algorithms used by `giac`. If this number is 0, then no such information is displayed.

- `maxiter` (default: 20)

You can type in an integer indicating the maximum number of iterations in Newton's method.

- `Float format` (default: `standard`)

You will have a menu from which you can choose how to display decimal numbers. Your choices will be:

- `standard` In standard notation, a number will be written out completely without using exponentials; for example, `15000.12` will be displayed as `15000.12`.

- `scientific` In scientific notation, a number will be written as a number between 1 and 10 times a power of ten; for example, `15000.12` will be displayed as `1.50001200000e+04` (where the number after `e` indicates the power of 10).

- `engineer` In engineer notation, a number will be written as a number between 1 and 1000 times a power of ten, where the power of 10 is a multiple of three. For example, `15000.12` will be displayed as `15.00012e3`.

- `Digits` (default: 12)

You can enter a positive integer which will indicate the number of significant digits.

- **epsilon** (default: 1e-12)

You can enter a floating point number which will be the value of epsilon used by `epsilon2zero`, which is a function which replaces numbers with absolute value less than epsilon by 0.

- **proba** (default: 1e-15)

You can enter a floating point number. If this number is greater than zero, then in some cases `giac` can use probabilistic algorithms and give a result with probability of being false less than this value. (One such example of a probabilistic algorithm that `giac` can use is the algorithm to compute the determinant of a large matrix with integer coefficients.)

- **approx** (default: unchecked)

You will be given a checkbox. If the box is checked, then exact numbers such as  $\sqrt{2}$  will be given a floating point approximation. If the box is unchecked, then exact values will be used when possible.

- **autosimplify** (default: 1)

You can enter a simplification level of 0, 1 or 2. A value of 0 means no automatic simplification will be done, a value of 1 means grouped simplification will be automatic. A value of 2 means that all simplification will be automatic.

- **threads** (default: 1)

You can enter a positive integer to indicate the number of threads (for a possible future threaded version).

- **Integer basis** (default: 10)

You will be given a menu from which you can choose an integer base to work in; your choices will be 8, 10 and 16.

- **radian** (default: checked)

You will be given a checkbox. If the box is checked, then angles will be measured in radians, otherwise they will be measured in degrees.

- **Complex** (default: unchecked)

You will be given a checkbox. If this box is checked, then `giac` will work in complex mode, meaning, for example, that polynomials will be factored with complex numbers if necessary.

- **Cmplx\_var** (default: unchecked)

You will be given a checkbox. If this box is checked, then variables will by default be assumed to be complex. For example, the expression `re(z)` won't be simplified to simply `z`. If this box is unchecked, then `re(z)` will be simplified to `z`.

- **increasing power** (default: unchecked)

You will be given a checkbox. If this box is checked, then polynomials will be written out in increasing powers of the variable; otherwise they will be written in decreasing powers.

- **All\_trig\_sol** (default: unchecked)

You will be given a checkbox. If this box is unchecked, then only the primary solutions of trigonometric equations will be given. For example, the solutions of  $\cos(x)=0$  will be the pair  $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ . If this box is checked, then the solutions of  $\cos(x)=0$  will be  $[(2*n_0*\pi + \pi)/2]$ , where  $n_0$  can be any integer.

- **Sqrt** (default: checked)

You will be given a checkbox. If this box is checked, then the `factor` command will factor second degree polynomials, even when the roots are not in the field determined by the coefficients. For example, `factor(x^2 - 3)` will return  $(x - \sqrt{3}) * (x + \sqrt{3})$ . If this box is unchecked, then `factor(x^2 - 3)` will return  $x^2 - 3$ .

This page will also have buttons for applying the settings, saving the settings for future sessions, canceling any new settings, or restoring the default settings.

### 3.5.8 Configuring the graphics

You can configure each graphics screen by clicking on the `cfg` button on the graphics screen's control panel to the right of the graph. You can also change the default graphical configuration using the the menu item `Cfg▶Graph configuration`. You will then be given a window in which you can change the following options:

- **X- and X+**

These will determine the  $x$  values for which calculations will be done.

- **Y- and Y+**

These will determine the  $y$  values for which calculations will be done.

- **Z- and Z+**

These will determine the  $z$  values for which calculations will be done.

- **t- and t+**

These will determine the  $t$  values for which calculations will be done, when plotting parametric curves, for example.

- **WX- and WX+**

These will determine the range of  $x$  values for the viewing window. done.

- **WY- and WY+**

These will determine the range of  $y$  values for the viewing window.

- **class\_min**

This will determine the minimum size of a statistics class.

- **class\_size**

This will determine the default size of a statistics class.

- **autoscale**

When checked, the the graphic will be autoscaled.

- **ortho**

When checked, all axes of the graphic will be scaled equally.

- **>W and W>**

These are convenient shortcuts to copy the X-, X+, Y- and Y+ values to WX-, WX+, WY- and WY+, or the other way around.

This page will also have buttons for applying the settings, saving the settings for future sessions, or canceling any new settings.

### 3.5.9 More configuration

You can configure other aspects of Xcas (besides the computational aspects and graphics) using the menu item Cfg▶General configuration. You will then be given a window in which you can change the following options:

- **Font**

This lets you choose a session font, the same as choosing the menu item Cfg▶Session font.

- **Level**

This will determine what type of level should be open when you start a new session.

- **browser**

This will determine what browser Xcas should use when it requires one, for example when displaying help. If this is empty, Xcas will use its built-in browser.

- **Auto HTML help**

If this box is checked, then whenever you choose a function from a menu, a help page for that function will appear in your browser. Regardless of whether this box is checked or not, the help page will also appear in your browser if you type `?function` in a command box.

- **Auto index help** If this box is checked, then whenever you choose a function from a menu, the help index page for that function will appear. This is the same page you would get from choosing the function from the help index.

- **Print format**

This will determine the paper size for printing and saving files. There is also a button you can use to have the printing done in landscape mode; if this button is not checked, the printing will be done in portrait.

- **Disable Tool tips**

If this is checked, Xcas will stop displaying tool tips.

- **rows and columns**

These will determine the default number of rows and columns for the matrix editor and spreadsheet.

- **PS view**

This determines what program will be used to preview Postscript files.

### 3.5.10 The configuration file: `widget_size cas_setup xcas_mode xyzstrange`

When you save changes to your configuration, this is stored in a configuration file, which will be `.xcasrc` in your home directory in Unix and `xcas.rc` in Windows. This file will have four functions – `widget_size`, `cas_setup`, `xcas_mode` and `xyzstrange` – which determine the configuration and which are evaluated when Xcas starts.

The `widget_size` function has between 1 and 12 arguments. The arguments (in order) are:

- The first argument is a positive integer specifying the font size. Optionally, this can be a bracketed list whose first number indicates the font and the second the font size.
- The second and third arguments are horizontal and vertical distances in pixels from the upper left hand corner of the screen. They specify where the upper left corner of the Xcas window is when it opens.
- The fourth and fifth arguments specify the width and height of the Xcas window when it opens.
- The sixth argument is either 0 or 1; a 1 indicates that the on-screen keyboard should be open when Xcas starts, a 0 indicates that the keyboard should be hidden.
- The seventh argument is either 0 or 1; a 1 indicates that the browser should be automatically opened to display help for the selected command in the menu or index, a 0 indicates that the browser should not be automatically opened.
- The eighth argument is either 0 or 1; a 1 indicates that Xcas should open with the message window, a 0 indicates that Xcas should open without the message window.
- The ninth argument is currently not used.
- The tenth argument is a string with the name of the browser to use to read the help pages. A value of "builtin" means that Xcas should use a small browser built into Xcas.
- The eleventh argument indicates what level Xcas should start at; a 0 means command line, a 1 means program editor, a 2 means spreadsheet, and a 3 means a 2-d geometry screen.
- The twelfth argument is a string with the name of a program for postscript previews; for example, "gv".

The `cas_setup` function has nine arguments. The arguments (in order) are:

- `approx`. A 1 means Xcas works in approximate mode, a 0 means numeric mode.

- `complex_var`. A 1 means work with complex variables, a 0 means real variables.
- `complex`. A 1 means work with in complex mode, a 0 means real mode.
- `radian`. A 1 means work in radians, a 0 means work in degrees.
- `display_format`. A 0 means use the standard format to display numbers, a 1 means use scientific format, a 2 means use engineering format, and a 3 means use floating hexadeciml format (which is standardized with a non-zero first digit).
- `epsilon`. This is the value of `epsilon` used by Xcas.
- `Digits`. This is the number of digits to use to display a float.
- `tasks`. This will be used in the future for parallelism.
- `increasing_power`. This is 0 to display polynomials in increasing power, 1 to display polynomials in decreasing powers.

The `xcas_mode` function has one argument; a 0 to work in Xcas mode, a 1 to work in Maple mode, a 2 to work in MuPAD mode, and a 3 to work in TI89 mode.

The `xyzrange` function inserts or removes the axes of a geometric screen; it has 15 parameters, which are the parameters which can be set with the graphics configuration screen (see section 3.5.8).

Input:

```
xyzrange (-5.5, -5.2, -10.10, -1.6, -5.5,
          -1.2384, 2, 1, 0, 1)
```

(or enter the information in the configuration screen) will result in a visible graphics window of [-5,5] by [-1.2384,2]. Note that the visible window is not the same as the calculation window; if the calculation window is larger than the visible window, then you can scroll to bring other parts of the calculation window into view.

## 3.6 Printing and saving

### 3.6.1 Saving a session

Each tab above the status line represents a session, the active tab will be yellow. The label of each tab will be the name of the file that the session is saved in; if the session hasn't been saved the tab will read Unnamed.

You can save your current session by clicking on the Save button on the status line. If the session contains unsaved changes the Save button will be red; the button will be green when nothing needs to be saved. The first time that you save a session you will be prompted for a file name; you should choose a name that ends in `.xws`. Subsequent times that you save a session it will be saved in the same file; to save a session in a different file you can use the menu item File▶Save as.

If you have a session saved in a file and you want to load it in a tab, you can use the menu item File▶Open. From there you can choose a specific file from

a list or open a directory browser that you can use to choose a file. The directory browser can also be opened with Alt-O.

### 3.6.2 Saving a spreadsheet

If you have a spreadsheet in one of the levels, you can save it separately from the rest of the session.

Once a spreadsheet is inserted, it will have menus right next to the level number. If you select the Table▶Save sheet as text menu, you will be prompted for a file name. You should choose a file name that ends in .tab. Once you save the spreadsheet, there will be a button to the right of the menus which you can use to save any changes you make. If you want to save the spreadsheet under a different name, you can use the Table▶Save as alternate filename menu entry. You can also use the Table▶Save as CSV and Table▶Save as mathml menu entries to save the spreadsheet in other formats.

You can use the Table menu to insert previously saved spreadsheets; the menu item Table▶Insert will bring up a directory browser you can use to select a file to enter.

### 3.6.3 Saving a program

You can open up a level in which to write an Xcas program with the menu item Prg▶New program (which is equivalent to Alt-P). If you select this item, you will be prompted for information to fill out a template for a program and then be left in the program editor.

At the top of the program editor there will be menus and buttons, at the far right will be a Save button that you can press to save the program. The first time you save a program, you will be prompted for a file name, you should choose a name ending in .cxx. Once a program is saved, the file name will appear to the right of the Save button. If you want to save the program under a different name, you can use the Prog▶Save as item from the program editor menu.

To insert a previously saved program, you can use the Prog▶Load item from the program editor menu.

### 3.6.4 Printing a session

You can print a session with the File▶Print▶to printer menu item.

If you prefer to save the printed form as a file, you can use the File▶Print▶preview menu item. You will be prompted for a file name to save the printed form in; the file will be a PostScript file, so the name should end in .ps. If you only want to save certain levels in printable form, you can use the File▶Print▶preview selected levels menu item; this file will be encapsulated PostScript, so the name should end in .eps.

## 3.7 Translating to other computer languages

Xcas can translate a session, or parts of a session, to other computer languages; notably L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and MathML.

### 3.7.1 Translating an expression to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: **latex**

The command `latex` will translate an expression to a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X expression. If you enter `latex(expression)`, then the expression will be evaluated and the result will be given to you in the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X typesetting language. For example, if you enter

```
latex(1+1/2)
```

you will get

```
\frac{3}{2}
```

### 3.7.2 Translating the entire session to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

If you want to save your entire document as a complete L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X file, you can use the menu item **File▶LaTeX preview** selection

### 3.7.3 Translating graphical output to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: **graph2tex graph3d2tex**

You can see all of your graphic output at once on the DispG screen, which you can bring up with the command `DispG()`. (This screen can be cleared with the command line command `erase()`.) On the DispG screen there will be a Print menu; the Print▶`latex` print will give you several files `DispG.tex`, `DispG.ps`, `DispG.ps` and `DispG.png` with the graphics in different formats. To save it without using the `DispG()` command you can use the `graph2tex` command, which will save all graphic output to a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X file of your choosing. For example, to save your graphs to `myfile.tex`, you can enter the command

```
graph2tex("myfile.tex")
```

to get a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X file `myfile.tex` with the graphs. To save a three-dimensional graph, you can use the command `graph3d2tex`.

To save a single graph as a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X file, you can use the M menu to the right of the graph. Selecting M▶Export Print▶Print (LaTeX) will save the current graph. You can also save a single graph by selecting that level, then use the menu item **File▶LaTeX▶LaTeX print** selection. This method will save the graph in several formats; `session0.tex`, `session0.dvi`, `session0.ps` and `session0.png`, or with `session0` replaced by the session name.

### 3.7.4 Translating an expression to MathML: **mathml**

The `mathml` command will take an expression and return the result in MathML. For example, if you enter

```
mathml(1/4 + 1/4)
```

you will get

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="iso-8859-1"?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.1 plus MathML 2.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/MathML2/dtd/xhtml-math11-f.dtd" [
<!ENTITY mathml "http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
```

```
[>
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<body>

<math mode="display" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
<mfrac><mrow><mn>1</mn></mrow><mrow><mn>2</mn></mrow></mfrac>
</math><br/>

</body>
</html>
```

which is the number  $1/2$  in MathML form, along with enough information to make it a complete HTML document.

### 3.7.5 Translating a spreadsheet to MathML

You can translate an entire spreadsheet to MathML with the spreadsheet menu command Table▶Save as mathml.

### 3.7.6 Export to presentation or content MathML : export\_mathml

The command `export_mathml` accepts one or two arguments: an expression and optionally the symbol `content` or `display`. If `content` is specified, it converts the expression to content MathML, while for `display` it converts it to presentation MathML. If the second argument is omitted, the return value contains both presentation and content MathML within a `semantics` block. The return value in each case is a string containing a single `math` block.

For example, input :

```
xml_print (export_mathml (a+2*b))
```

Output :

```
<math xmlns='http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML'>
<semantics>
  <mrow xref='id5'>
    <mi xref='id1'>a</mi>
    <mo>+</mo>
    <mrow xref='id4'>
      <mn xref='id2'>2</mn>
      <mo>&it;</mo>
      <mi xref='id3'>b</mi>
    </mrow>
  </mrow>
</semantics>
<annotation-xml encoding='MathML-Content'>
  <apply id='id5'>
    <plus/>
    <ci id='id1'>a</ci>
```

```

<apply id='id4'>
    <times/>
    <cn id='id2' type='integer'>2</cn>
    <ci id='id3'>b</ci>
</apply>
</apply>
</annotation-xml>
<annotation encoding='Giac'>a+2*b</annotation>
</semantics>
</math>
```

**Input :**

```
xml_print(export_mathml(a+2*b, content))
```

**Output :**

```

<math xmlns='http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML'>
    <apply id='id5'>
        <plus/>
        <ci id='id1'>a</ci>
        <apply id='id4'>
            <times/>
            <cn id='id2' type='integer'>2</cn>
            <ci id='id3'>b</ci>
        </apply>
    </apply>
</math>
```

**Input :**

```
xml_print(export_mathml(a+2*b, display))
```

**Output :**

```

<math xmlns='http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML'>
    <mrow>
        <mi>a</mi>
        <mo>+</mo>
        <mrow>
            <mn>2</mn>
            <mo>&it;</mo>
            <mi>b</mi>
        </mrow>
    </mrow>
</math>
```

### 3.7.7 Indent a XML string : `xml_print`

`xml_print` takes a string as its only argument, assumes that it contains XML code and indents it for better readability. The indented code is returned as string. The default indent is two spaces.

For example, input :

```
xml_print("<?xml version='1.0'?><root><child1>some
content</child1><child2></child2><child3/></root>")
```

**Output :**

```
<?xml version='1.0'?>
<root>
  <child1>some content</child1>
  <child2></child2>
  <child3/>
</root>
```

**Input :**

```
s:=export_mathml(1/(x^2+1),display):;
xml_print(s)
```

**Output :**

```
<math mode='display' xmlns='http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML'>
  <mfrac>
    <mn>1</mn>
    <mrow>
      <msup>
        <mi>x</mi>
        <mn>2</mn>
      </msup>
      <mo>+</mo>
      <mn>1</mn>
    </mrow>
  </mfrac>
</math>
```

### 3.7.8 Translating a Maple file to Xcas: **maple2xcas**

You can translate a file of Maple commands to the Xcas language with the `maple2xcas` command, as in

```
maple2xcas ("MapleFile", "XcasFile")
```

This command takes two arguments, the name of the Maple input file and the name of the file where you want to save the Xcas commands.



## Chapter 4

# Entry in Xcas

### 4.1 Suppressing output

If you enter a command into Xcas, the result will appear in the output box below the input. If you enter

```
a := 2+2
```

then

```
4
```

will appear in the output box. You can evaluate the input and suppress the output with the `nodisp` command. If you enter

```
nodisp(a := 2+2)
```

then `a` will still be set to 4, but the result will not appear in the output box. Instead,

```
Done
```

will appear.

An alternate way of suppressing the output is to end the input with `:;`, if you enter

```
b := 3+3:;
```

then `b` will be set to 6 but it won't be displayed.

### 4.2 Entering comments

You can annotate an Xcas session by adding comments. You can enter a comment on the current line at any time by typing Alt+C. The line will appear in green text and conclude when you type Enter. Comments are not evaluated and so have no output. If you have begun entering a command when you begin a comment, the command line be pushed down so that you can finish it when you complete the comment.

You can open the browser in a comment line by entering the web address beginning with the @ sign. If you enter the comment line

The Xcas homepage is at  
`@www-fourier.ujf-grenoble.fr/~parisse/giac.html`

then the browser will open to the Xcas home page.

To add a comment to a program, rather than a session, you can use the `comment` command, which takes a string as an argument. Alternatively, any part of a program between `//` and the end of the line is a comment. So both

```
bs() := {comment("Hello"); return "Hi there!";}
```

and

```
bs() := { // Hello
return "Hi there!"; }
```

are programs with the comment "Hello".

## 4.3 Editing expressions

You can enter expressions on the command line, but Xcas also has a built-in expression editor that you can use to enter expressions in two dimensions, the way they normally look when typeset. When you have an expression in the editor, you can also manipulate subexpressions apart from the entire expression.

### 4.3.1 Entering expressions in the editor

The expression

$$\frac{x+2}{x^2-4}$$

can be entered on the command line with

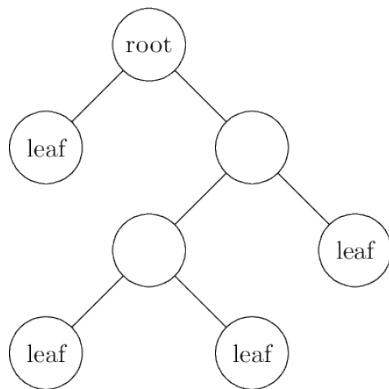
```
(x+2) / (x^2-4)
```

You also can use the expression editor to enter it visually, as  $x + 2$  on top of  $x^2 - 4$ . To do this, you can start the expression editor with the `Alt+E` keystroke (or the `Expression ► New Expression` menu command). There will be a small M on the right side of the expression line, which is a menu with some commands you can use on the expressions. There will also be a 0 selected on the expression line and an on-screen keyboard at the bottom. If you type `x + 2`, it will overwrite the 0. To make this the top of the fraction, you can select it with the mouse (you can also make selections with the keyboard, as will be discussed later) and then type `/`. This will leave the `x + 2` on the top and the cursor on the bottom. To enter  $x^2 - 4$  on the bottom, begin by typing `x`. Selecting this `x` and typing `^2` will put on the superscript. Finally, selecting the `x^2` and typing `- 4` will finish the bottom. If you then hit `Enter`, the expression will be evaluated and will appear on the output line.

### 4.3.2 Subexpressions

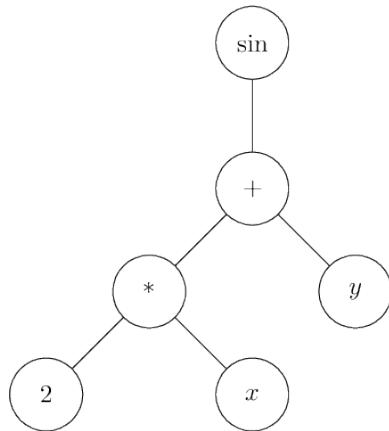
Xcas can operate on expressions in the expression editor or subexpressions of the expression. To understand subexpressions and how to select them, it helps to know that Xcas stores expressions as *trees*.

A tree, in this sense, consists of objects called nodes. A node can be connected to lower nodes, called the children of the first node. Each node (except one) will be connected to exactly one node above it, called the parent node. One special node, called the root node, won't have a parent node. Two nodes with the same parent nodes are called siblings. Finally, if a node doesn't have any children, it is called a leaf. This terminology comes from a visual representation of a tree,



which looks like an upside-down tree; the root is at the top and the leaves are at the bottom.

Given an expression, the nodes of the corresponding tree are the functions, operators, variables and constants. The children of a function node are its arguments, the children of an operator node are its operands, and the constants and variables will be the leaves. For example, the tree for  $\sin(2 * x + y)$  will look like

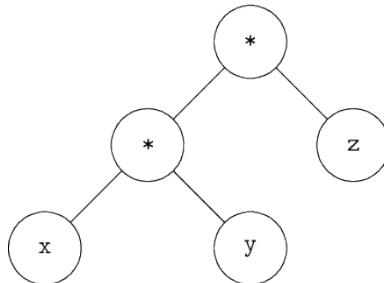


A subexpression of an expression will be a selected node together with the nodes below it. For example, both  $2 * x$  and  $2 * x + y$  are subexpressions of  $\sin(2 * x + y)$ , but  $x + y$  is not.

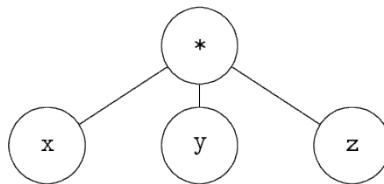
A subexpression of the contents of the expression editor can be selected with the mouse; the selection will appear white on a black background. A subexpression can also be chosen with the keyboard using the arrow keys. Given a selection:

- The up arrow will go to the parent node.
- The down arrow will go to the leftmost child node.
- The right and left arrows will go to the right and left sibling nodes.
- The control key with the right and left arrows will switch the selection with the corresponding sibling.
- If a constant or variable is selected, the backspace key will delete it. For other selections, backspace will delete the function or operator, and another backspace will delete the arguments or operands.

You can use the arrow keys to navigate the tree structure of an expression, which isn't always evident by looking at the expression itself. For example, suppose you enter  $x*y*z$  in the editor. The two multiplications will be at different levels; the tree will look like



If you select the entire expression with the up arrow and then go to the M menu to the right of the line and choose eval, then the expression will look the same but, as you can check by navigating it with the arrow keys, the tree will look like



### 4.3.3 Manipulating subexpressions

If a subexpression is selected in the expression editor, then any menu command will be applied to that subexpression.

For example, suppose that you enter the expression

$$(x+1) * (x+2) * (x-1)$$

in the expression editor. Note that you can use the abilities of the editor to make this easier. First, enter  $x+1$ . Select this with the up arrow, then type \* followed by  $x+2$ . Select the  $x+2$  with the up arrow and then type \* followed by  $x-1$ . Using the up arrow again will select the  $x-1$ . Select the entire expression with the up arrow, and then select eval from the M menu. This will put all factors at the same level. Suppose you want the factors  $(x+1) * (x+2)$  to be expanded. You could select  $(x+1) * (x+2)$  with the mouse and do one of the following:

- Select the Expression▶Misc▶normal menu item. You will then have `normal((x+1)*(x+2))*(x-1)` in the editor. If you hit enter, the result  $(x^2 + 3x + 2) * (x - 1)$  will appear in the output window.
- Again, select the Expression▶Misc▶normal menu item, so again you have `normal((x+1)*(x+2))*(x-1)` in the editor. Now if you select eval from the M menu, then the expression in the editor will become the result  $(x^2 + 3x + 2) * (x - 1)$ , which you can continue editing.
- Choose normal from the M menu. This will apply normal to the selection, and again you will have the result  $(x^2 + 3x + 2) * (x - 1)$  in the editor.

There are also keystroke commands that you can use to operate on subexpressions that you've selected. There are the usual `Ctrl+Z` and `Ctrl+Y` for undoing and redoing. Some of the others are given in the following table.

| Key                 | Action on selection                                       |
|---------------------|---|
| <code>Ctrl+D</code> | differentiate   |
| <code>Ctrl+F</code> | factor  |
| <code>Ctrl+L</code> | limit   |
| <code>Ctrl+N</code> | normalize   |
| <code>Ctrl+P</code> | partial fraction  |
| <code>Ctrl+R</code> | integrate   |
| <code>Ctrl+S</code> | simplify  |
| <code>Ctrl+T</code> | copy L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X version to clipboard |

## 4.4 Previous results

The `ans` command will return the results of previous commands. The input to `ans` is the number of the command, beginning with 0. If the first command that you enter is

$2+5$

resulting in

7

then later references to `ans(0)` will evaluate to 7.

Note that the argument to `ans` doesn't correspond to the line number in Xcas. For one thing, the line numbers begin at 1. What's more, if you go back and re-evaluate a previous line, then that will become part of the commands that `ans` keeps track of.

If you give `ans` a negative number, then it counts backwards from the current input. To get the latest output, for example, you can use `ans(-1)`. With no argument, `ans()` wil also return the latest output.

Similarly, `quest` will return the previous inputs. Since these will often be simplified to be the same as the output, `quest(n)` sometimes has the same value as `ans(n)`.

You can also use `Ctrl` plus the arrow keys to scroll through previous inputs. With the cursor on the command line, `Ctrl+uparrow` will go backwards in the list of previous commands and `Ctrl+downarrow` will go forwards.

## 4.5 Spreadsheet

### 4.5.1 Opening a spreadsheet

You can open a spreadsheet (or a matrix editor) with the **Spreadsheet▶New Spreadsheet** menu item or with the key **Alt+T**.

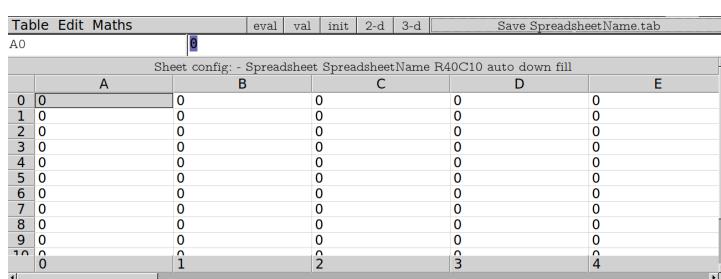
When you open a new spreadsheet, you will be given a configuration screen. The configuration screen allows you to set the following options:

- **Variable** The name of the file where the spreadsheet will be saved.
- **Rows and Columns** The number of rows and columns in the spreadsheet.
- **Eval** Whether or not to automatically re-evaluate the entries in the spreadsheet after each change. If this is not checked, then you can re-evaluate the spreadsheet with the **eval** button on the spreadsheet menu bar.
- **Distribute** Whether or not entering a matrix into a cell will keep the entry in a single cell or distribute it across an appropriate array of cells.
- **Landscape** Whether the graphical representation of the spreadsheet should be displayed below the spreadsheet or to the right of the spreadsheet. If this is checked, it will be displayed below the spreadsheet.
- **Move right** Whether or not to move to the cell to the right of the current cell when data is entered. If this is not checked, you will be moved to the cell below the current cell.
- **Spreadsheet** Whether to format a spreadsheet or a matrix.
- **Graph** Whether or not to display the graphical representation of the spreadsheet.

The configuration screen can be reopened with the **Edit▶Configuration▶Cfg** window menu attached to the spreadsheet.

### 4.5.2 The spreadsheet window

When you open a spreadsheet, the input line will become the spreadsheet.



The top will be a menu bar with Table, Edit and Maths menus as well as eval, val, init, 2-d and 3-d buttons. To the right will be the name of the file the spreadsheet will be saved into. Below the menu bar will be two boxes; a box which displays the active cell (and can be used to choose a cell) and a command line to enter information into the cell. Below that will be a status line, you can click on this to return to the configuration screen.

## 4.6 Variables

### 4.6.1 Variable names

A variable or function name is a sequence of letters, numbers and underscores that begins with a letter. If you define your own variable or function, you can't use the names of built-in variables or functions, or other keywords reserved by Xcas.

### 4.6.2 The CST variable

The menu available with the `cust` button on the onscreen keyboard is defined with the `CST` variable. It is a list where each list item determines a menu item; a list item is either a builtin command name or a list itself consisting of a string to be displayed in the menu and the input to be entered when the item is selected.

For example, to create a custom defined menu with the builtin function `diff`, a user defined function `foo`, and a menu item to insert the number  $22/7$ , you can set

```
CST := [diff, ["foo", foo], ["My pi approx", 22/7]]
```

Note that if the input to be entered is a variable and the variable has a value when `CST` is defined, then `CST` will contain the value of the variable. For example, Input:

```
app := 22/7
CST := [diff, ["foo", foo], ["My pi approx", app]]
```

will be equivalent to the previous definition of `CST`. However, if the variable does not have a value when `CST` is defined, for example, Input:

```
CST := [diff, ["foo", foo], ["My pi approx", app]]
app := 22/7
```

will behave as the previous values, to begin with, but in this case if the variable `app` is changed, so will the the result of pressing the `My pi approx` button.

Since `CST` is a list, a function can be added to the `cust` menu with the `concat` command;

Input:

```
CST := concat(CST, evalc)
```

will add the `evalc` command to the `cust` menu.

### 4.6.3 Assigning values: `:= => = assign sto Store`

You can assign a value to a variable with the `:=` operator. For example, to give the variable `a` the value of 4, you can enter

```
a := 4
```

Alternatively, you can use the `=>` operator; when you use this operator, the value comes before the variable;

4 => a

The function `sto` or `Store` can also be used; again, the value comes before the variable

`sto(4,a)`

After any one of these commands, any time you use the variable `a` in an expression, it will be replaced by 4.

You can use sequences or lists to make multiple assignments at the same time. For example,

`(a,b,c) := (1,2,3)`

will assign `a` the value 1, `b` the value 2 and `c` the value 3. Note that this can be used to switch the values of two variables; with `a` and `b` as above, the command

`(a,b) := (b,a)`

will set `a` equal to `b`'s original value, namely 2, and will set `b` equal to `a`'s original value, namely 1.

Another way to assign values to variables, useful in Maple mode, is with the `assign` command. If you enter

`assign(a,3)`

or

`assign(a = 3)`

then `a` will have the value 3. You can assign multiple values at once; if you enter

`assign([a = 1, b = 2])`

then `a` will have the value 1 and `b` will have the value 2. This command can be useful in Maple mode, where solutions of equations are returned as equations. For example, if you enter (in Maple mode)

`sol := solve([x + y = 1, y = 2])`

you will get

`[x = -1, y = 2]`

If you then enter

`assign(sol)`

the variable `x` will have value `-1` and `y` will have the value 2. This same effect can be achieved in standard `Xcas` mode, where

`sol := solve([x + y = 1, y = 2])`

will return

`[[x = -1, y = 2]]`

In this case, the command

`[x,y] := sol[0]`

will assign `x` the value `-1` and `y` the value 2.

#### 4.6.4 Assignment by reference: =<

A list is simply a sequence of values separated by commas and delimited by [ and ] (see section 5.41). Suppose you give the variable `a` the value `[1, 1, 3, 4, 5]`,

```
a := [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
```

If you later assign to `a` the value `[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]`, then a new list is created. It may be better to just change the second value in the original list by reference. This can be done with the `=<` command. Recalling that lists are indexed beginning at 0, the command

```
a[1] =< 2
```

will simply change the value of the second element of the list instead of creating a new list, and is a more efficient way to change the value of `a` to `[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]`.

#### 4.6.5 Copying values of list: copy

If you enter

```
list1 := [1, 2, 3]
```

and then

```
list2 := list1
```

then `list1` and `list2` will be equal to the same list, not simply two lists with the same elements. In particular, if you change (by reference) the value of an element of `list1`, then the change will also be reflected in `list2`. For example, if you enter

```
list1[1] =< 5
```

then both `list1` and `list2` will be equal to `[1, 5, 3]`.

The `copy` command will create a copy of a list (or vector or matrix) which is equal to the original list, but distinct from it. For example, if you enter

```
list1 := [1, 2, 3]
```

and then

```
list2 := copy(list1)
```

then `list1` and `list2` will both be `[1, 2, 3]`, but now if you enter

```
list1[1] =< 5
```

then both `list1` will be equal to `[1, 5, 3]` but `list2` will still be `[1, 2, 3]`.

#### 4.6.6 Incrementing variables: `+= -= *= /=`

You can increase the value of a variable `a` by 4, for example, with

```
a := a + 4
```

If beforehand `a` were equal to 4, it would now be equal to 8. A shorthand way of doing this is with the `+=` operator;

```
a += 4
```

will also increase the value of `a` by 4.

Similar shorthands exist for subtraction, multiplication and division. If `a` is equal to 8 and you enter

```
a -= 2
```

then `a` will be equal to 6. If you follow this with

```
a *= 3
```

then `a` will be equal to 18, and finally

```
a /= 9
```

will end with `a` equal to 2.

#### 4.6.7 Storing and recalling variables and their values: `archive unarchive`

You can store variables and their values for later use in a file of your choosing with the `archive` function. This function takes two arguments, a filename to store the variables in and a variable or list of variables.

If you have given the variable `a` the value 2 and the variable `bee` the value "letter" (a string), then entering

```
archive("foo", [a,bee])
```

will create a file named "foo" which contains the values 2 and "letter" in a format meant to be efficiently read by Xcas.

You can recall the values stored by `archive` with the `unarchive` command, which takes a file name as argument. If the file "foo" is as above, then

```
unarchive("foo")
```

will result in

```
[2, letter]
```

If you want to reassign these values to `a` and `bee`, you can enter

```
[a,bee] := unarchive("foo")
```

### 4.6.8 Copying variables: `CopyVar`

If a variable has a value, such as

```
a := 1
```

and you set a second variable to the first variable

```
b := a
```

the new variable will have the same value as the first; in this case `b` will be equal to 1. If you later give the first variable a new value;

```
a := 5
```

the new value will still have the old value, in this case, `b` will still be equal to 1.

The `CopyVar` command will copy one variable to another without evaluating the first variable; the new variable will simply be a copy of the first. With `a` having the value of 5, as above, the command

```
CopyVar(a, c)
```

will make `c` a copy of the variable `a`, so it will have the value 5 also. If you now change the value of `a`

```
a := 10
```

then the value of `c` will also change; here, `c` will now have the value 10.

### 4.6.9 Assumptions on variables: `assume`, `additionally`, `assume`, `purge`, `supposons` and `or`

If you enter

```
abs(var)
```

the `Xcas` will return it unevaluated, since `Xcas` doesn't know what type of value the variable is supposed to represent.

The `assume` (or `supposons`) command will let you tell `Xcas` some properties of a variable without giving the variable a specific value. For example, if you enter

```
assume(var > 0)
```

then `Xcas` will assume that `var` is a positive real number, and so for example

```
abs(var)
```

will be evaluated to

```
var
```

You can put one or more conditions in the `assume` command by combining them with `and` and `or`. For example, if you want the variable `a` to be in  $[2, 4) \cup (6, \infty)$ , you can enter

```
assume((a >= 2 and a < 4) or a > 6)
```

If a variable has attached assumptions, then making another assumption with `assume` will remove the original assumptions. To add extra assumptions, you can either use the `additionally` command or give `assume` a second argument of `additionally`. If you assume that  $b > 0$  with

```
assume(b > 0)
```

and you want to add the condition that  $b < 1$ , you can either enter

```
assume(b < 1, additionally)
```

or

```
additionally(b < 1)
```

As well as equalities and inequalities, you can make assumptions about the domain of a variable. If you want  $n$  to represent a positive integer, for example, you can enter

```
assume(n, integer)
```

If you want  $n$  to be a positive integer, you can add the condition

```
additionally(n > 0)
```

You can use the `about` command to check the assumptions on a variable; for the above positive integer  $n$ , if you enter

```
about(n)
```

you will get

```
assume[integer, [line[0,+infinity]], [0]]
```

The first element tells you that  $n$  is an integer, the second element tells you that  $n$  is between 0 and `+infinity`, and the third element tells you that the value 0 is excluded.

If you assume that a variable is equal to a specific value, such as

```
assume(c = 2)
```

then by default the variable `c` will remain unevaluated in later levels. If you want an expression involving `c` to be evaluated, you would need to put the expression inside the `evalf` command; if you enter

```
evalf(c^2 + 3)
```

then you will get

```
7.0
```

Right below the `assume(c = 2)` command line there will be a slider, namely arrows pointing left and right with the value 2 between them. These can be used to change the values of `c`. If you click on the right arrow, the `assume(c = 2)` command will transform to

```
assume(c=[2.2,-10.0,10.0,0.0])
```

and the value between the arrows will be 2.2. Also, any later levels where the variable *c* is evaluated will be re-evaluated with the value of *c* now 2.2. The output to `evalf(c^2 + 3)` will become

```
7.84
```

The -10.0 and 10.0 in the `assume` line represent the smallest and largest values that *c* can become using the sliders. You can set them yourself in the `assume` command, as well as the increment that the value will change; if you want *c* to start with the value 5 and vary between 2 and 8 in increments of 0.05, then you can enter

```
assume(c = [5,2,8,0.05])
```

You can remove any assumptions you have made about a variable with the `purge` command; if you enter

```
purge(a)
```

then *a* will no longer have any assumptions made about it. You can remove assumptions from more than one variable at a time;

```
purge(a,b)
```

will remove any assumptions about *a* and *b*.

#### 4.6.10 Unassigning variables: `VARS` `purge` `DelVar` `del` `restart` `rm_a_z` `rm_all_vars`

The `VARS()` command will list the variables to which you have assigned values or assumptions. If you begin by entering

```
a := 1
```

and

```
anothervar := 2
```

then

```
VARS()
```

will return

```
[a, anothervar]
```

The `purge` command will clear the values and assumptions you make on variables. To clear the values and assumptions on *a*, for example, you can enter  
Input:

```
purge(a)
```

For TI compatibility, you can also enter

Input:

```
DelVar a
```

and for Python compatibility, you can also enter Output:

```
del a
```

To clear the values and assumptions you have made on all variables you can use the

```
restart
```

or

```
rm_all_vars()
```

command. The command `rm_a_z` will clear the values and assumptions of the variables with single lowercase letter names. If you have variables names `A, B, a, b, myvar`, then after

Input:

```
rm_a_z()
```

you will only have the variables named `A, B, myvar`.

## 4.7 Functions

### 4.7.1 Defining functions

You can use the `:=` and `=>` operators to define functions; both

```
f(x) := x^2
```

and

```
x^2 => f(x)
```

give the name `f` to the function which takes a value and returns the square of the value. If you then enter

```
f(3)
```

you will get

9

You can give Xcas a function without a name with the `->` operator; the squaring function can be written without a name as

```
x -> x^2
```

You can use this form of the function to assign it to a name; both

```
f := x -> x^2
```

and

```
x -> x^2 => f
```

are alternate ways to define  $f$  as the squaring function.

You can similarly define functions of more than one variable. For example, to define a function which takes the lengths of the two legs of a right triangle and returns the hypotenuse, you could enter

```
hypot(a,b) := sqrt(a^2 + b^2)
```

or

```
hypot := (a,b) -> sqrt(a^2 + b^2)
```

#### 4.7.2 Defining piecewise defined functions

You can use Xcas's control structures to define functions not given by a single simple formula. Notably, you can use the `ifte` command or `? :` operator to define piecewise-defined functions.

The `ifte` command takes three arguments; the first argument is a condition, the second argument tells the command what to return when the condition is true, and the third argument tells the command what to return when the condition is false. For example, you could define your own absolute value function with

```
myabs(x) := ifte(x >= 0, x, -1*x)
```

Afterwards, for example, entering

```
myabs(-4)
```

will return

4

However, this will return an error if it can't evaluate the conditional. For example, if you enter

```
myabs(x)
```

you will get the error

```
Ifte: Unable to check test Error: Bad Argument Value
```

The `? :` construct behaves similarly to `ifte` but is structured differently. Here, the condition comes first, followed by `?`, then what to return if the condition is true, followed by the `:`, and then what to return if the condition is false. You could define your absolute value function with

```
myabs(x) := (x >= 0)? x: -1*x
```

If you enter

```
myabs(-4)
```

you will again get

4

but now if the conditional can't be evaluated, you won't get an error.

```
myabs(x)
```

will return

```
((x >= 0) ? x : -x)
```

The `when` and `IFTE` commands are synonyms for the `? :` construct;

```
(condition) ? true-result: false-result
```

```
when(condition, true-result, false-result)
```

and

```
IFTE(condition, true-result, false-result)
```

all represent the same expression.

If you want to define a function with several pieces, it may be simpler to use the `piecewise` function. The arguments to this function are alternately conditions and results to return if the condition is true, with the last argument being what to return if none of the conditions are true. For example, to define the function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -2 & \text{if } x < -2 \\ 3x + 4 & \text{if } -2 \leq x < -1 \\ 1 & \text{if } -1 \leq x < 0 \\ x + 1 & \text{if } x \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

you can enter

```
f(x) := piecewise(x < -2, -2, x < -1, 3*x+4, x < 0, 1,
                    x + 1)
```

## 4.8 Directories

### 4.8.1 Working directories

Xcas has a working directory that it uses to store files that it creates; typically the user's home directory. You can print the name of the current working directory with the `pwd()` command; if you enter

```
pwd()
```

you might get something like

```
/home/username
```

You can change the working directory with the `cd` command; if you enter

```
cd("foo")
```

or (on a Unix system)

```
cd("/home/username/foo")
```

will change to the directory `foo`, if it exists. Afterwards, any files that you save from Xcas will be in that directory.

If you have values saved in a file, then you'll need to be in that working directory to load it. Note that if you have the same file name in different directories, then the result of loading the file name will depend on which directory you are in.

### 4.8.2 Reading files: **read** **load**

If you have a function or other Xcas information in a file, you can load it with the **read** function. If the file is named `myfunction.cxx`, then

```
read("myfunction.cxx")
```

will load the file, as long as the directory is in the current working directory. If the file is in a different directory, you can still load it by giving the path to the file,

```
read("/path/to/file/myfunction.cxx")
```

While **read** can be used to load files containing Xcas functions, which typically end in `.cxx`, if you want to load a saved session you should use the **load** function;

```
load("mysession.cas")
```

### 4.8.3 Internal directories: **NewFold** **SetFold** **GetFold** **DelFold** **VARS**

You can create a directory that isn't actually on your hard drive but is treated like one from Xcas. You can create such an internal directory with the **NewFold** command, which takes a variable name as an argument. If you enter

```
NewFold(MyIntDir)
```

then there will be a new internal directory named `MyIntDir`. Internal directories will also be listed with the **VARS()** command. To actually use this directory, you'll have to use the **SetFold** command;

```
SetFold(MyIntDir)
```

Finally, we can print out the internal directory that we are in with the **GetFold** command; entering

```
GetFold()
```

will result in

```
MyIntDir
```

Afterwards, if this directory is empty, you can delete it with the **DelFold** command;

```
DelFold(MyIntDir)
```



# Chapter 5

## The CAS functions

### 5.1 Symbolic constants : e pi infinity inf i euler\_gamma

e (or %e) is the number  $\exp(1)$ ;

pi (or %pi) is the number  $\pi$ .

infinity is unsigned  $\infty$ .

+infinity or inf is  $+\infty$ .

-infinity or -inf is  $-\infty$ .

i (or %i) is the complex number  $i$ .

euler\_gamma is Euler's constant  $\gamma$ ; namely,  $\lim(\sum(1/k, k, 1, n) - \ln(n), n, +\infty)$

### 5.2 Booleans

#### 5.2.1 The values of a boolean : true false

The value of a boolean is true or false.

The synonyms are :

true or TRUE or 1,

false or FALSE or 0.

Tests or conditions are boolean functions.

#### 5.2.2 Tests : == != > >= < =<

==, !=, >, >=, <, =< are infix operators.

a==b tests the equality between a and b and returns 1 if a is equal to b and 0 otherwise.

a!=b returns 1 if a and b are different and 0 otherwise.

a>=b returns 1 if a is greater than or equal to b and 0 otherwise.

a>b returns 1 if a is strictly greater than b and 0 otherwise.

a<=b returns 1 if a is less than or equal to b and 0 otherwise.

a<b returns 1 if a is strictly less than b and 0 otherwise.

To write an algebraic function having the same result as an if...then...else, we use the boolean function ifte.

For example :

```
f(x) := ifte(x>0, true, false)
```

defines the boolean function  $f$  such that  $f(x) = \text{true}$  if  $x \in (0; +\infty[$  and  $f(x) = \text{false}$  if  $x \in (-\infty; 0]$ .

Input :

```
f(0)==0
```

Output :

```
1
```

### **Look out !**

$a=b$  is not a boolean !!!!  
 $a==b$  is a boolean.

### **5.2.3 Boolean operators : or xor and not**

`or` (`or ||`), `xor`, `and` (`or &&`) are infix operators.

`not` is a prefixed operators.

If `a` and `b` are two booleans :

`(a or b)` (`a || b`) returns 0 (or `false`) if `a` and `b` are equal to 0 and returns 1 (or `true`) otherwise.

`(a xor b)` returns 1 if `a` is equal to 1 and `b` is equal to 0 or if `a` is equal to 0 and `b` is equal to 1 and returns 0 if `a` and `b` are equal to 0 or if `a` and `b` are equal to 1 (it is the "exclusive or").

`(a and b)` or `(a && b)` returns 1 (or `true`) if `a` and `b` are equal to 1 and 0 (or `false`) otherwise.

`not(a)` returns 1 (or `true`) if `a` is equal to 0 (or `false`), and 0 (or `false`) if `a` is equal to 1 (or `true`).

Input :

```
1>=0 or 1<0
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
1>=0 xor 1>0
```

Output :

```
0
```

Input :

```
1>=0 and 1>0
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
not(0==0)
```

Output :

```
0
```

### 5.2.4 Transform a boolean expression to a list : exp2list

`exp2list` returns the list [`expr0, expr1`] when the argument is (`var=expr0`) or (`var=expr1`).

`exp2list` is used in TI mode for easier processing of the answer to a `solve` command.

Input :

```
exp2list( (x=2) or (x=0) )
```

Output :

```
[2, 0]
```

Input :

```
exp2list( (x>0) or (x<2) )
```

Output :

```
[0, 2]
```

In TI mode input :

```
exp2list(solve((x-1)*(x-2)))
```

Output :

```
[1, 2]
```

### 5.2.5 Transform a list into a boolean expression: list2exp

The `list2exp` command is the inverse of `exp2list`. It takes two arguments; a list [`val1, val2, ...`] of values and a variable name `var`.

`list2exp` returns the boolean expression ((`var = val1`) or (`var = val2`) or ...).

Input:

```
list2exp([0, 1], a)
```

Output:

```
((a=0) or (a=1))
```

Input:

```
list2exp(solve(x^2-1=0, x), x)
```

Output:

```
((x=-1) or (x=1))
```

Alternatively, each element of the list could be a list with  $n$  values, followed by a list of  $n$  variables. The output would be boolean expressions of the form ((`var1 = val1`) and (`var2 = val2`) ...) for each list of  $n$  values, combined with `ors`. Input:

```
list2exp ([[3, 9], [-1, 1]], [x, y])
```

Output:

```
((((x=3) and (y=9))) or (((x=-1) and (y=1))))
```

### 5.2.6 Evaluate booleans : evalb

Inside Maple, evalb evaluates an boolean expression. Since Xcas evaluates booleans automatically, evalb is only here for compatibility and is equivalent to eval

Input :

```
evalb(sqrt(2)>1.41)
```

or :

```
sqrt(2)>1.41
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
evalb(sqrt(2)>1.42)
```

or :

```
sqrt(2)>1.42
```

Output :

```
0
```

## 5.3 Bitwise operators

### 5.3.1 Operators bitor bitxor bitand

The integers may be written using hexadecimal notation 0x... for example 0x1f represents  $16+15=31$  in decimal. Integers may also be output in hexadecimal notation (click on the red CAS status button and select Base (Integers)).  
bitor is the logical inclusive or (bitwise).

Input :

```
bitor(0x12,0x38)
```

or :

```
bitor(18,56)
```

Output :

58

because :

18 is written 0x12 in base 16 or 0b010010 in base 2,

56 is written 0x38 in base 16 or 0b111000 in base 2,

hence bitor(18,56) is 0b111010 in base 2 and so is equal to 58.

bitxor is the logical exclusive or (bitwise).

Input :

`bitxor(0x12, 0x38)`

or :

`bitxor(18, 56)`

Output :

42

because :

18 is written 0x12 in base 16 and 0b010010 in base 2,

56 is written 0x38 in base 16 and 0b111000 in base 2,

`bitxor(18, 56)` is written 0b101010 in base 2 and so, is equal to 42.

`bitand` is the logical and (bitwise).

Input :

`bitand(0x12, 0x38)`

or :

`bitand(18, 56)`

Output :

16

because :

18 is written 0x12 in base 16 and 0b010010 in base 2,

56 is written 0x38 in base 16 and 0b111000 in base 2,

`bitand(18, 56)` is written 0b010000 in base 2 and so is equal to 16.

### 5.3.2 Bitwise Hamming distance : `hamdist`

The Hamming distance is the number of differences of the bits of the two arguments.

Input :

`hamdist(0x12, 0x38)`

or :

`hamdist(18, 56)`

Output :

3

because :

18 is written 0x12 in base 16 and 0b010010 in base 2,

56 is written 0x38 in base 16 and 0b111000 in base 2,

`hamdist(18, 56)` is equal to 1+0+1+0+1+0 and so is equal to 3.

## 5.4 Strings

### 5.4.1 Character and string : "

" is used to delimit a string. A character is a string of length one.  
Do not confuse " with ' (or quote) which is used to avoid evaluation of an expression . For example, "a" returns a string of one character but 'a' or quote(a) returns the variable a unevaluated.

When a string is input in a command line, it is evaluated to itself hence the output is the same string. Use + to concatenate two strings or a string and another object.

Example :

Input :

```
"Hello"
```

"Hello" is the input and also the output.

Input :

```
"Hello"+", how are you?"
```

Output :

```
"Hello, how are you?"
```

Index notation is used to get the n-th character of a string, (as for lists). Indices begin at 0 in Xcas mode, 1 in other modes.

Example :

Input :

```
"Hello"[1]
```

Output :

```
"e"
```

### 5.4.2 The newline character: \n

A newline can be inserted into a string with \n.

Input:

```
Hello\nHow are you?
```

Output:

```
Hello
How are you?
```

### 5.4.3 The length of a string: size length

The size (or length) command can take a string as an argument. It will return the length of the string.

Input:

```
size("hello")
```

Output:

#### 5.4.4 The left and right parts of a string: `left` `right`

The `left` command takes two arguments, a string `s` and a non-negative integer `n`. `left` returns the first `n` characters of the string.

Input:

```
left("hello", 3)
```

Output:

```
"hel"
```

Similarly, the `right` command returns the last `n` characters.

Input:

```
right("hello", 4)
```

Output:

```
"ello"
```

#### 5.4.5 First character, middle and end of a string : `head` `mid` `tail`

- `head(s)` returns the first character of the string `s`.

Input :

```
head("Hello")
```

Output :

```
"H"
```

- `mid(s, p, q)` returns the part of the string `s` of size `q` beginning with the character at index `p`.

Remember that the first index is 0 in Xcas mode.

Input :

```
mid("Hello", 1, 3)
```

Output :

```
"ell"
```

- `tail(s)` returns the string `s` without its first character.

Input :

```
tail("Hello")
```

Output :

```
"ello"
```

### 5.4.6 Concatenation of a sequence of words : `cumSum`

`cumSum` works on strings like it does on expressions by doing partial concatenation.

`cumSum` takes as argument a list of strings.

`cumSum` returns a list of strings where the element of index  $k$  is the concatenation of the strings with indices 0 to  $k$ .

Input :

```
cumSum("Hello, ","is ","that ","you?")
```

Output :

```
"Hello, ","Hello, is ","Hello, is that ","Hello, is  
that you?
```

### 5.4.7 ASCII code of a character : `ord`

`ord` takes as argument a string  $s$  (resp. a list  $l$  of strings).

`ord` returns the ASCII code of the first character of  $s$  (resp. the list of the ASCII codes of the first character of the elements of  $l$ ).

Input :

```
ord("a")
```

Output :

```
97
```

Input :

```
ord("abcd")
```

Output :

```
97
```

Input :

```
ord(["abcd", "cde"])
```

Output :

```
[97, 99]
```

Input :

```
ord(["a", "b", "c", "d"])
```

Output :

```
[97, 98, 99, 100]
```

**5.4.8 ASCII code of a string : asc**

`asc` takes as argument a string `s`.

`asc` returns the list of the ASCII codes of the characters of `s`.

Input :

```
asc ("abcd")
```

Output :

```
[ 97, 98, 99, 100 ]
```

Input :

```
asc ("a")
```

Output :

```
[ 97 ]
```

**5.4.9 String defined by the ASCII codes of its characters : char**

`char` takes as argument a list `l` of ASCII codes.

`char` returns the string whose characters have as ASCII codes the elements of the list `l`.

Input :

```
char ([ 97, 98, 99, 100 ])
```

Output :

```
"abcd"
```

Input :

```
char (97)
```

Output :

```
"a"
```

Input :

```
char (353)
```

Output :

```
"a"
```

because:

$353 - 256 = 97$ .

### 5.4.10 Find a character in a string : inString

inString takes two arguments : a string S and a character c.  
 inString tests if the character c is in the string S.  
 inString returns the index of its first occurrence or -1 if c is not in S.  
 Input :

```
inString("abcded", "d")
```

Output :

```
3
```

Input :

```
inString("abcd", "e")
```

Output :

```
-1
```

### 5.4.11 Concat objects into a string : cat

cat takes as argument a sequence of objects.  
 cat concatenates these objects into a string.  
 Input :

```
cat("abcd", 3, "d")
```

Output :

```
"abcd3d"
```

Input :

```
c:=5
```

```
cat("abcd", c, "e")
```

Output :

```
"abcd5e"
```

Input :

```
purge(c)
```

```
cat(15, c, 3)
```

Output :

```
"15c3"
```

**5.4.12 Add an object to a string : +**

+ is an infix operator (resp. '+' is a prefixed operator).

If + (resp. '+') takes as argument a string (resp. a sequence of objects with a string as first or second argument), the result is the concatenation of these objects into a string.

**warning**

+ is infix and '+' is prefixed.

Input :

```
'+' ("abcd", 3, "d")
```

Output :

```
"abcd"+3+"d"
```

Output :

```
"abcd3d"
```

Input :

```
c:=5
```

Then input:

```
"abcd"+c+"e"
```

or :

```
'+' ("abcd", c, "d")
```

Output :

```
"abcd5e"
```

**5.4.13 Transform an integer into a string : cat +**

Use cat with the integer as argument, or add the integer to an empty string

Input :

```
""+123
```

or :

```
cat (123)
```

Output :

```
"123"
```

#### 5.4.14 Transform a string into a number : expr

Use `expr`, the parser with a string representing a number.

- For integers, enter the string representing the integer without leading 0 for basis 10, with prefix `0x` for basis 16, `0` for basis 8 or `0b` for basis 2. Input :

```
expr("123")
```

Output :

123

Input :

```
expr("0123")
```

Output :

83

because :

$$1 * 8^2 + 2 * 8 + 3 = 83$$

Input :

```
expr("0x12f")
```

Output :

303

Because :  $1 * 16^2 + 2 * 16 + 15 = 303$

- For decimal numbers, use a string with a `.` or `e` inside.
- Input :

```
expr("123.4567")
```

Output :

123.4567

Input :

```
expr("123e-5")
```

Output :

0.00123

- Note that `expr` more generally transforms a string into a command if the command exists.

Input :

```
expr("a:=1")
```

Output :

```
1
```

Then, input :

```
a
```

Output :

```
1
```

## 5.5 Write an integer in base $b$ : convert

`convert` or `convertir` can do different kind of conversions depending on the option given as the second argument.

To convert an integer  $n$  into the list of its coefficients in base  $b$ , the option is `base`. The arguments of `convert` or `convertir` are an integer  $n$ , `base` and  $b$ , the value of the basis.

`convert` or `convertir` returns the list of coefficients in a  $b$  basis of the integer  $n$ .

Input :

```
convert(123,base,8)
```

Output :

```
[3, 7, 1]
```

To check the answer, input `expr("0173")` or `horner(revlist([3, 7, 1]), 8)` or `convert([3, 7, 1], base, 8)`, the output is 123

Input :

```
convert(142,base,12)
```

Output :

```
[10, 11]
```

To convert the list of coefficients of an integer  $n$  in base  $b$ , the option is also `base`. `convert` or `convertir` returns the integer  $n$ .

Input :

```
convert([3, 7, 1], base, 8)
```

or :

```
horner(revlist([3, 7, 1]), 8)
```

## Output :

123

**Input :**

```
convert([10,11],base,12)
```

or :

```
horner(revlist([10, 11]), 12)
```

## Output :

142

## 5.6 Integers (and Gaussian Integers)

For all functions in this section, you can use Gaussian integers (numbers of the form  $a + ib$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are in  $\mathbb{Z}$ ) in place of integers.

### 5.6.1 The factorial : factorial

Xcas can manage integers with unlimited precision, such as the following:

**Input :**

```
factorial(100)
```

## Output :

9332621544394415268169923885626670049071596826438162  
1468592963895217599993229915608941463976156518286253  
69792082722375825118521091686400000000000000000000000000000

## 5.6.2 GCD: gcd igcd

`gcd` or `igcd` denotes the gcd (greatest common divisor) of several integers (for polynomials, see also [5.30.7](#)).

`gcd` or `igcd` returns the GCD of integers.

**Input :**

qcd(18, 15)

**Output :**

3

**Input :**

qcd(18, 15, 21, 36)

**Output :**

3

Input :

$\text{gcd}([18, 15, 21, 36])$

Output :

3

We can also put as parameters two lists of same size (or a matrix with 2 rows), in this case  $\text{gcd}$  returns the greatest common divisor of the elements with same index (or in the same column).

Input :

$\text{gcd}([6, 10, 12], [21, 5, 8])$

or :

$\text{gcd}([[6, 10, 12], [21, 5, 8]])$

Output :

[3, 5, 4]

### An example

Find the greatest common divisor of  $4n + 1$  and  $5n + 3$  when  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

Input :

$f(n) := \text{gcd}(4*n+1, 5*n+3)$

Then, input :

```
essai(n):={  
    local j,a,L;  
    L:=NULL;  
    for (j:=-n; j<n; j++) {  
        a:=f(j);  
        if (a!=1) {  
            L:=L, [j,a];  
        }  
    }  
    return L;  
}
```

Then, input :

$\text{essai}(20)$

Output :

[-16, 7], [-9, 7], [-2, 7], [5, 7], [12, 7], [19, 7]

So we now have to prove that :

If  $n \neq 5+k*7$  (for  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ),  $4n+1$  and  $5n+3$  are mutually prime, and if  $n = 5+k*7$  (for  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), then the greatest common divisor of  $4n + 1$  and  $5n + 3$  is 7.

**5.6.3 GCD : Gcd**

`Gcd` is the inert form of `gcd`. See the section [5.30.7](#) for polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  for using this instruction.

Input :

```
Gcd(18,15)
```

Output :

```
gcd(18,15)
```

**5.6.4 GCD of a list of integers : lgcd**

`lgcd` has a list of integers (or of a list of polynomials) as argument.

`lgcd` returns the `gcd` of all integers of the list (or the `gcd` of all polynomials of the list).

Input :

```
lgcd([18,15,21,36])
```

Output :

```
3
```

**Remark**

`lgcd` does not accept two lists (even if they have the same size) as arguments.

**5.6.5 The least common multiple : lcm**

`lcm` returns the least common multiple of two integers (or of two polynomials, see also [5.30.10](#)).

Input :

```
lcm(18,15)
```

Output :

```
90
```

**5.6.6 Decomposition into prime factors : ifactor**

`ifactor` has an integer as parameter.

`ifactor` decomposes an integer into its prime factors.

Input :

```
ifactor(90)
```

Output :

```
2*3^2*5
```

Input :

```
ifactor(-90)
```

Output :

```
(-1)*2*3^2*5
```

### 5.6.7 List of prime factors : ifactors

`ifactors` has an integer (or a list of integers) as parameter.

`ifactors` decomposes the integer (or the integers of the list) into prime factors, but the result is given as a list (or a list of lists) in which each prime factor is followed by its multiplicity.

Input :

```
ifactors(90)
```

Output :

```
[2,1,3,2,5,1]
```

Input :

```
ifactors(-90)
```

Output :

```
[-1,1,2,1,3,2,5,1]
```

Input :

```
ifactor([36,52])
```

Output :

```
[[2,2,3,2],[2,2,13,1]]
```

### 5.6.8 Matrix of factors : maple\_ifactors

`maple_ifactors` has an integer  $n$  (or a list of integers) as parameter.

`maple_ifactors` decomposes the integer (or the integers of the list) into prime factors, but the output follows the Maple syntax :

it is a list with +1 or -1 (for the sign) and a matrix with 2 columns and where the lines are the prime factors and their multiplicity (or a list of lists...).

Input :

```
maple_ifactors(90)
```

Output :

```
[1, [[2,1],[3,2],[5,1]]]
```

Input :

```
maple_ifactor([36,52])
```

Output :

```
[[1, [[2,2],[3,2]]], [1, [[2,2],[13,1]]]]
```

**5.6.9 The divisors of a number : idivis divisors**

`idivis` or `divisors` gives the list of the divisors of a number (or of a list of numbers).

Input :

```
idivis(36)
```

Output :

```
[1, 2, 4, 3, 6, 12, 9, 18, 36]
```

Input :

```
idivis([36, 22])
```

Output :

```
[[1, 2, 4, 3, 6, 12, 9, 18, 36], [1, 2, 11, 22]]
```

**5.6.10 The integer Euclidean quotient : iquo intDiv div**

`iquo` (or `intDiv`) returns the integer quotient  $q$  of the Euclidean division of two integers  $a$  and  $b$  given as arguments. ( $a = b * q + r$  with  $0 \leq r < b$ ).

For Gaussian integers, we choose  $q$  so that  $b * q$  is as near by  $a$  as possible and it can be proved that  $r$  may be chosen so that  $|r|^2 \leq |b|^2/2$ .

Input :

```
iquo(148, 5)
```

Output :

```
29
```

`iquo` works with integers or with Gaussian integers.

Input :

```
iquo(factorial(148), factorial(145)+2 )
```

Output :

```
3176375
```

Input :

```
iquo(25+12*i, 5+7*i)
```

Output :

```
3-2*i
```

Here  $a - b * q = -4 + i$  and  $|-4 + i|^2 = 17 < |5 + 7 * i|^2/2 = 74/2 = 37$

The infix version of this command is `div`.

Input:

```
148 div 5
```

Output:

```
29
```

**5.6.11 The integer Euclidean remainder:** `irem remain smod mods mod %`

`irem` (or `remain`) returns the integer remainder  $r$  from the Euclidean division of two integers  $a$  and  $b$  given as arguments ( $a = b * q + r$  with  $0 \leq r < b$ ).

For Gaussian integers, we choose  $q$  so that  $b * q$  is as near to  $a$  as possible and it can be proved that  $r$  may be chosen so that  $|r|^2 \leq |b|^2/2$ .

Input :

```
irem(148, 5)
```

Output :

```
3
```

`irem` works with long integers or with Gaussian integers.

Example :

```
irem(factorial(148), factorial(45)+2 )
```

Output :

```
111615339728229933018338917803008301992120942047239639312
```

Another example

```
irem(25+12*i, 5+7*i)
```

Output :

```
-4+i
```

Here  $a - b * q = -4 + i$  and  $|-4 + i|^2 = 17 < |5 + 7 * i|^2/2 = 74/2 = 37$

`smod` or `mods` is a prefixed function and has two integers  $a$  and  $b$  as arguments. `smod` or `mods` returns the symmetric remainder  $s$  of the Euclidean division of the arguments  $a$  and  $b$  ( $a = b * q + s$  with  $-b/2 < s \leq b/2$ ).

Input :

```
smod(148, 5)
```

Output :

```
-2
```

`mod` (or `%`) is an infix function and has two integers  $a$  and  $b$  as arguments. `mod` (or `%`) returns  $r\%b$  of  $Z/bZ$  where  $r$  is the remainder of the Euclidean division of the arguments  $a$  and  $b$ .

Input :

```
148 mod 5
```

or :

```
148 % 5
```

Output :

```
3 % 5
```

Note that the answer  $3 \% 5$  is not an integer (3) but an element of  $Z/5Z$  (see 5.36 to have the possible operations in  $Z/5Z$ ).

**5.6.12 Euclidean quotient and euclidean remainder of two integers :**  
**iquorem**

`iquorem` returns the list of the quotient  $q$  and the remainder  $r$  of the Euclidean division between two integers  $a$  and  $b$  given as arguments ( $a = b * q + r$  with  $0 \leq r < b$ ).

Input :

```
iquorem(148, 5)
```

Output :

```
[29, 3]
```

**5.6.13 Test of evenness :** `even`

`even` takes as argument an integer  $n$ .

`even` returns 1 if  $n$  is even and returns 0 if  $n$  is odd.

Input :

```
even(148)
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
even(149)
```

Output :

```
0
```

**5.6.14 Test of oddness :** `odd`

`odd` takes as argument an integer  $n$ .

`odd` returns 1 if  $n$  is odd and returns 0 if  $n$  is even.

Input :

```
odd(148)
```

Output :

```
0
```

Input :

```
odd(149)
```

Output :

```
1
```

**5.6.15 Test of pseudo-primality : `is_pseudoprime`**

If `is_pseudoprime(n)` returns 2 (true), then  $n$  is prime.

If it returns 1, then  $n$  is pseudo-prime (most probably prime).

If it returns 0, then  $n$  is not prime.

**DEFINITION:** For numbers less than  $10^{14}$ , pseudo-prime and prime are equivalent. But for numbers greater than  $10^{14}$ , a pseudo-prime is a number with a large probability of being prime (cf. Rabin's Algorithm and Miller-Rabin's Algorithm in the Algorithmic part (menu Help->Manuals->Programming)).

**Input :**

```
is_pseudoprime(100003)
```

**Output :**

```
2
```

**Input :**

```
is_pseudoprime(9856989898997)
```

**Output :**

```
2
```

**Input :**

```
is_pseudoprime(14)
```

**Output :**

```
0
```

**Input :**

```
is_pseudoprime(9856989898997789789)
```

**Output :**

```
1
```

**5.6.16 Test of primality : `is_prime` `isprime` `isPrime`**

`is_prime(n)` returns 1 (true) if  $n$  is prime and 0 (false) if  $n$  is not prime.

`isprime` returns true or false.

Use the command `pari("isprime", n, 1)` to have a primality certificate (see the documentation PARI/GP with the menu Help->Manuals->PARI-GP) and `pari("isprime", n, 2)` to use the APRCL test.

**Input :**

```
is_prime(100003)
```

**Output :**

```
1
```

Input :

```
isprime(100003)
```

Output :

```
true
```

Input :

```
is_prime(98569898989987)
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
is_prime(14)
```

Output :

```
0
```

Input :

```
isprime(14)
```

Output :

```
false
```

Input :

```
pari("isprime", 9856989898997789789, 1)
```

This returns the coefficients giving the proof of primality by the  $p - 1$  Selfridge-Pocklington-Lehmer test :

```
[ [2, 2, 1], [19, 2, 1], [941, 2, 1], [1873, 2, 1], [94907, 2, 1] ]
```

Input :

```
isprime(9856989898997789789)
```

Output :

```
true
```

### 5.6.17 The smallest pseudo-prime greater than n : nextprime

`nextprime(n)` returns the smallest pseudo-prime (or prime) greater than  $n$ .

Input :

```
nextprime(75)
```

Output :

**5.6.18 The greatest pseudo-prime less than n : prevprime**

`prevprime(n)` returns the greatest pseudo-prime (or prime) less than  $n$ .

Input :

```
prevprime(75)
```

Output :

```
73
```

**5.6.19 The n-th pseudo-prime number : ithprime**

`ithprime(n)` returns the  $n$ -th pseudo-prime number.

Input :

```
ithprime(75)
```

Output :

```
379
```

Input :

```
ithprime(k) $ (k=1..20)
```

Output :

```
2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37, 41, 43, 47, 53, 59, 61, 67, 71
```

**5.6.20 The number of pseudo-primes less than or equal to n: nprimes**

`nprimes(n)` returns the number of pseudo-primes (or primes) less than or equal to  $n$ .

Input :

```
nprimes(5)
```

Output :

```
3
```

Input :

```
nprimes(10)
```

Output :

```
4
```

**5.6.21 Bézout's Identity : iegcd igcdex**

`iegcd(a,b)` or `igcdex(a,b)` returns the coefficients of the Bézout's Identity for two integers given as arguments.

`iegcd(a,b)` or `igcdex(a,b)` returns  $[u, v, d]$  such that  $au+bv=d$  and  $d=\gcd(a,b)$ .

Input :

```
iegcd(48,30)
```

Output :

```
[2,-3,6]
```

In other words :

$$2 \cdot 48 + (-3) \cdot 30 = 6$$

**5.6.22 Solving  $au+bv=c$  in  $\mathbb{Z}$ : iabcuv**

`iabcuv(a,b,c)` returns  $[u, v]$  so that  $au+bv=c$ .

$c$  must be a multiple of  $\gcd(a,b)$  for the existence of a solution.

Input :

```
iabcuv(48,30,18)
```

Output :

```
[6,-9]
```

**5.6.23 Chinese remainders : ichinrem ichrem**

`ichinrem([a,p],[b,q])` or `ichrem([a,p],[b,q])` returns a list  $[c, \text{lcm}(p, q)]$  of 2 integers.

The first number  $c$  is such that

$$\forall k \in \mathbb{Z}, \quad d = c + k \times \text{lcm}(p, q)$$

has the properties

$$d = a \pmod{p}, \quad d = b \pmod{q}$$

If  $p$  and  $q$  are coprime, a solution  $d$  always exists and all the solutions are congruent modulo  $p * q$ .

**Examples :**

Solve :

$$\begin{cases} x &= 3 \pmod{5} \\ x &= 9 \pmod{13} \end{cases}$$

Input :

```
ichinrem([3,5],[9,13])
```

or :

```
ichrem([3,5],[9,13])
```

Output :

$[-17, 65]$

so  $x = -17 \pmod{65}$

We can also input :

`ichrem(3%5, 9%13)`

Output :

$-17\%65$

Solve :

$$\begin{cases} x = 3 \pmod{5} \\ x = 4 \pmod{7} \\ x = 1 \pmod{9} \end{cases}$$

First input :

`tmp:=ichinrem([3, 5], [4, 7])`

or :

`tmp:=ichrem([3, 5], [4, 7])`

Output :

$[-17, 35]$

Then input :

`ichinrem([1, 9], tmp)`

or :

`ichrem([1, 9], tmp)`

Output :

$[-17, 315]$

hence  $x = -17 \pmod{315}$

Alternative input:

`ichinrem([3%5, 4%7, 1%9])`

Output :

$-17\%315$

### Remark

`ichrem`(or `ichinrem`) may be used to find the coefficients of a polynomial whose equivalence classes are known modulo several integers, for example find  $ax + b$  modulo  $315 = 5 \times 7 \times 9$  under the assumptions:

$$\begin{cases} a = 3 \pmod{5} \\ a = 4 \pmod{7} \\ a = 1 \pmod{9} \end{cases}, \quad \begin{cases} b = 1 \pmod{5} \\ b = 2 \pmod{7} \\ b = 3 \pmod{9} \end{cases}$$

Input :

`ichrem( (3x+1)%5, (4x+2)%7, (x+3)%9)`

Output :

`(-17%315x x+156%315`

hence  $a = -17 \pmod{315}$  and  $b = 156 \pmod{315}$ .

### 5.6.24 Chinese remainders for lists of integers : `chrem`

`chrem` takes as argument 2 lists of integers of the same size.

`chrem` returns a list of 2 integers.

For example, `chrem([a,b,c], [p,q,r])` returns the list `[x, lcm(p,q,r)]` where  $x = a \pmod{p}$  and  $x = b \pmod{q}$  and  $x = c \pmod{r}$ .

A solution  $x$  always exists if  $p, q, r$  are mutually primes, and all the solutions are equal modulo  $p * q * r$ .

BE CAREFUL with the order of the parameters, indeed :

`chrem([a,b], [p,q])=ichrem([a,p], [b,q])=ichinrem([a,p], [b,q])`

#### Examples :

Solve :

$$\begin{cases} x = 3 \pmod{5} \\ x = 9 \pmod{13} \end{cases}$$

Input :

`chrem([3, 9], [5, 13])`

Output :

`[-17, 65]`

so,  $x = -17 \pmod{65}$

Solve :

$$\begin{cases} x = 3 \pmod{5} \\ x = 4 \pmod{6} \\ x = 1 \pmod{9} \end{cases}$$

Input :

`chrem([3, 4, 1], [5, 6, 9])`

Output :

`[28, 90]`

so  $x = 28 \pmod{90}$

#### Remark

`chrem` may be used to find the coefficients of a polynomial whose equivalence classes are known modulo several integers, for example find  $ax + b$  modulo 315 =  $5 \times 7 \times 9$  under the assumptions:

$$\begin{cases} a = 3 \pmod{5} \\ a = 4 \pmod{7} \\ a = 1 \pmod{9} \end{cases}, \quad \begin{cases} b = 1 \pmod{5} \\ b = 2 \pmod{7} \\ b = 3 \pmod{9} \end{cases}$$

Input :

```
chrem([3x+1, 4x+2, x+3], [5, 7, 9])
```

Output :

```
[-17x+156, 315]
```

hence,  $a = -17 \pmod{315}$  and  $b = 156 \pmod{315}$ .

### 5.6.25 Solving $a^2 + b^2 = p$ in $\mathbb{Z}$ : pa2b2

pa2b2 decompose a prime integer  $p$  congruent to 1 modulo 4, as a sum of squares :  $p = a^2 + b^2$ . The result is the list  $[a, b]$ .

Input :

```
pa2b2(17)
```

Output :

```
[4, 1]
```

indeed  $17 = 4^2 + 1^2$

### 5.6.26 The Euler indicatrix : euler phi

euler (or phi) returns the Euler indicatrix for a integer.

euler(n) (or phi(n)) is equal to the number of integers less than n and prime with n.

Input :

```
euler(21)
```

Output :

```
12
```

In other words  $E = \{2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 15, 16, 17, 19\}$  is the set of integers less than 21 and coprime with 21. There are 12 members in this set, hence  $\text{Cardinal}(E) = 12$ .

Euler has introduced this function to generalize the little Fermat theorem:

If  $a$  and  $n$  are mutually prime then  $a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$

### 5.6.27 Legendre symbol : legendre\_symbol

If  $n$  is prime, we define the Legendre symbol of  $a$  written  $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$  by :

$$\left(\frac{a}{n}\right) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } a = 0 \pmod{n} \\ 1 & \text{if } a \neq 0 \pmod{n} \text{ and if } a = b^2 \pmod{n} \\ -1 & \text{if } a \neq 0 \pmod{n} \text{ and if } a \neq b^2 \pmod{n} \end{cases}$$

Some properties

- If  $n$  is prime :

$$a^{\frac{n-1}{2}} \equiv \left(\frac{a}{n}\right) \pmod{n}$$

•

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{p}{q}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{q}{p}\right) &= (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \cdot (-1)^{\frac{q-1}{2}} \text{ if } p \text{ and } q \text{ are odd and positive} \\ \left(\frac{2}{p}\right) &= (-1)^{\frac{p^2-1}{8}} \\ \left(\frac{-1}{p}\right) &= (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}\end{aligned}$$

`legendre_symbol` takes two arguments  $a$  and  $n$  and returns the Legendre symbol  $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ .

Input :

```
legendre_symbol(26, 17)
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
legendre_symbol(27, 17)
```

Output :

```
-1
```

Input :

```
legendre_symbol(34, 17)
```

Output :

```
0
```

### 5.6.28 Jacobi symbol : `jacobi_symbol`

If  $n$  is not prime, the Jacobi symbol of  $a$ , denoted as  $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ , is defined from the Legendre symbol and from the decomposition of  $n$  into prime factors. Let

$$n = p_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots p_k^{\alpha_k}$$

where  $p_j$  is prime and  $\alpha_j$  is an integer for  $j = 1..k$ . The Jacobi symbol of  $a$  is defined by :

$$\left(\frac{a}{n}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{p_1}\right)^{\alpha_1} \cdots \left(\frac{a}{p_k}\right)^{\alpha_k}$$

`jacobi_symbol` takes two arguments  $a$  and  $n$ , and it returns the Jacobi symbol  $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ .

Input :

```
jacobi_symbol(25, 12)
```

Output :

1

Input :

```
jacobi_symbol(35,12)
```

Output :

-1

Input :

```
jacobi_symbol(33,12)
```

Output :

0

### 5.6.29 Listing all compositions of an integer into $k$ parts : `icomp`

`icomp` accepts two or three arguments : a positive integer  $n$ , a positive integer  $k$  not larger than  $n$  and optionally `zeros=true` or `zeros=false`. The return value is the list of all compositions of  $n$  into  $k$  parts. Each composition is a list of nonnegative integers which sum up to  $n$ . If the option `zeros` is set to `true` (which is the default), a part can have zero value. Else, each part has nonzero (positive) value.

For example, input :

```
icomp(4,2)
```

Output :

```
[[4,0],[3,1],[2,2],[1,3],[0,4]]
```

Input :

```
icomp(6,3,zeros=false)
```

Output :

```
[[4,1,1],[3,2,1],[2,3,1],[1,4,1],[3,1,2],  
[2,2,2],[1,3,2],[2,1,3],[1,2,3],[1,1,4]]
```

## 5.7 Combinatorial analysis

### 5.7.1 Factorial : `factorial` !

`factorial` (prefix) or `!` (postfix) takes as argument an integer  $n$ .  
`factorial(n)` or `n!` returns  $n!$ .

Input :

```
factorial(10)
```

or

10!

Output :

```
3628800
```

**5.7.2 Binomial coefficients : binomial comb nCr**

comb or nCr or binomial takes as argument two integers  $n$  and  $p$ .  
 comb( $n, p$ ) or nCr( $n, p$ ) or binomial( $n, p$ ) returns  $\binom{n}{p} = C_n^p$ .  
 Input :

```
comb(5, 2)
```

Output :

```
10
```

**Remark**

binomial (unlike comb, nCr) may have a third real argument, in this case binomial( $n, p, a$ ) returns  $\binom{n}{p} a^p (1 - a)^{n-p}$ .

**5.7.3 Permutations : perm nPr**

perm or nPr takes as arguments two integers  $n$  and  $p$ .  
 perm( $n, p$ ) or nPr( $n, p$ ) returns  $P_n^p$ .  
 Input :

```
perm(5, 2)
```

Output :

```
20
```

**5.7.4 Random integers : rand**

rand takes as argument an integer  $n$  or no argument.

- rand( $n$ ) returns a random integer  $p$  such that  $0 \leq p < n$ .  
 Input :

```
rand(10)
```

Output for example :

```
8
```

- rand() returns a random integer  $p$  such that  $0 \leq p < 2^{31}$  (or on 64 bits architecture  $0 \leq p < 2^{63}$ ).

Input :

```
rand()
```

Output for example :

```
846930886
```

### 5.7.5 Wilf-Zeilberger pairs: `wz_certificate`

The `wz_certificate` takes four arguments; an expression  $U(n, k)$  in two variables, an expression  $\text{res}(k)$  in one of the variables, the variable  $n$  and the variable  $k$ .

`wz_certificate` returns the Wilf-Zeilberger certificate  $R(n, k)$  for the identity  $\sum(U(n, k), k=-\infty..+\infty) = \text{res}(n)$ .

The Wilf-Zeilberger certificate  $R(n, k)$  is used to prove the identity

$$\sum_k U(n, k) = C \text{res}(n)$$

for some constant  $C$  (typically 1) whose value can be determined by evaluating both sides for some value of  $k$ . To see how that works, note that the above identity is equivalent to

$$\sum_k F(n, k)$$

being constant, where  $F(n, k) = U(n, k)/\text{res}(n)$ . The Wilf-Zeilberger certificate is a rational function  $R(n, k)$  that make  $F(n, k)$  and  $G(n, k) = R(n, k)F(n, k)$  a Wilf-Zeilberger pair, meaning

- $F(n+1, k) - F(n, k) = G(n, k+1) - G(n, k)$  for integers  $n \geq 0, k$ .
- $\lim_{k \rightarrow \pm\infty} G(n, k) = 0$  for each  $n \geq 0$ .

To see how this helps, adding the first equation from  $k = -M$  to  $k = N$  gives us  $\sum_{k=-M}^N (F(n+1, k) - F(n, k)) = \sum_{k=-M}^N (G(n, k+1) - G(n, k))$ . The right-hand side is a telescoping series, and so the equality can be written

$$\sum_{k=-M}^N F(n+1, k) - \sum_{k=-M}^N F(n, k) = G(n, N+1) - G(n, -M).$$

Taking the limit as  $N, M \rightarrow \infty$  and using the second condition of Wilf-Zeilberger pairs, we get

$$\sum_k F(n+1, k) = \sum_k F(n, k)$$

and so  $\sum_k F(n, k)$  does not depend on  $n$ , and so is a constant.

For example, to show

$$\sum_k (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} \binom{2k}{k} 4^{n-k} = \binom{2n}{n}$$

Input:

```
wz_certificate((-1)^k * comb(n, k) * comb(2k, k) * 4^(n-k), comb(2n, n), n, k)
```

Output:

```
(2*k-1) / (2*n+1)
```

This means that  $R(n, k) = (2k - 1)/(2n + 1)$  is a Wilf-Zeilberger certificate; in other words  $F(n, k) = (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} \binom{2k}{k} 4^{n-k} / \binom{2n}{n}$  and  $G(n, k) = R(n, k)F(n, k)$  are a Wilf-Zeilberger pair. So  $\sum_k F(n, k)$  is a constant. Since  $F(0, 0) = 1$  and  $F(0, k) = 0$  for  $k > 0$ ,  $\sum_k F(0, k) = 1$  and so  $\sum_k F(n, k) = 1$  for all  $n$ , showing

$$\sum_k (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} \binom{2k}{k} 4^{n-k} = \binom{2n}{n}.$$

## 5.8   Rationals

### 5.8.1   Transform a floating point number into a rational : `exact float2rational`

`float2rational` or `exact` takes as argument a floating point number  $d$  and returns a rational number  $q$  close to  $d$  such that  $\text{abs}(d-q) < \text{epsilon}$ . `epsilon` is defined in the `cas` configuration (`Cfg` menu) or with the `cas_setup` command.

Input :

```
float2rational(0.3670520231)
```

Output when `epsilon=1e-10`:

```
127/346
```

Input :

```
evalf(363/28)
```

Output :

```
12.9642857143
```

Input :

```
float2rational(12.9642857143)
```

Output :

```
363/28
```

If two representations are mixed, for example :

```
1/2+0.7
```

the rational is converted to a float, output :

```
1.2
```

Input :

```
1/2+float2rational(0.7)
```

Output :

```
6/5
```

**5.8.2 Integer and fractional part :** propfrac propFrac

propfrac (A/B) or propFrac (A/B) returns

$$q + \frac{r}{b} \text{ with } 0 \leq r < b$$

if  $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{a}{b}$  with  $\gcd(a, b) = 1$  and  $a = bq + r$ .

For rational fractions, cf. 5.33.8.

Input :

```
propfrac(42/15)
```

Output :

```
2+4/5
```

Input :

```
propfrac(43/12)
```

Output :

```
3+7/12
```

**5.8.3 Numerator of a fraction after simplification :** numergetNum

numer or getNum takes as argument a fraction and returns the numerator of this fraction after simplification (for rational fractions, see 5.33.2).

Input :

```
numer(42/12)
```

or :

```
getNum(42/12)
```

Output :

```
7
```

To avoid simplifications, the argument must be quoted (for rational fractions see 5.33.1).

Input :

```
numer('42/12')
```

or :

```
getNum('42/12')
```

Output :

```
42
```

**5.8.4 Denominator of a fraction after simplification :** `denom getDenom`

`denom` or `getDenom` takes as argument a fraction and returns the denominator of this fraction after simplification (for rational fractions see [5.33.4](#)).

Input :

```
denom(42/12)
```

or :

```
getDenom(42/12)
```

Output :

```
2
```

To avoid simplifications, the argument must be quoted (for rational fractions see [5.33.3](#)).

Input :

```
denom('42/12')
```

or :

```
getDenom('42/12')
```

Output :

```
12
```

**5.8.5 Numerator and denominator of a fraction :** `f2nd fxnd`

`f2nd` (or `fxnd`) takes as argument a fraction and returns the list of the numerator and denominator of this fraction after simplification (for rational fractions see [5.33.5](#)).

Input :

```
f2nd(42/12)
```

Output :

```
[7, 2]
```

**5.8.6 Simplification of a pair of integers :** `simp2`

`simp2` takes as argument two integers or a list of two integers which represent a fraction (for two polynomials see [5.33.6](#)).

`simp2` returns the list of the numerator and the denominator of an irreducible representation of this fraction (i.e. after simplification).

Input :

```
simp2(18, 15)
```

Output :

```
[6, 5]
```

Input :

```
simp2([42, 12])
```

Output :

```
[7, 2]
```

### 5.8.7 Continued fraction representation of a real : `dfc`

`dfc` takes as argument a real or a rational or a floating point number  $a$  and an integer  $n$  (or a real `epsilon`).

`dfc` returns the list of the continued fraction representation of  $a$  of order  $n$  (or with precision `epsilon` i.e. the continued fraction representation which approximates  $a$  or `evalf(a)` with precision `epsilon`, by default `epsilon` is the value of the `epsilon` defined in the `cas` configuration with the menu `Cfg▶Cas Configuration`).

convert with the option `confrac` has a similar functionality: in that case the value of `epsilon` is the value of the `epsilon` defined in the `cas` configuration with the menu `Cfg▶Cas Configuration` (see [5.24.27](#)) and the answer may be stored in an optional third argument.

#### Remarks

- If the last element of the result is a list, the representation is ultimately periodic, and the last element is the period. It means that the real is a root of an equation of order 2 with integer coefficients.
- if the last element of the result is not an integer, it represents a remainder  $r$  ( $a = a_0 + 1/\dots + 1/a_n + 1/r$ ). Be aware that this remainder has lost most of its accuracy.

If `dfc(a)=[a0,a1,a2,[b0,b1]]` that means :

$$a = a_0 + \cfrac{1}{a_1 + \cfrac{1}{a_2 + \cfrac{1}{b_0 + \cfrac{1}{b_1 + \cfrac{1}{b_0 + \dots}}}}}$$

If `dfc(a)=[a0,a1,a2,r]` that means :

$$a = a_0 + \cfrac{1}{a_1 + \cfrac{1}{a_2 + \cfrac{1}{r}}}$$

Input :

```
dfc(sqrt(2), 5)
```

Output :

```
[1, 2, [2]]
```

Input :

```
dfc(evalf(sqrt(2)), 1e-9)
```

or :

```
dfc(sqrt(2), 1e-9)
```

Output :

```
[1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2]
```

Input :

```
convert(sqrt(2),confrac,'dev')
```

Output (if in the cas configuration epsilon=1e-9):

```
[1,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2]
```

and [1,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2,2] is stored in dev.

Input :

```
dfc(9976/6961,5)
```

Output :

```
[1,2,3,4,5,43/7]
```

Input to verify:

```
1+1/(2+1/(3+1/(4+1/(5+7/43))))
```

Output :

```
9976/6961
```

Input :

```
convert(9976/6961,confrac,'l')
```

Output (if in the cas configuration epsilon=1e-9):

```
[1,2,3,4,5,6,7]
```

and [1,2,3,4,5,6,7] is stored in l

Input :

```
dfc(pi,5)
```

Output :

```
[3,7,15,1,292,(-113*pi+355)/(33102*pi-103993)]
```

Input :

```
dfc(evalf(pi),5)
```

Output (if floats are hardware floats, e.g. for Digits=12):

```
[3,7,15,1,292,1.57581843574]
```

Input :

```
dfc(evalf(pi),1e-9)
```

or :

```
dfc(pi,1e-9)
```

or (if in the cas configuration epsilon=1e-9):

```
convert(pi,confrac,'ll')
```

Output :

```
[3,7,15,1,292]
```

### 5.8.8 Transform a continued fraction representation into a real : `dfc2f`

`dfc2f` takes as argument a list representing a continued fraction, namely

- a list of integers for a rational number
- a list whose last element is a list for an ultimately periodic representation, i.e. a quadratic number, that is a root of a second order equation with integer coefficients.
- or a list with a remainder  $r$  as last element ( $a = a_0 + 1/\dots + 1/a_n + 1/r$ ).

`dfc2f` returns the rational number or the quadratic number with the argument as continued fraction representation.

Input :

```
dfc2f([1, 2, [2]])
```

Output :

```
1/(1/(1+sqrt(2))+2)+1
```

After simplification with `normal` :

```
sqrt(2)
```

Input :

```
dfc2f([1, 2, 3])
```

Output :

```
10/7
```

Input :

```
normal(dfc2f([3, 3, 6, [3, 6]]))
```

Output :

```
sqrt(11)
```

Input :

```
dfc2f([1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7])
```

Output :

```
9976/6961
```

Input to verify :

```
1+1/(2+1/(3+1/(4+1/(5+1/(6+1/7)))))
```

Output :

```
9976/6961
```

Input :

```
dfc2f([1,2,3,4,5,43/7])
```

Output :

```
9976/6961
```

Input to verify :

```
1+1/(2+1/(3+1/(4+1/(5+7/43))))
```

Output :

```
9976/6961
```

### 5.8.9 The $n$ -th Bernoulli number : bernoulli

`bernoulli` takes as argument an integer  $n$ .

`bernoulli` returns the  $n$ -th Bernoulli number  $B(n)$ .

The Bernoulli numbers are defined by :

$$\frac{t}{e^t - 1} = \sum_{n=0}^{+\infty} \frac{B(n)}{n!} t^n$$

Bernoulli polynomials  $B_k$  are defined by :

$$B_0 = 1, \quad B_k'(x) = kB_{k-1}(x), \quad \int_0^1 B_k(x) dx = 0$$

and the relation  $B(n) = B_n(0)$  holds.

Input :

```
bernoulli(6)
```

Output :

```
1/42
```

### 5.8.10 Access to PARI/GP commands: pari

- `pari` with a string as first argument (the PARI command name) execute the corresponding PARI command with the remaining arguments. For example `pari ("weber", 1+i)` executes the PARI command `weber` with the argument `1+i`.
- `pari` without argument exports all PARI/GP functions
  - with the same command name if they are not already defined inside Xcas
  - with their original command name with the prefix `pari_`

For example, after calling `pari()`, `pari_weber(1+i)` or `weber(1+i)` will execute the PARI command `weber` with the argument `1+i`.

The documentation of PARI/GP is available with the menu Help->Manuals.

## 5.9 Real numbers

### 5.9.1 Eval a real at a given precision : evalf and Digits, DIGITS

- A real number is an exact number and its numeric evaluation at a given precision is a floating number represented in base 2.
- The precision of a floating number is the number of bits of its mantissa, which is at least 53 (hardware float numbers, also known as `double`). Floating numbers are displayed in base 10 with a number of digits controlled by the user either by assigning the `Digits` variable or by modifying the Cas configuration. By default `Digits` is equal to 12. The number of digits displayed controls the number of bits of the mantissa, if `Digits` is less than 15, 53 bits are used, if `Digits` is strictly greater than 15, the number of bits is a roundoff of `Digits` times the log of 10 in base 2.
- An expression is coerced into a floating number with the `evalf` command. `evalf` may have an optional second argument which will be used to evaluate with a given precision.
  - Note that if an expression contains a floating number, evaluation will try to convert other arguments to floating point numbers in order to coerce the whole expression to a single floating number.

Input :

$1+1/2$

Output :

$3/2$

Input :

$1.0+1/2$

Output :

$1.5$

Input:

`exp(pi*sqrt(20))`

Output :

`exp(pi*2*sqrt(5))`

With `evalf`, input :

`evalf(exp(pi*2*sqrt(5)))`

Output :

$1263794.75367$

Input :

1.1^20

Output :

6.72749994933

Input :

$\text{sqrt}(2)^{21}$

Output :

$\text{sqrt}(2) * 2^{10}$

Input for a result with 30 digits :

Digits:=30

Input for the numeric value of  $e^{\pi\sqrt{163}}$ :

`evalf(exp(pi*sqrt(163)))`

Output :

0.26253741264076874399999999985e18

Note that Digits is now set to 30. If you don't want to change the value of Digits you may input

`evalf(exp(pi*sqrt(163)), 30)`

### 5.9.2 Usual infix functions on reals : +, -, \*, /, ^

`+, -, *, /, ^` are the usual operators to do additions, subtractions, multiplications, divisions and for raising to a power.

Input :

3+2

Output :

5

Input :

3-2

Output :

1

Input :

3\*2

Output :

6

Input :

$3/2$

Output :

$3/2$

Input :

$3.2/2.1$

Output :

$1.52380952381$

Input :

$3^2$

Output :

$9$

Input :

$3.2^2.1$

Output :

$11.5031015682$

### Remark

You may use the square key or the cube key if your keyboard has one, for example :  $3^2$  returns 9.

### Remark on non integral powers

- If  $x$  is not an integer, then  $a^x = \exp(x \ln(a))$ , hence  $a^x$  is well-defined only for  $a > 0$  if  $x$  is not rational. If  $x$  is rational and  $a < 0$ , the principal determination of the logarithm is used, leading to a complex number.
  - Hence be aware of the difference between  $\sqrt[n]{a}$  and  $a^{\frac{1}{n}}$  when  $n$  is an odd integer.
- For example, to draw the graph of  $y = \sqrt[3]{x^3 - x^2}$ , input :

```
plotfunc(ifte(x>0, (x^3-x^2)^(1/3),
              -(x^2-x^3)^(1/3)), x, xstep=0.01)
```

You might also input :

```
plotimplicit(y^3=x^3-x^2)
```

but this is much slower and much less accurate.

### 5.9.3 Usual prefixed functions on reals : rdiv

`rdiv` is the prefixed form of the division function.

Input :

```
rdiv(3,2)
```

Output :

```
3/2
```

Input :

```
rdiv(3.2,2.1)
```

Output :

```
1.52380952381
```

### 5.9.4 *n*-th root : root

`root` takes two arguments : an integer  $n$  and a number  $a$ .

`root` returns the  $n$ -th root of  $a$  (i.e.  $a^{1/n}$ ). If  $a < 0$ , the  $n$ -th root is a complex number of argument  $2\pi/n$ .

Input :

```
root(3,2)
```

Output :

```
2^(1/3)
```

Input :

```
root(3,2.0)
```

Output :

```
1.259921049892
```

Input :

```
root(3,sqrt(2))
```

Output :

```
2^(1/6)
```

### 5.9.5 The exponential integral function: **Ei**

The **Ei** command takes as argument a complex number.

**Ei** returns the value of the exponential integral at the argument.

For non-zero real numbers  $x$ ,

$$Ei(x) = \int_{t=-\infty}^x \frac{\exp(t)}{t} dt.$$

For  $x > 0$ , this integral is improper but the principal value exists. This function satisfies  $Ei(0) = -\infty$ ,  $Ei(-\infty) = 0$ .

Since

$$\frac{\exp(x)}{x} = \frac{1}{x} + 1 + \frac{x}{2!} + \frac{x^2}{3!} + \dots,$$

the *Ei* function can be extended to  $\mathbb{C} - \{0\}$  (with a branch cut on the positive real axis) by

$$Ei(z) = \ln(z) + \gamma + x + \frac{x^2}{2 \cdot 2!} + \frac{x^3}{3 \cdot 3!} + \dots$$

where  $\gamma = 0.57721566490\dots$  is Euler's constant.

Input:

```
Ei(1.0)
```

Output:

```
1.89511781636
```

Input:

```
Ei(-1.0)
```

Output:

```
-0.219383934396
```

Input:

```
Ei(1.) - Ei(-1.)
```

Output:

```
2.11450175075
```

Input:

```
int((exp(x)-1)/x, x=-1..1.)
```

Output:

```
2.11450175075
```

The input

Input:

```
evalf(Ei(-1) - sum((-1)^n/n/n!, n=1..100))
```

approximates Euler's constant

Output:

0.577215664902

The `Ei` command can also take two arguments, where the second argument is a positive integer indicating other types of exponential integrals;  $Ei(x, n) = E_n(x)$ . Specifically:

`Ei(a, 1) = -Ei(-a)`

`Ei(a, 2) = exp(-a) + a*Ei(-a) = exp(-a) - a*Ei(a, 1)` and  
for  $n \geq 2$ ,  $Ei(a, n) = (\exp(-a) - a*Ei(a, n-1)) / (n-1)$

### 5.9.6 The logarithmic integral function:`Li`

The `Li` command takes as argument a complex number.

`Li` returns the value of the logarithmic integral function  $Li$  at the point, where

$$Li(x) = Ei(\ln(x)) = \int_{t=0}^{\exp(x)} \frac{1}{\ln(t)} dt$$

Input:

`Li(2.0)`

Output:

1.04516378012

### 5.9.7 The cosine integral function:`Ci`

The `Ci` command takes as argument a complex number.

`Ci` returns the value of the cosine integral function  $Ci$  at the point, where

$$Ci(x) = \int_{+\infty}^x \frac{\cos(t)}{t} dt = \ln(t) + \gamma + \int_{t=0}^x \frac{\cos(t) - 1}{t} dt$$

This satisfies  $Ci(0) = -\infty$ ,  $Ci(-\infty) = i\pi$  and  $Ci(+\infty) = 0$ .

Input:

`Ci(1.0)`

Output:

0.337403922901

Input:

`Ci(-1.0)`

Output:

0.337403922901+3.14159265359\*i

Input:

`Ci(1.0) - Ci(-1.0)`

Output:

-3.14159265359\*i

### 5.9.8 The sine integral function:**Si**

The **Si** command takes as argument a complex number.

**Si** returns the value of the sine integral function  $Si$  at the point, where

$$Si(x) = \int_0^x \frac{\sin(t)}{t} dt$$

This satisfies  $Si(0) = 0$ ,  $Si(-\infty) = -\pi/2$  and  $Si(+\infty) = \pi/2$ . Also note that  $Si$  is an odd function.

Input:

```
Si (1.0)
```

Output:

```
0.946083070367
```

Input:

```
Si (-1.0)
```

Output:

```
-0.946083070367
```

### 5.9.9 The Heaviside function: **Heaviside**

The **Heaviside** command takes as argument a real number.

**Heaviside** returns the value of the Heaviside function; namely 0 if the input is negative, 1 otherwise.

Input:

```
Heaviside (2)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
Heaviside (-4)
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 5.9.10 The Dirac distribution: **Dirac**

The **Dirac** command takes as input a number.

**Dirac** returns infinity if the number is 0, it returns 0 otherwise.

**Dirac** represents the distribution which is the derivative of the Heaviside function. This means that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \text{Dirac}(x) dx = 1$$

and, in fact,  $\int_a^b \text{Dirac}(x) dx$  is 1 if  $[a, b]$  contains 0 and the integral is 0 otherwise. The defining property of the Dirac distribution is that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \text{Dirac}(x) f(x) dx = f(0)$$

and consequently

$$\int_a^b \text{Dirac}(x - c) f(x) dx = f(c)$$

as long as  $c$  is in  $[a, b]$ .

Input:

```
int(Dirac(x)*sin(x), x, -1, 2)
```

Output:

```
sin(0)
```

Input:

```
int(Dirac(x-1)*sin(x), x, -1, 2)
```

Output:

```
sin(1)
```

### 5.9.11 Error function : **erf**

**erf** takes as argument a number  $a$ .

**erf** returns the floating point value of the error function at  $x = a$ , where the error function is defined by :

$$\text{erf}(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^x e^{-t^2} dt$$

The normalization is chosen so that:

$$\text{erf}(+\infty) = 1, \quad \text{erf}(-\infty) = -1$$

since :

$$\int_0^{+\infty} e^{-t^2} dt = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$$

Input :

```
erf(1)
```

Output :

0.84270079295

Input :

`erf(1/(sqrt(2)))*1/2+0.5`

Output :

0.841344746069

### Remark

The relation between `erf` and `normal_cdf` is :

$$\text{normal\_cdf}(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\text{erf}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$$

Indeed, making the change of variable  $t = u * \sqrt{2}$  in

$$\text{normal\_cdf}(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_0^x e^{-t^2/2} dt$$

gives :

$$\text{normal\_cdf}(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^{\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}} e^{-u^2} du = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\text{erf}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$$

Check :

`normal_cdf(1)=0.841344746069`

### 5.9.12 Complementary error function: `erfc`

`erfc` takes as argument a number  $a$ .

`erfc` returns the value of the complementary error function at  $x = a$ , this function is defined by :

$$\text{erfc}(x) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_x^{+\infty} e^{-t^2} dt = 1 - \text{erf}(x)$$

Hence  $\text{erfc}(0) = 1$ , since :

$$\int_0^{+\infty} e^{-t^2} dt = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}$$

Input :

`erfc(1)`

Output :

0.15729920705

Input :

`1- erfc(1/(sqrt(2)))*1/2`

Output :

0.841344746069

### Remark

The relation between `erfc` and `normal_cdf` is :

$$\text{normal\_cdf}(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \text{erfc}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$$

Check :

`normal_cdf(1)=0.841344746069`

### 5.9.13 The $\Gamma$ function : Gamma

`Gamma` takes as argument a number  $a$ .

`Gamma` returns the value of the  $\Gamma$  function in  $a$ , defined by :

$$\Gamma(x) = \int_0^{+\infty} e^{-t} t^{x-1} dt, \text{ if } x > 0$$

If  $x$  is a positive integer,  $\Gamma$  is computed by applying the recurrence :

$$\Gamma(x+1) = x * \Gamma(x), \quad \Gamma(1) = 1$$

Hence :

$$\Gamma(n+1) = n!$$

Input :

`Gamma(5)`

Output :

24

Input :

`Gamma(0.7)`

Output :

1.29805533265

Input :

`Gamma(-0.3)`

Output :

-4.32685110883

Indeed : `Gamma(0.7)=-0.3*Gamma(-0.3)`

Input :

`Gamma(-1.3)`

Output :

3.32834700679

Indeed `Gamma(0.7)=-0.3*Gamma(-0.3)=(-0.3)*(-1.3)*Gamma(-1.3)`

### 5.9.14 The upper incomplete $\gamma$ function: **ugamma**

The **ugamma** command takes two arguments, a number  $a$  and a number  $b \geq 0$ . **ugamma** returns the value of the upper incomplete  $\gamma$  function,

$$\Gamma(a, b) = \int_b^{+\infty} e^{-t} t^{a-1} dt.$$

Input:

```
ugamma(3.0, 2.0)
```

Output:

```
1.35335283237
```

Input:

```
ugamma(-1.3, 2)
```

Output:

```
0.0142127568837
```

### 5.9.15 The lower incomplete $\gamma$ function: **igamma**

The **igamma** command takes two mandatory arguments and an optional third argument. The mandatory arguments are a number  $a$  and a number  $b \geq 0$ . An optional third argument of 1 will return a normalized version of the function.

**igamma** returns the value of the incomplete  $\gamma$  function,

$$\gamma(a, b) = \int_0^b e^{-t} t^{a-1} dt.$$

With a third argument of 1, the value returned will be normalized; namely divided by  $\Gamma(a)$ .

Input:

```
igamma(2.0, 3.0)
```

Output:

```
0.800851726529
```

Input:

```
igamma(4.0, 3.0)
```

Output:

```
2.11660866731
```

Input:

```
igamma(4.0, 3.0, 1)
```

Output:

```
0.352768111218
```

since  $\Gamma(4) = 6$  and  $2.11660866731/6 = 0.352768111218$ .

### 5.9.16 The $\beta$ function : Beta

Beta takes as argument two reals  $a, b$ .

Beta returns the value of the  $\beta$  function at  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ , defined by :

$$\beta(x, y) = \int_0^1 t^{x-1} (1-t)^{y-1} dt = \frac{\Gamma(x) * \Gamma(y)}{\Gamma(x+y)}$$

Remarkable values :

$$\beta(1, 1) = 1, \quad \beta(n, 1) = \frac{1}{n}, \quad \beta(n, 2) = \frac{1}{n(n+1)}$$

Beta ( $x, y$ ) is defined for  $x$  and  $y$  positive reals (to ensure the convergence of the integral) and by prolongation for  $x$  and  $y$  if they are not negative integers.

Input :

Beta (5, 2)

Output :

1/30

Input :

Beta (x, y)

Output :

Gamma (x) \* Gamma (y) / Gamma (x+y)

Input :

Beta (5.1, 2.2)

Output :

0.0242053671402

### 5.9.17 Derivatives of the DiGamma function : Psi

Psi takes as arguments a real  $a$  and an integer  $n$  (by default  $n = 0$ ).

Psi returns the value of the  $n$ -th derivative of the DiGamma function at  $x = a$ , where the DiGamma function is the first derivative of  $\ln(\Gamma(x))$ . This function is used to evaluated sums of rational functions having poles at integers.

Input :

Psi (3, 1)

Output :

pi^2/6-5/4

If  $n=0$ , you may use Psi (a) instead of Psi (a, 0) to compute the value of the DiGamma function at  $x = a$ .

Input :

`Psi(3)`

Output :

`Psi(1)+3/2`

Input :

`evalf(Psi(3))`

Output :

`.922784335098`

### 5.9.18 The $\zeta$ function : Zeta

Zeta takes as argument a real  $x$ .

Zeta returns for  $x > 1$  :

$$\zeta(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{+\infty} \frac{1}{n^x}$$

and for  $x < 1$  its meromorphic continuation.

Input :

`Zeta(2)`

Output :

`pi^2/6`

Input :

`Zeta(4)`

Output :

`pi^4/90`

### 5.9.19 Airy functions : Airy\_Ai and Airy\_Bi

Airy\_Ai and Airy\_Bi take as arguments a real  $x$ .

Airy\_Ai and Airy\_Bi are two independent solutions of the equation

$$y'' - x * y = 0$$

They are defined by :

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Airy\_Ai}(x) &= (1/\pi) \int_0^{\infty} \cos(t^3/3 + x * t) dt \\ \text{Airy\_Bi}(x) &= (1/\pi) \int_0^{\infty} (e^{-t^3/3} + \sin(t^3/3 + x * t)) dt\end{aligned}$$

Properties :

$$\text{Airy\_Ai}(x) = \text{Airy\_Ai}(0) * f(x) + \text{Airy\_Ai}'(0) * g(x)$$

$$\text{Airy\_Bi}(x) = \sqrt{3}(\text{Airy\_Ai}(0) * f(x) - \text{Airy\_Ai}'(0) * g(x))$$

where  $f$  and  $g$  are two entire series solutions of

$$w'' - x * w = 0$$

more precisely :

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} 3^k \left( \frac{\Gamma(k + \frac{1}{3})}{\Gamma(\frac{1}{3})} \right) \frac{x^{3k}}{(3k)!} \\ g(x) &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} 3^k \left( \frac{\Gamma(k + \frac{2}{3})}{\Gamma(\frac{2}{3})} \right) \frac{x^{3k+1}}{(3k+1)!} \end{aligned}$$

Input :

Airy\_Ai(1)

Output :

0.135292416313

Input :

Airy\_Bi(1)

Output :

1.20742359495

Input :

Airy\_Ai(0)

Output :

0.355028053888

Input :

Airy\_Bi(0)

Output :

0.614926627446

## 5.10 Permutations

A permutation  $p$  of size  $n$  is a bijection from  $[0..n - 1]$  on  $[0..n - 1]$  and is represented by the list :  $[p(0), p(1), p(2)...p(n - 1)]$ .

For example, the permutation  $p$  represented by  $[1, 3, 2, 0]$  is the application from  $[0, 1, 2, 3]$  on  $[0, 1, 2, 3]$  defined by :

$$p(0) = 1, p(1) = 3, p(2) = 2, p(3) = 0$$

A cycle  $c$  of size  $p$  is represented by the list  $[a_0, ..., a_{p-1}]$  ( $0 \leq a_k \leq n - 1$ ) it is the permutation such that

$$c(a_i) = a_{i+1} \text{ for } (i = 0..p - 2), \quad c(a_{p-1}) = a_0, \quad c(k) = k \text{ otherwise}$$

A cycle  $c$  is represented by a list and a cycle decomposition is represented by a list of lists.

For example, the cycle  $c$  represented by the list  $[3, 2, 1]$  is the permutation  $c$  defined by  $c(3) = 2, c(2) = 1, c(1) = 3, c(0) = 0$  (i.e. the permutation represented by the list  $[0, 3, 1, 2]$ ).

### 5.10.1 Random permutation : `randperm`, `shuffle`

`randperm` (or `shuffle`) takes as argument an integer  $n$ .

`randperm` returns a random permutation of  $[0..n - 1]$ .

Input :

```
randperm(3)
```

Output :

```
[2, 0, 1]
```

### 5.10.2 Previous permutation: `prevperm`

The `prevperm` takes as argument a permutation.

`prevperm` returns the previous permutation in lexicographic order, or `undef` if there is no previous permutation.

Input:

```
prevperm([0, 3, 1, 2])
```

Output:

```
[0, 2, 3, 1]
```

### 5.10.3 Next permutation: `nextperm`

The `nextperm` takes as argument a permutation.

`nextperm` returns the next permutation in lexicographic order, or `undef` if there is no next permutation.

Input:

```
prevperm([0, 2, 3, 1])
```

Output:

```
[0, 2, 1, 3]
```

### 5.10.4 Decomposition as a product of disjoint cycles : `perm2cycles`

`perm2cycles` takes as argument a permutation.

`perm2cycles` returns its decomposition as a product of disjoint cycles.

Input :

```
perm2cycles([1, 3, 4, 5, 2, 0])
```

Output :

```
[[0, 1, 3, 5], [2, 4]]
```

In the answer the cycles of size 1 are omitted, except if  $n - 1$  is a fixed point of the permutation (this is required to find the value of  $n$  from the cycle decomposition).

Input :

```
perm2cycles([0, 1, 2, 4, 3, 5])
```

Output :

```
[ [ 5 ] , [ 3 , 4 ] ]
```

Input :

```
permu2cycles([0,1,2,3,5,4])
```

Output :

```
[ [ 4 , 5 ] ]
```

### **5.10.5 Product of disjoint cycles to permutation:** `cycles2permu`

`cycles2permu` takes as argument a list of cycles.

`cycles2permu` returns the permutation (of size  $n$  chosen as small as possible) that is the product of the given cycles (it is the inverse of `permu2cycles`).

Input :

```
cycles2permu([ [ 1 , 3 , 5 ] , [ 2 , 4 ] ])
```

Output :

```
[ 0 , 3 , 4 , 5 , 2 , 1 ]
```

Input :

```
cycles2permu([ [ 2 , 4 ] ])
```

Output :

```
[ 0 , 1 , 4 , 3 , 2 ]
```

Input :

```
cycles2permu([ [ 5 ] , [ 2 , 4 ] ])
```

Output :

```
[ 0 , 1 , 4 , 3 , 2 , 5 ]
```

### **5.10.6 Transform a cycle into permutation :** `cycle2perm`

`cycle2perm` takes on cycle as argument.

`cycle2perm` returns the permutation of size  $n$  corresponding to the cycle given as argument, where  $n$  is chosen as small as possible (see also `permu2cycles` and `cycles2permu`).

Input :

```
cycle2perm([1,3,5])
```

Output :

```
[ 0 , 3 , 2 , 5 , 4 , 1 ]
```

**5.10.7 Transform a permutation into a matrix : permu2mat**

`permu2mat` takes as argument a permutation  $p$  of size  $n$ .

`permu2mat` returns the matrix of the permutation, that is the matrix obtained by permuting the rows of the identity matrix of size  $n$  with the permutation  $p$ .

Input :

```
permu2mat([2,0,1])
```

Output :

```
[[0,0,1],[1,0,0],[0,1,0]]
```

**5.10.8 Checking for a permutation : is\_permu**

`is_permu` is a boolean function.

`is_permu` takes as argument a list.

`is_permu` returns 1 if the argument is a permutation and returns 0 if the argument is not a permutation.

Input :

```
is_permu([2,1,3])
```

Output :

```
0
```

Input :

```
is_permu([2,1,3,0])
```

Output :

```
1
```

**5.10.9 Checking for a cycle : is\_cycle**

`is_cycle` is a boolean function.

`is_cycle` takes a list as argument.

`is_cycle` returns 1 if the argument is a cycle and returns 0 if the argument is not a cycle.

Input :

```
is_cycle([2,1,3])
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
is_cycle([2,1,3,2])
```

Output :

```
0
```

**5.10.10 Product of two permutations : p1op2**

p1op2 takes as arguments two permutations.

p1op2 returns the permutation obtained by composition :

$$1^{\text{st}}\text{arg} \circ 2^{\text{nd}}\text{arg}$$

Input :

```
p1op2([3,4,5,2,0,1],[2,0,1,4,3,5])
```

Output :

```
[5,3,4,0,2,1]
```

**Warning**

Composition is done using the standard mathematical notation, that is the permutation given as the second argument is performed first.

**5.10.11 Composition of a cycle and a permutation : c1op2**

c1op2 takes as arguments a cycle and a permutation.

c1op2 returns the permutation obtained by composition :

$$1^{\text{st}}\text{arg} \circ 2^{\text{nd}}\text{arg}$$

Input :

```
c1op2([3,4,5],[2,0,1,4,3,5])
```

Output :

```
[2,0,1,5,4,3]
```

**Warning**

Composition is done using the standard mathematical notation, that is the permutation given as the second argument is performed first.

**5.10.12 Composition of a permutation and a cycle : p1oc2**

p1oc2 takes as arguments a permutation and a cycle.

p1oc2 returns the permutation obtained by composition :

$$1^{\text{st}}\text{arg} \circ 2^{\text{nd}}\text{arg}$$

Input :

```
p1oc2([3,4,5,2,0,1],[2,0,1])
```

Output :

```
[4,5,3,2,0,1]
```

**Warning**

Composition is done using the standard mathematical notation, that is the cycle given as second argument is performed first.

**5.10.13 Product of two cycles : cloc2**

cloc2 takes as arguments two cycles.

cloc2 returns the permutation obtained by composition :

$$1^{\text{st}} \text{arg} \circ 2^{\text{nd}} \text{arg}$$

Input :

```
cloc2([3,4,5],[2,0,1])
```

Output :

```
[1,2,0,4,5,3]
```

**Warning**

Composition is done using the standard mathematical notation, that is the cycle given as second argument is performed first.

**5.10.14 Signature of a permutation : signature**

signature takes as argument a permutation.

signature returns the signature of the permutation given as argument.

The signature of a permutation is equal to :

- 1 if the permutation is equal to an even product of transpositions,
- -1 if the permutation is equal to an odd product of transpositions.

The signature of a cycle of size  $k$  is :  $(-1)^{k+1}$ .

Input :

```
signature([3,4,5,2,0,1])
```

Output :

```
-1
```

Indeed permu2cycles([3,4,5,2,0,1])=[[0,3,2,5,1,4]].

**5.10.15 Inverse of a permutation : perminv**

perminv takes as argument a permutation.

perminv returns the permutation that is the inverse of the permutation given as argument.

Input :

```
perminv([1,2,0])
```

Output

```
[2,0,1]
```

**5.10.16 Inverse of a cycle : cycleinv**

`cycleinv` takes as argument a cycle.

`cycleinv` returns the cycle that is the inverse of the cycle given as argument.

Input :

```
cycleinv([2,0,1])
```

Output

```
[1,0,2]
```

**5.10.17 Order of a permutation : permuorder**

`permuorder` takes as argument a permutation.

`permuorder` returns the order  $k$  of the permutation  $p$  given as argument, that is the smallest integer  $m$  such that  $p^m$  is the identity.

Input :

```
permuorder([0,2,1])
```

Output

```
2
```

Input :

```
permuorder([3,2,1,4,0])
```

Output

```
6
```

**5.10.18 Group generated by two permutations : groupermu**

`groupermu` takes as argument two permutations  $a$  and  $b$ .

`groupermu` returns the group of the permutations generated by  $a$  and  $b$ .

Input :

```
groupermu([0,2,1,3],[3,1,2,0])
```

Output

```
[[0,2,1,3],[3,1,2,0],[0,1,2,3],[3,2,1,0]]
```

**5.11 Complex numbers**

Note that complex numbers are also used to represent a point in the plane or a 1-d function graph.

**5.11.1 Usual complex functions : +, -, \*, /, ^**

`+, -, *, /, ^` are the usual operators to perform additions, subtractions, multiplications, divisions and for raising to an integer or a fractional power.

Input :

$$(1+2*i)^2$$

Output :

$$-3+4*i$$
**5.11.2 Real part of a complex number : re real**

`re` (or `real`) takes as argument a complex number (resp. a point  $A$ ).

`re` (or `real`) returns the real part of this complex number (resp. the projection on the  $x$  axis of  $A$ ).

Input :

$$\text{re}(3+4*i)$$

Output :

$$3$$
**5.11.3 Imaginary part of a complex number : im imag**

`im` (or `imag`) takes as argument a complex number (resp. a point  $A$ ).

`im` (or `imag`) returns imaginary part of this complex number (resp. the projection on the  $y$  axis of  $A$ ).

Input :

$$\text{im}(3+4*i)$$

Output :

$$4$$
**5.11.4 Write a complex as  $\text{re}(z) + i * \text{im}(z)$  : evalc**

`evalc` takes as argument a complex number  $z$ .

`evalc` returns this complex number, written as  $\text{re}(z) + i * \text{im}(z)$ .

Input :

$$\text{evalc}(\sqrt{2} * \exp(i * \pi / 4))$$

Output :

$$1+i$$

**5.11.5 Modulus of a complex number : abs**

`abs` takes as argument a complex number.

`abs` returns the modulus of this complex number.

Input :

$$\text{abs}(3+4*i)$$

Output :

$$5$$
**5.11.6 Argument of a complex number : arg**

`arg` takes as argument a complex number.

`arg` returns the argument of this complex number.

Input :

$$\text{arg}(3+4*i)$$

Output :

$$\text{atan}(4/3)$$
**5.11.7 The normalized complex number : normalize unitV**

`normalize` or `unitV` takes as argument a complex number.

`normalize` or `unitV` returns the complex number divided by the modulus of this complex number.

Input :

$$\text{normalize}(3+4*i)$$

Output :

$$(3+4*i)/5$$
**5.11.8 Conjugate of a complex number : conj**

`conj` takes as argument a complex number.

`conj` returns the complex conjugate of this complex number.

Input :

$$\text{conj}(3+4*i)$$

Output :

$$3-4*i$$

### 5.11.9 Multiplication by the complex conjugate : mult\_c\_conjugate

`mult_c_conjugate` takes as argument an complex expression.

If this expression has a complex denominator, `mult_c_conjugate` multiplies the numerator and the denominator of this expression by the complex conjugate of the denominator.

If this expression does not have a complex denominator, `mult_c_conjugate` multiplies the numerator and the denominator of this expression by the complex conjugate of the numerator.

Input :

```
mult_c_conjugate((2+i)/(2+3*i))
```

Output :

```
(2+i)*(2+3*(-i))/((2+3*(i))*(2+3*(-i)))
```

Input :

```
mult_c_conjugate((2+i)/2)
```

Output :

```
(2+i)*(2+-i)/(2*(2+-i))
```

### 5.11.10 Barycenter of complex numbers : barycenter

`barycenter` takes as argument two lists of the same size (resp. a matrix with two columns):

- the elements of the first list (resp. column) are points  $A_j$  or complex numbers  $a_j$  (the affixes of the points),
- the elements of the second list (resp. column) are real coefficients  $\alpha_j$  such that  $\sum \alpha_j \neq 0$ .

`barycenter` returns the barycenter point of the points  $A_j$  weighted by the real coefficients  $\alpha_j$ . If  $\sum \alpha_j = 0$ , `barycenter` returns an error.

**Warning** To have a complex number in the output, the input must be :

`affix(barycenter(..., ...))` because `barycenter(..., ...)` returns a point, not a complex number.

Input :

```
affix(barycenter([1+i, 1-i], [1, 1]))
```

or :

```
affix(barycenter([[1+i, 1], [1-i, 1]]))
```

Output :

i

## 5.12 Algebraic numbers

### 5.12.1 Definition

A real algebraic number is a real root of a polynomial with integer coefficients.

A complex algebraic number is a root of a polynomial with coefficients which are Gaussian integers.

### 5.12.2 Minimum polynomial of an algebraic number:`pmin`

The `pmin` command takes as argument an algebraic number, and an optional second argument of a variable name.

`pmin` returns the the monic polynomial of smallest degree with integer coefficents which has the algebraic number as a root. If there is a second argument, the polynomial will use that as a variable.

Input:

```
pmin(sqrt(2) + sqrt(3))
```

Output:

```
poly1[1, 0, -10, 0, 1]
```

Input:

```
pmin(sqrt(2) + sqrt(3), x)
```

Output:

$$x^{4-10} \star x^{2+1}$$

Note that  $(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})^2 = 5 + 2\sqrt{6}$  and so  $((\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})^2 - 5)^2 = 24$ , which can be rewritten as  $(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})^4 - 10(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})^2 + 1 = 0$ .

Input:

```
pmin(sqrt(2) + i*sqrt(3))
```

Output:

```
poly1[1, 0, 2, 0, 25]
```

Input:

```
pmin(sqrt(2) + i*sqrt(3), z)
```

Output:

$$z^{4+2} \star z^{2+25}$$

Input:

```
pmin(sqrt(2) + 2*i)
```

Output:

```
poly1[1, 0, 4, 0, 36]
```

Input:

```
pmin(sqrt(2) + 2*i, z)
```

Output:

$$z^{4+4} \star z^{2+36}$$

## 5.13 Algebraic expressions

### 5.13.1 Evaluate an expression : eval

`eval` is used to evaluate an expression. Since Xcas always evaluate expressions entered in the command line, `eval` is mainly used to evaluate a sub-expression in the equation writer.

Input :

```
a:=2
```

Output :

```
2
```

Input :

```
eval (2+3*a)
```

or

```
2+3*a
```

Output :

```
8
```

### 5.13.2 Change the evaluation level: eval\_level

The evaluation level is the maximum number of recursions when evaluating expressions, which is 25 by default. It can be set with the `eval` box in the CAS configuration screen (see section 3.5.7).

The `eval_level` command takes either zero or one argument. The single argument is a non-negative integer.

With no argument, `eval_level` returns the current evaluation level. With argument  $n$ , `eval_level` sets the evaluation level to  $n$ .

Input:

```
purge(a,b,c); a:=b+1; b:=c+1; c:=3;
```

Input:

```
eval_level(0)
```

Input:

```
a,b,c
```

Output:

```
a,b,c
```

Input:

```
eval_level(1)
```

Input:

$a, b, c$

Output:

$b+1, c+1, 3$

Input:

`eval_level(2)`

Input:

$c+2, 4, 3$

Input:

`eval_level(3)`

Output:

$a, b, c$

Input:

$a, b, c$

Output:

$a, b, c$

Input:

$a, b, c$

Output:

$a, b, c$

### 5.13.3 Evaluate algebraic expressions : evala

In Maple, `evala` is used to evaluate an expression with algebraic extensions. In Xcas, `evala` is not necessary, it behaves like `eval`.

### 5.13.4 Prevent evaluation : quote hold '

A quoted subexpression (either with '`'` or with the `quote` or `hold`) command will not be evaluated.

**Remark** `a:=quote(a)` (or `a:=hold(a)`) is equivalent to `purge(a)` (for the sake of Maple compatibility). It returns the value of this variable (or the hypothesis done on this variable).

Input :

`a:=2; quote(2+3*a)`

or

`a:=2; '2+3*a'`

Output :

$(2, 2+3*a)$

### 5.13.5 Force evaluation : unquote

`unquote` is used to evaluate inside a quoted expression.

For example in an affectation, the variable is automatically quoted (not evaluated) so that the user does not have to quote it explicitly each time he want to modify its value. In some circumstances, you might however want to evaluate it.

Input :

```
purge(b); a:=b; unquote(a):=3
```

Output :

```
b contains 3, hence a evals to 3
```

### 5.13.6 Distribution : expand fdistribution

`expand` or `fdistribution` takes as argument an expression.

`expand` or `fdistribution` returns the expression where multiplication is distributed with respect to the addition.

Input :

```
expand((x+1)*(x-2))
```

or :

```
fdistribution((x+1)*(x-2))
```

Output :

```
x^2-2*x+x-2
```

### 5.13.7 Canonical form : canonical\_form

`canonical_form` takes as argument a trinomial of second degree.

`canonical_form` returns the canonical form of the argument.

Example :

Find the canonical form of :

$$x^2 - 6x + 1$$

Input :

```
canonical_form(x^2-6*x+1)
```

Output :

$$(x-3)^2-8$$

### 5.13.8 Multiplication by the conjugate quantity : `mult_conjugate`

`mult_conjugate` takes as argument an expression with a denominator or a numerator supposed to contain a square root :

- if the denominator contains a square root,  
`mult_conjugate` multiplies the numerator and the denominator of the expression by the conjugate quantity of the denominator.
- otherwise, if the numerator contains a square root,  
`mult_conjugate` multiplies the numerator and the denominator of this expression by the conjugate quantity of the numerator.

Input :

```
mult_conjugate((2+sqrt(2))/(2+sqrt(3)))
```

Output :

```
(2+sqrt(2))*(2-sqrt(3))/((2+sqrt(3))*(2-sqrt(3)))
```

Input :

```
mult_conjugate((2+sqrt(2))/(sqrt(2)+sqrt(3)))
```

Output :

```
(2+sqrt(2))*(-sqrt(2)+sqrt(3))/
((sqrt(2)+sqrt(3))*(-sqrt(2)+sqrt(3)))
```

Input :

```
mult_conjugate((2+sqrt(2))/2)
```

Output :

```
(2+sqrt(2))*(2-sqrt(2))/(2*(2-sqrt(2)))
```

### 5.13.9 Separation of variables : `split`

`split` takes two arguments : an expression depending on two variables and the list of these two variables.

If the expression may be factorized into two factors where each factor depends only on one variable, `split` returns the list of this two factors, otherwise it returns the list [0].

Input :

```
split((x+1)*(y-2), [x,y])
```

or :

```
split(x*y-2*x+y-2, [x,y])
```

Output :

```
[x+1, y-2]
```

Input :

```
split((x^2*y^2-1, [x,y])
```

Output :

```
[0]
```

### 5.13.10 Factorization : factor

`factor` takes as argument an expression.

`factor` factorizes this expression on the field of its coefficients, with the addition of  $i$  in complex mode. If `sqrt` is enabled in the Cas configuration, polynomials of order 2 are factorized in complex mode or in real mode if the discriminant is positive.

#### Examples

1. Factorize  $x^4 - 1$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$ .

Input :

```
factor(x^4-1)
```

Output :

```
(x^2+1) * (x+1) * (x-1)
```

The coefficients are rationals, hence the factors are polynomials with rationals coefficients.

2. Factorize  $x^4 - 1$  over  $\mathbb{Q}[i]$

To have a complex factorization, check `complex` in the `cas` configuration (red button displaying the status line).

Input :

```
factor(x^4-1)
```

Output :

```
-i * (-x+-i) * (i*x+1) * (-x+1) * (x+1)
```

3. Factorize  $x^4 + 1$  over  $\mathbb{Q}$

Input :

```
factor(x^4+1)
```

Output :

```
x^4+1
```

Indeed  $x^4 + 1$  has no factor with rational coefficients.

4. Factorize  $x^4 + 1$  over  $\mathbb{Q}[i]$

Check `complex` in the `cas` configuration (red button rouge displaying the status line).

Input :

```
factor(x^4-1)
```

Output :

```
(x^2+i)*(x^2-i)
```

5. Factorize  $x^4 + 1$  over  $\mathbb{R}$ .

You have to provide the square root required for extending the rationals. In order to do that with the help of Xcas, first check `complex` in the `cas` configuration and input :

```
solve(x^4+1,x)
```

Output :

```
[sqrt(2)/2+(i)*sqrt(2)/2, sqrt(2)/2+(i)*(-(sqrt(2)/2)),  
-sqrt(2)/2+(i)*sqrt(2)/2, -sqrt(2)/2+(i)*(-(sqrt(2)/2))]
```

The roots depends on  $\sqrt{2}$ . Uncheck complex mode in the Cas configuration and input :

```
factor(x^4+1,sqrt(2))
```

Output :

```
(x^2+sqrt(2)*x+1)*(x^2+(-sqrt(2))*x+1)
```

To factorize over  $\mathbb{C}$ , check `complex` in the `cas` configuration or input `cFactor(x^4+1,sqrt(2))` (cf `cFactor`).

### 5.13.11 Complex factorization : `cFactor`

`cFactor` takes as argument an expression.

`cFactor` factorizes this expression on the field  $\mathbb{Q}[i] \subset \mathbb{C}$  (or over the complexified field of the coefficients of the argument) even if you are in real mode.

#### Examples

1. Factorize  $x^4 - 1$  over  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$ .

Input :

```
cFactor(x^4-1)
```

Output :

```
-((x+-i)*((-i)*x+1)*((-i)*x+i)*(x+1))
```

2. Factorize  $x^4 + 1$  over  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$ .

Input :

```
cFactor(x^4+1)
```

Output :

```
(x^2+i) * (x^2-i)
```

3. For a complete factorization of  $x^4 + 1$ , check the sqrt box in the Cas configuration or input :

```
cFactor(x^4+1, sqrt(2))
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2)*1/2*(sqrt(2)*x+1-i)*(sqrt(2)*x-1+i)*sqrt(2)*
1/2*(sqrt(2)*x+1+i)*(sqrt(2)*x-1-i)
```

### 5.13.12 Zeros of an expression : zeros

`zeros` takes as argument an expression depending on  $x$ .

`zeros` returns a list of values of  $x$  where the expression vanishes. The list may be incomplete in exact mode if the expression is not polynomial or if intermediate factorizations have irreducible factors of order strictly greater than 2.

In real mode, (complex box unchecked in the Cas configuration or `complex_mode:=0`), only reals zeros are returned. In (`complex_mode:=1`) reals and complex zeros are returned. See also `cZeros` to get complex zeros in real mode.

Input in real mode :

```
zeros(x^2+4)
```

Output :

```
[]
```

Input in complex mode :

```
zeros(x^2+4)
```

Output :

```
[-2*i, 2*i]
```

Input in real mode :

```
zeros(ln(x)^2-2)
```

Output :

```
[exp(sqrt(2)), exp(-(sqrt(2)))]
```

Input in real mode :

```
zeros(ln(y)^2-2, y)
```

Output :

```
[exp(sqrt(2)), exp(-(sqrt(2)))]
```

Input in real mode :

```
zeros(x*(exp(x))^2-2*x-2*(exp(x))^2+4)
```

Output :

```
[[log(sqrt(2)), 2]]
```

### 5.13.13 Complex zeros of an expression : `cZeros`

`cZeros` takes as argument an expression depending on  $x$ .

`cZeros` returns a list of complex values of  $x$  where the expression vanishes. The list may be incomplete in exact mode if the expression is not polynomial or if intermediate factorizations have irreducible factors of order strictly greater than 2.

Input in real or complex mode :

```
cZeros(x^2+4)
```

Output :

```
[-2*i, 2*i]
```

Input :

```
cZeros(ln(x)^2-2)
```

Output :

```
[exp(sqrt(2)), exp(-(sqrt(2)))]
```

Input :

```
cZeros(ln(y)^2-2, y)
```

Output :

```
[exp(sqrt(2)), exp(-(sqrt(2)))]
```

Input :

```
cZeros(x*(exp(x))^2-2*x-2*(exp(x))^2+4)
```

Output :

```
[log(sqrt(2)), log(-sqrt(2)), 2]
```

### 5.13.14 Regrouping expressions: `regroup`

The `regroup` command takes as parameter an expression.

`regroup` returns the expression with obvious simplifications.

Input:

```
regroup(x + 3 * x + 5 * 4 / x)
```

Output:

```
4*x+20/x
```

**5.13.15 Normal form : normal**

`normal` takes as argument an expression. The expression is considered as a rational fraction with respect to generalized identifiers (either true identifiers or transcendental functions replaced by a temporary identifiers) with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Q}$  or  $\mathbb{Q}[i]$  or in an algebraic extension (e.g.  $\mathbb{Q}[\sqrt{2}]$ ). `normal` returns the expanded irreducible representation of this rational fraction. See also `ratnormal` for pure rational fractions or `simplify` if the transcendental functions are not algebraically independent.

Input :

```
normal( (x-1)*(x+1))
```

Output :

$$x^2 - 1$$
**Remarks**

- Unlike `simplify`, `normal` does not try to find algebraic relations between transcendental functions like  $\cos(x)^2 + \sin(x)^2 = 1$ .
- It is sometimes necessary to run the `normal` command twice to get a fully irreducible representation of an expression containing algebraic extensions.

**5.13.16 Simplify : simplify**

`simplify` simplifies an expression. It behaves like `normal` for rational fractions and algebraic extensions. For expressions containing transcendental functions, `simplify` tries first to rewrite them in terms of algebraically independent transcendental functions. For trigonometric expressions, this requires radian mode (check `radian` in the `cas` configuration or input `angle_radian:=1`).

Input :

```
simplify( (x-1)*(x+1))
```

Output :

$$x^2 - 1$$

Input :

```
simplify(3-54*sqrt(1/162))
```

Output :

$$-3\sqrt{2} + 3$$

Input :

```
simplify((sin(3*x)+sin(7*x))/sin(5*x))
```

Output :

$$4\cos(x)^2 - 2$$

### 5.13.17 Automatic simplification: `autosimplify`

The `autosimplify` command takes a single argument; a command that will be used to rewrite the results in Xcas, such as `simplify`, `factor`, `regroup`, or for no simplification, `nop`. When Xcas starts, the `autosimplify` command is `regroup`.

To change the simplification mode during a session, the `autosimplify` command should be on its own line.

Input:

```
autosimplify (nop)
```

then:

$$1 + x^2 - 2$$

Output:

$$1+x^2-2$$

Input:

```
autosimplify (simplify)
```

then:

$$1 + x^2 - 2$$

Output:

$$x^2 - 1$$

Input:

```
autosimplify (factor)
```

then:

$$1 + x^2 - 2$$

Output:

$$(x-1) * (x+1)$$

Input:

```
autosimplify (regroup)
```

then:

$$1 + x^2 - 2$$

Output:

$$x^2 - 1$$

**5.13.18 Normal form for rational fractions : `ratnormal`**

`ratnormal` rewrites an expression using its irreducible representation. The expression is viewed as a multivariate rational fraction with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Q}$  (or  $\mathbb{Q}[i]$ ). The variables are generalized identifiers which are assumed to be algebraically independent. Unlike with `normal`, an algebraic extension is considered as a generalized identifier. Therefore `ratnormal` is faster but might miss some simplifications if the expression contains radicals or algebraically dependent transcendental functions.

Input :

```
ratnormal( (x^3-1) / (x^2-1) )
```

Output :

$$(x^2+x+1) / (x+1)$$

Input :

```
ratnormal( (-2x^3+3x^2+5x-6) / (x^2-2x+1) )
```

Output :

$$(-2*x^2+x+6) / (x-1)$$
**5.13.19 Substitute a variable by a value: `|`**

The `|` operator is infix. The left hand side is an expression depending on one or more parameters, the right hand side is an equality or several equalities (parameter = value, parameter = value, ...).

The `|` operator returns the expression with the parameters replaced by the given values.

Input:

$$a^2 + 1 \mid a = 2$$

Output (even if `a` has been assigned a value):

5

Input:

$$a^2 + b \mid a = 2, b = 3$$

Output (even if `a` or `b` had been assigned a value):

### 5.13.20 Substitute a variable by a value : subst

`subst` takes two or three arguments :

- an expression depending on a variable, an equality (`variable=value` of substitution) or a list of equalities.
- an expression depending on a variable, a variable or a list of variables, a value or a list of values for substitution.

`subst` returns the expression with the substitution done. Note that `subst` does not quote its argument, hence in a normal evaluation process, the substitution variable should be purged otherwise it will be replaced by its assigned value before substitution is done.

Input :

```
subst (a^2+1, a=2)
```

or :

```
subst (a^2+1, a, 2)
```

Output (if the variable `a` is purged else first input `purge(a)`) :

```
5
```

Input :

```
subst (a^2+b, [a,b], [2,1])
```

or :

```
subst (a^2+b, [a=2,b=1])
```

Output (if the variables `a` and `b` are purged else first input `purge(a,b)`) :

```
5
```

`subst` may also be used to make a change of variable in an integral. In this case the `integrate` command should be quoted (otherwise, the integral would be computed before substitution) or the inert form `Int` should be used. In both cases, the name of the integration variable must be given as argument of `Int` or `integrate` even you are integrating with respect to `x`.

Input :

```
subst ('integrate(sin(x^2)*x,x,0,pi/2)', x=sqrt(t))
```

or :

```
subst (Int (sin(x^2)*x,x,0,pi/2), x=sqrt(t))
```

Output

```
integrate(sin(t)*sqrt(t)*1/2*t*sqrt(t),t,0,(pi/2)^2)
```

Input :

```
subst ('integrate(sin(x^2)*x,x)', x=sqrt(t))
```

or :

```
subst (Int (sin(x^2)*x,x), x=sqrt(t))
```

Output

```
integrate(sin(t)*sqrt(t)*1/2*t*sqrt(t),t)
```

### 5.13.21 Substitute a variable by a value: ()

Given an expression with variables, you can substitute a variable by a value with the | operator or the subst command.

Input:

```
Expr := x + 2*y + 3*z
```

then:

```
subst(Expr, [x=1, y=2])
```

or:

```
Expr | x=1, y=2
```

Output:

```
5+3*z
```

One other way to do this is with something akin to functional notation; following the expression with equalities of the form variable = value.

Input:

```
Expr(x=1, y=2)
```

Output:

```
5+3*z
```

Input:

```
(h*k*t^2+h^3*t^3) (t=2)
```

Output:

```
h*k*4+8*h^3
```

### 5.13.22 Substitute a variable by a value (Maple and Mupad compatibility) : subs

In Maple and in Mupad, one would use the subs command to substitute a variable by a value in an expression. But the order of the arguments differ between Maple and Mupad. Therefore, to achieve compatibility, Xcas subs command arguments order depends on the mode

- In Maple mode, subs takes two arguments : an equality (variable=substitution value) and the expression.  
To substitute several variables in an expression, use a list of equality (variable names = substitution value) as first argument.
- In Mupad or Xcas or TI, subs takes two or three arguments : an expression and an equality (variable=substitution value) or an expression, a variable name and the substitution value.  
To substitute several variables, subs takes two or three arguments :

- an expression of variables and a list of (variable names = substitution value),
- an expression of variables, a list of variables and a list of their substitution values.

`subs` returns the expression with the substitution done. Note that `subs` does not quote its argument, hence in a normal evaluation process, the substitution variable should be purged otherwise it will be replaced by its assigned value before substitution is done.

Input in Maple mode (if the variable `a` is purged else input `purge(a)`) :

```
subs (a=2, a^2+1)
```

Output

$$2^2+1$$

Input in Maple mode (if the variables `a` and `b` are purged else input `purge(a, b)`) :

```
subs ( [a=2, b=1] , a^2+b)
```

Output :

$$2^2+1$$

Input :

```
subs (a^2+1, a=2)
```

or :

```
subs (a^2+1, a, 2)
```

Output (if the variable `a` is purged else input `purge(a)`) :

$$5$$

Input :

```
subs (a^2+b, [a=2, b=1] )
```

or :

```
subs (a^2+b, [a, b] , [2, 1] )
```

Output (if the variables `a` and `b` are purged else input `purge(a, b)`) :

$$2^2+1$$

### 5.13.23 Substitute a subexpression by another expression: `algsubs`

The `algsubs` command takes two arguments, an equation `expr1 = expr2` between two expressions and another expression.

`algsubs` returns the last expression with `expr1` replaced by `expr2`.

Input:

```
algsubs (x^2 = u, 1 + x^2 + x^4)
```

Output:

```
u^2 + u + 1
```

Input:

```
algsubs (a*b/c = d, 2*a*b^2/c)
```

Output:

```
2*b*d
```

Input:

```
algsubs (2a = p^2-q^2, algsubs (2c = p^2 + q^2,
c^2-a^2) )
```

Output:

```
p^2*q^2
```

### 5.13.24 Eliminate one or more variables from a list of equations: `eliminate`

The `eliminate` command takes two arguments; a list of equations and the variable (or list of variables) to eliminate.

`eliminate` returns the equations with the requested variables eliminated. (The equations will be given as expressions, assumed to be equal to 0.)

Assuming the variables used haven't been set to any values:

Input:

```
eliminate ([x = v0*t, y = y0-g*t^2], t)
```

Output :

```
[v0^2*y0-x^2*g-v0^2*y]
```

Input:

```
eliminate ([x = 2*t, y = 1 - 10*t^2, z = x + y - t], t)
```

Output:

```
[10*y^2-20*y*z+10*z^2+y-1, x+2*y-2*z]
```

Input:

```
eliminate([x+y+z+t-2, x*y*t=1, x^2+t^2=z^2], [x, z])
```

Output:

```
[2*t^2*y^2+t*y^3-4*t^2*y-4*t*y^2+4*t*y+2*t+2*y-4]
```

If the variable(s) can't be eliminated, then `eliminate` returns [1] or [-1]. If `eliminate` returns [], that means the equations determine the values of the variables to be eliminated.

Input:

```
x:=2; y:=-5
eliminate([x=2*t, y=1-10*t^2], t)
```

Output:

```
[1]
```

since  $t$  cannot be eliminated from both equations. Input:

```
x:=2; y:=-9
eliminate([x=2*t, y=1-10*t^2], t)
```

Output:

```
[]
```

since the first equation gives  $t = 1$ , which satisfies the second equation.

Input:

```
x := 2; y := -9
eliminate ([x = 2*t, y = 1-10*t^2, z = x + y - t], t)
```

Output:

```
[z+8]
```

since the first equation gives  $t = 1$ , which satisfies the second equation, and so that leaves  $z = 2 - 9 - 1 = -8$ , or  $z + 8 = 0$ .

### 5.13.25 Evaluate a primitive at boundaries: `preval`

`preval` takes three arguments : an expression  $F$  depending on the variable  $x$ , and two expressions  $a$  and  $b$ .

`preval` computes  $F|_{x=b} - F|_{x=a}$ .

`preval` is used to compute a definite integral when the primitive  $F$  of the integrand  $f$  is known. Assume for example that  $F := \text{int}(f, x)$ , then `preval(F, a, b)` is equivalent to `int(f, x, a, b)` but does not require to compute again  $F$  from  $f$  if you change the values of  $a$  or  $b$ .

Input :

```
preval(x^2+x, 2, 3)
```

Output :

### 5.13.26 Sub-expression of an expression : part

part takes two arguments : an expression and an integer  $n$ .

part evaluate the expression and then returns the  $n$ -th sub-expression of this expression.

Input :

```
part (x^2+x+1, 2)
```

Output :

x

Input :

```
part (x^2+(x+1)*(y-2)+2, 2)
```

Output :

$(x+1) * (y-2)$

Input :

```
part ((x+1)*(y-2)/2, 2)
```

Output :

y-2

## 5.14 Values of $u_n$

### 5.14.1 Array of values of a sequence : tablefunc

tablefunc is a command that should be used inside a spreadsheet (opened with Alt+t), it returns a template to fill two columns, with the table of values of a function. If the step value is 1, tablefunc(ex, n, n0, 1), where ex is an expression depending on n, will fill the spreadsheet with the values of the sequence  $u_n = ex$  for  $n = n_0, n_0 + 1, n_0 + 2, \dots$

**Example :** display the values of the sequence  $u_n = \sin(n)$

Select a cell of a spreadsheet (for example C0) and input in the command line :

```
tablefunc (sin(n), n, 0, 1)
```

Output :

two columns : n and sin(n)

- in the column C: the variable name n, the value of the step (this value should be equal to 1 for a sequence), the value of n0 (here 0), then a recurrence formula (C2+C\$1, ...).
- in the column D: sin(n), "Tablefunc", then a recurrence formula.
- For each row, the values of the sequence  $u_n = \sin(n)$  correspond to the values of n starting from  $n=n_0$  (here 0).

### 5.14.2 Values of a recurrence relation or a system: **seqsolve**

See also section [5.14.3](#).

The **seqsolve** command takes three arguments; an expression or list of expressions that define a recurrence relation, the variables used, and the starting values. For example, if a recurrence relation is defined by  $u_{n+1} = f(u_n, n)$  with  $u_0 = a$ , the arguments to **seqsolve** will be  $f(x, n)$ ,  $[x, n]$  and  $a$ . If the recurrence relation is defined by  $u_{n+2} = g(u_n, u_{n+1}, n)$  with  $u_0 = a$  and  $u_1 = b$ , the arguments to **seqsolve** will be  $g(x, y, n)$ ,  $[x, y, n]$  and  $[a, b]$ . The recurrence relation must have a homogeneous linear part, the nonhomogeneous part must be a linear combination of a polynomials in  $n$  times geometric terms in  $n$ . **seqsolve** returns the sequence, as a function of  $n$ .

**Examples:**

- To find  $u_n$ , given that  $u_{n+1} = 2u_n + n$  and  $u_0 = 3$ : Input:

```
seqsolve(2x+n, [x, n], 3)
```

Output:

$$-n-1+4*2^n$$

- To find  $u_n$ , given that  $u_{n+1} = 2u_n + n3^n$  and  $u_0 = 3$ : Input:

```
seqsolve(2x+n*3^n, [x, n], 3)
```

Output:

$$(n-3)*3^n+6*2^n$$

- To find  $u_n$ , given that  $u_{n+1} = u_n + u_{n-1}$ ,  $u_0 = 0$  and  $u_1 = 1$ : Input:

```
seqsolve(x+y, [x, y, n], [0, 1])
```

Output:

$$\frac{(5+\sqrt{5})}{10} \cdot ((\sqrt{5}+1)/2)^{n-1} + \frac{(5-(\sqrt{5}))}{10} \cdot ((-\sqrt{5}+1)/2)^{n-1}$$

- To find  $u_n$  and  $v_n$ , given that  $u_{n+1} = u_n + 2v_n$ ,  $v_{n+1} = u_n + n + 1$  with  $u_0 = 1$ ,  $v_0 = 1$ :

Input:

```
seqsolve([x+2*y, n+1+x], [x, y, n], [0, 1])
```

Output:

$$[(-2*n - (-1)^n + 4*2^{n-3})/2, ((-1)^n + 2*2^{n-1})/2]$$

### 5.14.3 Values of a recurrence relation or a system: **rsolve**

See also section 5.14.2

The **rsolve** command takes three arguments; an equation or list of equations that define a recurrence relation, the functions (with their variables) used, and equations for the starting values. For example, if a recurrence relation is defined by  $u_{n+1} = f(u_n, n)$  with  $u_0 = a$ , the arguments to **rsolve** will be  $u(n+1) = f(u(n), n)$ ,  $u(n)$  and  $u(0)=a$ . The recurrence relation must either be a homogeneous linear part with a nonhomogeneous part being a linear combination of polynomials in  $n$  times geometric terms in  $n$  (such as  $u_{n+1} = 2u_n + n3^n$ ), or a linear fractional transformation (such as  $u_{n+1} = (u_n - 1)/(u_n - 2)$ ).

**rsolve** returns a matrix whose rows are the values of the sequence as functions of  $n$ .

Note that **rsolve** is more flexible than **seqsolve** since:

- the sequence doesn't have to start with  $u_0$ .
- the sequence can have several starting values, such as initial condition  $u_0^2 = 1$ , which is why **rsolve** returns a list.
- the notation for the recurrence relation is similar to how it is written in mathematics.

#### Examples:

- To find  $u_n$ , given that  $u_{n+1} = 2u_n + n$  and  $u_0 = 3$ : Input:

```
rsolve(u(n+1) = 2*u(n) + n, u(n), u(0)=3)
```

Output:

```
[ -n+4*2^n-1 ]
```

- To find  $u_n$ , given that  $u_{n+1} = 2u_n + n$  and  $u_1^2 = 1$ : Input:

```
rsolve(u(n+1) = 2*u(n) + n, u(n), u(1)^2 = 1)
```

Output:

```
[ -n+3/2*2^n-1, -n+1/2*2^n-1 ]
```

- To find  $u_n$ , given that  $u_{n+1} = 2u_n + n3^n$  and  $u_0 = 3$ : Input:

```
rsolve(u(n+1) = 2*u(n) + n*3^n, u(n), u(0)=3)
```

Output:

```
[ n*3^n+6*2^n-3*3^n ]
```

- To find  $u_n$ , given that  $u_{n+1} = (u_n - 1)/(u_n - 2)$  and  $u_0 = 4$ :  
Input:

```
rsolve(u(n+1) = (u(n)-1)/(u(n)-2), u(n), u(0)=4)
```

Output:

```
[((10*sqrt(5)+30)*((sqrt(5)-3)/2)^n+30*sqrt(5)-70)/(20*((sqrt(5)-3)/2)^n+30*sqrt(5))]
```

- To find  $u_n$  given that  $u_{n+1} = u_n + u_{n-1}$  with  $u_0 = 0, u_1 = 1$ :

Input:

```
rsolve(u(n+1) = u(n) + u(n-1), u(n), u(0) = 0,
       u(1) = 1)
```

Output:

```
[(-sqrt(5)/5)*((-sqrt(5)+1)/2)^n+sqrt(5)/5*((sqrt(5)+1)/2)^n]
```

- To find  $u_n$  and  $v_n$ , given that  $u_{n+1} = u_n + v_n, v_{n+1} = u_n - v_n$  with  $u_0 = 0, v_0 = 1$ :

Input:

```
rsolve([u(n+1) = u(n) + v(n), v(n+1) = u(n) - v(n)],
       [u(n), v(n)], [u(0)=1, v(0)=1])
```

Output:

```
[[(-sqrt(2)+1)/2*(-sqrt(2))^((n+1)-1)+(sqrt(2)+1)/2*2^(1/2*(n+1)-1))
 /2*(-sqrt(2))^((n+1)-1)+1/2*2^(1/2*(n+1)-1)]]
```

#### 5.14.4 Table of values and graph of a recurrent sequence : tableseq and plotseq

tableseq is a command that should be used inside a spreadsheet (opened with Alt+T), it returns a template to fill one column with  $u_0, u_{n+1} = f(u_n)$  (one-term recurrence) or more generally  $u_0, \dots, u_k, u_{n+k+1} = f(u_n, u_{n+1}, \dots, u_{n+k})$ . The template fills the column starting from the selected cell, or starting from 0 if the whole column was selected.

See also plotseq (section 7.17) for a graphic representation of a one-term recurrence sequence.

**Examples :**

- display the values of the sequence  $u_0 = 3.5, u_n = \sin(u_{n-1})$   
Select a cell of the spreadsheet (for example B0) and input in the command line :

```
tableseq(sin(n), n, 3.5)
```

Output :

```
a column with sin(n), n, 3.5 and the formula
evalf(subst(B$0,B$1,B2))
```

You get the values of the sequence  $u_0 = 3.5$ ,  $u_n = \sin(u_{n-1})$  in the column B.

- display the values of the Fibonacci sequence  $u_0 = 1, u_1 = 1, u_{n+2} = u_n + u_{n+1}$   
 Select a cell, say B0, and input in the command line

```
tableseq(x+y, [x,y], [1,1])
```

This fills the B column sheet with

| row | B   |
|-----|-----|
| 0   | x+y |
| 1   | x   |
| 2   | y   |
| 3   | 1   |
| 4   | 1   |
| 5   | 2   |
| ..  | ..  |
| 7   | 5   |
| ..  | ..  |

## 5.15 Operators or infix functions

An operator is an infix function.

### 5.15.1 Usual operators :+, -, \*, /, ^

$+, -, *, /, ^$  are the operators to do additions, subtractions, multiplications, divisions and for raising to a power.

### 5.15.2 Xcas operators

- $\$$  is the infix version of seq, for example :  
 $(2^k) \$ (k=0..3) = \text{seq}(2^k, k=0..3) = (1, 2, 4, 8)$  (do not forget to put parenthesis around the arguments),
- $\text{mod}$  or  $\%$  to define a modular number,
- $@$  to compose functions for example :  $(f@g)(x) = f(g(x))$ ,
- $@@$  to compose a function many times (like a power, replacing multiplication by composition), for example :  $(f@@3)(x) = f(f(f(x)))$ ,
- minus union intersect to get the difference, the union and the intersection of two sets,
- $\rightarrow$  to define a function,

- `:= =>` to store an expression in a variable (it is the infix version of `sto` and the argument order is permuted for `:=`), for example : `a := 2` or `2 => a` or `sto(2, a)`.
- `=<` to store an expression in a variable, but the storage is done by reference if the target is a matrix element or a list element. This is faster if you modify objects inside an existing list or matrix of large size, because no copy is made, the change is done in place. Use with care, all objects pointing to this matrix or list will be modified.

### 5.15.3 Define an operator: `user_operator`

`user_operator` takes as argument :

- a string : the name of the operator,
- a function of two variables with values in  $\mathbb{R}$  or in `true`, `false`,
- an option `Binary` for the definition or `Delete` to delete this definition.

`user_operator` returns 1 if the definition is done and else returns 0.

#### Example 1

Let  $R$  be defined on  $\mathbb{R}$  by  $x R y = x * y + x + y$ .

To define the law  $R$ , input :

```
user_operator("R", (x,y)->x*y+x+y, Binary)
```

Output :

1

Input :

```
5 R 7
```

Do not forget to put spaces around  $R$ .

Output :

47

#### Example 2

Let  $S$  be defined on  $\mathbb{N}$  by :

for  $x$  and  $y$  integers,  $x S y <=> x$  and  $y$  are not coprime.

To define the law  $S$ , input :

```
user_operator("S", (x,y)->(gcd(x,y))!=1, Binary)
```

Output :

1

Input :

```
5 S 7
```

## 5.16. FUNCTIONS AND EXPRESSIONS WITH SYMBOLIC VARIABLES 179

Do not forget to put spaces around S.

Output :

0

Input :

8 S 12

Do not forget to put spaces around S.

Output :

1

## 5.16 Functions and expressions with symbolic variables

### 5.16.1 The difference between a function and an expression

A function  $f$  is defined for example by :

$f(x) := x^2 - 1$  or by  $f := x \rightarrow x^2 - 1$

that is to say, for all  $x$ ,  $f(x)$  is equal to the expression  $x^2 - 1$ . In that case, to have the value of  $f$  for  $x = 2$ , input : $f(2)$ .

But if the input is  $g := x^2 - 1$ , then  $g$  is a variable where the expression  $x^2 - 1$  is stored. In that case, to have the value of  $g$  for  $x = 2$ , input :  $\text{subst}(g, x=2)$  ( $g$  is an expression depending on  $x$ ).

When a command expects a function as argument, this argument should be either the definition of the function (e.g.  $x \rightarrow x^2 - 1$ ) or a variable name assigned to a function (e.g.  $f$  previously defined by e.g.  $f(x) := x^2 - 1$ ).

When a command expects an expression as argument, this argument should be either the definition of the expression (for example  $x^2 - 1$ ), or a variable name assigned to an expression (e.g.  $g$  previously defined, for example, by  $g := x^2 - 1$ ), or the evaluation of a function. e.g.  $f(x)$  if  $f$  is a previously defined function, for example, by  $f(x) := x^2 - 1$ .

### 5.16.2 Transform an expression into a function : unapply

`unapply` is used to transform an expression into a function.

`unapply` takes two arguments an expression and the name of a variable.

`unapply` returns the function defined by this expression and this variable.

**Warning** when a function is defined, the right member of the assignment is not evaluated, hence  $g := \sin(x+1)$ ;  $f(x) := g$  does not define the function  $f : x \rightarrow \sin(x+1)$  but defines the function  $f : x \rightarrow g$ . To define the former function, `unapply` should be used, like in the following example:

Input :

$g := \sin(x+1); f := \text{unapply}(g, x)$

Output :

$(\sin(x+1), (x) \rightarrow \sin(x+1))$

hence, the variable  $g$  is assigned to a symbolic expression and the variable  $f$  is assigned to a function.

Input :

```
unapply(exp(x+2),x)
```

Output :

```
(x) ->exp(x+2)
```

Input :

```
f:=unapply(lagrange([1,2,3],[4,8,12]),x)
```

Output :

```
(x) ->4+4*(x-1)
```

Input :

```
f:=unapply(integrate(log(t),t,1,x),x)
```

Output :

```
(x) ->x*log(x)-x+1
```

Input :

```
f:=unapply(integrate(log(t),t,1,x),x)
```

```
f(x)
```

Output :

```
x*log(x)-x+1
```

**Remark** Suppose that  $f$  is a function of 2 variables  $f : (x, w) \rightarrow f(x, w)$ , and that  $g$  is the function defined by  $g : w \rightarrow h_w$  where  $h_w$  is the function defined by  $h_w(x) = f(x, w)$ .

`unapply` is also used to define  $g$  with Xcas.

Input :

```
f(x,w):=2*x+w
```

```
g(w):=unapply(f(x,w),x)
```

```
g(3)
```

Output :

```
x->2*x+3
```

### 5.16.3 Top and leaves of an expression : sommet feuille op

An operator is an infix function : for example '+' is an operator and 'sin' is a function.

An expression can be represented by a tree. The top of the tree is either an operator, or a function and the leaves of the tree are the arguments of the operator or of the function (see also [5.43.15](#)).

The instruction `sommet` (resp. `feuille` (or `op`)) returns the top (resp. the list of the leaves) of an expression.

Input :

```
sommet(sin(x+2))
```

Output :

```
'sin'
```

Input :

```
sommet(x+2*y)
```

Output :

```
'+'
```

Input :

```
feuille(sin(x+2))
```

or :

```
op(sin(x+2))
```

Output :

```
x+2
```

Input :

```
feuille(x+2*y)
```

or :

```
op(x+2*y)
```

Output :

```
(x, 2*y)
```

#### Remark

Suppose that a function is defined by a program, for example let us define the `pgcd` function :

```
pgcd(a,b):={local r; while (b!=0)
{r:=irem(a,b);a:=b;b:=r;} return a; }
```

Then input :

```
sommet (pgcd)
```

Output :

```
'program'
```

Then input :

```
feuille (pgcd) [0]
```

Output :

```
(a,b)
```

Then input :

```
feuille (pgcd) [1]
```

Output :

```
(0,0) or (15,25) if the last input was pgcd(15,25)
```

Then input :

```
feuille (pgcd) [2]
```

Output :

```
The body of the program : {local r;....return(a);}
```

## 5.17 Functions

### 5.17.1 Context-dependent functions.

#### Operators + and -

+ (resp. -) is an infix function and '+ ' (resp. '- ') is a prefixed function. The result depends on the nature of its arguments.

Examples with + (all examples except the last one work also with - instead of +) :

- input (1,2)+(3,4) or (1,2,3)+4 or 1+2+3+4 or '+'(1,2,3,4), output 10,
- input 1+i+2+3\*i or '+'(1,i,2,3\*i), output 3+4\*i,
- input [1,2,3]+[4,1] or [1,2,3]+[4,1,0] or '+'([1,2,3],[4,1]), output [5,3,3],
- input [1,2]+[3,4] or '+'([1,2],[3,4]), output [4,6],
- input [[1,2],[3,4]]+ [[1,2],[3,4]], output [[2,4],[6,8]],
- input [1,2,3]+4 or '+'([1,2,3],4), output poly1[1,2,7],
- input [1,2,3]+(4,1) or '+'([1,2,3],4,1), output poly1[1,2,8],
- input "Hel"+"lo" or '+'("Hel","lo"), output "Hello".

**Operator \***

\* is an infix function and '\*' is a prefixed function. The result depends on the nature of its arguments.

Examples with \* :

- input  $(1,2)*(3,4)$  or  $(1,2,3)*4$  or  $1*2*3*4$  or  $'*(1,2,3,4)$ , output 24,
- input  $1*i*2*3*i$  or  $'*(1,i,2,3*i)$ , output -6,
- input  $[10,2,3]*[4,1]$  or  $[10,2,3]*[4,1,0]$  or  $'*([10,2,3],[4,1])$ , output 42 (scalar product),
- input  $[1,2]*[3,4]$  or  $'*([1,2],[3,4])$ , output 11 (scalar product),
- input  $[[1,2],[3,4]]*$   $[[1,2],[3,4]]$ , output  $[[7,10],[15,22]]$ ,
- input  $[1,2,3]*4$  or  $'*([1,2,3],4)$ , output [4,8,12],
- input  $[1,2,3]^(4,2)$  or  $'*([1,2,3],4,2)$  or  $[1,2,3]^8$ , output [8,16,24],
- input  $(1,2)+i*(2,3)$  or  $1+2+i*2*3$ , output  $3+6*i$ .

**Operator /**

/ is an infix function and '/' is a prefixed function. The result depends on the nature of its arguments.

Examples with / :

- input  $[10,2,3]/[4,1]$ , output invalid dim
- input  $[1,2]/[3,4]$  or  $'/([1,2],[3,4])$ , output  $[1/3,1/2]$ ,
- input  $1/[[1,2],[3,4]]$  or  $'/(1,[[1,2],[3,4]])$ , output  $[-2,1],[3/2,(-1)/2]$ ,
- input  $[[1,2],[3,4]]*1/$   $[[1,2],[3,4]]$ , output  $[[1,0],[0,1]]$ ,
- input  $[[1,2],[3,4]]/$   $[[1,2],[3,4]]$ , output  $[[1,1],[1,1]]$  (division term by term),

**5.17.2 Usual functions**

- `max` takes as argument two real numbers and returns their maximum,
- `min` takes as argument two real numbers and returns their minimum,
- `abs` takes as argument a complex number and returns the modulus of the complex parameter (the absolute value if the complex is real),
- `sign` takes as argument a real number and returns its sign (+1 if it is positive, 0 if it is null, and -1 if it is negative),
- `floor` (or `iPart`) takes as argument a real number  $r$ , and returns the largest integer  $\leq r$ ,
- `round` takes as argument a real number and returns its nearest integer,

- `ceil` or `ceiling` takes as argument a real number and returns the smallest integer  $\geq r$
- `frac` (or `fPart`) takes as argument a real number and returns its fractional part,
- `trunc` takes as argument a real number and returns the integer equal to the real without its fractional part,
- `id` is the identity function,
- `sq` is the square function,
- `sqrt` is the squareroot function,
- `surd` takes two arguments, numbers  $x$  and  $n$  and returns the  $n$ th root of  $x$ .
- `exp` is the exponential function,
- `log` or `ln` is the natural logarithm function,
- `log10` is the base-10 logarithm function,
- `logb` is the logarithm function where the second argument is the base of the logarithm:  $\text{logb}(7, 10) = \text{log10}(7) = \log(7) / \log(10)$ ,
- `sin` (resp. `cos`, `tan`) is the sinus function, cosinus function, tangent function,
- `cot`, `sec`, `csc` are the cotangent, secant, cosecant function
- `asin` (or `arcsin`), `acos` (or `arccos`), `atan` (or `arctan`), `acot`, `asec`, `acsc` are the inverse trigonometric functions (see section 5.24.1 for more info on trigonometric functions)
- `sinh` (resp. `cosh`, `tanh`) is the hyperbolic sinus function, cosinus function, tangent function,
- `asinh` or `arcsinh` (resp. `acosh` or `arccosh`, `atanh` or `arctanh`) is the inverse function of `sinh` (resp. `cosh`, `tanh`)

### 5.17.3 Defining algebraic functions

#### Defining a function from $\mathbb{R}^p$ to $\mathbb{R}$

For  $p = 1$ , e.g. for  $f : (x) \rightarrow x * \sin(x)$ , input :

```
f(x) := x * sin(x)
```

or :

```
f := x -> x * sin(x)
```

Output :

```
(x) -> x * sin(x)
```

If  $p > 1$ , e.g. for  $f : (x, y) \rightarrow x * \sin(y)$ , input :

$f(x, y) := x * \sin(y)$

or :

$f := (x, y) \rightarrow x * \sin(y)$

Output :

$(x, y) \rightarrow x * \sin(y)$

**Warning !!!** the expression after  $\rightarrow$  is not evaluated. You should use unapply if you expect the second member to be evaluated before the function is defined.

### Defining a function from $\mathbb{R}^p$ to $\mathbb{R}^q$

For example:

- To define the function  $h : (x, y) \rightarrow (x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y))$ .  
Input :

$h(x, y) := (x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y))$

Output :

$(x, y) \rightarrow \{$   
 $x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y);$   
 $\}$ "

- To define the function  $h : (x, y) \rightarrow [x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y)]$ .  
Input :

$h(x, y) := [x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y)];$

or :

$h := (x, y) \rightarrow [x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y)];$

or :

$h(x, y) := \{ [x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y)];\}$

or :

$h := (x, y) \rightarrow \text{return } [x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y)];$

or :

$h(x, y) := \{ \text{return } [x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y)]; \}$

Output :

$(x, y) \rightarrow \{ \text{return } [x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y)]; \}$

**Warning !!!** The expression after  $\rightarrow$  is not evaluated.

**Defining families of function from  $\mathbb{R}^{p-1}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^q$  using a function from  $\mathbb{R}^p$  to  $\mathbb{R}^q$** 

Suppose that the function  $f : (x, y) \rightarrow f(x, y)$  is defined, and we want to define a family of functions  $g(t)$  such that  $g(t)(y) := f(t, y)$  (i.e.  $t$  is viewed as a parameter). Since the expression after  $\rightarrow$  (or  $:$ ) is not evaluated, we should not define  $g(t)$  by  $g(t) := y \rightarrow f(t, y)$ , we have to use the unapply command.

For example, assuming that  $f : (x, y) \rightarrow x \sin(y)$  and  $g(t) : y \rightarrow f(t, y)$ , input :

```
f(x, y) := x * sin(y); g(t) := unapply(f(t, y), y)
```

Output :

```
((x, y) ->x * sin(y), (t) ->unapply(f(t, y), y))
```

Input :

```
g(2)
```

Output :

```
y -> 2 * sin(y)
```

Input :

```
g(2)(1)
```

Output :

```
2 * sin(1)
```

Next example, suppose that the function  $h : (x, y) \rightarrow [x * \cos(y), x * \sin(y)]$  is defined, and we want to define the family of functions  $k(t)$  having  $t$  as parameter such that  $k(t)(y) := h(t, y)$ . To define the function  $h(x, y)$ , input :

```
h(x, y) := (x * cos(y), x * sin(y))
```

To define properly the function  $k(t)$ , input :

```
k(t) := unapply(h(x, t), x)
```

Output :

```
(t) ->unapply(h(x, t), x)
```

Input :

```
k(2)
```

Output :

```
(x) ->(x * cos(2), x * sin(2))
```

Input :

```
k(2)(1)
```

Output :

```
(2 * cos(1), 2 * sin(1))
```

#### 5.17.4 Composition of two functions: @

With **Xcas**, the composition of functions is done with the infix operator **@**.

Input :

```
(sq@sin+id) (x)
```

Output :

```
(sin(x))^2+x
```

Input :

```
(sin@sin) (pi/2)
```

Output :

```
sin(1)
```

#### 5.17.5 Repeated function composition: @@

With **Xcas**, the repeated composition of a function with itself  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  times is done with the infix operator **@@**.

Input :

```
(sin@@3) (x)
```

Output :

```
sin(sin(sin(x)))
```

Input :

```
(sin@@2) (pi/2)
```

Output :

```
sin(1)
```

#### 5.17.6 Define a function with the history : as\_function\_of

If an entry defines the variable **a** and if a later entry defines the variable **b** (supposed to be dependent on **a**), then **c:=as\_function\_of(b, a)** will define a function **c** such that **c(a)=b**.

Input :

```
a:=sin(x)
```

Output :

```
sin(x)
```

Input :

```
b:=sqrt(1+a^2)
```

Output :

`sqrt(1+sin(x)^2)`

**Input :**

`c:=as_function_of(b,a)`

**Output :**

```
(a) ->
{ local NULL;
return(sqrt(1+a^2));
}
```

**Input :**

`c(x)`

**Output :**

`sqrt(1+x^2)`

**Input :**

`a:=2`

**Output :**

`2`

**Input :**

`b:=1+a^2`

**Output :**

`5`

**Input :**

`c:=as_function_of(b,a)`

**Output :**

```
(a) ->
{ local NULL;
return(sqrt(1+a^2));
}
```

**Input :**

`c(x)`

**Output :**

`1+x^2`

**Warning !!**

If the variable `b` has been assigned several times, the first assignment of `b` following the last assignment of `a` will be used. Moreover, the order used is the order of validation of the commandlines, which may not be reflected by the Xcas interface if you reused previous commandlines.

Input for example :

```
a:=2 then
b:=2*a+1 then
b:=3*a+2 then
c:=as_function_of(b,a)
```

Output :

```
(a)-> {local NULL; return(2*a+1); }
```

i.e. `c(x)` is equal to  $2x+1$ .

But, input :

```
a:=2 then
b:=2*a+1 then
a:=2 then
b:=3*a+2 then
c:=as_function_of(b,a)
```

Output :

```
(a)-> {local NULL; return(3*a+2); }
```

i.e. `c(x)` is equal to  $3x+2$ .

Hence the line where `a` is defined must be reevaluated before the good definition of `b`.

## 5.18 Functions from $\mathbb{R}$ to $\mathbb{R}$

### 5.18.1 The domain of a function: `domain`

The `domain` command takes one or two arguments. The first argument is an expression involving a single variable. If the variable is not `x`, the variable used should be the second argument.

`domain` returns the domain of the function defined by the expression.

Input:

```
domain(ln(x+1))
```

Output:

```
x>-1
```

Input:

```
domain(asin(2*t),t)
```

Output:

```
((t>=(-1/2)) and (t<=(1/2)))
```

### 5.18.2 Table of variations of a function: `tabvar`

The `tabvar` command takes one mandatory argument and one optional argument. The mandatory argument is an expression of a single variable, and the second argument is the variable.

`tabvar` returns the table of variations of the function  $f(x) = \text{expr}$  and draws the graph on the DispG screen, accessible with the menu Cfg▶Show▶DispG.

Input:

```
tabvar(x^2 - x - 2, x)
```

Output:

|                  |            |          |                 |          |           |
|------------------|------------|----------|-----------------|----------|-----------|
| $x,$             | $-\infty,$ | ,        | $\frac{1}{2},$  | ,        | $+\infty$ |
| $y' = (2*x-1),$  | $-\infty,$ | -,       | 0,              | +,       | $+\infty$ |
| $y = (x^2-x-2),$ | $+\infty,$ | ↓,       | $-\frac{9}{4},$ | ↑,       | $+\infty$ |
| $(y')',$         | 2,         | $+ (u),$ | 2,              | $+ (u),$ | 2         |

- The first row, the  $x$  row, gives the endpoint of subintervals of the domain. In this case, the subintervals go from  $-\infty$  to  $1/2$  and from  $1/2$  to  $\infty$ .
- The second row, the  $y'$  row, gives the values of the derivative at the values in the first row (or limits, in the case of  $\pm\infty$ ), and between them the sign (+ or -) of the derivative in the corresponding subinterval.
- The third row, the  $y$  row, gives the values of the function at the values in the first row, and between them whether the function is increasing or decreasing in the corresponding subinterval.
- The fourth row, the  $y''$  row, gives the values of the second derivative at the values in the first row, and between them whether the graph is concave up or concave down in the subinterval.

Input:

```
tabvar((2*t-1)/(t-1), t)
```

Output:

|                              |            |         |            |            |         |           |
|------------------------------|------------|---------|------------|------------|---------|-----------|
| $t,$                         | $-\infty,$ | ,       | 1,         | 1,         | ,       | $+\infty$ |
| $y' = (-\frac{1}{(t-1)^2}),$ | 0,         | -,      | ,          | ,          | -,      | 0         |
| $y = \frac{2*t-1}{t-1},$     | 2,         | ↓,      | $-\infty,$ | $+\infty,$ | ↓,      | 2         |
| $(y')',$                     | 0,         | $-(n),$ | ,          | ,          | $+(u),$ | 0         |

Note that in this case, the value 1 appears twice in the first row, so that both one-sided limits of  $y$  can be displayed at the vertical asymptote  $t = 1$ . The values of 2 for  $y$  at  $-\infty$  and  $\infty$  indicate a horizontal asymptote of  $y = 2$ .

## 5.19 Derivation and applications.

### 5.19.1 Functional derivative : function\_diff

`function_diff` takes a function as argument.

`function_diff` returns the derivative function of this function.

Input :

```
function_diff(sin)
```

Output :

```
(`x`)->cos(`x`)
```

Input :

```
function_diff(sin)(x)
```

Output :

```
cos(x)
```

Input :

```
f(x):=x^2+x*cos(x)
```

```
function_diff(f)
```

Output :

```
(`x`)->2*x+cos(`x`)+`x`*(-(sin(`x`)))
```

Input :

```
function_diff(f)(x)
```

Output :

```
cos(x)+x*(-(sin(x)))+2*x
```

To define the function  $g$  as  $f'$ , input :

```
g:=function_diff(f)
```

The `function_diff` instruction has the same effect as using the expression `derivative` in conjunction with `unapply`:

```
g:=unapply(diff(f(x),x),x)
```

```
g(x)
```

Output :

```
cos(x)+x*(-(sin(x)))+2*x
```

#### Warning !!!

In Maple mode, for compatibility, `D` may be used in place of `function_diff`. For this reason, it is impossible to assign a variable named `D` in Maple mode (hence you can not name a geometric object `D`).

### 5.19.2 Length of an arc : `arcLen`

`arcLen` takes four arguments : an expression *ex* (resp. a list of two expressions [*ex1*, *ex2*]), the name of a parameter and two values *a* and *b* of this parameter.

`arcLen` computes the length of the curve define by the equation  $y = f(x) = ex$  (resp. by  $x = ex1, y = ex2$ ) when the parameter values varies from *a* to *b*, using the formula  $\text{arcLen}(f(x), x, a, b) =$

`integrate(sqrt(diff(f(x), x)^2+1), x, a, b)`

or

`integrate(sqrt(diff(x(t), t)^2+diff(y(t), t)^2), t, a, b).`

#### Examples

- Compute the length of the parabola  $y = x^2$  from  $x = 0$  to  $x = 1$ .

Input :

`arcLen(x^2, x, 0, 1)`

or

`arcLen([t, t^2], t, 0, 1)`

Output :

$-1/4 * \log(\sqrt(5) - 2) - (-(\sqrt(5))) / 2$

- Compute the length of the curve  $y = \cosh(x)$  from  $x = 0$  to  $x = \ln(2)$ .

Input :

`arcLen(cosh(x), x, 0, log(2))`

Output :

$3/4$

- Compute the length of the circle  $x = \cos(t), y = \sin(t)$  from  $t = 0$  to  $t = 2 * \pi$ .

Input :

`arcLen([cos(t), sin(t)], t, 0, 2*pi)`

Output :

$2 * \pi$

Alternatively, the `arcLen` command can take a single argument of a geometric curve defined in one of the graphics chapters (chapters 12 and 13).

Input:

`arcLen(circle(0, 1, 0, pi/2))`

Output:

$1/2 * \pi$

Input:

`arcLen(arc(0,1,pi/2))`

Output:

$\sqrt{2} / 4 * \pi$

### 5.19.3 Maximum and minimum of an expression: fMax fMin

fMax and fMin take one or two arguments : an expression of a variable and the name of this variable (by default x).

fMax returns the abscissa of a maximum of the expression.

fMin returns the abscissa of a minimum of the expression.

Input :

`fMax(sin(x),x)`

Or :

`fMax(sin(x))`

Or :

`fMax(sin(y),y)`

Output :

$\pi/2$

Input :

`fMin(sin(x),x)`

Or :

`fMin(sin(x))`

Or :

`fMin(sin(y),y)`

Output :

$-\pi/2$

Input :

`fMin(sin(x)^2,x)`

Output :

0

`fMax` and `fMin` can also compute the maximum resp. minimum of a nonlinear multivariate expression subject to a set of nonlinear equality and/or inequality constraints. Both functions in such cases take four to six arguments:

- objective function (an expression)
- list of constraints (equalities and inequalities)
- list of problem variables
- initial guess (must be a list of nonzero reals representing a feasible point)
- precision (optional), if not given the default epsilon value is used
- maximum number of iterations (optional)

The objective function does not need to be differentiable. Both `fMin` and `fMax` return the optimal solution as a vector. Note that the actual optimal value of the objective is not returned.

Although the initial point is required to be feasible, the algorithm will sometimes succeed even if it is infeasible. Note that the initial value of a variable must not be zero.

For example, input :

```
fMin( (x-5)^2+y^2-25, [y>=x^2], [x,y], [1,1] )
```

Output :

```
[1.2347728624961, 1.5246640219568]
```

Input :

```
fMax( (x-2)^2+(y-1)^2, [-.25x^2-y^2+1>=0, x-2y+1=0], [x,y], [.5,.75] )
```

Output :

```
[-1.82287565553, -0.411437827766]
```

#### 5.19.4 Table of values and graph : `tablefunc` and `plotfunc`

`tablefunc` is a special command that should be run from inside the spreadsheet. It returns the evaluation of an expression *ex* depending on a variable *x* for *x* = *x*<sub>0</sub>, *x*<sub>0</sub> + *h*, ... :

```
tablefunc(ex, x, x_0, h) or tablefunc(ex, x)
```

In the latter case, the default value for *x*<sub>0</sub> is the default minimum value of *x* from the graphic configuration and the default value for the step *h* is 0.1 times the difference between the default maximum and minimum values of *x* (from the graphic configuration).

Example: type Alt+t to open a spreadsheet if none are open. Then select a cell of the spreadsheet (for example C0) and to get the table of "sinus", input in the command line of the spreadsheet :

```
tablefunc(sin(x),x)
```

This will fill two columns with the numeric value of  $x$  and  $\sin(x)$  :

- in the first column the variable  $x$ , the value of the step  $h$  (1.0), the minimum value of  $x$  (-5.0), then a formula, for example =C2+C\$1, and the remaining rows of the column is filled by pasting this formula.
- in the next column the function  $\sin(x)$ , the word "Tablefunc", a formula, for example =evalf(subst(D\$0,C\$0,C2)), and the remaining rows of the column are filled by pasting this formula.

Hence the values of  $\sin(x)$  are on the same rows as the values of  $x$ . Note that the step and begin value and the expression may be easily changed by modifying the correspondent cell.

The graphic representation may be plotted with the `plotfunc` command (see [7.4.1](#)).

### 5.19.5 Derivative and partial derivative

`diff` or `derive` may have one or two arguments to compute a first order derivative (or first order partial derivative) of an expression or of a list of expressions, or several arguments to compute the  $n$ -th partial derivative of an expression or list of expressions.

**Derivative and first order partial derivative :** `diff` `derive` `deriver`

`diff` (or `derive`) takes two arguments : an expression and a variable (resp. a vector of variable names) (see several variable functions in [5.59](#)). If only one argument is provided, the derivative is taken with respect to  $x$   
`diff` (or `derive`) returns the derivative (resp. a vector of derivatives) of the expression with respect to the variable (resp. with respect to each variable) given as second argument.

Examples :

- Compute :

$$\frac{\partial(xy^2z^3 + xyz)}{\partial z}$$

Input :

```
diff(x*y^2*z^3+x*y*z,z)
```

Output :

```
x*y^2*3*z^2+x*y
```

- Compute the 3 first order partial derivatives of  $x * y^2 * z^3 + x * y * z$ .

Input :

```
diff(x*y^2*z^3+x*y,[x,y,z])
```

Output :

```
[y^2*z^3+y*z, x*2*y*z^3+x*z, x*y^2*3*z^2+x*y]
```

**Derivative and  $n$ -th order partial derivative :** diff derive deriver

derive (or diff) may take more than two arguments : an expression and the names of the derivation variables (each variable may be followed by  $\$n$  to indicate the number  $n$  of derivations).

diff returns the partial derivative of the expression with respect to the variables given after the first argument.

The notation \$ is useful if you want to derive  $k$  times with respect to the same variable, instead of entering  $k$  times the same variable name, one enters the variable name followed by  $\$k$ , for example  $x\$3$  instead of  $(x, x, x)$ . Each variable may be followed by a \$, for example `diff(exp(x*y), x$3, y$2, z)` is the same as `diff(exp(x*y), x, x, x, y, y, z)`

**Examples**

- Compute :

$$\frac{\partial^2(xy^2z^3 + xyz)}{\partial x \partial z}$$

Input :

`diff(x*y^2*z^3+x*y*z, x, z)`

Output :

$y^2 z^2 + y$

- Compute :

$$\frac{\partial^3(xy^2z^3 + xyz)}{\partial x \partial^2 z}$$

Input :

`diff(x*y^2*z^3+x*y*z, x, z, z)`

or :

`diff(x*y^2*z^3+x*y*z, x, z$2)`

Output :

$y^2 z^2 + y$

- Compute the third derivative of :

$$\frac{1}{x^2 + 2}$$

Input :

`normal(diff((1)/(x^2+2), x, x, x))`

or :

```
normal(diff((1)/(x^2+2),x$3))
```

Output :

```
(-24*x^3+48*x)/(x^8+8*x^6+24*x^4+32*x^2+16)
```

### Remark

- Note the difference between `diff(f, x, y)` and `diff(f, [x, y])` :  
 $\text{diff}(f, x, y)$  returns  $\frac{\partial^2(f)}{\partial x \partial y}$  and  
 $\text{diff}(f, [x, y])$  returns  $[\frac{\partial(f)}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial(f)}{\partial y}]$
- Never define a derivative function with `f1(x) := diff(f(x), x)`. Indeed, `x` would mean two different things Xcas is unable to deal with: the variable name to define the  $f_1$  function and the differentiation variable. The right way to define a derivative is either with `function_diff` or:

```
f1:=unapply(diff(f(x),x),x)
```

### 5.19.6 Implicit differentiation : `implicitdiff`

`implicitdiff` is called with one of the following three sets of parameters :

1. `expr, constr, depvars, diffvars`
2. `constr, [depvars], y, diffvars`
3. `expr, constr, vars, order=k, [pt]`

Details on parameters :

- `expr` : differentiable expression  $f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n, y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)$
- `constr` : (list of) equality constraint(s)  $g_i(x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_m) = 0$  or vanishing expression(s)  $g_i$ , where  $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$
- `depvars` : (list of) dependent variable(s)  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m$ , each of which may be entered as a symbol, e.g. `y1`, or a function of independent variable(s), e.g. `y1(x1, x2, ..., xn)`
- `diffvars` : sequence of variables  $x_{i_1}, x_{i_2}, \dots, x_{i_k}$  with respect to which is `expr` differentiated
- `vars` : independent and dependent variables entered as symbols in single list such that dependent variables come last, e.g. `[x1, ..., xn, y1, ..., ym]`
- `y` : (list of) dependent variable(s)  $y_{j_1}, y_{j_2}, \dots, y_{j_l}$  that need to be differentiated

Dependent variables  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m$  are implicitly defined with  $m$  constraints in `constr`. By implicit function theorem, the Jacobian matrix of  $\mathbf{g} = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)$  has to be full rank.

When calling `implicitdiff`, first two sets of parameters are used when specific partial derivative is needed. In the first case, `expr` is differentiated with respect to `diffvars`.

Input :

```
implicitdiff(x*y, -2*x^3+15*x^2*y+11*y^3-24*y=0, y(x), x)
```

Output :

```
(2*x^3-5*x^2*y+11*y^3-8*y) / (5*x^2+11*y^2-8)
```

In the second case (elements of) `y` is differentiated. If `y` is a list of symbols, a list containing their derivatives will be returned. The following examples compute  $\frac{dy}{dx}$ .

Input :

```
implicitdiff(x^2*y+y^2=1, y, x)
```

Output :

```
-2*x*y / (x^2+2*y)
```

Input :

```
implicitdiff([x^2+y=z, x+y*z=1], [y(x), z(x)], y, x)
```

Output :

```
(-2*x*y-1) / (y+z)
```

In the next example,  $\frac{dy}{dx}$  and  $\frac{dz}{dx}$  are computed.

Input :

```
implicitdiff([-2*x*z+y^2=1, x^2-exp(x*z)=y], [y(x), z(x)], [y, z], x)
```

Output :

```
[2*x/(y*exp(x*z)+1),
(2*x*y-y*z*exp(x*z)-z)/(x*y*exp(x*z)+x)]
```

For the third case of input syntax, all partial derivatives of order equal to `order`, i.e.  $k$ , are computed. If  $k = 1$  they are returned in a single list, which represents the gradient of `expr` with respect to independent variables. For  $k = 2$  the corresponding hessian matrix is returned. When  $k > 2$ , a table with keys in form  $[k_1, k_2, \dots, k_n]$ , where  $\sum_{i=1}^n k_i = k$ , is returned. Such key corresponds to

$$\frac{\partial^k f}{\partial x_1^{k_1} \partial x_2^{k_2} \cdots \partial x_n^{k_n}}.$$

Input :

```
f:=x*y*z; g:=-2*x^3+15*x^2*y+11*y^3-24*y=0;
implicitdiff(f, g, [x, z, y], order=1)
```

Output :

```
[ (2*x^3*z-5*x^2*y*z+11*y^3*z-8*y*z) / (5*x^2+11*y^2-8) ,
  x*y ]
```

Input :

```
implicitdiff(f,g,order=2,[1,-1,0])
```

Output :

```
[ [64/9, -2/3], [-2/3, 0] ]
```

In the next example, the value of  $\frac{\partial^4 f}{\partial x^4}$  is computed at point  $(x = 0, y = 0, z)$ .

Input :

```
pd:=implicitdiff(f,g,[x,z,y],order=4,[0,z,0]);
pd[4,0]
```

Output :

```
-2*z
```

## 5.20 Integration

**5.20.1 Antiderivative and definite integral :** `integrate int Int`  
`integrate` (or `int`) computes a primitive or a definite integral. A difference between the two commands is that if you input `quest()` just after the evaluation of `integrate`, the answer is written with the  $\int$  symbol.

`integrate` (or `int` or `Int`) takes one, two or four arguments.

- with one or two arguments  
 an expression or an expression and the name of a variable (by default `x`),  
`integrate` (or `int`) returns a primitive of the expression with respect to the variable given as second argument.

Input :

```
integrate(x^2)
```

Output :

```
x^3/3
```

Input :

```
integrate(t^2,t)
```

Output :

```
t^3/3
```

- with four arguments :

an expression, a name of a variable and the bounds of the definite integral, `integrate` (or `int`) returns the exact value of the definite integral if the computation was successful or an unevaluated integral otherwise.

Input :

```
integrate(x^2, x, 1, 2)
```

Output :

```
7/3
```

Input :

```
integrate(1/(sin(x)+2), x, 0, 2*pi)
```

Output after simplification (with the `simplify` command) :

```
2*pi*sqrt(3)/3
```

`Int` is the inert form of `integrate`, it prevents evaluation for example to avoid a symbolic computation that might not be successful if you just want a numeric evaluation.

Input :

```
evalf(Int(exp(x^2), x, 0, 1))
```

or :

```
evalf(int(exp(x^2), x, 0, 1))
```

Output :

```
1.46265174591
```

### Exercise 1

Let

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{x^2 - 1} + \ln\left(\frac{x+1}{x-1}\right)$$

Find a primitive of  $f$ .

Input :

```
int(x/(x^2-1)+ln((x+1)/(x-1)))
```

Output :

```
x*log((x+1)/(x-1))+log(x^2-1)+1/2*log(2*x^2/2-1)
```

Or define the function  $f$ , input :

```
f(x):=x/(x^2-1)+ln((x+1)/(x-1))
```

then input :

```
int(f(x))
```

Output of course the same result.

### Warning

For Xcas, `log` is the natural logarithm (like `ln`), as `log10` is 10-basis logarithm

### Exercise 2

Compute :

$$\int \frac{2}{x^6 + 2 \cdot x^4 + x^2} dx$$

Input :

```
int(2/(x^6+2*x^4+x^2))
```

Output :

```
2*((3*x^2+2)/(-(2*(x^3+x)))+-3/2*atan(x))
```

### Exercise 3

Compute :

$$\int \frac{1}{\sin(x) + \sin(2 \cdot x)} dx$$

Input :

```
integrate(1/(\sin(x)+sin(2*x)))
```

Output :

```
(1/-3*log((tan(x/2))^2-3)+1/12*log((tan(x/2))^2))*2
```

### 5.20.2 Primitive and definite integral : `risch`

The `risch` command takes one mandatory argument and three optional arguments. The first argument is an expression to be integrated. If the variable is not `x`, then the second argument is the variable. The third and fourth arguments are the limits of integration for when you want a definite integral.

`risch` returns a primitive (with one or two arguments) or a definite integral (with four arguments).

Input:

```
risch(x^2)
```

Output:

```
x^3/3
```

Input:

```
risch(x^2,x,0,1)
```

Output:

```
1/3
```

Input:

`risch(t^2,t)`

Output:

$t^{3/2}$

Input :

`risch(exp(-x^2))`

Output :

`integrate(exp(x^2),x)`

that is to say that  $\exp(-x^2)$  has no primitive expressed with usual functions.

### 5.20.3 Discrete summation: sum

sum takes two or four arguments :

- four arguments  
an expression, the name of the variable (for example `n`), and the bounds (for example `a` and `b`).  
sum returns the discrete sum of this expression with respect to the variable from `a` to `b`.
- Input :

`sum(1,k,-2,n)`

Output :

$n+1+2$

Input :

`normal(sum(2*k-1,k,1,n))`

Output :

$n^2$

Input :

`sum(1/(n^2),n,1,10)`

Output :

$1968329/1270080$

Input :

`sum(1/(n^2),n,1,+(infinity))`

Output :

$$\pi^2/6$$

Input :

$$\text{sum}(1/(n^3-n), n, 2, 10)$$

Output :

$$27/110$$

Input :

$$\text{sum}(1/(n^3-n), n, 1, +(\text{infinity}))$$

Output :

$$1/4$$

This result comes from the decomposition of  $1/(n^3 - n)$ .

Input :

$$\text{partfrac}(1/(n^3-n))$$

Output :

$$1/(2*(n+1))-1/n+1/(2*(n-1))$$

Hence :

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=2}^N -\frac{1}{n} &= -\sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \frac{1}{n+1} = -\frac{1}{2} - \sum_{n=2}^{N-2} \frac{1}{n+1} - \frac{1}{N} \\ \frac{1}{2} * \sum_{n=2}^N \frac{1}{n-1} &= \frac{1}{2} * \left( \sum_{n=0}^{N-2} \frac{1}{n+1} \right) = \frac{1}{2} * \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{n=2}^{N-2} \frac{1}{n+1} \right) \\ \frac{1}{2} * \sum_{n=2}^N \frac{1}{n+1} &= \frac{1}{2} * \left( \sum_{n=2}^{N-2} \frac{1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{N} + \frac{1}{N+1} \right) \end{aligned}$$

After simplification by  $\sum_{n=2}^{N-2}$ , it remains :

$$-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} * \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2} \right) - \frac{1}{N} + \frac{1}{2} * \left( \frac{1}{N} + \frac{1}{N+1} \right) = \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2N(N+1)}$$

Therefore :

- for  $N = 10$  the sum is equal to :  $1/4 - 1/220 = 27/110$
- for  $N = +\infty$  the sum is equal to :  $1/4$  because  $\frac{1}{2N(N+1)}$  approaches zero when  $N$  approaches infinity.

- two arguments  
an expression of one variable (for example  $f$ ) and the name of this variable (for example  $x$ ).  
 $\text{sum}$  returns the discrete antiderivative of this expression, i.e. an expression  $G$  such that  $G|_{x=n+1} - G|_{x=n} = f|_{x=n}$ .  
Input :

`sum(1/(x*(x+1)), x)`

Output :

$-1/x$

#### 5.20.4 Riemann sum : `sum_riemann`

`sum_riemann` takes two arguments : an expression depending on two variables and the list of the name of these two variables.

`sum_riemann(expression(n, k), [n, k])` returns in the neighborhood of  $n = +\infty$  an equivalent of  $\sum_{k=1}^n \text{expression}(n, k)$  (or of  $\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \text{expression}(n, k)$  or of  $\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \text{expression}(n, k)$ ) when the sum is looked on as a Riemann sum associated to a continuous function defined on  $[0,1]$  or returns "it is probably not a Riemann sum" when the no result is found.

##### Exercise 1

Suppose  $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{k^2}{n^3}$ .

Compute  $\lim_{n \rightarrow +\infty} S_n$ .

Input :

`sum_riemann(k^2/n^3, [n, k])`

Output :

$1/3$

##### Exercise 2

Suppose  $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{k^3}{n^4}$ .

Compute  $\lim_{n \rightarrow +\infty} S_n$ .

Input :

`sum_riemann(k^3/n^4, [n, k])`

Output :

$1/4$

##### Exercise 3

Compute  $\lim_{n \rightarrow +\infty} \left( \frac{1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{n+2} + \dots + \frac{1}{n+n} \right)$ .

Input :

`sum_riemann(1/(n+k), [n, k])`

Output :

$$\log(2)$$

**Exercise 4**

$$\text{Suppose } S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{32n^3}{16n^4 - k^4}.$$

$$\text{Compute } \lim_{n \rightarrow +\infty} S_n.$$

Input :

$$\text{sum\_riemann}(32*n^3/(16*n^4-k^4), [n, k])$$

Output :

$$2*\text{atan}(1/2) + \log(3)$$

### 5.20.5 Integration by parts : ibpdv and ibpu

ibpdv

ibpdv is used to search the primitive of an expression written as  $u(x).v'(x)$ .

ibpdv takes two arguments :

- an expression  $u(x)*v'(x)$  and  $v(x)$  (or a list of two expressions  $[F(x), u(x)*v'(x)]$  and  $v(x)$ ),
- or an expression  $g(x)$  and 0 (or a list of two expressions  $[F(x), g(x)]$  and 0).

ibpdv returns :

- if  $v(x) \neq 0$ , the list  $[u(x)v(x), -v(x)u'(x)]$  (or  $[F(x)+u(x)v(x), -v(x)u'(x)]$ ),
- if the second argument is zero, a primitive of the first argument  $g(x)$  (or  $F(x)+a$  primitive of  $g(x)$ ) :  
hence,  $\text{ibpdv}(g(x), 0)$  returns a primitive  $G(x)$  of  $g(x)$  or  
 $\text{ibpdv}([F(x), g(x)], 0)$  returns  $F(x)+G(x)$  where  $\text{diff}(G(x))=g(x)$ .

Hence, ibpdv returns the terms computed in an integration by parts, with the possibility of doing several ibpdvs successively.

When the answer of  $\text{ibpdv}(u(x)*v'(x), v(x))$  is computed, to obtain a primitive of  $u(x)v'(x)$ , it remains to compute the integral of the second term of this answer and then, to sum this integral with the first term of this answer : to do this, just use ibpdv command with the answer as first argument and a new  $v(x)$  (or 0 to terminate the integration) as second argument.

Input :

$$\text{ibpdv}(\ln(x), x)$$

Output :

$$[x \ln(x), -1]$$

then

$$\text{ibpdv}([x \ln(x), -1], 0)$$

Output :

$$-x+x \ln(x)$$

### Remark

When the first argument of `ibpdv` is a list of two elements, `ibpdv` works only on the last element of this list and adds the integrated term to the first element of this list. (therefore it is possible to do several `ibpdvs` successively).

For example :

$$\text{ibpdv}((\log(x))^2, x) = [x * (\log(x))^2, -(2 * \log(x))]$$

it remains to integrate  $-(2 * \log(x))$ , the input :

`ibpdv(ans(), x)` or input :

$$\text{ibpdv}([x * (\log(x))^2, -(2 * \log(x))], x)$$

Output :

$$[x * (\log(x))^2 + x * (-(\log(x))), 2]$$

and it remains to integrate 2, hence input `ibpdv(ans(), 0)` or

$$\text{ibpdv}([x * (\log(x))^2 + x * (-(\log(x))), 2], 0).$$

Output :  $x * (\log(x))^2 + x * (-(\log(x))) + 2 * x$

`ibpu`

`ibpu` is used to search the primitive of an expression written as  $u(x).v'(x)$ . `ibpu` takes two arguments :

- an expression  $u(x)*v'(x)$  and  $u(x)$  (or a list of two expressions  $[F(x), u(x)*v'(x)]$  and  $u(x)$ ),
- an expression  $g(x)$  and 0 (or a list of two expressions  $[F(x), g(x)]$  and 0).

`ibpu` returns :

- if  $u(x) \neq 0$ , the list  $[u(x) * v(x), -v(x) * u'(x)]$  (or returns the list  $[F(x) + u(x) * v(x), -v(x) * u'(x)]$ ),
- if the second argument is zero, a primitive of the first argument  $g(x)$  (or  $F(x)+a$  primitive of  $g(x)$ ):  
`ibpu(g(x), 0)` returns  $G(x)$  where  $\text{diff}(G(x))=g(x)$  or  
`ibpu([F(x), g(x)], 0)` returns  $F(x)+G(x)$  where  $\text{diff}(G(x))=g(x)$ .

Hence, `ibpu` returns the terms computed in an integration by parts, with the possibility of doing several `ibpus` successively.

When the answer of `ibpu(u(x)*v'(x), u(x))` is computed, to obtain a primitive of  $u(x)v'(x)$ , it remains to compute the integral of the second term of this answer and then, to sum this integral with the first term of this answer : to do this, just use `ibpu` command with the answer as first argument and a new  $u(x)$  (or 0 to terminate the integration) as second argument.

Input :

$$\text{ibpu}(\ln(x), \ln(x))$$

Output :

$$[x * \ln(x), -1]$$

then

```
ibpu([x*ln(x), -1], 0)
```

Output :

```
-x+x*ln(x)
```

### Remark

When the first argument of `ibpu` is a list of two elements, `ibpu` works only on the last element of this list and adds the integrated term to the first element of this list. (therefore it is possible to do several `ibpus` successively).

For example :

```
ibpu((log(x))^2, log(x)) = [x*(log(x))^2, -(2*log(x))]
```

it remains to integrate  $-(2\log(x))$ , hence input :

```
ibpu(ans(), log(x)) or input :
```

```
ibpu([x*(log(x))^2, -(2*log(x))], log(x))
```

Output :

```
[x*(log(x))^2+x*(-(2*log(x))), 2]
```

it remains to integrate 2, hence input :

```
ibpu(ans(), 0) or input :
```

```
ibpu([x*(log(x))^2+x*(-(2*log(x))), 2], 0).
```

Output :  $x*(\log(x))^2+x*(-(2*\log(x)))+2*x$

### 5.20.6 Change of variables : `subst`

See the `subst` command in the section [5.13.20](#).

## 5.21 Calculus of variations

### 5.21.1 Determining whether a function is convex : `convex`

`convex` takes two mandatory arguments, an at least twice differentiable function(al)  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and a variable or list of variables. Some variables may depend on a common independent parameter, say  $t$ , when entered as e.g.  $x(t)$  instead of  $x$ . The first derivatives of such variables, when encountered in  $f$ , are treated as independent parameters of  $f$ .

The command returns a condition or list of conditions under which  $f$  is convex. If  $f$  is convex on the entire domain, the return value is `true`. If it is nowhere convex, the return value is `false`. Otherwise, the conditions are returned as inequalities which depend on the parameters of  $f$ . The returned inequalities are not necessarily independent.

An optional third argument `simplify=false` or `simplify=true` may be given. By default is `simplify=true`, which means that simplification is applied when generating convexity conditions. If `simplify=false`, only rational normalization is performed (using the `ratnormal` command).

The command operates by computing the Hessian  $H_f$  of  $f$  and its principal minors (in total  $2^n$  of them where  $n$  is the number of parameters) and checks their signs. If all minors are nonnegative, then  $H_f$  is positive semidefinite and  $f$  is therefore convex.

The function  $f$  is said to be *concave* if the function  $g = -f$  is convex.  
For example, input :

```
convex(3*exp(x)+5x^4-1n(x), x)
```

Output :

```
true
```

Input :

```
convex(x^2+y^2+3z^2-x*y+2x*z+y*z, [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
true
```

Input :

```
convex(x1^3+2x1^2+2*x1*x2+x2^2/2-8x1-2x2-8, [x1, x2])
```

Output :

```
[ (3*x1+2) >=0, x1 >=0 ]
```

In the example below, the function  $f(x, y, z) = x^2 + xz + ayz + z^2$  is not convex regardless of the value  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  :

```
convex(x^2+x*z+a*y*z+z^2, [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
false
```

In the next example we find all values  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  for which the function

$$f(x, y, z) = x^2 + 2y^2 + az^2 - 2xy + 2xz - 6yz$$

is convex on  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Input :

```
cond:=convex(x^2+2y^2+a*z^2-2x*y+2x*z-6y*z, [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
[a >= 0, (a-1) >= 0, (2*a-9) >= 0, (a-5) >= 0]
```

The returned inequalities are simplified by `solve` :

```
solve(cond, a)
```

Output :

```
list[a >= 5]
```

Therefore  $f$  is convex for  $a \geq 5$ .

Let's find the set  $S \subset \mathbb{R}^2$  on which the function  $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$f(x_1, x_2) = \exp(x_1) + \exp(x_2) + x_1 x_2$$

is convex. Input :

```
cond:=convex(exp(x1)+exp(x2)+x1*x2,[x1,x2])
```

Output :

```
(exp(x1)*exp(x2)-1)>=0
```

Input :

```
lin(cond)
```

Output :

```
(exp(x1+x2)-1)>=0
```

From here we conclude that  $f$  is convex when  $x_1 + x_2 \geq 0$ . The sought set  $S$  is therefore the half-space defined by this inequality.

The algorithm respects the assumptions that may be set upon variables. Therefore, the convexity of a given function can be checked only on a particular domain. For example, input :

```
assume(x1>0),assume(x2>0):;
convex(exp(x1)+exp(x2)+x1*x2,[x1,x2])
```

Output :

```
true
```

Input :

```
assume(x>=0 and x<=pi/4):;
convex(exp(y)*sec(x)^3-z,[x,y,z])
```

Output :

```
true
```

**The Brachistochrone Problem.** We want to minimize the objective functional

$$T(y) = \int_0^{x_1} L(t, y(t), y'(t)) dt$$

where the Lagrangian  $L$  is defined by

$$L(t, y(t), y'(t)) = \sqrt{\frac{1 + y'(t)^2}{2 g y(t)}}$$

for  $y : [0, x_1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that  $y(0) = y_0$  and  $y(x_1) = 0$  where  $x_1 > 0$  and  $y_0 > 0$  are fixed (the constant  $g$  is the gravitational acceleration). This is called the *brachistochrone problem* (the problem of shortest travel by own weight from the point  $(0, y_0)$  to  $(x_1, 0)$ ). By solving Euler-Lagrange equation one obtains a cycloid  $\bar{y}(t)$  as the only stationary function for  $L$ . The problem is to prove that it minimizes  $T$ , which would be easy if the integrand  $L$  was convex. However, it's not the case here :

```
assume(y>=0)::; assume(g>0)::;
convex(sqrt((1+y'^2)/(2*g*y)),y(t))
```

Output :

```
(-diff(y(t),t)^2+3)>=0
```

This is equivalent to  $|y'(t)| \leq \sqrt{3}$ , which is certainly not satisfied by the cycloid  $\bar{y}$  near the point  $x = 0$ .

Using the substitution  $y(t) = z(t)^2/2$  we obtain  $y'(t) = z'(t)z(t)$  and

$$L(t, y(t), y'(t)) = P(t, z(t), z'(t)) = \sqrt{\frac{z(t)^{-2} + z'(t)^2}{g}}.$$

The function  $P$  is convex :

```
assume(z>=0)::; convex(sqrt((z^2+z'^2)/g),z(t))
```

Output :

```
true
```

Hence the function  $\bar{z}(t) = \sqrt{2\bar{y}(t)}$ , stationary for  $P$  (which is verified directly), minimizes the objective functional

$$U(z) = \int_0^{x_1} P(t, z(t), z'(t)) dt.$$

From here and  $U(z) = T(y)$  it easily follows that  $\bar{y}$  minimizes  $T$  and therefore the brachistochrone. For details see John L. Troutman, *Variational Calculus and Optimal Control* (second edition), page 257.

### 5.21.2 Euler-Lagrange equation(s) : euler\_lagrange

`euler_lagrange` takes from one to three arguments :

- expression  $f(x, y, y')$ ,
- independent variable (optional, by default  $x$ ),
- dependent variable (optional, by default  $y$ ).

If  $y \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is required (by default  $n = 1$ ), one can enter  $y = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)$  as a vector  $[y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n]$ . In that case,  $y' := (y'_1, y'_2, \dots, y'_n)$ . Alternatively, one can specify two arguments,  $f$  and either  $y(x)$  or  $[y_1(x), y_2(x), \dots, y_n(x)]$ .

The return value is a system of differential Euler-Lagrange equations, which represent necessary conditions for extremum of the functional

$$F(y) = \int_a^b f(x, y, y') dx, \quad y \in C^2[a, b]$$

with boundary conditions  $y(a) = A$  and  $y(b) = B$  where  $A, B \in \mathbb{R}$ . If  $n = 1$ , a single equation is returned :

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \frac{d}{dx} \frac{\partial f}{\partial y'}. \tag{5.1}$$

If  $n > 1$ , there are  $n$  Euler-Lagrange equations :

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y_k} = \frac{d}{dx} \frac{\partial f}{\partial y'_k}, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

The degrees of these differential equations are kept as low as possible. If, for example,  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = 0$ , the equation  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial y'} = K$  is returned, where  $K \in \mathbb{R}$  is an arbitrary constant. Similarly, using the Hamiltonian

$$H(x, y, y') = y' \frac{\partial}{\partial y'} f(x, y, y') - f(x, y, y')$$

the Euler-Lagrange equation is simplified in case  $n = 1$  and  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = 0$  to :

$$H(x, y, y') = K, \quad (5.2)$$

since it can be shown that  $\frac{d}{dx} H(y, y', x) = 0$ . Therefore the Euler-Lagrange equations, which are generally of order two in  $y$ , are returned in simpler form of order one in the aforementioned cases. If  $n = 1$  and  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = 0$  then both equations (5.1) and (5.2) are returned, each of them being sufficient to determine  $y$  (one of the returned equations is usually simpler than the other).

It can be proven that if  $f$  is convex (as a function of three independent variables), then a solution  $y$  to Euler-Lagrange equations minimizes the functional  $F$ .

For example, input :

```
euler_lagrange(sqrt(x'(t)^2+y'(t)^2), [x(t), y(t)])
```

We obtain a system of two differential equations of order one :

$$\begin{cases} \frac{x'(t)}{\sqrt{x'(t)^2+y'(t)^2}} = K_0, \\ \frac{y'(t)}{\sqrt{x'(t)^2+y'(t)^2}} = K_1 \end{cases}$$

where  $K_0, K_1 \in \mathbb{R}$  are arbitrary (these constants are generated automatically).

In the following example we find the Euler-Lagrange equation for the brachistochrone problem, in which the functional

$$F(y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2g}} \int_0^{x_1} \sqrt{\frac{1+y'(x)^2}{y(x)}} dx$$

for some function  $y \geq 0$  such that  $y(0) = 0$  and  $y(x_1) = h > 0$ . It represents a curve alongside which an object travels, forced by the force of gravity (its vector pointing upwards), from the point  $(0, 0)$  to the point  $(x_1, h)$  in shortest possible time. To obtain the corresponding Euler-Lagrange equation, input :

```
assume(y>=0); euler_lagrange(sqrt((1+y'^2)/y), t, y)
```

Output :

```
[-1/sqrt(y(t)*(1+diff(y(t),t)^2))=K_2,
diff(y(t),t,2)=(diff(y(t),t)^2+1)/(2*y(t))]
```

It is easier to solve the first equation for  $y$ , since it is first-order and separable.

In the next example we minimize the functional  $F$  for  $0 < a < b$  and

$$f(x, y, y') = x^2 y'(x)^2 + y(x)^2.$$

Input :

```
f:=x^2*diff(y(x),x)^2+y^2;; eq:=euler_lagrange(f)
```

We obtain the following Euler-Lagrange equation :

$$y'' = \frac{1}{x^2} (y - 2x y').$$

It can be solved by assuming  $y(x) = x^r$  for some  $r \in \mathbb{R}$ . Input :

```
solve(subs(eq,y(x)=x^r),r)
```

Output :

```
[-(sqrt(5)+1)/2, (sqrt(5)-1)/2]
```

Note that a pair of independent solutions is also returned by `kovacsols` command :

```
assume(x>=0); kovacsols(y''=(y-2*x*y')/x^2,x,y)
```

Output :

```
[sqrt(x^(sqrt(5)-1)), sqrt(x^(-(sqrt(5))-1))]
```

Anyway, we conclude that  $y = C_1 x^{-\frac{\sqrt{5}+1}{2}} + C_2 x^{\frac{\sqrt{5}+1}{2}}$ . The values of  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  are determined from the boundary conditions. Finally we prove that  $f$  is convex :

```
convex(f,y(x))
```

Output :

```
true
```

Therefore,  $y$  minimizes  $F$  on  $[a, b]$ .

In the example below we find the function

$$y \in \left\{ y \in C^1 \left[ \frac{1}{2}, 1 \right] : y \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, y(1) = 0 \right\}$$

which minimizes the functional

$$F(y) = \int_{1/2}^1 \frac{\sqrt{1 + y'(x)^2}}{x} dx.$$

To obtain the corresponding Euler-Lagrange equation, input :

```
f:=sqrt(1+diff(y(x),x)^2)/x;; eq:=euler_lagrange(f)
```

Output :

```
diff(y(x),x)/(sqrt(diff(y(x),x)^2+1)*x)=K_3
```

Input :

```
sol:=dsolve(eq)
```

Output :

```
[c_0-(sqrt(-K_3^2*x^2+1))/K_3]
```

The sought solution is the function of the above form which satisfies the boundary conditions. Input :

```
y0:=sol[0]; c:=[K_3,c_0];
v:=solve([subs(y0,x=1/2)=-sqrt(3)/2,subs(y0,x=1)=0],c)
```

Output :

```
[[1, 0]]
```

Input :

```
y0:=normal(subs(y0,c,v[0]))
```

Output :

```
-sqrt(1-x^2)
```

To prove that  $y_0(x) = -\sqrt{1-x^2}$  is indeed a minimizer for  $F$ , we show that the integrand in  $F(y)$  is convex. Input :

```
convex(sqrt(1+y'^2)/x,y(x))
```

Output :

```
x>=0
```

Hence the integrand is convex for  $x \in [\frac{1}{2}, 1]$ .

Similarly, we find the minimizer for

$$F(y) = \int_0^\pi (2 \sin(x) y(x) + y'(x)^2) dx$$

where  $y \in C^1[0, \pi]$  and  $y(0) = y(\pi) = 0$ . Input :

```
f:=2*sin(x)*y(x)+diff(y(x),x)^2;;
eq:=euler_lagrange(f)
```

Output :

```
diff(y(x),x,2)=sin(x)
```

Input :

```
dsolve(eq and y(0)=0 and y(pi)=0,x,y)
```

Output :

$$-\sin(x)$$

The above function is the sought minimizer as the integrand  $f$  is convex :

$$\text{convex}(f, y(x))$$

Output :

true

In the next example we minimize the functional  $F(y) = \int_0^1 (y'(x)^4 - 4y(x)) dx$  on  $C^1[0, 1]$  with boundary conditions  $y(0) = 1$  and  $y(1) = 2$ . First we solve the associated Euler-Lagrange equation :

$$\text{eq} := \text{euler\_lagrange}(y' \wedge 4 - 4y, x, y)$$

Output :

$$[(3 * \text{diff}(y(x), x) \wedge 4 + 4 * y(x)) = K_4, \\ \text{diff}(y(x), x, 2) = -1 / (3 * \text{diff}(y(x), x) \wedge 2)]$$

Input :

$$\text{dsolve}(\text{eq}[1] \text{ and } y(0) = 1 \text{ and } y(1) = 2, x, y)$$

Output :

$$[-3 * (-x + 1.52832425067) \wedge (4/3) / 4 + 2.32032831141]$$

We find that the integrand in  $F(y)$  is convex :

$$\text{convex}(y' \wedge 4 - 4y, [x, y])$$

Output :

true

Hence the minimizer is

$$y_0(x) = \frac{3}{4} (1.52832425067 - x)^{4/3} + 2.32032831141, \quad 0 \leq x \leq 1.$$

### 5.21.3 Jacobi equation : jacobi\_equation

`jacobi_equation` takes five or six arguments :

- expression  $f(y, y', x)$ ,
- independent variable  $x$ ,
- dependent variable  $y$  (this argument and the previous one can be combined to a single argument  $y(x)$ , in which case the call has five arguments),
- expression  $y_0 \in C^1[a, b]$  which is stationary for the functional  $F(y) = \int_a^b f(y, y', x) dx$ ,
- symbol  $h$  for the unknown function in Jacobi equation,

- point  $a \in \mathbb{R}$ , which is the lower bound for  $x$ .

The return value contains the Jacobi equation

$$-\frac{d}{dt} (f_{y'y'}(y_0, y'_0, t) h') + \left( f_{yy}(y_0, y'_0, t) - \frac{d}{dt} f_{y'y'}(y_0, y'_0, t) \right) h = 0. \quad (5.3)$$

If the Jacobi equation has a solution such that  $h(a) = 0$ ,  $h(c) = 0$  for some  $c \in (a, b]$  and  $h$  not identically zero on  $[a, c]$ , then  $y_0$  does not minimize the functional  $F$ . It is said that  $c$  is *conjugate* to  $a$ . The function  $y_0$  minimizes  $F$  if  $f_{y'y'}(y_0, y'_0, t) > 0$  for all  $t \in [a, b]$  and there are no points conjugate to  $a$  in  $(a, b]$ .

If the Jacobi equation can be solved by `dsolve`, a sequence containing the equation (5.3) and its solution is returned. Otherwise, if (5.3) cannot be solved immediately, only the Jacobi equation is returned.

For example, input :

```
jacobi_equation(-1/2*y'(t)^2+y(t)^2/2,t,y,sin(t),h,0)
```

Output :

```
(-diff(h(t),t,2)-h(t))=0, c_0*sin(t)
```

#### 5.21.4 Finding conjugate points : `conjugate_equation`

`conjugate_equation` takes four arguments :

- expression  $y_0$  which depends on the independent variable and two parameters,
- list  $[\alpha, \beta]$  of parameters which  $y_0$  depends on,
- list  $[A, B]$  of the values of parameters  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , respectively,
- independent variable  $x$ ,
- real number  $a$  equal to the lower or to the upper bound for  $x$ .

The function  $y_0(x)$  is assumed to be stationary for the problem of minimizing some functional  $F(y) = \int_a^b f(x, y, y') dx$ . The return value is the expression

$$\frac{\partial y_0(t)}{\partial \alpha} \frac{\partial y_0(a)}{\partial \beta} - \frac{\partial y_0(a)}{\partial \alpha} \frac{\partial y_0(t)}{\partial \beta}, \quad (5.4)$$

at  $\alpha = A$  and  $\beta = B$ , which is zero if and only if  $t$  is conjugate to  $a$ . To find any conjugate points, set the returned expression to zero and solve.

For example, we find a minimum for the functional

$$F(y) = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} (y'(x)^2 - x y(x) - y(x)^2) dx$$

on  $D = \{y \in C^1[0, \pi/2] : y(0) = y(\pi/2) = 0\}$ . The corresponding Euler-Lagrange equation is :

```
eq:=euler_lagrange(y'(x)^2-x*y(x)-y(x)^2,y(x))
```

Output :

```
diff(y(x),x,2)=(-2*y(x)-x)/2
```

The general solution is :

```
y0:=dsolve(eq,x,y)
```

Output :

```
c_0*cos(x)+c_1*sin(x)-x/2
```

The stationary function depends on two parameters  $c_0$  and  $c_1$  which are fixed by the boundary conditions :

```
c:=solve([subs(y0,x,0)=0,subs(y0,x,pi/2)=0],[c_0,c_1])
```

Output :

```
[[0,pi/4]]
```

Input :

```
conjugate_equation(y0,[c_0,c_1],c[0],x,0)
```

Output :

```
sin(x)
```

The above expression obviously has no zeros in  $(0, \pi/2]$ , hence there are no points conjugate to 0. Since  $f_{y'y'} = 2 > 0$ , where  $f(y, y', x)$  is the integrand in  $F(y)$  (the strong Legendre condition),  $y_0$  minimizes  $F$  on  $D$ . To obtain  $y_0$  explicitly, input :

```
subs(y0,[c_0,c_1],c[0])
```

Output :

```
pi*sin(x)/4-x/2
```

### 5.21.5 An example : finding the surface of revolution with minimal area

In this section we find the function

$$y_0 \in D = \{y \in C^1[0, 1] : y(0) = 1, y(1) = 2/3\}$$

for which the area of the corresponding surface of revolution is minimal. The result is not necessarily intuitive.

The area of the surface of revolution is measured by the functional

$$F(y) = 2\pi \int_0^1 y(x) \sqrt{1 + y'(x)^2} dx.$$

We set  $f(y, y', x) = y(x) \sqrt{1 + y'(x)^2}$  and compute the associated Euler-Lagrange equation :

```
dy:=diff(y(x),x)::; f:=y*sqrt(1+dy^2)::;
eq:=euler_lagrange(f)
```

Output :

```
[-(y(x))/(sqrt(diff(y(x),x)^2+1))=K_0,
diff(y(x),x,2)=((diff(y(x),x)^2+1)/(y(x)))]
```

We obtain the stationary function by finding the general solution of the first equation. Input :

```
sol:=collect(simplify(dsolve(eq[0],x,y)))
```

Output :

```
[-K_0,K_0*(-exp((x-c_1)/K_0)^2-1)/(2*exp((x-c_1)/K_0))]
```

Obviously the constant solution  $-K_0$  is not in  $D$ , so we set  $y_0$  to be the second element of the above list. That function, which can be written as

$$y_0(x) = -K_0 \cosh\left(\frac{x - c_1}{K_0}\right),$$

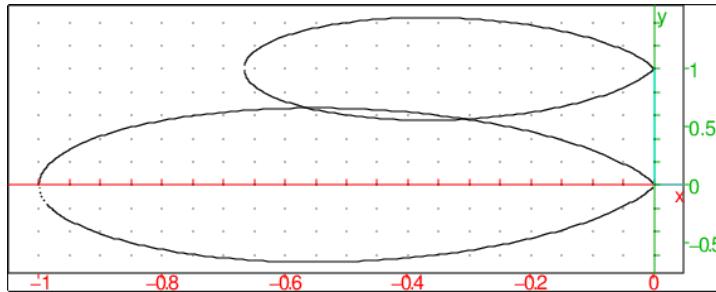
is called a *catenary*. Input :

```
y0:=sol[1]::; p:=[K_0,c_1]::;
```

To find the values of  $K_0$  and  $c_1$  from the boundary conditions, we first plot the curves  $y_0(0) = 1$  and  $y_0(1) = \frac{2}{3}$  for  $K_0 \in [-1, 1]$  and  $c_1 \in [-1, 2]$  to see where they intersect each other. Input :

```
eq1:=subs(y0,x=0)=1::; eq2:=subs(y0,x=1)=2/3::;
implicitplot([eq1,eq2],K_0=-1..1,c_1=-1..2)
```

Output :



We observe that there are exactly two catenaries satisfying the Euler-Lagrange necessary conditions and the given boundary conditions : the first with  $K_0 \approx -0.5$  and  $c_1 \approx 0.6$  resp. the second with  $K_0 \approx -0.3$  and  $c_1 \approx 0.5$ . We obtain the values of these constants more precisely by using `fsolve`. Input :

```
p1:=fsolve([eq1,eq2],p,[-0.5,0.6]);
p2:=fsolve([eq1,eq2],p,[-0.3,0.5])
```

Output :

```
[-0.56237423894, 0.662588703113],
[-0.30613431407, 0.567138261119]
```

We check, for each catenary, whether the strong Legendre condition

$$f_{y'y'}(x, y_k, y'_k) > 0$$

holds for  $k = 1, 2$ . Input :

```
y1:=subs(y0,p,p1):; y2:=subs(y0,p,p2):;
D2f:=diff(f,diff(y(x),x),2):;
solve([eval(subs(D2f,y=y1,y(x)=y1))<=0,x>=0,x<=1],x);
solve([eval(subs(D2f,y=y2,y(x)=y2))<=0,x>=0,x<=1],x)
```

Output :

```
[], []
```

We conclude that the strong Legendre condition is satisfied in both cases, so we proceed by attempting to find the points conjugate to 0 for each catenary. The function  $y_0$  depends on two parameters, so we use `conjugate_equation` to find these points easily. Input :

```
fsolve(conjugate_equation(y0,p,p1,x,0)=0,x=0..1)
fsolve(conjugate_equation(y0,p,p2,x,0)=0,x=0..1)
```

Output :

```
[0.0], [0.0, 0.799514772606]
```

We conclude that there are no points conjugate to 0 in  $(0, 1]$  for the catenary  $y_1$ , so it minimizes the functional  $F$ . However, for the other catenary there is a conjugate point in the relevant interval, therefore  $y_2$  is not a minimizer.

We can verify the above conclusions by computing the surface area for catenaries  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  and comparing them. Input :

```
int(y1*sqrt(1+diff(y1,x)^2),x=0..1);
int(y2*sqrt(1+diff(y2,x)^2),x=0..1)
```

Output :

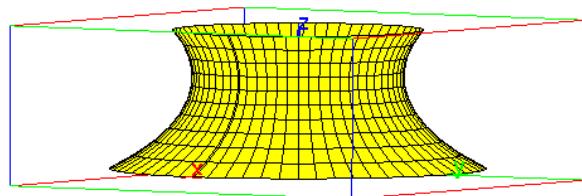
```
0.81396915825, 0.826468466845
```

We see that the surface formed by rotating the curve  $y_1$  is indeed smaller than the area of the surface formed by rotating the curve  $y_2$ . Finally, we visualize both surfaces for convenience. Input :

```
plot3d([y1*cos(t),y1*sin(t),x],x=0..1,t=0..2*pi,
display=yellow+filled)
```

Output :

mouse plan  $0.797x+0.544y+0.261z=0.124$

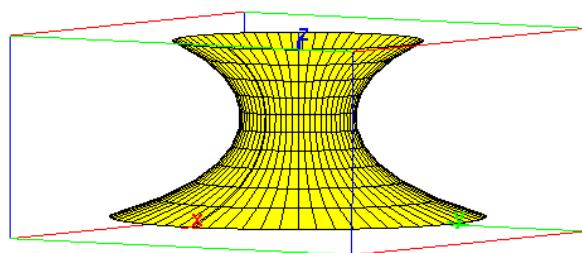


Input :

```
plot3d([y2*cos(t), y2*sin(t), x], x=0..1, t=0..2*pi,
       display=yellow+filled)
```

Output :

mouse plan  $0.797x+0.544y+0.261z=0.124$



## 5.22 Limits

### 5.22.1 Limits : limit

`limit` computes the limit of an expression at a finite or infinite point. It is also possible with an optional argument to compute a one-sided limit (1 for the right limit and -1 for the left limit).

`limit` takes three or four arguments :

an expression, the name of a variable (for example `x`), the limit point (for example `a`) and an optional argument, by default 0, to indicate if the limit is unidirectional. This argument is equal to -1 for a left limit ( $x < a$ ) or is equal to 1 for a right limit ( $x > a$ ) or is equal to 0 for a limit.

`limit` returns the limit of the expression when the variable (for example `x`) approaches the limit point (for example `a`).

#### Remark

It is also possible to put `x=a` as argument instead of `x, a`, hence : `limit` takes also as arguments an expression depending of a variable, an equality (variable =value of the limit point) and perhaps 1 or -1 to indicate the direction.

Input :

```
limit(1/x, x, 0, -1)
```

or :

`limit(1/x, x=0, -1)`

Output :

`-infinity`

Input :

`limit(1/x, x, 0, 1)`

or :

`limit(1/x, x=0, 1)`

Output :

`+infinity`

Input :

`limit(1/x, x, 0, 0)`

or :

`limit(1/x, x, 0)`

or :

`limit(1/x, x=0)`

Output :

`infinity`

Hence,  $\text{abs}(1/x)$  approaches  $+\infty$  when  $x$  approaches 0.

### Exercises :

- Find for  $n > 2$ , the limit when  $x$  approaches 0 of :

$$\frac{n \tan(x) - \tan(nx)}{\sin(nx) - n \sin(x)}$$

Input :

`limit((n*tan(x)-tan(n*x))/(sin(n*x)-n*sin(x)), x=0)`

Output :

`2`

- Find the limit when  $x$  approaches  $+\infty$  of :

$$\sqrt{x + \sqrt{x + \sqrt{x}}} - \sqrt{x}$$

Input :

```
limit(sqrt(x+sqrt(x+sqrt(x)))-sqrt(x),x=+infinity)
```

Output :

$1/2$

- Find the limit when  $x$  approaches 0 of :

$$\frac{\sqrt{1+x+x^2/2} - \exp(x/2)}{(1-\cos(x))\sin(x)}$$

Input :

```
limit((sqrt(1+x+x^2/2)-exp(x/2))/((1-cos(x))*sin(x)),x,0)
```

Output :

$-1/6$

### Remark

To compute limits, it is better sometimes to quote the first argument.

Input :

```
limit(' (2*x-1)*exp(1/(x-1))',x=+infinity)
```

Note that the first argument is quoted, because it is better that this argument is not simplified (i.e. not evaluated).

Output :

$+\infty$

### 5.22.2 Integral and limit

Just two examples :

- Find the limit, when  $a$  approaches  $+\infty$ , of :

$$\int_2^a \frac{1}{x^2} dx$$

Input :

```
limit(integrate(1/(x^2),x,2,a),a,+\infty)
```

Output (if  $a$  is assigned then input `purge(a)`) :

$1/2$

- Find the limit, when  $a$  approaches  $+\infty$ , of :

$$\int_2^a \left( \frac{x}{x^2 - 1} + \ln\left(\frac{x+1}{x-1}\right) \right) dx$$

Input :

```
limit(integrate(x/(x^2-1)+log((x+1)/(x-1)),x,2,a),
      a,+infinity))
```

Output (if  $a$  is assigned then input `purge(a)`) :

```
+infinity)
```

## 5.23 Rewriting transcendental and trigonometric expressions

### 5.23.1 Expand a transcendental and trigonometric expression : `texpand` `tExpand`

`texpand` or `tExpand` takes as argument an expression containing transcendental or trigonometric functions.

`texpand` or `tExpand` expands these functions, like simultaneous calling `expexpand`, `lnexpand` and `trigexpand`, for example,  $\ln(x^n)$  becomes  $n \ln(x)$ ,  $\exp(nx)$  becomes  $\exp(x)^n$ ,  $\sin(2x)$  becomes  $2 \sin(x) \cos(x)$ ...

**Examples :**

- 1. Expand  $\cos(x + y)$ .

Input :

```
texpand(cos(x+y))
```

Output :

```
cos(x)*cos(y)-sin(x)*sin(y)
```

- 2. Expand  $\cos(3x)$ .

Input :

```
texpand(cos(3*x))
```

Output :

```
4*(cos(x))^3-3*cos(x)
```

- 3. Expand  $\frac{\sin(3*x) + \sin(7*x)}{\sin(5*x)}$ .

Input :

```
texpand((sin(3*x)+sin(7*x))/sin(5*x))
```

Output

5.23. REWRITING TRANSCENDENTAL AND TRIGONOMETRIC EXPRESSIONS 223

```
(4*(cos(x))^2-1)*(sin(x)/(16*(cos(x))^4-
12*(cos(x))^2+1))/sin(x)+(64*(cos(x))^6-
80*(cos(x))^4+24*(cos(x))^2-1)*sin(x)/
(16*(cos(x))^4-12*(cos(x))^2+1)/sin(x)
```

Output, after a simplification with `normal(ans())` :

```
4*(cos(x))^2-2
```

- 1. Expand  $\exp(x + y)$ .

Input :

```
texpand(exp(x+y))
```

Output :

```
exp(x)*exp(y)
```

- 2. Expand  $\ln(x \times y)$ .

Input :

```
texpand(log(x*y))
```

Output :

```
log(x)+log(y)
```

- 3. Expand  $\ln(x^n)$ .

Input :

```
texpand(ln(x^n))
```

Output :

```
n*ln(x)
```

- 4. Expand  $\ln((e^2) + \exp(2 * \ln(2)) + \exp(\ln(3) + \ln(2)))$ .

Input :

```
texpand(log(e^2)+exp(2*log(2))+exp(log(3)+log(2)))
```

Output :

```
6+3*2
```

Or input :

```
texpand(log(e^2)+exp(2*log(2)))+
lncollect(exp(log(3)+log(2)))
```

Output :

```
12
```

- Expand  $\exp(x + y) + \cos(x + y) + \ln(3x^2)$ .

Input :

```
texpand(exp(x+y)+cos(x+y)+ln(3*x^2))
```

Output :

```
cos(x)*cos(y)-sin(x)*sin(y)+exp(x)*exp(y)+
ln(3)+2*ln(x)
```

### 5.23.2 Combine terms of the same type : combine

`combine` takes two arguments : an expression and the name of a function or class of functions `exp, log, ln, sin, cos, trig`.

Whenever possible, `combine` put together subexpressions corresponding to the second argument:

- `combine(expr, ln)` or `combine(expr, log)` gives the same result as `lncollect(expr)`
- `combine(expr, trig)` or `combine(expr, sin)` or `combine(expr, cos)` gives the same result as `tcollect(expr)`.

Input :

```
combine(exp(x)*exp(y)+sin(x)*cos(x)+ln(x)+ln(y), exp)
```

Output :

```
exp(x+y)+sin(x)*cos(x)+ln(x)+ln(y)
```

Input :

```
combine(exp(x)*exp(y)+sin(x)*cos(x)+ln(x)+ln(y), trig)
```

or

```
combine(exp(x)*exp(y)+sin(x)*cos(x)+ln(x)+ln(y), sin)
```

or

```
combine(exp(x)*exp(y)+sin(x)*cos(x)+ln(x)+ln(y), cos)
```

Output :

```
exp(y)*exp(x)+(sin(2*x))/2+ln(x)+ln(y)
```

Input :

```
combine(exp(x)*exp(y)+sin(x)*cos(x)+ln(x)+ln(y), ln)
```

or

```
combine(exp(x)*exp(y)+sin(x)*cos(x)+ln(x)+ln(y), log)
```

Output :

```
exp(x)*exp(y)+sin(x)*cos(x)+ln(x*y)
```

## 5.24 Trigonometry

### 5.24.1 Trigonometric functions

- `sin` is the sine function,
- `cos` is the cosine function,
- `tan` is the tangent function ( $\tan(x) = \sin(x)/\cos(x)$ ),
- `cot` is the cotangent function ( $\cot(x) = \cos(x)/\sin(x)$ ),
- `sec` is the secant function ( $\sec(x) = 1/\cos(x)$ ),
- `csc` is the cosecant function ( $\csc(x) = 1/\sin(x)$ ),
- `asin` or `arcsin`, `acos` or `arccos`, `atan` or `arctan`, `acot`, `asec`, `acsc` are the inverse trigonometric functions. The latter are defined by:
  1.  $\text{asec}(x) = \text{acos}(1/x)$ ,
  2.  $\text{acsc}(x) = \text{asin}(1/x)$ ,
  3.  $\text{acot}(x) = \text{atan}(1/x)$ .

### 5.24.2 Expand a trigonometric expression : `trigexpand`

`trigexpand` takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

`trigexpand` expands sums, differences and products by an integer inside the trigonometric functions

Input :

```
trigexpand(cos(x+y))
```

Output :

```
cos(x)*cos(y)-sin(x)*sin(y)
```

### 5.24.3 Linearize a trigonometric expression : `tlin`

`tlin` takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

`tlin` linearizes products and integer powers of the trigonometric functions (e.g. in terms of  $\sin(n * x)$  and  $\cos(n * x)$ )

Examples

- Linearize  $\cos(x) * \cos(y)$ .

Input :

```
tlin(cos(x)*cos(y))
```

Output :

```
1/2*cos(x-y)+1/2*cos(x+y)
```

- Linearize  $\cos(x)^3$ .

Input :

```
tlin(cos(x)^3)
```

Output :

```
3/4*cos(x)+1/4*cos(3*x)
```

- Linearize  $4\cos(x)^2 - 2$ .

Input :

```
tlin(4*cos(x)^2-2)
```

Output :

```
2*cos(2*x)
```

#### 5.24.4 Increase the phase by $\pi/2$ in a trigonometric expression: **shift\_phase**

The **shift\_phase** command takes as argument a trigonometric expression. **shift\_phase** returns the expression with phase increased by  $\pi/2$  (after the automatic simplification).

Input:

```
shift_phase(x + sin(x))
```

Output:

```
x-cos((pi+2*x)/2)
```

Input:

```
shift_phase(x + cos(x))
```

Output:

```
x+sin((pi+2*x)/2)
```

Input:

```
shift_phase(x + tan(x))
```

Output:

```
x-1/tan((pi+2*x)/2)
```

Quoting the argument will prevent the automatic simplification.

Input:

```
shift_phase('sin(x + pi/2)')
```

Output:

```
-cos((pi+2*x+2*pi/2)/2)
```

With an unquoted sine, we get:

Input

```
shift_phase(sin(x + pi/2))
```

Output:

```
sin((pi+2*x)/2)
```

since `sin(x+pi/2)` is evaluated (in this case simplified) before `shift_phase` is called, and `shift_phase(cos(x))` returns `sin((pi+2*x)/2)`

#### 5.24.5 Put together sine and cosine of the same angle : `tcollect` `tCollect`

`tcollect` or `tCollect` takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

`tcollect` first linearizes this expression (e.g. in terms of  $\sin(n * x)$  and  $\cos(n * x)$ ), then, puts together sine and cosine of the same angle.

Input :

```
tcollect(sin(x)+cos(x))
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2)*cos(x-pi/4)
```

Input :

```
tcollect(2*sin(x)*cos(x)+cos(2*x))
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2)*cos(2*x-pi/4)
```

#### 5.24.6 Simplify : `simplify`

`simplify` simplifies the expression.

As with all automatic simplifications, do not expect miracles, you will have to use specific rewriting rules if it does not work.

Input :

```
simplify((sin(3*x)+sin(7*x))/sin(5*x))
```

Output :

```
4*(cos(x))^2-2
```

**Warning** `simplify` is more efficient in radian mode (check `radian` in the `cas configuration` or input `angle_radian:=1`).

### 5.24.7 Simplify trigonometric expressions : trigsimplify

`trigsimplify` simplifies trigonometric expressions by combining `simplify`, `texpand`, `tlin`, `tcollect`, `trigsin`, `trigcos` and `trigtan` commands in a certain order.

Input :

```
trigsimplify((sin(x+y)-sin(x-y))/(cos(x+y)+cos(x-y)))
```

Output :

```
tan(y)
```

Input :

```
trigsimplify(1-1/4*sin(2a)^2-sin(b)^2-cos(a)^4)
```

Output :

```
sin(a)^2-sin(b)^2
```

### 5.24.8 Transform arccos into arcsin : acos2asin

`acos2asin` takes as argument an expression containing inverse trigonometric functions.

`acos2asin` replaces  $\arccos(x)$  by  $\frac{\pi}{2} - \arcsin(x)$  in this expression.

Input :

```
acos2asin(acos(x)+asin(x))
```

Output after simplification :

```
pi/2
```

### 5.24.9 Transform arccos into arctan : acos2atan

`acos2atan` takes as argument an expression containing inverse trigonometric functions.

`acos2atan` replaces  $\arccos(x)$  by  $\frac{\pi}{2} - \arctan\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\right)$  in this expression.

Input :

```
acos2atan(acos(x))
```

Output :

```
pi/2-atan(x/sqrt(1-x^2))
```

### 5.24.10 Transform arcsin into arccos : asin2acos

`asin2acos` takes as argument an expression containing inverse trigonometric functions.

`asin2acos` replaces  $\arcsin(x)$  by  $\frac{\pi}{2} - \arccos(x)$  in this expression.

Input :

```
asin2acos(acos(x)+asin(x))
```

Output after simplification :

```
pi/2
```

**5.24.11 Transform arcsin into arctan : asin2atan**

`asin2atan` takes as argument an expression containing inverse trigonometric functions.

`asin2atan` replaces  $\arcsin(x)$  by  $\arctan\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\right)$  in this expression.

Input :

```
asin2atan(asin(x))
```

Output :

```
atan(x/sqrt(1-x^2))
```

**5.24.12 Transform arctan into arcsin : atan2asin**

`atan2asin` takes as argument an expression containing inverse trigonometric functions. `atan2asin` replaces  $\arctan(x)$  by  $\arcsin\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}\right)$  in this expression.

Input :

```
atan2asin(atan(x))
```

Output :

```
asin(x/sqrt(1+x^2))
```

**5.24.13 Transform arctan into arccos : atan2acos**

`atan2acos` takes as argument an expression containing inverse trigonometric functions.

`atan2acos` replaces  $\arctan(x)$  by  $\frac{\pi}{2} - \arccos\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}\right)$  in this expression.

Input :

```
atan2acos(atan(x))
```

Output :

```
pi/2-acos(x/sqrt(1+x^2))
```

**5.24.14 Transform complex exponentials into sin and cos : sincos  
exp2trig**

`sincos` or `exp2trig` takes as argument an expression containing complex exponentials.

`sincos` or `exp2trig` rewrites this expression in terms of sin and cos.

Input :

```
sincos(exp(i*x))
```

Output :

```
cos(x)+(i)*sin(x)
```

Input :

```
exp2trig(exp(-i*x))
```

Output :

```
cos(x) + (i) * (- (sin(x)))
```

Input :

```
simplify(sincos(((i)*(exp((i)*x))^2-i)/(2*exp((i)*x))))
```

or :

```
simplify(exp2trig(((i)*(exp((i)*x))^2-i)/(2*exp((i)*x))))
```

Output :

```
-sin(x)
```

### 5.24.15 Transform tan(x) into sin(x)/cos(x) : tan2sincos

`tan2sincos` takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

`tan2sincos` replaces  $\tan(x)$  by  $\frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)}$  in this expression.

Input :

```
tan2sincos(tan(2*x))
```

Output :

```
sin(2*x) / cos(2*x)
```

### 5.24.16 Transform sin(x) into cos(x)\*tan(x): sin2costan

The `sin2costan` command takes as argument a trigonometric expression.

`sin2costan` returns the expression with  $\sin(x)$  replaced by  $\cos(x) \tan(x)$ .

Input:

```
sin2costan(sin(2*x))
```

Output:

```
tan(2*x) * cos(2*x)
```

### 5.24.17 Transform cos(x) into sin(x)/tan(x): cos2sintan

The `cos2sintan` command takes as argument a trigonometric expression.

`cos2sintan` returns the expression with  $\cos(x)$  replaced by  $\sin(x) / \tan(x)$ .

Input:

```
cos2sintan(cos(2*x))
```

Output:

```
sin(2*x) / tan(2*x)
```

**5.24.18 Rewrite tan(x) with sin(2x) and cos(2x) : tan2sincos2**

`tan2sincos2` takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

`tan2sincos2` replaces  $\tan(x)$  by  $\frac{\sin(2x)}{1 + \cos(2x)}$  in this expression.

Input :

```
tan2sincos2(tan(x))
```

Output :

```
sin(2*x) / (1+cos(2*x))
```

**5.24.19 Rewrite tan(x) with cos(2x) and sin(2x) : tan2cossin2**

`tan2cossin2` takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

`tan2cossin2` replaces  $\tan(x)$  by  $\frac{1 - \cos(2x)}{\sin(2x)}$ , in this expression.

Input :

```
tan2cossin2(tan(x))
```

Output :

```
(1-cos(2*x)) / sin(2*x)
```

**5.24.20 Rewrite sin, cos, tan in terms of tan(x/2) : halftan**

`halftan` takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

`halftan` rewrites  $\sin(x)$ ,  $\cos(x)$  and  $\tan(x)$  in terms of  $\tan(\frac{x}{2})$ .

Input :

```
halftan(sin(2*x) / (1+cos(2*x)))
```

Output :

```
2*tan(2*x/2) / ((tan(2*x/2))^2+1) /
(1+(1-(tan(2*x/2))^2) / ((tan(2*x/2))^2+1))
```

Output, after simplification with `normal(ans())` :

```
tan(x)
```

Input :

```
halftan(sin(x)^2+cos(x)^2)
```

Output :

```
(2*tan(x/2) / ((tan(x/2))^2+1))^2 +
((1-(tan(x/2))^2) / ((tan(x/2))^2+1))^2
```

Output, after simplification with `normal(ans())` :

### 5.24.21 Rewrite trigonometric functions as function of $\tan(x/2)$ and hyperbolic functions as function of $\exp(x)$ : halftan\_hyp2exp

`halftan_hyp2exp` takes as argument a trigonometric and hyperbolic expression.

`halftan_hyp2exp` rewrites  $\sin(x)$ ,  $\cos(x)$ ,  $\tan(x)$  in terms of  $\tan(\frac{x}{2})$  and  $\sinh(x)$ ,  $\cosh(x)$ ,  $\tanh(x)$  in terms of  $\exp(x)$ .

Input :

```
halftan_hyp2exp(tan(x)+tanh(x))
```

Output :

```
(2*tan(x/2))/( (1-(tan(x/2))^2) + ( (exp(x))^2 - 1) ) /  
(( (exp(x))^2 + 1) )
```

Input :

```
halftan_hyp2exp(sin(x)^2+cos(x)^2-sinh(x)^2+cosh(x)^2)
```

Output, after simplification with `normal(ans())` :

```
2
```

### 5.24.22 Transform inverse trigonometric functions into logarithms : atrig2ln

`atrig2ln` takes as argument an expression containing inverse trigonometric functions.

`atrig2ln` rewrites these functions with complex logarithms.

Input :

```
atrig2ln(asin(x))
```

Output :

```
i*log(x+sqrt(x^2-1))+pi/2
```

### 5.24.23 Transform trigonometric functions into complex exponentials : trig2exp

`trig2exp` takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions. `trig2exp` rewrites the trigonometric functions with complex exponentials (WITHOUT linearization).

Input :

```
trig2exp(tan(x))
```

Output :

```
((exp((i)*x))^2 - 1) / ((i)*(exp((i)*x))^2 + 1)
```

Input :

```
trig2exp(sin(x))
```

Output :

```
(exp((i)*x) - 1 / (exp((i)*x))) / (2*i)
```

**5.24.24 Simplify and express preferentially with sine : trigsin**

trigsin takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

trigsin simplifies this expression with the formula :

$\sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^2 = 1$ ,  $\tan(x) = \frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)}$  and tries to rewrite the expression only with sine.

Input :

```
trigsin(sin(x)^4+cos(x)^2+1)
```

Output :

```
sin(x)^4-sin(x)^2+2
```

**5.24.25 Simplify and express preferentially with cosine : trigcos**

trigcos takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

trigcos simplifies this expression with the formula :

$\sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^2 = 1$ ,  $\tan(x) = \frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)}$  and tries to rewrite the expression only with cosine.

Input :

```
trigcos(sin(x)^4+cos(x)^2+1)
```

Output :

```
cos(x)^4-cos(x)^2+2
```

**5.24.26 Simplify and express preferentially with tangents : trigtan**

trigtan takes as argument an expression containing trigonometric functions.

trigtan simplifies this expression with the formula :

$\sin(x)^2 + \cos(x)^2 = 1$ ,  $\tan(x) = \frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)}$  and tries to rewrite the expression only with tangents.

Input :

```
trigtan(sin(x)^4+cos(x)^2+1)
```

Output :

```
((tan(x))^2/(1+(tan(x))^2))^(2+1)/(1+(tan(x))^2)+1
```

Output, after simplification with normal :

```
(2*tan(x)^4+3*tan(x)^2+2)/(tan(x)^4+2*tan(x))^2+1
```

**5.24.27 Rewrite an expression with different options :** `convert convertir =>`

`convert` takes two arguments, an expression and an option. `=>` is the infix version of `convert`.

`convert` rewrites this expression applying rules depending on the option. Valid options are :

- `sin` converts an expression like `trigsin`.
- `cos` converts an expression like `trigcos`.
- `sincos` converts an expression like `sincos`.
- `trig` converts an expression like `sincos`.
- `tan` converts an expression like `halftan`.
- `exp` converts an expression like `trig2exp`.
- `ln` converts an expression like `trig2exp`.
- `expln` converts an expression like `trig2exp`.
- `string` converts an expression into a string.
- `matrix` converts a list of lists into a matrix.
- `polynom` converts a Taylor series into a polynomial by removing the remainder (cf [5.29.25](#)).
- `parfrac` or `partfrac` or `fullparfrac` converts a rational fraction into its partial fraction decomposition ([5.33.9](#)).

`convert` can also :

- convert units, for example `convert (1000_g, _kg)=1.0_kg` (cf [10.1.4](#)).
- write a real as a continued fraction : `convert (a, confrac, 'fc')` writes `a` as a continued fraction stored in `fc`. Do not forget to quote the last argument if it was assigned.

For example, `convert (1.2, confrac, 'fc')=[1, 5]` and `fc` contains the continued fraction equal to 1.2 (cf [5.8.7](#)).

- transform an integer into the list of its digits in a base, beginning with the units digit (and reciprocally)

– `convert (n, base, b)` transforms the integer `n` into the list of its digits in base `b` beginning with the units digit.

For example, `convert (123, base, 10)=[3, 2, 1]` and reciprocally

– `convert (l, base, b)` transforms the list `l` into the integer `n` which has `l` as list of its digits in base `b` beginning with the units digit.

For example, `convert ([3, 2, 1], base, 10)=123` (cf [5.5](#)).

## 5.25 Fourier transformation

### 5.25.1 Fourier coefficients : fourier\_an and fourier\_bn or fourier\_cn

Let  $f$  be a  $T$ -periodic continuous functions on  $\mathbb{R}$  except maybe at a finite number of points. One can prove that if  $f$  is continuous at  $x$ , then;

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{+\infty} a_n \cos\left(\frac{2\pi n x}{T}\right) + b_n \sin\left(\frac{2\pi n x}{T}\right) \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_n e^{\frac{2i\pi n x}{T}} \end{aligned}$$

where the coefficients  $a_n, b_n, n \in N$ , (or  $c_n, n \in Z$ ) are the Fourier coefficients of  $f$ . The commands `fourier_an` and `fourier_bn` or `fourier_cn` compute these coefficients.

`fourier_an`

`fourier_an` takes four or five arguments : an expression  $expr$  depending on a variable, the name of this variable (for example  $x$ ), the period  $T$ , an integer  $n$  and a real  $a$  (by default  $a = 0$ ).

`fourier_an(expr, x, T, n, a)` returns the Fourier coefficient  $a_n$  of a function  $f$  of variable  $x$  defined on  $[a, a + T]$  by  $f(x) = expr$  and such that  $f$  is periodic of period  $T$ :

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_a^{a+T} f(x) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi n x}{T}\right) dx$$

To simplify the computations, one should input `assume(n, integer)` before calling `fourier_an` to specify that  $n$  is an integer.

**Example** Let the function  $f$ , of period  $T = 2$ , defined on  $[-1, 1]$  by  $f(x) = x^2$ .

Input, to have the coefficient  $a_0$  :

```
fourier_an(x^2, x, 2, 0, -1)
```

Output :

```
1/3
```

Input, to have the coefficient  $a_n$  ( $n \neq 0$ ) :

```
assume(n, integer); fourier_an(x^2, x, 2, n, -1)
```

Output :

```
4 * (-1)^n / (pi^2 * n^2)
```

`fourier_bn`

`fourier_bn` takes four or five arguments : an expression  $expr$  depending on a variable, the name of this variable (for example  $x$ ), the period  $T$ , an integer  $n$  and a real  $a$  (by default  $a = 0$ ).

`fourier_bn(expr, x, T, n, a)` returns the Fourier coefficient  $b_n$  of a function  $f$  of variable  $x$  defined on  $[a, a + T]$  by  $f(x) = expr$  and periodic of period  $T$ :

$$b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_a^{a+T} f(x) \sin\left(\frac{2\pi nx}{T}\right) dx$$

To simplify the computations, one should input `assume(n, integer)` before calling `fourier_bn` to specify that  $n$  is an integer.

### Examples

- Let the function  $f$ , of period  $T = 2$ , defined on  $[-1, 1]$  by  $f(x) = x^2$ .  
Input, to have the coefficient  $b_n$  ( $n \neq 0$ ):

```
assume(n, integer); fourier_bn(x^2, x, 2, n, -1)
```

Output :

0

- Let the function  $f$ , of period  $T = 2$ , defined on  $[-1, 1]$  by  $f(x) = x^3$ .  
Input, to have the coefficient  $b_1$ :

```
fourier_bn(x^3, x, 2, 1, -1)
```

Output :

$(2*\pi^2-12)/\pi^3$

`fourier_cn`

`fourier_cn` takes four or five arguments : an expression  $expr$  depending of a variable, the name of this variable (for example  $x$ ), the period  $T$ , an integer  $n$  and a real  $a$  (by default  $a = 0$ ).

`fourier_cn(expr, x, T, n, a)` returns the Fourier coefficient  $c_n$  of a function  $f$  of variable  $x$  defined on  $[a, a + T]$  by  $f(x) = expr$  and periodic of period  $T$ :

$$c_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_a^{a+T} f(x) e^{-\frac{2i\pi nx}{T}} dx$$

To simplify the computations, one should input `assume(n, integer)` before calling `fourier_cn` to specify that  $n$  is an integer.

### Examples

- Find the Fourier coefficients  $c_n$  of the periodic function  $f$  of period 2 and defined on  $[-1, 1]$  by  $f(x) = x^2$ .

Input, to have  $c_0$ :

```
fourier_cn(x^2, x, 2, 0, -1)
```

Output:

1 / 3

Input, to have  $c_n$  :

```
assume(n, integer)
fourier_cn(x^2, x, 2, n, -1)
```

Output:

$$2 * (-1)^n / (\pi^2 * n^2)$$

- Find the Fourier coefficients  $c_n$  of the periodic function  $f$ , of period 2, and defined on  $[0, 2]$  by  $f(x) = x^2$ .

Input, to have  $c_0$  :

```
fourier_cn(x^2, x, 2, 0)
```

Output:

4 / 3

Input, to have  $c_n$  :

```
assume(n, integer)
fourier_cn(x^2, x, 2, n)
```

Output:

$$( (2*i) * \pi * n + 2 ) / (\pi^2 * n^2)$$

- Find the Fourier coefficients  $c_n$  of the periodic function  $f$  of period  $2\pi$  and defined on  $[0, 2\pi]$  by  $f(x) = x^2$ .

Input :

```
assume(n, integer)
fourier_cn(x^2, x, 2*pi, n)
```

Output :

$$( (2*i) * \pi * n + 2 ) / n^2$$

If you don't specify `assume(n, integer)`, the output will not be simplified :

```
((2*i)*pi^2*n^2*exp((-i)*n*2*pi)+2*pi*n*exp((-i)*n*2*pi)+  
(-i)*exp((-i)*n*2*pi)+i)/(pi*n^3)
```

You might simplify this expression by replacing `exp((-i)*n*2*pi)` by 1, input :

```
subst(ans(), exp((-i)*n*2*pi)=1)
```

Output :

```
((2*i)*pi^2*n^2+2*pi*n-i+i)/pi/n^3
```

This expression is then simplified with `normal`, the final output is :

```
((2*i)*pi*n+2)/n^2
```

Hence for  $n \neq 0$ ,  $c_n = \frac{2in\pi + 2}{n^2}$ . As shown in this example, it is better to input `assume(n, integer)` before calling `fourier_cn`. We must also compute  $c_n$  for  $n = 0$ , input :

```
fourier_cn(x^2, x, 2*pi, 0)
```

Output :

```
4*pi^2/3
```

Hence for  $n = 0$ ,  $c_0 = \frac{4\pi^2}{3}$ .

### Remarks :

- Input `purge(n)` to remove the hypothesis done on  $n$ .
- Input `about(n)` or `assume(n)`, to know the hypothesis done on the variable  $n$ .

### 5.25.2 Continuous Fourier Transform : `fourier`, `ifourier`

The command `fourier` takes one to three arguments: an expression  $f(x)$  and (optionally) identifiers  $x$  and  $s$ . It returns the Fourier transform  $F$  of  $f$  defined by

$$F(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{-isx} f(x) dx, \quad s \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (5.5)$$

If  $s$  is not given,  $F$  is returned as a function of  $x$ .

The command `ifourier` works the other way round: it takes arguments  $F(s)$  and (optionally)  $s$  and  $x$ , and returns the expression  $f(x)$  using the formula

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{isx} F(s) ds.$$

To compute the above integral, `fourier` is called with input parameters  $\frac{F(s)}{2\pi}$ ,  $s$  and  $x$ , replacing  $x$  with  $-x$  in the result.

Arbitrary rational functions can be transformed. For example, to find the Fourier transform of  $f(x) = \frac{x}{x^3 - 19x + 30}$ , input :

```
F:=fourier(x/(x^3-19*x+30),x,s)
```

Output :

```
pi*(5*i*exp(5*i*s)+(-21*i)*exp((-3*i)*s)+16*i*exp((-2*i)*s))*sign(s)/56
```

Input :

```
ifourier(F,s,x)
```

Output :

```
x/(x^3-19*x+30)
```

Similarly, to find the transform of  $f(x) = \frac{x^2+1}{x^2-1}$ , input :

```
F:=fourier((x^2+1)/(x^2-1),x,s)
```

Output :

```
2*pi*(Dirac(s)-sign(s)*sin(s))
```

Input :

```
ifourier(F,s,x)
```

Output :

```
(x^2+1)/(x^2-1)
```

A range of other (generalized) functions and distributions can be transformed, as demonstrated in the following examples. If `fourier` does not know how to transform a function, say  $f$ , it returns the unevaluated integral (5.5). In these cases one may try to evaluate the result using `eval`.

Input :

```
fourier(3x^2+2x+1,x,s)
```

Output :

```
2*pi*(Dirac(s)+2*i*Dirac(s,1)-3*Dirac(s,2))
```

Input :

```
fourier(Dirac(x-1)+Dirac(x+1),x,s)
```

Output :

```
2*cos(s)
```

Input :

```
fourier(exp(-2*abs(x-1)),x,s)
```

Output :

```
4*exp(-i*s)/(s^2+4)
```

Input :

```
fourier(atan(1/(2x^2)),x,s)
```

Output :

```
2*pi*sin(s/2)*exp(-abs(s)/2)/s
```

Input :

```
fourier(BesselJ(3,x),x,s)
```

Output :

```
-s*(4*s^2-3)*(-i*sign(s+1)+i*sign(s-1))/sqrt(-s^2+1)
```

Input :

```
F:=fourier(sin(x)*sign(x),x,s)
```

Output :

```
-2/(s^2-1)
```

Input :

```
ifourier(F,s,x)
```

Output :

```
sign(x)*sin(x)
```

Input :

```
fourier(log(abs(x)),x,s)
```

Output :

```
-pi*(2*euler_gamma*Dirac(s)*abs(s)+1)/abs(s)
```

Input :

```
fourier(rect(x),x,s)
```

Output :

```
2*sin(s/2)/s
```

Input :

```
fourier(exp(-abs(x))*sinc(x),x,s)
```

Output :

$\text{atan}(s+1) - \text{atan}(s-1)$

Input :

```
fourier(1/sqrt(abs(x)), x, s)
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2)*sqrt(pi)/sqrt(abs(s))
```

Input :

```
F:=fourier(1/cosh(2x), x, s)
```

Output :

```
pi/(exp(pi*s/4)+exp(-pi*s/4))
```

Input :

```
ifourier(F, s, x)
```

Output :

```
2/(exp(2*x)+exp(-2*x))
```

Input :

```
fourier(Airy_Ai(x/2), x, s)
```

Output :

```
2*exp(8*i*s^3/3)
```

Input :

```
F:=fourier(Gamma(1+i*x/3), x, s)
```

Output :

```
6*pi*exp(-exp(-3*s)-3*s)
```

Input :

```
ifourier(F, s, x)
```

Output :

```
Gamma(i*x/3+1)
```

Input :

```
F:=fourier(atan(x/4)/x, x, s)
```

Output :

```
pi*ugamma(0, 4*abs(s))
```

Input :

```
ifourier(F, s, x)
```

Output :

```
atan(x/4)/x
```

Input :

```
assume(a>0); fourier(exp(-a*x^2+b), x, s)
```

Output :

```
sqrt(a)*sqrt(pi)*exp(-s^2/(4*a)+b)/a
```

In the following example we compute the convolution of  $f(x) = e^{-|x|}$  with itself using the convolution theorem. Input :

```
F:=fourier(exp(-abs(x)), x, s)
```

Output :

```
2/(s^2+1)
```

Input :

```
ifourier(F^2, s, x)
```

Output :

```
x*Heaviside(x)*exp(-x)-x*Heaviside(-x)*exp(x)+exp(-abs(x))
```

The above result is the desired convolution  $f * f(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(t) f(x-t) dt$ .

Piecewise functions can be transformed if defined as

```
piecewise(x<a1, f1, x< a2, f2, ..., x<an, fn, f0)
```

where  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$  are real numbers such that  $a_1 < a_2 < \dots < a_n$ . Inequalities may be strict or non-strict.

Input :

```
f:=piecewise(x<=-1, exp(x+1), x<=1, 1, exp(2-2*x));;
F:=fourier(f, x, s)
```

Output :

```
(-i*s*sin(s)+3*s*cos(s)+4*sin(s))/(s*(s-2*i)*(s+i))
```

The original function  $f$  is obtained from the above result by applying `ifourier`.

Input :

```
ifourier(F, s, x)
```

Output :

```
Heaviside(x+1)-Heaviside(x-1)+Heaviside(x-1)*exp(-2*x+2) +
Heaviside(-x-1)*exp(x+1)
```

One may verify that the above expression is equal to  $f(x)$  by plotting.

To transform unknown functions, one can use the command `addtable` which takes five arguments: `fourier` or `laplace` (to indicate the desired transform definition),  $f(x)$ ,  $F(s)$ ,  $x$  and  $s$ , where  $f$ ,  $F$ ,  $x$  and  $s$  are identifiers. If the first argument is `fourier`, this means that  $\mathcal{F}\{f(x)\}(s) = F(s)$  i.e. that the command

```
fourier(f(x), x, s)
```

would return  $F(s)$ . The return value of `addtable` is 1 on success and 0 on failure. The second and the third argument can also be expressions depending on several variables.

**Input :**

```
addtable(fourier, y(x), Y(s), x, s)
```

**Output :**

```
1
```

**Input :**

```
fourier(y(a*x+b), x, s)
```

**Output :**

```
Y(s/a)*exp(i*s*b/a)/abs(a)
```

**Input :**

```
fourier(Y(x), x, s)
```

**Output :**

```
2*pi*y(-s)
```

**Input :**

```
addtable(fourier, g(x, t), G(s, t), x, s)
```

**Output :**

```
1
```

**Input :**

```
fourier(g(x/2, 3*t), x, s)
```

**Output :**

```
2*G(2*s, 3*t)
```

Fourier transform can be used for solving linear differential equations with constant coefficients. For example, we obtain a particular solution to the equation

$$y(x) + 4y^{(4)}(x) = \delta(x),$$

where  $\delta$  is the Dirac delta function. First we transform both sides of the above equation. Input :

```
L:=fourier(y(x)+4*diff(y(x),x,4),x,s);
R:=fourier(Dirac(x),x,s)
```

Output :

```
Y(s)-4*s^4*Y(s), 1
```

Then we solve the equation  $L = R$  for  $Y(s)$ . Generally, one should apply `csolve` instead of `solve`. Input :

```
sol:=csolve(L=R,Y(s))[0]
```

Output :

```
1/(4*s^4+1)
```

Finally, we apply `ifourier` to obtain  $y(x)$ . Input :

```
ifourier(sol,s,x)
```

Output :

```
(sin(abs(x)/2)+cos(abs(x)/2))*exp(-abs(x)/2)/4
```

The above solution can be combined with solutions of the corresponding homogeneous equation to obtain the general solution.

### 5.25.3 Discrete Fourier Transform

Let  $N$  be an integer. The Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) is a transformation  $F_N$  defined on the set of periodic sequences of period  $N$ , it depends on a choice of a primitive  $N$ -th root of unity  $\omega_N$ . If the DFT is defined on sequences with complex coefficients, we take:

$$\omega_N = e^{\frac{2i\pi}{N}}$$

If  $x$  is a periodic sequence of period  $N$ , defined by the vector  $x = [x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{N-1}]$  then  $F_N(x) = y$  is a periodic sequence of period  $N$ , defined by:

$$(F_{N,\omega_N}(x))_k = y_k = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} x_j \omega_N^{-k \cdot j}, k = 0..N-1$$

where  $\omega_N$  is a primitive  $N$ -th root of unity. The discrete Fourier transform may be computed faster than by computing each  $y_k$  individually, by the Fast Fourier Transform (FFT). Xcas implements the FFT algorithm to compute the discrete Fourier transform only if  $N$  is a power of 2.

#### The properties of the Discrete Fourier Transform

The Discrete Fourier Transform  $F_N$  is a bijective transformation on periodic sequences such that

$$\begin{aligned} F_{N,\omega_N}^{-1} &= \frac{1}{N} F_{N,\omega_N^{-1}} \\ &= \frac{1}{N} \overline{F_N} \quad \text{on } \mathbb{C} \end{aligned}$$

i.e. :

$$(F_N^{-1}(x))_k = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} x_j \omega_N^{k \cdot j}$$

Inside Xcas the discrete Fourier transform and its inverse are denote by `fft` and `ifft`:

$$\text{fft}(x) = F_N(x), \quad \text{ifft}(x) = F_N^{-1}(x)$$

### Definitions

Let  $x$  and  $y$  be two periodic sequences of period  $N$ .

- The Hadamard product (notation  $\cdot$ ) is defined by:

$$(x \cdot y)_k = x_k y_k$$

- the convolution product (notation  $*$ ) is defined by:

$$(x * y)_k = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} x_j y_{k-j}$$

### Properties :

$$\begin{aligned} N * F_N(x \cdot y) &= F_N(x) * F_N(y) \\ F_N(x * y) &= F_N(x) \cdot F_N(y) \end{aligned}$$

### Applications

1. Value of a polynomial

Define a polynomial  $P(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} c_j x^j$  by the vector of its coefficients  $c := [c_0, c_1, \dots, c_{N-1}]$ , where zeroes may be added so that  $N$  is a power of 2.

- Compute the values of  $P(x)$  at

$$x = a_k = \omega_N^{-k} = \exp\left(\frac{-2ik\pi}{N}\right), \quad k = 0..N-1$$

This is just the discrete Fourier transform of  $c$  since

$$P(a_k) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} c_j (\omega_N^{-k})^j = F_N(c)_k$$

Input, for example :

$$\text{P}(x) := x + x^2; \quad w := i$$

Here the coefficients of  $P$  are  $[0, 1, 1, 0]$ ,  $N = 4$  and  $\omega = \exp(2i\pi/4) = i$ .

Input :

`fft([0, 1, 1, 0])`

Output :

`[2, -1-i, 0, -1+i]`

hence

- $P(1) = 2,$
- $P(-i) = P(w^1) = -1 - i,$
- $P(-1) = P(w^2) = 0,$
- $P(i) = P(w^3) = -1 + i.$

- Compute the values of  $P(x)$  at

$$x = b_k = \omega_N^k = \exp\left(\frac{2ik\pi}{N}\right), \quad k = 0..N-1$$

This is  $N$  times the inverse fourier transform of  $c$  since

$$P(a_k) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} c_j (\omega_N^k)^j = N F_N^{-1}(c)_k$$

Input, for example :

$P(x) := x + x^2$  and  $w := i$

Hence, the coefficients of  $P$  are  $[0, 1, 1, 0]$ ,  $N = 4$  and  $\omega = \exp(2i\pi/4) = i$ .

Input :

`4*ifft([0, 1, 1, 0])`

Output :

`[2, -1+i, 0, -1-i]`

hence :

- $P(1) = 2,$
- $P(i) = P(w^1) = -1 + i,$
- $P(-1) = P(w^2) = 0,$
- $P(-i) = P(w^3) = -1 - i.$

We find of course the same values as above...

## 2. Trigonometric interpolation

Let  $f$  be periodic function of period  $2\pi$ , assume that  $f(2k\pi/N) = f_k$  for  $k = 0..(N-1)$ . Find a trigonometric polynomial  $p$  that interpolates  $f$  at  $x_k = 2k\pi/N$ , that is find  $p_j, j = 0..N-1$  such that

$$p(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} p_j \exp(ixj), \quad p(x_k) = f_k$$

Replacing  $x_k$  by its value in  $p(x)$  we get:

$$\sum_{j=0}^{N-1} p_j \exp\left(i\frac{j2k\pi}{N}\right) = f_k$$

In other words,  $(f_k)$  is the inverse DFT of  $(p_k)$ , hence

$$(p_k) = \frac{1}{N} F_N((f_k))$$

If the function  $f$  is real,  $p_{-k} = \bar{p}_k$ , hence depending whether  $N$  is even or odd:

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &= p_0 + 2\Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{\frac{N}{2}-1} p_k \exp(ikx)\right) + \Re(p_{\frac{N}{2}} \exp(i\frac{Nx}{2})) \\ p(x) &= p_0 + 2\Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{\frac{N-1}{2}} p_k \exp(ikx)\right) \end{aligned}$$

### 3. Fourier series

Let  $f$  be a periodic function of period  $2\pi$ , such that

$$f(x_k) = y_k, \quad x_k = \frac{2k\pi}{N}, k = 0..N-1$$

Suppose that the Fourier series of  $f$  converges to  $f$  (this will be the case if for example  $f$  is continuous). If  $N$  is large, a good approximation of  $f$  will be given by:

$$\sum_{-\frac{N}{2} \leq n < \frac{N}{2}} c_n \exp(inx)$$

Hence we want a numeric approximation of

$$c_n = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} f(t) \exp(-int) dt$$

The numeric value of the integral  $\int_0^{2\pi} f(t) \exp(-int) dt$  may be computed by the trapezoidal rule (note that the Romberg algorithm would not work here, because the Euler Mac Laurin development has its coefficients equal to zero, since the integrated function is periodic, hence all its derivatives have the same value at 0 and at  $2\pi$ ). If  $\tilde{c}_n$  is the numeric value of  $c_n$  obtained by the trapezoidal rule, then

$$\tilde{c}_n = \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{2\pi}{N} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} y_k \exp\left(-2i\frac{nk\pi}{N}\right), \quad -\frac{N}{2} \leq n < \frac{N}{2}$$

Indeed, since  $x_k = 2k\pi/N$  and  $f(x_k) = y_k$ :

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_k) \exp(-inx_k) &= y_k \exp\left(-2i\frac{nk\pi}{N}\right), \\ f(0) \exp(0) = f(2\pi) \exp\left(-2i\frac{nN\pi}{N}\right) &= y_0 = y_N \end{aligned}$$

Hence :

$$[\tilde{c}_0, \dots, \tilde{c}_{\frac{N}{2}-1}, \tilde{c}_{\frac{N}{2}+1}, \dots, \tilde{c}_{N-1}] = \frac{1}{N} F_N([y_0, y_1, \dots, y_{(N-1)}])$$

since

- if  $n \geq 0$ ,  $\tilde{c}_n = y_n$
- if  $n < 0$ ,  $\tilde{c}_n = y_{n+N}$

- $\omega_N = \exp(\frac{2i\pi}{N})$ , then  $\omega_N^n = \omega_N^{n+N}$

### Properties

- The coefficients of the trigonometric polynomial that interpolates  $f$  at  $x = 2k\pi/N$  are

$$p_n = \tilde{c}_n, \quad -\frac{N}{2} \leq n < \frac{N}{2}$$

- If  $f$  is a trigonometric polynomial  $P$  of degree  $m \leq \frac{N}{2}$ , then

$$f(t) = P(t) = \sum_{k=-m}^{m-1} c_k \exp(2ik\pi t)$$

the trigonometric polynomial that interpolate  $f = P$  is  $P$ , the numeric approximation of the coefficients are in fact exact ( $\tilde{c}_n = c_n$ ).

- More generally, we can compute  $\tilde{c}_n - c_n$ .

Suppose that  $f$  is equal to its Fourier series, i.e. that :

$$f(t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_m \exp(2i\pi mt), \quad \sum_{m=-\infty}^{+\infty} |c_m| < \infty$$

Then :

$$f(x_k) = f\left(\frac{2k\pi}{N}\right) = y_k = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_m \omega_N^{km}, \quad \tilde{c}_n = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} y_k \omega_N^{-kn}$$

Replace  $y_k$  by its value in  $\tilde{c}_n$ :

$$\tilde{c}_n = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_m \omega_N^{km} \omega_N^{-kn}$$

If  $m \neq n \pmod{N}$ ,  $\omega_N^{m-n}$  is an  $N$ -th root of unity different from 1, hence:

$$\omega_N^{(m-n)N} = 1, \quad \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega_N^{(m-n)k} = 0$$

Therefore, if  $m-n$  is a multiple of  $N$  ( $m = n+l \cdot N$ ) then  $\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega_N^{k(m-n)} = N$ , otherwise  $\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega_N^{k(m-n)} = 0$ . By reversing the two sums, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{c}_n &= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_m \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \omega_N^{k(m-n)} \\ &= \sum_{l=-\infty}^{+\infty} c_{(n+l \cdot N)} \\ &= \dots c_{n-2 \cdot N} + c_{n-N} + c_n + c_{n+N} + c_{n+2 \cdot N} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

Conclusion: if  $|n| < N/2$ ,  $\tilde{c}_n - c_n$  is a sum of  $c_j$  of large indexes (at least  $N/2$  in absolute value), hence is small (depending on the rate of convergence of the Fourier series).

**Example Input :**

```
f(t) := cos(t) + cos(2*t)
x := f(2*k*pi/8) $(k=0..7)
```

Then :

```
x = {2, sqrt(2)/2, -1, (-sqrt(2)/2, 0, (-sqrt(2))/2, -1, sqrt(2)/2}
fft(x) = [0.0, 4.0, 4.0, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 4.0, 4.0]
```

After a division by  $N = 8$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}c_0 &= 0, c_1 = 4.0/8, c_2 = 4.0/8, c_3 = 0.0, \\c_{-4} &= 0.0, c_{-3} = 0.0, c_{-2} = 4.0/8, = c_{-1} = 4.0/8\end{aligned}$$

Hence  $b_k = 0$  and  $a_k = c_{-k} + c_k$  is equal to 1 if  $k = 1, 2$  and 0 otherwise.

#### 4. Convolution Product

If  $P(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} a_j x^j$  and  $Q(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{m-1} b_j x^j$  are given by the vector of their coefficients  $a = [a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{n-1}]$  and  $b = [b_0, b_1, \dots, b_{m-1}]$ , we may compute the product of these two polynomials using the DFT. The product of polynomials is the convolution product of the periodic sequence of their coefficients if the period is greater or equal to  $(n + m)$ . Therefore we complete  $a$  (resp.  $b$ ) with  $m + p$  (resp.  $n + p$ ) zeros, where  $p$  is chosen such that  $N = n + m + p$  is a power of 2. If  $a = [a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{n-1}, 0..0]$  and  $b = [b_0, b_1, \dots, b_{m-1}, 0..0]$ , then:

$$P(x)Q(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{n+m-1} (a * b)_j x^j$$

We compute  $F_N(a), F_N(b)$ , then  $ab = F_N^{-1}(F_N(a) \cdot F_N(b))$  using the properties

$$NF_N(x \cdot y) = F_N(x) * F_N(y), \quad F_N(x * y) = F_N(x) \cdot F_N(y)$$

#### 5.25.4 Fast Fourier Transform : fft

fft takes as argument a list (or a sequence)  $[a_0, \dots, a_{N-1}]$  where  $N$  is a power of two. fft returns the list  $[b_0, \dots, b_{N-1}]$  such that, for  $k=0 \dots N-1$

$$\text{fft}([a_0, \dots, a_{N-1}])[k] = b_k = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} a_j \omega_N^{-k \cdot j}$$

where  $\omega_N$  is a primitive  $N$ -th root of the unity.

Input :

```
fft(0, 1, 1, 0)
```

Output :

```
[2.0, -1-i, 0.0, -1+i]
```

### 5.25.5 Inverse Fast Fourier Transform : `ifft`

`ifft` takes as argument a list  $[b_0, \dots b_{N-1}]$  where  $N$  is a power of two.  
`ifft` returns the list  $[a_0, \dots a_{N-1}]$  such that

$$\text{fft}([a_0, \dots a_{N-1}]) = [b_0, \dots b_{N-1}]$$

Input :

```
ifft ([2, -1-i, 0, -1+i])
```

Output :

```
[0.0, 1.0, 1.0, 0.0]
```

### 5.25.6 An exercise with `fft`

Here are the temperatures  $T$ , in Celsius degree, at time  $t$  :

|   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| t | 0  | 3  | 6  | 9  | 12 | 15 | 19 | 21 |
| T | 11 | 10 | 17 | 24 | 32 | 26 | 23 | 19 |

What was the temperature at 13h45 ?

Here  $N = 8 = 2 * m$ . The interpolation polynomial is

$$p(t) = \frac{1}{2} p_{-m} (\exp(-2i\frac{\pi mt}{24}) + \exp(2i\frac{\pi mt}{24})) + \sum_{k=-m+1}^{m-1} p_k \exp(2i\frac{\pi kt}{24})$$

and

$$p_k = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=j}^{N-1} T_k \exp(2i\frac{\pi k}{N})$$

Input :

```
q:=1/8*fft ([11, 10, 17, 24, 32, 26, 23, 19])
```

Output :

```
q:=[20.25, -4.48115530061+1.72227182413*i, -0.375+0.875*i,
-0.768844699385+0.222271824132*i, 0.5,
-0.768844699385-0.222271824132*i,
-0.375-0.875*i, -4.48115530061-1.72227182413*i]
```

hence:

- $p_0 = 20.25$
- $p_1 = -4.48115530061 + 1.72227182413 * i = \overline{p_{-1}}$ ,
- $p_2 = 0.375 + 0.875 * i = \overline{p_{-2}}$ ,
- $p_3 = -0.768844699385 + 0.222271824132 * i = \overline{p_{-3}}$ ,
- $p_{-4} = 0.5$

Indeed

$$q = [q_0, \dots, q_{N-1}] = [p_0, \dots, p_{\frac{N}{2}-1}, p_{-\frac{N}{2}}, \dots, p_{-1}] = \frac{1}{N} F_N([y_0, \dots, y_{N-1}]) = \frac{1}{N} \text{fft}(y)$$

Input :

```
pp:=[q[4],q[5],q[6],q[7],q[0],q[1],q[2],q[3]]
```

Here,  $p_k = pp[k + 4]$  for  $k = -4 \dots 3$ . It remains to compute the value of the interpolation polynomial at point  $t_0 = 13.75 = 55/4$ .

Input:

```
t0(j):=exp(2*i*pi*(13+3/4)/24*j)
T0:=1/2*pp[0]*(t0(4)+t0(-4))+sum(pp[j+4]*t0(j),j,-3,3)
evalf(re(T0))
```

Output :

```
29.4863181684
```

The temperature is predicted to be equal to 29.49 Celsius degrees.

Input :

```
q1:=[q[4]/2,q[3],q[2],q[1],q[0]/2]
a:=t0(1) (or a:=-exp(i*pi*7/48))
g(x):=r2e(q1,x)
evalf(2*re(g(a)))
```

or :

```
2.0*re(q[0]/2+q[1]*t0(1)+q[2]*t0(2)+q[3]*t0(3)+q[4]/2*t0(4))
```

Output :

```
29.4863181684
```

### Remark

Using the Lagrange interpolation polynomial (the polynomial is not periodic), input :

```
l1:=[0,3,6,9,12,15,18,21]
l2:=[11,10,17,24,32,26,23,19]
subst(lagrange(l1,l2,13+3/4),x=13+3/4)
```

Output :

$$\frac{8632428959}{286654464} \simeq 30.1144061688$$

## 5.26 Audio Tools

### 5.26.1 Creating audio clips : `createwav`

`createwav` takes the following arguments (all optional), in no particular order:

- `size=n` resp. `duration=T`, where  $n$  resp.  $T$  is the total number of samples resp. the length in seconds,
- `bit_depth=b`, where  $b$  is the number of bits reserved for each sample value and may be 8 or 16 (by default 16),
- `samplerate=r`, where  $r$  is the number of samples per second (by default 44100),
- `channels=c` where  $c$  is the number of channels (by default 1),
- `D` or `channel_data=D`, where  $D$  is a list or a matrix,
- `normalize=db`, where  $db \leq 0$  is a real number representing the amplitude peak level in dB FS (decibel "full scale") units.

Additionally, passing the desired number of samples  $n$  as a single argument produces a single-channel clip on 16 bits/44100 Hz containing  $n$  samples initialized to zero.

Data matrix should contain the  $k$ -th sample in the  $j$ -th channel at position  $(j, k)$ . The value of each sample must be a real number in range  $[-1.0, 1.0]$ . Any value outside this interval is clamped to it (the resulting effect is called *clipping*). If the data is provided as a single list, it is copied across channels. If the number of samples or seconds is provided alongside the data list/matrix, the rows are truncated or padded with zeros to match the desired length.

If the option `normalize` is given, audio data is normalized to the specified level prior to conversion. This can be used to avoid clipping.

For example, input :

```
s:=createwav(duration=3.5);; playsnd(s)
```

Output :

```
three and a half seconds of silence at rate 44100
```

Input :

```
wave:=sin(2*pi*440*soundsec(2));;
s:=createwav(channel_data=wave, samplerate=48000);;
playsnd(s)
```

Output :

```
two seconds of the 440 Hz sine wave at rate 48000
```

Input :

```
t:=soundsec(3);;
L,R:=sin(2*pi*440*t),sin(2*pi*445*t);;
s:=createwav([L,R]);; playsnd(s)
```

Output :

```
3 secs of a vibrato effect on a sine wave (stereo)
```

### 5.26.2 Reading WAV files from disk : readwav

`readwav` takes a string containing the name of a WAV file as its only argument and loads the file. The return value is an audio clip object.

For example, assume that the file `example.wav` is stored in the directory `sounds`. Input:

```
s:=readwav("/path/to/sounds/example.wav"); playsnd(s)
```

### 5.26.3 Writing WAV files to disk : writewav

`writewav` takes two arguments, a string containing a file name and an audio clip object, and writes the clip to disk as a WAV file with the specified name. It returns 1 on success and 0 on failure.

For example, input :

```
s:=createwav(sin(2*pi*440*soundsec(1)));}
writewav("sounds/sine.wav", s)
```

Output :

1

### 5.26.4 Audio playback : playsnd

`playsnd` takes an audio clip as its argument and plays it back.

For example, input :

```
playsnd(createwav(sin(2*pi*440*soundsec(3))))
```

### 5.26.5 Averaging channel data : stereo2mono

`stereo2mono` takes a multichannel audio clip as its argument and returns a clip with input channels mixed down to a single channel. Every sample in the output is the arithmetic mean of the samples at the same position in the input channels.

For example, input :

```
t:=soundsec(3);
L,R:=sin(2*pi*440*t),sin(2*pi*445*t);;
s:=stereo2mono(createwav([L,R])); playsnd(s)
```

### 5.26.6 Audio clip properties : channels,bit\_depth,samplerate,duration

Each of the above commands takes an audio clip as an argument. `channels` returns the number of channels, `bit_depth` returns the number of bits reserved for each sample value (8 or 16), `samplerate` returns the number of samples per second and `duration` returns the duration of the clip in seconds.

### 5.26.7 Extracting samples from audio clips : channel\_data

`channel_data` takes an audio clip as the first argument and optionally the following arguments (in no particular order) :

- channel number (positive integer) or the option `matrix`,
- `range=[m, n]` or `range=m..n` or `range=a..b`, where  $m, n$  are non-negative integers and  $a, b$  are floating point values.

By default, the data from all channels is extracted and returned as a sequence of lists. If the option `matrix` is specified, the lists representing channel data are returned as the rows of a matrix. If channel number is specified (or if there is only one channel), the data is returned in a single list. If a range is specified, only the samples from  $n$ -th to  $m$ -th (inclusive) are extracted. If a real interval  $a..b$  is given, it is assumed that the bounds  $a$  and  $b$  are in seconds and must be given as floating point values.

The returned sample values are all within the interval  $[-1.0, 1.0]$ , i.e. the amplitude of the returned signal is relative. The maximum possible amplitude is represented by the value 1.0.

For example, assume that the directory `sounds` contains a WAV file `example.wav` with 3 seconds of stereo sound. Input :

```
s:=readwav("/path/to/sounds/example.wav");;
L,R:=channel_data(s,range=1.2..1.5)
```

The output is a list `L` resp. `R` containing the data between 1.2 and 1.5 seconds in the left resp. right channel of the original file.

### 5.26.8 Changing the sampling rate : resample

`resample` takes an audio clip as its first argument. The target sample rate can be passed as the second argument (by default 44100 Hz), optionally followed by a quality level specification (an integer). The return value is the input audio clip resampled to the desired rate. The quality level can range from 0 (poor) to 4 (best). By default, it is set to 2.

Giac does resampling by using `libsamplerate` library written by Erik de Castro Lopo. For more information see the library documentation.

For example, assume that the directory `sounds` contains a WAV file `example.wav`. Input :

```
clip:=readwav("/path/to/sounds/example.wav");;
samplerate(clip)
```

Output :

44100

Input :

```
res:=resample(clip,48000);; samplerate(res)
```

Output :

48000

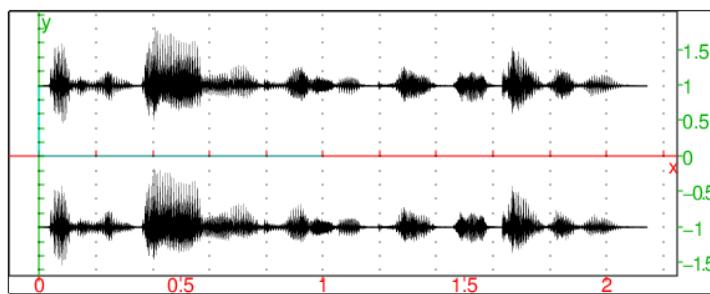
### 5.26.9 Visualizing waveforms : plotwav

`plotwav` accepts an audio clip as its first argument and optionally a range in form `range=[m, n]` or `range=a..b` as its second argument, where  $m, n$  are integers and  $a, b$  are real numbers. The command displays the waveform on the specified range (by default in its entirety). It is assumed that the values  $m, n$  are in sample units and  $a, b$  in seconds.

For example, assume that the directory `sounds` contains two files, `example1.wav` (a man speaking, stereo) and `example2.wav` (guitar playing, mono). Input :

```
clip1:=readwav("/path/to/sounds/example1.wav");;
plotwav(clip1)
```

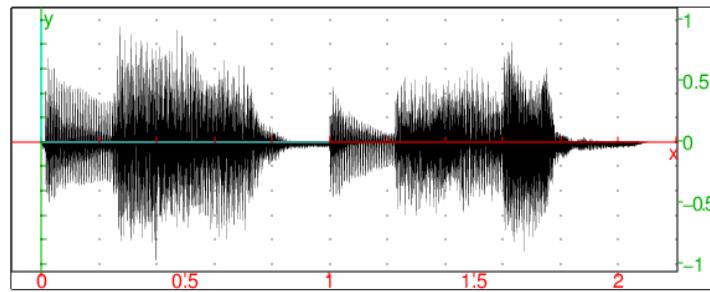
Output :



Input :

```
clip2:=readwav("/path/to/sounds/example2.wav");;
plotwav(clip2)
```

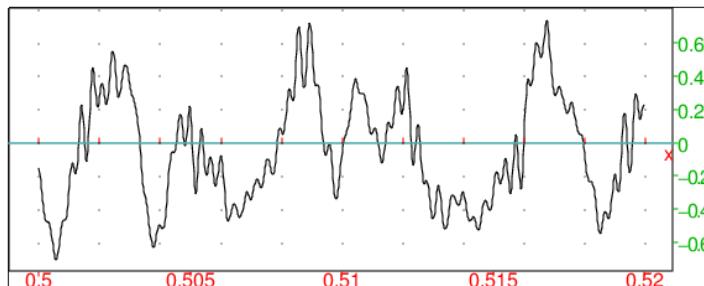
Output :



Input :

```
plotwav(clip2, range=0.5..0.52)
```

Output :



### 5.26.10 Visualizing power spectra : plotspectrum

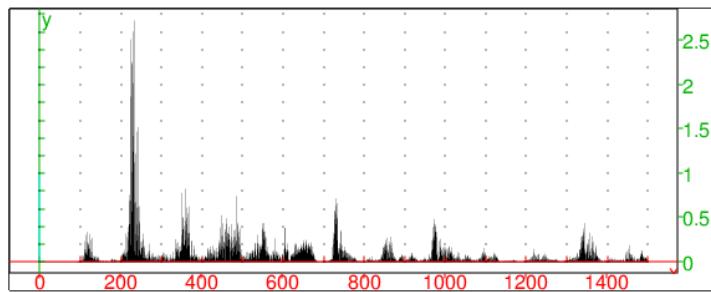
`plotspectrum` takes an audio clip as its first argument and optionally a range in form `range=[lf, uf]` or `range=lf..uf`, where `lf` is the lower bound and `uf` the upper bound of the desired frequency band, as its second argument. The command displays the power spectrum of the audio data on the specified frequency range (by default  $[0, s/2]$ , where  $s$  is the sampling rate). If the audio clip has more than one channel, the channels are mixed down to a single channel before computing the spectrum.

For example, assume that a male voice is recorded in the file `example1.wav`.

Input :

```
clip:=readwav("/path/to/sounds/example1.wav");;
plotspectrum(clip, range=[0,1500])
```

Output :



One can observe that the dominant frequency is around 220 Hz, which is the middle of tenor range. This is consistent with the fact that a man is speaking in the clip.

## 5.27 Signal Processing

### 5.27.1 Boxcar function : boxcar

The `boxcar` command takes three arguments: real numbers  $a$ ,  $b$  and an identifier or an expression  $x$ . It returns  $u(x-a)-u(x-b)$ , where  $u$  is the Heaviside function. The resulting expression defines a function which is zero everywhere except within the segment  $[a, b]$ , where its value is equal to 1.

For example, input :

```
boxcar(1,2,x)
```

Output :

```
Heaviside(x-1)-Heaviside(x-2)
```

Input :

```
boxcar(1,2,3/2)
```

Output :

Input :

```
boxcar(1,2,0)
```

Output :

```
0
```

### 5.27.2 Rectangle function : rect

The `rect` command takes an identifier or an expression  $x$  and returns the value of the rectangle function at  $x$ , which is defined by  $\Pi(x) = u(x + 1/2) - u(x - 1/2)$  where  $u$  is the Heaviside function. The rectangle function is a special case of boxcar function (see Section 5.27.1) for  $a = -\frac{1}{2}$  and  $b = \frac{1}{2}$ .

For example, input :

```
rect(x/2)
```

Output :

```
Heaviside(x/2+1/2)-Heaviside(x/2-1/2)
```

To compute the convolution of the rectangle function with itself, use the convolution theorem. Input :

```
R:=fourier(rect(x),x,s); ifourier(R^2,s,x)
```

Output :

```
Heaviside(x+1)-Heaviside(x-1)-2*x*Heaviside(x)+  
x*Heaviside(x+1)+x*Heaviside(x-1)
```

The above result is the triangle function  $\text{tri}(x)$  (see Section 5.27.3).

### 5.27.3 Triangle function : tri

The `tri` command takes an expression  $x$  as its only argument and returns the value of triangle function at  $x$ , defined by

$$\Lambda(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - |x|, & |x| < 1, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

The above expression is equal to the convolution of rectangle function with itself (see Section 5.27.2).

For example, input :

```
tri(x-1)
```

Output :

```
x*(Heaviside(-x+1)-Heaviside(-x))+  
(Heaviside(x-1)-Heaviside(x-2))*(-x+2)
```

### 5.27.4 Cardinal sine function : `sinc`

The `sinc` command takes an expression  $x$  as its only argument and returns the value of sinc function at  $x$ , defined by

$$\text{sinc}(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{\sin(x)}{x}, & x \neq 0, \\ 1, & x = 0. \end{cases}$$

For example, input :

```
sinc(pi*x)
```

Output :

```
sin(pi*x) / (pi*x)
```

Input :

```
sinc(0)
```

Output :

```
1
```

### 5.27.5 Cross-correlation of two signals : `cross_correlation`

`cross_correlation` takes two arguments, a complex vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and a complex vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $m$ . The returned value is the complex vector  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{v} \star \mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n + m - 1$  which is the cross-correlation of the two input vectors, i.e. such that the following holds :

$$z_k = \sum_{i=k}^{N-1} \overline{v_{i-k}^*} w_i^*, \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, N-1,$$

where

$$\mathbf{v}^* = [v_0, v_1, \dots, v_{n-1}, \underbrace{0, 0, \dots, 0}_{m-1}] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{w}^* = [\underbrace{0, 0, \dots, 0}_{n-1}, w_0, w_1, \dots, w_{m-1}].$$

Cross-correlation is typically used for measuring similarity between signals.

For example, input :

```
cross_correlation([1, 2], [3, 4, 5])
```

Output :

```
[6.0, 11.0, 14.0, 5.0]
```

Input :

```
v:=[2, 1, 3, 2]; w:=[1, -1, 1, 2, 2, 1, 3, 2, 1];
round(cross_correlation(v, w))
```

Output :

```
[2, 1, 0, 8, 9, 12, 15, 18, 13, 11, 5, 2]
```

Observe that the cross-correlation of  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{w}$  is peaking at position 8 with the value 18, indicating that the two signals are best correlated when the last sample in  $\mathbf{v}$  is aligned with the eighth sample in  $\mathbf{w}$ . Indeed, there is an occurrence of  $\mathbf{v}$  in  $\mathbf{w}$  precisely at that point.

### 5.27.6 Auto-correlation of a signal : `auto_correlation`

`auto_correlation` takes as argument a complex vector **v** of length  $n$  and returns its cross-correlation with itself as the vector **v**  $\star$  **v** of length  $2n - 1$  (see the `cross_correlation` command, section 5.27.5). For example, input :

```
auto_correlation([2,3,4,3,1,4,5,1,3,1])
```

Output :

```
[2.0, 9.0, 15.0, 28.0, 37.0, 44.0, 58.0, 58.0, 68.0,
 91.0, 68.0, 58.0, 58.0, 44.0, 37.0, 28.0, 15.0, 9.0, 2.0]
```

### 5.27.7 Convolution of two signals or functions : `convolution`

`convolution` takes two arguments, a real vector **v** of length  $n$  and a real vector **w** of length  $m$ , and returns their convolution **z** = **v** \* **w** which is the vector of length  $N = n + m - 1$  defined as :

$$z_k = \sum_{i=0}^k v_i w_{k-i}, \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, N-1,$$

such that  $v_j = 0$  for  $j \geq n$  and  $w_j = 0$  for  $j \geq m$ . The two arguments may also be real functions  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$ , with the variable  $x$  as an optional third argument, in which case the integral

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(t) g(x-t) dt$$

is computed. It is assumed that  $f$  and  $g$  are causal functions, i.e.  $f(x) = g(x) = 0$  for  $x < 0$ . Therefore both  $f$  and  $g$  are multiplied by Heaviside function prior to integration.

For example, input :

```
convolution([1,2,3], [1,-1,1,-1])
```

Output :

```
[1.0, 1.0, 2.0, -2.0, 1.0, -3.0]
```

To compute the convolution of  $f(x) = 25 e^{2x} u(x)$  and  $g(x) = x e^{-3x} u(x)$ , where  $u$  is the Heaviside function, input :

```
convolution(25*exp(2*x), x*exp(-3*x))
```

Output :

```
Heaviside(x) * (-5*x*exp(-3*x) + exp(2*x) - exp(-3*x))
```

To compute the convolution of  $f(t) = \ln(1+t) u(t)$  and  $g(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}}$ , input :

```
convolution(ln(1+t), 1/sqrt(t), t)
```

Output :

```
2*Heaviside(t) * ((t+1)*ln(abs(sqrt(t)-sqrt(t+1)))/(sqrt(t)+sqrt(t+1))) +
    2*sqrt(t^2+t))/sqrt(t+1)
```

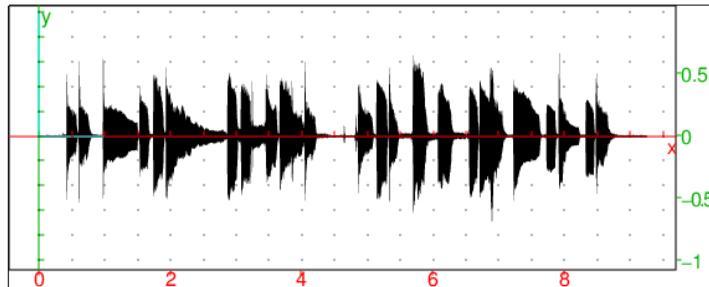
In the following example convolution is used for reverberation. Assume that the directory sounds contains two files, a dry, mono recording of a guitar stored in `guitar.wav` and a two-channel impulse response recorded in a French 18th century salon and stored in `salon-ir.wav`. Files are loaded with the following command lines :

```
clip:=readwav("/path/to/sounds/guitar.wav");;
ir:=readwav("/path/to/sounds/salon-ir.wav");;
```

Input :

```
plotwav(clip)
```

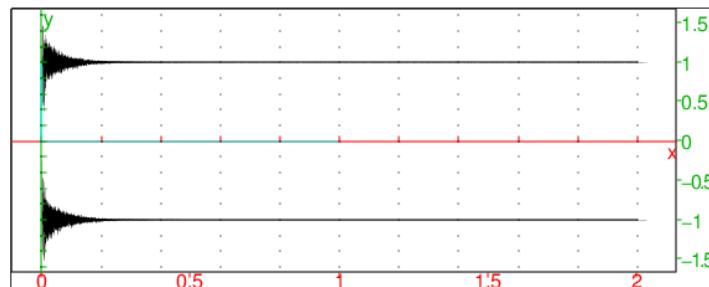
Output :



Input :

```
plotwav(ir)
```

Output :



Convolving the data from `clip` with both channels in `ir` produces a reverberated variant of the recording, in stereo. Input :

```
data:=channel_data(clip);;
L:=convolution(data,channel_data(ir,1));;
R:=convolution(data,channel_data(ir,2));;
```

The convolved signals `L` and `R` now become the left and right channel of a new audio clip, respectively. The `normalize` option is used because convolution usually results in a huge increase of sample values (which is clear from the definition).

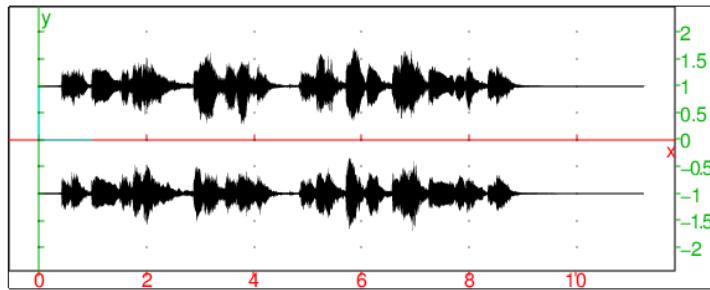
Input :

```
spatial:=createwav([L,R],normalize=-3):;
playsnd(spatial)
```

The result sounds as it was recorded in the same salon as the impulse response. Furthermore, it is a true stereo sound. To visualize it, input :

```
plotwav(spatial)
```

Output :



Note that the resulting audio is longer than the input (for the length of the impulse response).

### 5.27.8 Low-pass filtering : lowpass

`lowpass` takes two or three arguments: an audio clip or a real vector  $v$  representing the sampled signal, a real number  $c$  specifying the cutoff frequency and optionally a samplerate (which defaults to 44100). The command returns the input data after applying a simple first-order lowpass RC filter.

For example, input :

```
f:=unapply(periodic(sign(x),x,-1/880,1/880),x);
s:=apply(f,soundsec(3));
playsnd(lowpass(createwav(s),1000))
```

### 5.27.9 High-pass filtering : highpass

`highpass` takes two or three arguments: an audio clip or a real vector  $v$  representing the sampled signal, a real number  $c$  specifying the cutoff frequency and optionally a samplerate (which defaults to 44100). The command returns the input data after applying a simple first-order highpass RC filter.

For example, input :

```
f:=unapply(periodic(sign(x),x,-1/880,1/880),x);
s:=apply(f,soundsec(3));
playsnd(highpass(createwav(s),5000))
```

### 5.27.10 Apply a moving average filter to a signal : moving\_average

`moving_average` takes two arguments: an array  $A$  of numeric values representing the sampled signal and a positive integer  $n$ . It returns an array  $B$  obtained by

applying a moving average filter of length  $n$  to  $A$ . The elements of  $B$  are defined by

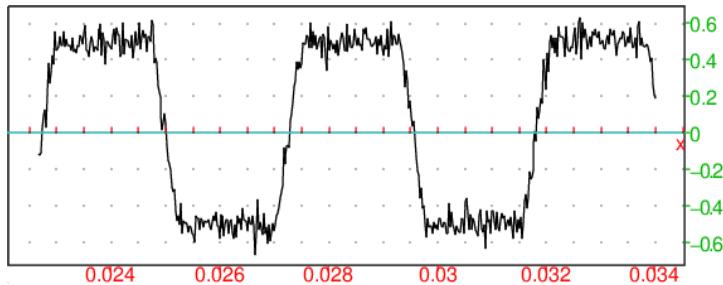
$$B[i] = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} A[i+j]$$

for  $i = 0, 1, \dots, L - n$ , where  $L$  is the length of  $A$ .

Moving average filters are fast and useful for smoothing time-encoded signals. For example, input :

```
snd:=soundsec(2):;
noise:=randvector(length(snd), normald, 0, 0.05):;
data:=0.5*threshold(3*sin(2*pi*220*snd), [-1.0,1.0])+noise:;
plotwav(createwav(data), range=[1000,1500])
```

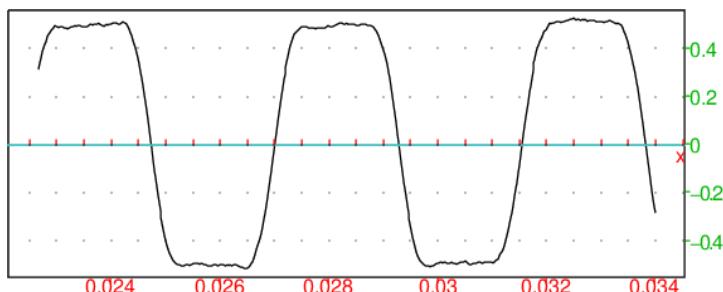
Output :



Input :

```
fdata:=moving_average(data, 25):;
plotwav(createwav(fdata), range=[1000,1500])
```

Output :



### 5.27.11 Perform thresholding operations on an array : threshold

`threshold` changes the data in an array which does not meet some kind of minimality criterion. It takes the following parameters :

- vector **v** of real or complex numbers
- bound specification **bnd**
- comparison operator (optional)
- `abs [=true, false]` (optional)

Bound specification may be either a single real number  $b$  (or an equation `b=value`) or a list of two real numbers  $l, u$  (or equations `l=lvalue, u=uvalue`). In the latter case a vector  $\mathbf{w}$  is returned, as defined by :

$$w_k = \begin{cases} \text{uvalue (defaults to } u\text{),} & v_k > u, \\ \text{lvalue (defaults to } l\text{),} & v_k < l, \\ v_k, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$  where  $n = \text{size}(\mathbf{v})$  when the element  $v_k$  is a real number. If  $v_k$  is complex, then  $|v_k|$  is compared with  $u$  resp.  $l$  and the value `uvalue` resp. `lvalue` is multiplied by  $\frac{v_k}{|v_k|}$ .

In the first case where `bnd` is a number or an equation, the return vector  $\mathbf{w}$  is defined by :

$$w_k = \begin{cases} \text{value (defaults to } b\text{),} & v_k < b, \\ v_k, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

if  $v_k \in \mathbb{R}$  (if  $v_k$  is complex, then  $|v_k|$  is compared with  $b$  and the `value` is multiplied by  $\frac{v_k}{|v_k|}$ ), for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$ . If comparison operator is specified (one of `>`, `<=` or `>=`, must be quoted), it is used instead of `<` (which is the default) in the above formula. If the fourth argument is specified, the data in  $\mathbf{v}$  must be real and the following formula is used for  $w_k$ ,  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$  :

$$w_k = \begin{cases} \text{value,} & v_k \geq 0 \text{ and } |v_k| < b, \\ -\text{value,} & v_k < 0 \text{ and } |v_k| < b, \\ v_k, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

As before, `value` defaults to  $b$  and the comparison operator used to test  $|v_k|$  against  $b$  (by default `<`) is specified by the third argument.

For example, input :

```
threshold([2, 3, 1, 2, 5, 4, 3, 7], 3)
```

Output :

```
[3, 3, 3, 3, 5, 4, 3, 7]
```

Input :

```
threshold([2, 3, 1, 2, 5, 4, 3, 7], 3=a, '>=')
```

Output :

```
[2, a, 1, 2, a, a, a, a]
```

Input :

```
threshold([-2, -3, 1, 2, 5, -4, 3, -1], 3=0, abs=true)
```

Output :

```
[0, -3, 0, 0, 5, -4, 3, 0]
```

Input :

```
threshold([-2,-3,1,2,5,-4,3,-1],3=0,'<=' ,abs=true)
```

**Output :**

```
[0,0,0,0,5,-4,0,0]
```

**Input :**

```
threshold([-120,-11,-3,0,7,27,111,234],[-100,100])
```

**Output :**

```
[-100,-11,-3,0,7,27,100,100]
```

**Input :**

```
threshold([-120,-11,-3,0,7,27,111,234],[-100=-inf,100=inf])
```

**Output :**

```
[-infinity,-11,-3,0,7,27,+infinity,+infinity]
```

In the following example, a square-like wave is created from a single sine wave by clipping sample values. Input :

```
data:=threshold(3*sin(2*pi*440*soundspeed(2)), [-1.0,1.0]):;
s:=createwav(data):; playsnd(s)
```

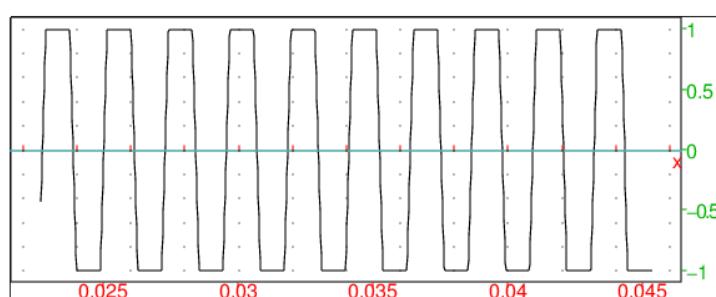
**Output :**

```
1
```

**Input :**

```
plotwav(s,range=[1000,2000])
```

**Output :**



**5.27.12 Bartlett-Hann window function : bartlett\_hann\_window**

`bartlett_hann_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = a_0 + a_1 \left| \frac{k}{N-1} - \frac{1}{2} \right| - a_2 \cos \left( \frac{2k\pi}{N-1} \right)$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ , where  $a_0 = 0.62$ ,  $a_1 = 0.48$  and  $a_2 = 0.38$ . For example, input :

```
L:=bartlett_hann_window(randvector(1000,0..1));
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

**5.27.13 Blackman-Harris window function : blackman\_harris\_window**

`blackman_harris_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = a_0 - a_1 \cos \left( \frac{2k\pi}{N-1} \right) + a_2 \cos \left( \frac{4k\pi}{N-1} \right) - a_3 \cos \left( \frac{6k\pi}{N-1} \right)$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ , where  $a_0 = 0.35875$ ,  $a_1 = 0.48829$ ,  $a_2 = 0.14128$  and  $a_3 = 0.01168$ . For example, input :

```
L:=blackman_harris_window(randvector(1000,0..1));
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

**5.27.14 Blackman window function : blackman\_window**

`blackman_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally a real number  $\alpha$  (by default  $\alpha = 0.16$ ) and/or an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \frac{1-\alpha}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \cos \left( \frac{2k\pi}{N-1} \right) + \frac{\alpha}{2} \cos \left( \frac{4k\pi}{N-1} \right)$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=blackman_window(randvector(1000,0..1));
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

### 5.27.15 Bohman window function : bohman\_window

`bohman_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = (1 - x_k) \cos(\pi x_k) + \frac{1}{\pi} \sin(\pi x_k),$$

where  $x_k = \left| \frac{2k}{N-1} - 1 \right|$ , for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=bohman_window(randvector(1000,0..1));
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

### 5.27.16 Cosine window function : cosine\_window

`cosine_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally a positive real number  $\alpha$  (by default  $\alpha = 1$ ) and/or an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \sin^\alpha \left( \frac{k \pi}{N-1} \right)$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=cosine_window(randvector(1000,0..1),1.5);
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

### 5.27.17 Gaussian window function : gaussian\_window

`gaussian_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally a positive real number  $\alpha \leq 0.5$  (by default  $\alpha = 0.1$ ) and/or an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{k - (N-1)/2}{\alpha(N-1)/2} \right)^2 \right)$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=gaussian_window(randvector(1000,0..1),0.4);
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

**5.27.18 Hamming window function : hamming\_window**

`hamming_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \alpha - \beta \cos\left(\frac{2k\pi}{N-1}\right)$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ , where  $\alpha = 0.54$  and  $\beta = 1 - \alpha = 0.46$ . For example, input :

```
L:=hamming_window(randvector(1000,0..1));
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

**5.27.19 Hann-Poisson window function : hann\_poisson\_window**

`hann_poisson_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally a real number  $\alpha$  (by default  $\alpha = 1$ ) and/or an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \frac{1}{2} \left(1 - \cos \frac{2k\pi}{N-1}\right) \exp\left(-\frac{\alpha|N-1-2k|}{N-1}\right)$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=hann_poisson_window(randvector(1000,0..1),2);
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

**5.27.20 Hann window function : hann\_window**

`hann_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \sin^2\left(\frac{k\pi}{N-1}\right)$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=hann_window(randvector(1000,0..1));
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

### 5.27.21 Parzen window function : parzen\_window

`parzen_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \begin{cases} (1 - 6x_k^2(1 - x_k)), & | \frac{N-1}{2} - k | \leq \frac{N-1}{4}, \\ 2(1 - x_k)^3, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

where  $x_k = \left| 1 - \frac{2k}{N-1} \right|$ , for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=parzen_window(randvector(1000,0..1));
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

### 5.27.22 Poisson window function : poisson\_window

`poisson_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally a real number  $\alpha$  (by default  $\alpha = 1$ ) and/or an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \exp\left(-\alpha \left| \frac{2k}{N-1} - 1 \right| \right)$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=poisson_window(randvector(1000,0..1),2);
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

### 5.27.23 Riemann window function : riemann\_window

`riemann_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally an interval  $n_1 \dots n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \begin{cases} 1, & k = \frac{N-1}{2}, \\ \frac{\sin(\pi x_k)}{\pi x_k}, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

where  $x_k = \frac{2k}{N-1} - 1$ , for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=riemann_window(randvector(1000,0..1));
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

**5.27.24 Triangular window function : triangle\_window**

`triangle_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally an integer  $d \in \{-1, 0, 1\}$  (by default  $d = 0$ ) and/or an interval  $n_1..n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = 1 - \left| \frac{n - \frac{N-1}{2}}{\frac{N+d}{2}} \right|$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$  (the case  $d = -1$  is called the Bartlett window function). For example, input :

```
L:=triangle_window(randvector(1000,0..1),1);
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

**5.27.25 Tukey window function : tukey\_window**

`tukey_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally a real number  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$  (by default  $\alpha = 0.5$ ) and/or an interval  $n_1..n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \cos \left( \pi \left( \frac{k}{\beta} - 1 \right) \right) \right), & k < \beta, \\ 1, & \beta \leq k \leq (N-1) \left( 1 - \frac{\alpha}{2} \right), \\ \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \cos \left( \pi \left( \frac{k}{\beta} - \frac{2}{\alpha} + 1 \right) \right) \right), & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

where  $\beta = \frac{\alpha(N-1)}{2}$ , for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . When  $\alpha = 0$  the rectangular window function (on-off windowing) is obtained, and the case  $\alpha = 1$  corresponds to the Hann window function. For example, input :

```
L:=tukey_window(randvector(1000,0..1),0.4);
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

**5.27.26 Welch window function : welch\_window**

`welch_window` takes as arguments a real vector  $\mathbf{v}$  of length  $n$  and optionally an interval  $n_1..n_2$  (with default values  $n_1 = 0$  and  $n_2 = n - 1$ ), and returns the elementwise product of the vector  $[v_{n_1}, \dots, v_{n_2}]$  and the vector  $\mathbf{w}$  of length  $N = n_2 - n_1 + 1$  defined by

$$w_k = 1 - \left( \frac{k - \frac{N-1}{2}}{\frac{N-1}{2}} \right)^2$$

for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N - 1$ . For example, input :

```
L:=welch_window(randvector(1000,0..1));
```

followed by `scatterplot(L)`.

### 5.27.27 An example : static noise removal by spectral subtraction

In this section we use Xcas to implement a simple algorithm for static noise removal based on the spectral subtraction method. For a theoretical overview see the paper "Noise Reduction Based on Modified Spectral Subtraction Method" by Ekaterina Verteletskaya and Boris Simak (2011), *International Journal of Computer Science*, 38:1 ([PDF](#)).

Efficiency of the spectral subtraction method is largely dependent on a good noise spectrum estimate. Below is the code for a function `noiseprof` that takes `data` and `wlen` as its arguments. These are, respectively, a signal chunk containing only noise and the window length for signal segmentation (the best values are powers of two, such as 256, 512 or 1024). The function returns an estimate of the noise power spectrum obtained by averaging the power spectra of a (not too large) number of distinct chunks of `data` of length `wlen`. Hamming window function is applied prior to FFT.

```
noiseprof(data,wlen):={
    local N,h,dx,x,v,cnt;
    N:=length(data);
    h:=wlen/2;
    dx:=min(h,max(1,(N-wlen)/100));
    v:=[0$wlen];
    cnt:=0;
    for (x:=h;x<N-h;x+=dx) {
        v+=abs(fft(hamming_window(
            mid(data,floor(x)-h,wlen))).^2;
        cnt++;
    };
    return 1.0/cnt*v;
};;
```

The main function is `noisered`, which takes three arguments: the input signal `data`, the noise power spectrum `np` and the "spectral floor" parameter `beta` ( $\beta$ , the minimum power level). The function performs subtraction of the noise spectrum in chunks of length `wlen` (the length of list `np`) using the overlap-and-add approach with Hamming window function. For details see Section 3A of the paper "Speech Enhancement using Spectral Subtraction-type Algorithms: A Comparison and Simulation Study" by Navneet Upadhyay and Abhijit Karmakar (2015), *Procedia Computer Science*, vol. 54, pp. 574–584 ([PDF](#)).

```
noisered(data,np,beta):={
    local wlen,h,N,L,padded,out,j,k,s,ds,r,alpha;
    wlen:=length(np);
    N:=length(data);
    h:=wlen/2;
    L:=0;
    repeat L+=wlen; until L>=N;
    padded:=concat(data,[0$(L-N)]);
    out:=[0$L];
    for (k:=0;k<L-wlen;k+=h) {
```

```

s:=fft(hamming_window(mid(padded,k,wlen)));
alpha:=max(1,4-3*sum(abs(s).^2)/(20*sum(np)));
r:=ifft(zip(max,abs(s).^2-alpha*np,beta*np).^(1/2)
        .*exp(i*arg(s)));
for (j:=0;j<wlen;j++) {
    out[k+j]:=re(r[j]);
}
return mid(out,0,N);
}:;

```

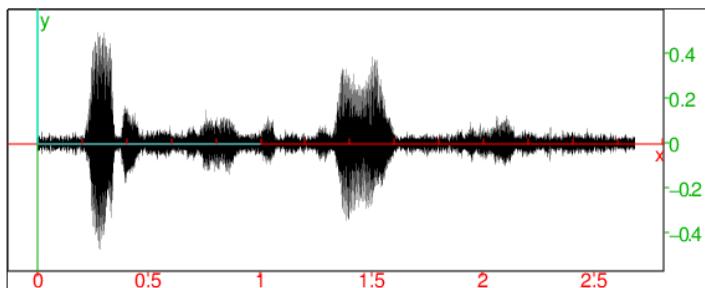
To demonstrate the efficiency of the algorithm, we test it on a small speech sample with an audible amount of static noise. Assume that the corresponding WAV file noised.wav is stored in the directory sounds. Input :

```

clip:=readwav("/path/to/sounds/noised.wav");
plotwav(clip)

```

Output :



Speech starts after approximately 0.2 seconds of pure noise. We use that part of the clip for obtaining an estimate of the noise power spectrum with wlen set to 256. Input :

```

noise:=channel_data(clip,range=0.0..0.15);
np:=noiseprof(noise,256);

```

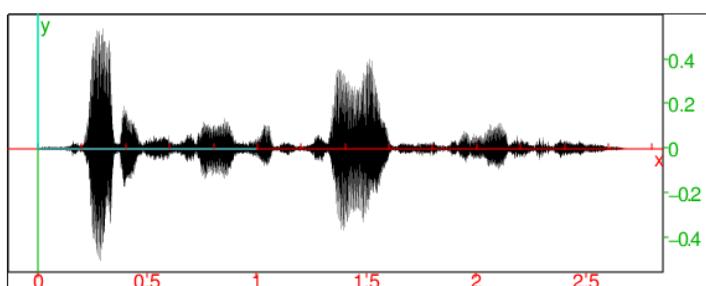
Now we call the noisered function with  $\beta = 0.03$  :

```

c:=noisered(channel_data(clip),np,0.03);
cleaned:=createwav(c); plotwav(cleaned)

```

Output :



It is clearly visible that the noise level is significantly lower than in the original clip. One can also use the `playsnd` command to compare the input with the output by hearing, which reveals that the noise is still present but in a lesser degree (the parameter  $\beta$  controls how much noise is "left in").

The algorithm implemented in this section is not particularly fast (removing the noise from a two and a half seconds long recording took 20 seconds of computation time), but serves as a proof of concept and demonstrates the efficiency of noise removal.

## 5.28 Exponentials and Logarithms

### 5.28.1 Rewrite hyperbolic functions as exponentials : `hyp2exp`

`hyp2exp` takes as argument an hyperbolic expression.

`hyp2exp` rewrites each hyperbolic functions with exponentials (as a rational fraction of one exponential, i.e. WITHOUT linearization).

Input :

$$\text{hyp2exp}(\sinh(x))$$

Output :

$$(\exp(x) - 1 / (\exp(x))) / 2$$

### 5.28.2 Expand exponentials : `expexpand`

`expexpand` takes as argument an expression with exponentials.

`expexpand` expands this expression (rewrites `exp` of sums as product of `exp`).

Input :

$$\text{expexpand}(\exp(3*x) + \exp(2*x+2))$$

Output :

$$\exp(x)^3 + \exp(x)^2 * \exp(2)$$

### 5.28.3 Expand logarithms : `lnexpand`

`lnexpand` takes as argument an expression with logarithms.

`lnexpand` expands this expression (rewrites `ln` of products as sum of `ln`).

Input :

$$\text{lnexpand}(\ln(3*x^2) + \ln(2*x+2))$$

Output :

$$\ln(3) + 2 * \ln(x) + \ln(2) + \ln(x+1)$$

**5.28.4 Linearize exponentials : lin**

`lin` takes as argument an expression with exponentials.

`lin` rewrites hyperbolic functions as exponentials if required, then linearizes this expression (i.e. replace product of exponentials by exponential of sums).

**Examples**

- Input :

```
lin(sinh(x)^2)
```

Output :

```
1/4*exp(2*x)+1/-2+1/4*exp(-(2*x))
```

- Input :

```
lin((exp(x)+1)^3)
```

Output :

```
exp(3*x)+3*exp(2*x)+3*exp(x)+1
```

**5.28.5 Collect logarithms : lncollect**

`lncollect` takes as argument an expression with logarithms.

`lncollect` collects the logarithms (rewrites sum of `ln` as `ln` of products). It may be a good idea to factor the expression with `factor` before collecting by `lncollect`).

Input :

```
lncollect(ln(x+1)+ln(x-1))
```

Output :

```
log((x+1)*(x-1))
```

Input :

```
lncollect(exp(ln(x+1)+ln(x-1)))
```

Output :

```
(x+1)*(x-1)
```

**Warning!!!** For Xcas, `log=ln` (use `log10` for 10-base logarithm).

**5.28.6 Expand powers : powexpand**

`powexpand` rewrites a power of a sum as a product of powers.

Input :

```
powexpand(a^(x+y))
```

Output :

```
a^x*a^y
```

### 5.28.7 Rewrite a power as an exponential : pow2exp

pow2exp rewrites a power as an exponential.

Input :

```
pow2exp(a^(x+y))
```

Output :

```
exp((x+y)*ln(a))
```

### 5.28.8 Rewrite exp(n\*ln(x)) as a power : exp2pow

exp2pow rewrites expression of the form  $\exp(n * \ln(x))$  as a power of  $x$ .

Input :

```
exp2pow(exp(n*ln(x)))
```

Output :

```
x^n
```

Note the difference with lncollect :

```
lncollect(exp(n*ln(x))) = exp(n*log(x))
lncollect(exp(2*ln(x))) = exp(2*log(x))
exp2pow(exp(2*ln(x))) = x^2
```

But :

```
lncollect(exp(ln(x)+ln(x))) = x^2
exp2pow(exp(ln(x)+ln(x))) = x^(1+1)
```

### 5.28.9 Simplify complex exponentials : tsimplify

tsimplify simplifies transcendental expressions by rewriting the expression with complex exponentials.

It is a good idea to try other simplification instructions and call tsimplify if they do not work.

Input :

```
tsimplify((sin(7*x)+sin(3*x))/sin(5*x))
```

Output :

```
((exp((i)*x))^4+1)/((exp((i)*x))^2)
```

## 5.29 Polynomials

### 5.29.1 Polynomials of a single variable: poly1

A polynomial of one variable is represented either by a symbolic expression or by the list of its coefficients in decreasing powers order (dense representation). In the latter case, to avoid confusion with other kinds of list

- use `poly1[...]` as delimiters in inputs
- check for `[]` in Xcas output.

Note that polynomials represented as lists of coefficients are always written in decreasing powers order even if `increasing power` is checked in `cas configuration`.

### 5.29.2 Polynomials of several variables: %%%{ %%% }

A polynomial of several variables is represented

- by a symbolic expression
- or by a dense recursive 1-d representation like above
- or by a sum of monomials with non-zero coefficients (distributed sparse representation).

A monomial with several variables is represented by a coefficient and a list of integers (interpreted as powers of a variable list). The delimiters for monomials are `%%%{` and `%%%}`, for example  $3x^2y$  is represented by `%%%{3, [2, 1]%%%}` with respect to the variable list `[x, y]`.

### 5.29.3 Convert to a symbolic polynomial : `r2e poly2symb`

`r2e` or `poly2symb` takes as argument

- a list of coefficients of a polynomial (by decreasing order) and a symbolic variable name (by default `x`)
- or a sum of monomials `%%%{coeff, [n1, ..., nk]%%%}` and a vector of symbolic variables `[x1, ..., xk]`.

`r2e` or `poly2symb` transforms the argument into a symbolic polynomial.

Example with univariate polynomials, input :

`r2e ([1, 0, -1], x)`

or :

`r2e ([1, 0, -1])`

or :

`poly2symb ([1, 0, -1], x)`

Output :

`x*x-1`

Example with sparse multivariate polynomials, input:

`poly2symb (%%%{1, [2]%%%}+%%%{-1, [0]%%%}, [x])`

or :

`r2e(%%%{1, [2]%%%}+%%{-1, [0]%%%}, [x])`

Output :

`x^2-1`

Input :

`r2e(%%%{1, [2, 0]%%%}+%%{-1, [1, 1]%%%}+%%{2, [0, 1]%%%}, [x, y])`

or :

`poly2symb(%%%{1, [2, 0]%%%}+%%{-1, [1, 1]%%%}+%%{2, [0, 1]%%%}, [x, y])`

Output :

`x^2-x*y+2*y`

#### 5.29.4 Convert from a symbolic polynomial : `e2r symb2poly`

`e2r` or `symb2poly` takes as argument a symbolic polynomial and either a symbolic variable name (by default `x`) or a list of symbolic variable names.

`e2r` or `symb2poly` transforms the polynomial into a list (dense representation of the univariate polynomial, coefficients written by decreasing order) or into a sum of monomials (sparse representation of multivariate polynomials).

Input :

`e2r(x^2-1)`

or :

`symb2poly(x^2-1)`

or :

`symb2poly(y^2-1, y)`

or :

`e2r(y^2-1, y)`

Output :

`[1, 0, -1]`

Input :

`e2r(x^2-x*y+y, [x, y])`

or :

`symb2poly(x^2-x*y+2*y, [x, y])`

Output :

`%%%{1, [2, 0]%%%}+%%{-1, [1, 1]%%%}+%%{2, [0, 1]%%%}`

### 5.29.5 Transform a polynomial in internal format into a list, and conversely: `convert`

The `convert` command can take a polynomial in the internal format as a first argument and the `list` option as the second argument. Here, the `list` option can be omitted.

In this case, `convert` returns a list representing the polynomial.

Input:

```
p := symb2poly(x^2 - x*y + 2y, [x,y])
```

Output:

```
%%{1, [2, 0]}+%%{-1, [1, 1]}+%%{2, [0, 1]}
```

Input:

```
l := convert(p, list)
```

or:

```
l := convert(p)
```

Output:

```
[[1, [2, 0]], [-1, [1, 1]], [2, [0, 1]]]
```

which is a list of the coefficients followed by a list of the variable powers.

The `convert` command can also take a list as the first argument and the `polynom` option as the second argument.

In this case, `convert` returns the corresponding polynomial in internal format.

Input (`l` from above):

```
l
```

Output:

```
[[1, [2, 0]], [-1, [1, 1]], [2, [0, 1]]]
```

Input:

```
convert(l, polynom)
```

Output:

```
%%{1, [2, 0]}+%%{-1, [1, 1]}+%%{2, [0, 1]}
```

### 5.29.6 Coefficients of a polynomial: `coeff coeffs`

`coeff` or `coeffs` takes three arguments : the polynomial, the name of the variable (or the list of the names of variables) and the degree (or the list of the degrees of the variables).

`coeff` or `coeffs` returns the coefficient of the polynomial of the degree given as third argument. If no degree was specified, `coeffs` return the list of the coefficients of the polynomial, including 0 in the univariate dense case and excluding 0 in the multivariate sparse case.

Input :

```
coeff(-x^4+3*x*y^2+x, x, 1)
```

Output :

```
3*y^2+1
```

Input :

```
coeff(-x^4+3*x*y^2+x, y, 2)
```

Output :

```
3*x
```

Input :

```
coeff(-x^4+3*x*y^2+x, [x, y], [1, 2])
```

Output :

```
3
```

### 5.29.7 Polynomial degree : degree

`degree` takes as argument a polynomial given by its symbolic representation or by the list of its coefficients.

`degree` returns the degree of this polynomial (highest degree of its non-zero monomials).

Input :

```
degree(x^3+x)
```

Output :

```
3
```

Input :

```
degree([1, 0, 1, 0])
```

Output :

```
3
```

### 5.29.8 Polynomial valuation : valuation ldegree

`valuation` or `ldegree` takes as argument a polynomial given by a symbolic expression or by the list of its coefficients.

`valuation` or `ldegree` returns the valuation of this polynomial, that is the lowest degree of its non-zero monomials.

Input :

```
valuation(x^3+x)
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
valuation([1, 0, 1, 0])
```

Output :

```
1
```

**5.29.9 Leading coefficient of a polynomial : lcoeff**

`lcoeff` takes as argument a polynomial given by a symbolic expression or by the list of its coefficients.

`lcoeff` returns the leading coefficient of this polynomial, that is the coefficient of the monomial of highest degree.

Input :

```
lcoeff([2,1,-1,0])
```

Output :

```
2
```

Input :

```
lcoeff(3*x^2+5*x,x)
```

Output :

```
3
```

Input :

```
lcoeff(3*x^2+5*x*y^2,y)
```

Output :

```
5*x
```

**5.29.10 Trailing coefficient degree of a polynomial : tcoeff**

`tcoeff` takes as argument a polynomial given by a symbolic expression or by the list of its coefficients.

`tcoeff` returns the coefficient of the monomial of lowest degree of this polynomial (`tcoeff=trailing coefficient`).

Input :

```
tcoeff([2,1,-1,0])
```

Output :

```
-1
```

Input :

```
tcoeff(3*x^2+5*x,x)
```

Output :

```
5
```

Input :

```
tcoeff(3*x^2+5*x*y^2,y)
```

Output :

```
3*x^2
```

**5.29.11 Evaluation of a polynomial : peval polyEval**

peval or polyEval takes as argument a polynomial  $p$  given by the list of its coefficients and a real  $a$ .

peval or polyEval returns the exact or numeric value of  $p(a)$  using Horner's method.

Input :

```
peval([1,0,-1],sqrt(2))
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2)*sqrt(2)-1
```

Then :

```
normal(sqrt(2)*sqrt(2)-1)
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
peval([1,0,-1],1.4)
```

Output :

```
0.96
```

**5.29.12 Factorize  $x^n$  in a polynomial : factor\_xn**

factor\_xn takes as argument a polynomial  $P$ .

factor\_xn returns the polynomial  $P$  written as the product of its monomial of largest degree  $x^n$  ( $n=\text{degree}(P)$ ) with a rational fraction having a non-zero finite limit at infinity.

Input :

```
factor_xn(-x^4+3)
```

Output :

```
x^4*(-1+3*x^-4)
```

**5.29.13 GCD of the coefficients of a polynomial : content**

content takes as argument a polynomial  $P$  given by a symbolic expression or by the list of its coefficients.

content returns the content of  $P$ , that is the GCD (greatest common divisor) of the coefficients of  $P$ .

Input :

```
content(6*x^2-3*x+9)
```

or:

```
content([6,-3,9],x)
```

Output :

**5.29.14 Primitive part of a polynomial : primpart**

`primpart` takes as argument a polynomial  $P$  given by a symbolic expression or by the list of its coefficients.

`primpart` returns the primitive part of  $P$ , that is  $P$  divided by the GCD (greatest common divisor) of its coefficients.

**Input :**

```
primpart (6x^2-3x+9)
```

or:

```
primpart ([ 6, -3, 9 ], x))
```

**Output :**

```
2*x^2-x+3
```

**5.29.15 Factorization : collect**

`collect` takes as argument a polynomial or a list of polynomials and optionally an algebraic extension like `sqrt(n)` (for  $\sqrt{n}$ ).

`collect` factorizes the polynomial (or the polynomials in the list) on the field of its coefficient (for example  $\mathbb{Q}$ ) or on the smallest extension containing the optional second argument (e.g.  $\mathbb{Q}[\sqrt{n}]$ ). In complex mode, the field is complexified.

**Examples :**

- Factorize  $x^2 - 4$  over the integers, input :

```
collect (x^2-4)
```

Output in real mode :

```
(x-2)*(x+2)
```

- Factorize  $x^2 + 4$  over the integers, input :

```
collect (x^2+4)
```

Output in real mode :

```
x^2+4
```

Output in complex mode :

```
(x+2*i)*(x-2*i)
```

- Factorize  $x^2 - 2$  over the integers, input :

```
collect (x^2-2)
```

Output in real mode :

$x^{2-2}$

But if you input :

```
collect(sqrt(2)*(x^2-2))
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2)*(x-sqrt(2))*(x+sqrt(2))
```

- Factorize over the integers :

$$x^3 - 2x^2 + 1 \text{ and } x^2 - x$$

Input :

```
collect([x^3-2*x^2+1, x^2-x])
```

Output :

```
[ (x-1)*(x^2-x-1), x*(x-1) ]
```

But, input :

```
collect((x^3-2*x^2+1)*sqrt(5))
```

Output :

```
((19*sqrt(5)-10)*((sqrt(5)+15)*x+7*sqrt(5)-5)*
((sqrt(5)+25)*x-13*sqrt(5)-15)*(x-1))/6820
```

Or, input :

```
collect(x^3-2*x^2+1, sqrt(5))
```

Output :

```
((2*sqrt(5)-19)*((sqrt(5)+25)*x-
13*sqrt(5)-15)*(-x+1)*((sqrt(5)+15)*x+7*sqrt(5)-5))/6820
```

### 5.29.16 Factorization : factor factoriser

`factor` takes as argument a polynomial or a list of polynomials and optionally an algebraic extension, e.g. `sqrt(n)`.

`factor` factorizes the polynomial (or the polynomials in the list) on the field of its coefficients (the field is complexified in complex mode) or on the smallest extension containing the optional second argument. Unlike `collect`, `factor` will further factorize each factor of degree 2 if `Sqrt` is checked in the cas configuration (see also 5.13.10). You can check the current configuration in the status button under Xcas and change the configuration by hitting this status button.

Input :

```
factor(x^2+2*x+1)
```

Output :

$$(x+1)^2$$

Input :

```
factor(x^4-2*x^2+1)
```

Output :

$$(-x+1)^2 * (x+1)^2$$

Input :

```
factor(x^3-2*x^2+1)
```

Output if Sqrt is not checked in the cas configuration :

$$(x-1) * (x^2-x-1)$$

Output if Sqrt is checked in the cas configuration :

$$(x-1) * (x + (\sqrt{5}-1)/2) * (x + (-\sqrt{5}-1)/2)$$

Input :

```
factor(x^3-2*x^2+1, sqrt(5))
```

Output :

$$\begin{aligned} & ((2\sqrt{5}-19) * ((\sqrt{5}+15)*x+ \\ & 7*\sqrt{5}-5) * (-x+1) * ((\sqrt{5}+25)*x-13*\sqrt{5}-15)) / 6820 \end{aligned}$$

Input :

```
factor(x^2+1)
```

Output in real mode :

$$x^2+1$$

Output in complex mode :

$$((-i)*x+1) * ((i)*x+1)$$

### 5.29.17 Square-free factorization : sqrfree

`sqrfree` takes as argument a polynomial.

`sqrfree` factorizes this polynomial as a product of powers of coprime factors, where each factor has roots of multiplicity 1 (in other words, a factor and its derivative are coprime).

Input :

```
sqrfree((x^2-1)*(x-1)*(x+2))
```

Output :

$$(x^2+3*x+2) * (x-1)^2$$

Input :

```
sqrfree((x^2-1)^2*(x-1)*(x+2)^2)
```

Output :

$$(x^2+3*x+2) * (x-1)^3$$

**5.29.18 List of factors : factors**

`factors` has either a polynomial or a list of polynomials as argument.  
`factors` returns a list containing the factors of the polynomial and their exponents.

Input :

```
factors(x^2+2*x+1)
```

Output :

```
[x+1, 2]
```

Input :

```
factors(x^4-2*x^2+1)
```

Output :

```
[x+1, 2, x-1, 2]
```

Input :

```
factors([x^3-2*x^2+1, x^2-x])
```

Output :

```
[[x-1, 1, x^2-x-1, 1], [x, 1, x-1, 1]]
```

Input :

```
factors([x^2, x^2-1])
```

Output :

```
[[x, 2], [x+1, 1, x-1, 1]]
```

**5.29.19 Evaluate a polynomial : horner**

`horner` takes two arguments : a polynomial  $P$  given by its symbolic expression or by the list of its coefficients and a number  $a$ .

`horner` returns  $P(a)$  computed using Horner's method.

Input :

```
horner(x^2-2*x+1, 2)
```

or :

```
horner([1, -2, 1], 2)
```

Output :

### 5.29.20 Rewrite in terms of the powers of (x-a) : ptayl

`ptayl` is used to rewrite a polynomial  $P$  depending of  $x$  in terms of the powers of  $(x-a)$  (`ptayl` means polynomial Taylor)

`ptayl` takes two arguments: a polynomial  $P$  given by a symbolic expression or by the list of its coefficients and a number  $a$ .

`ptayl` returns the polynomial  $Q$  such that  $Q(x-a)=P(x)$

Input :

```
ptayl(x^2+2*x+1, 2)
```

Output, the polynomial  $Q$ :

```
x^2+6*x+9
```

Input :

```
ptayl([1, 2, 1], 2)
```

Output :

```
[1, 6, 9]
```

#### Remark

$$P(x) = Q(x-a)$$

i.e. for the example :

$$x^2 + 2x + 1 = (x - 2)^2 + 6(x - 2) + 9$$

### 5.29.21 Compute with the exact root of a polynomial : rootof

Let  $P$  and  $Q$  be two polynomials given by the list of their coefficients then `rootof(P, Q)` gives the value  $P(\alpha)$  where  $\alpha$  is the root of  $Q$  with largest real part (and largest imaginary part in case of equality).

In exact computations, `Xcas` will rewrite rational evaluations of `rootof` as a unique `rootof` with  $\text{degree}(P) < \text{degree}(Q)$ . If the resulting `rootof` is the solution of a second degree equation, it will be simplified.

#### Example

Let  $\alpha$  be the root with largest imaginary part of  $Q(x) = x^4 + 10x^2 + 1$  (all roots of  $Q$  have real part equal to 0).

- Compute  $\frac{1}{\alpha}$ . Input :

```
normal(1/rootof([1, 0], [1, 0, 10, 0, 1]))
```

$$P(x) = x \text{ is represented by } [1, 0] \text{ and } \alpha \text{ by } \text{rootof}([1, 0], [1, 0, 10, 0, 1]).$$

Output :

```
rootof([-1, 0, -10, 0], [1, 0, 10, 0, 1])
```

i.e. :

$$\frac{1}{\alpha} = -\alpha^3 - 10\alpha$$

- Compute  $\alpha^2$ . Input :

```
normal(rootof([1,0],[1,0,10,0,1])^2)
```

or (since  $P(x) = x^2$  is represented by [1,0,0]) input

```
normal(rootof([1,0,0],[1,0,10,0,1]))
```

Output :

```
-5-2*sqrt(6)
```

### 5.29.22 Exact roots of a polynomial : roots

`roots` takes as arguments a symbolic polynomial expression and the name of its variable.

`roots` returns a 2 columns matrix : each row is the list of a root of the polynomial and its multiplicity.

#### Examples

- Find the roots of  $P(x) = x^5 - 2x^4 + x^3$ .

Input :

```
roots(x^5-2*x^4+x^3)
```

Output :

```
[[8+3*sqrt(7),1],[8-3*sqrt(7),1],[0,3]]
```

- Find the roots of  $x^{10} - 15x^8 + 90x^6 - 270x^4 + 405x^2 - 243 = (x^2 - 3)^5$ .

Input :

```
roots(x^10-15*x^8+90*x^6-270*x^4+405*x^2-243)
```

Output :

```
[[sqrt(3),5],[-(sqrt(3)),5]]
```

- Find the roots of  $t^3 - 1$ .

Input :

```
roots(t^3-1,t)
```

Output :

```
[[(-1+(i)*sqrt(3))/2,1], [(-1-(i)*sqrt(3))/2,1],[1,1]]
```

### 5.29.23 Coefficients of a polynomial defined by its roots : pcoeff pcoef

pcoeff (or pcoef) takes as argument a list of the roots of a polynomial  $P$ .  
 pcoeff (or pcoef) returns a univariate polynomial having these roots, represented as the list of its coefficients by decreasing order.

Input :

```
pcoef([1,2,0,0,3])
```

Output :

```
[1,-6,11,-6,0,0]
```

i.e.  $(x - 1)(x - 2)(x^2)(x - 3) = x^5 - 6x^4 + 11x^3 - 6x^2$ .

### 5.29.24 Truncate of order $n$ : truncate

truncate takes as argument, a polynomial and an integer n.  
 truncate truncates this polynomial at order n (removing all terms of order greater or equal to n+1).  
 truncate may be used to transform a series expansion into a polynomial or to compute a series expansion step by step.

Input :

```
truncate((1+x+x^2/2)^3,4)
```

Output :

```
(9*x^4+16*x^3+18*x^2+12*x+4)/4
```

Input :

```
truncate(series(sin(x)),4)
```

Output :

```
(-x^3-(-6)*x)/6
```

Note that the returned polynomial is normalized.

### 5.29.25 Convert a series expansion into a polynomial : convert convertir

convert, with the option polynom, converts a Taylor series into a polynomial. It should be used for operations like drawing the graph of the Taylor series of a function near a point.

convert takes two arguments : an expression and the option polynom.

convert replaces the order\_size functions by 0 inside the expression.

Input :

```
convert(taylor(sin(x)),polynom)
```

Output :

```
x+1/-6*x^3+1/120*x^5+x^6*0
```

Input :

```
convert(series(sin(x),x=0,6),polynom)
```

Output :

$$x + 1/-6 \cdot x^3 + 1/120 \cdot x^5 + x^7 \cdot 0$$

### 5.29.26 Random polynomial : randpoly randPoly

`randpoly` (or `randPoly`) takes two arguments: the name of a variable (by default `x`) and an integer `n` (the order of the arguments is not important).

`randpoly` returns a polynomial with respect to the variable given argument (or `x` if none was provided), of degree the second argument, having as coefficients random integers evenly distributed on -99..+99.

Input :

```
randpoly(t, 4)
```

Output for example:

$$-8 \cdot t^4 - 87 \cdot t^3 - 52 \cdot t^2 + 94 \cdot t + 80$$

Input :

```
randpoly(4)
```

Output for example:

$$70 \cdot x^4 - 46 \cdot x^3 - 7 \cdot x^2 - 24 \cdot x + 52$$

Input :

```
randpoly(4, u)
```

Output for example:

$$2 \cdot u^4 + 33 \cdot u^3 - 6 \cdot u^2 - 92 \cdot u - 12$$

### 5.29.27 Change the order of variables : reorder

`reorder` takes two arguments : an expression and a vector of variable names.

`reorder` expands the expression according to the order of variables given as second argument.

Input :

```
reorder(x^2+2*x*a+a^2+z^2-x*z, [a,x,z])
```

Output :

$$a^2 + 2 \cdot a \cdot x + x^2 - x \cdot z + z^2$$

#### Warning :

The variables must be symbolic (if not, purge them before calling `reorder`)

**5.29.28 Random list : ranm**

`ranm` takes as argument an integer  $n$ .

`ranm` returns a list of  $n$  random integers (between -99 and +99). This list can be seen as the coefficients of an univariate polynomial of degree  $n-1$  (see also [5.47.3](#)).  
Input :

```
ranm(3)
```

Output :

```
[ 68, -21, 56]
```

**5.29.29 Lagrange's polynomial : lagrange interp**

`lagrange` takes as argument two lists of size  $n$  (resp. a matrix with two rows and  $n$  columns) and the name of a variable `var` (by default `x`).

The first list (resp. row) corresponds to the abscissa values  $x_k$  ( $k = 1..n$ ), and the second list (resp. row) corresponds to ordinate values  $y_k$  ( $k = 1..n$ ).

`lagrange` returns a polynomial expression  $P$  with respect to `var` of degree  $n-1$ , such that  $P(x_i) = y_i$ .

Input :

```
lagrange([[1, 3], [0, 1]])
```

or :

```
lagrange([1, 3], [0, 1])
```

Output :

```
(x-1)/2
```

since  $\frac{x-1}{2} = 0$  for  $x = 1$ , and  $\frac{x-1}{2} = 1$  for  $x = 3$ .

Input :

```
lagrange([1, 3], [0, 1], y)
```

Output :

```
(y-1)/2
```

**Warning**

`f:=lagrange([1, 2], [3, 4], y)` does not return a function but an expression with respect to  $y$ . To define  $f$  as a function, input

```
f:=unapply(lagrange([1, 2], [3, 4], x), x)
```

Avoid `f(x):=lagrange([1, 2], [3, 4], x)` since the Lagrange polynomial would be computed each time `f` is called (indeed in a function definition, the second member of the assignment is not evaluated). Note also that

`g(x):=lagrange([1, 2], [3, 4])` would not work since the default argument of `lagrange` would be global, hence not the same as the local variable used for the definition of `g`.

### 5.29.30 Trigonometric interpolation : triginterp

`triginterp(y, x=a..b)` or `triginterp(y, a, b, x)` returns the trigonometric polynomial that interpolates data given in the list `y`. It is assumed that the list `y` contains ordinate components of the points with equidistant abscissa components between `a` and `b` such that the first element from `y` corresponds to `a` and the last element to `b`.

For example, `y` may be a list of experimental measurements of some quantity taken in regular intervals, with the first observation in the moment  $t = a$  and the last observation in the moment  $t = b$ . The resulting trigonometric polynomial has the period

$$T = \frac{n(b-a)}{n-1},$$

where `n` is the number of observations (`n=size(y)`). For example, assume that the following data is obtained by measuring the temperature every three hours:

|                     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| hour of the day     | 0  | 3  | 6  | 9  | 12 | 15 | 18 | 21 |
| temperature (deg C) | 11 | 10 | 17 | 24 | 32 | 26 | 23 | 19 |

Furthermore, assume that an estimate of the temperature at 13:45 is required. To obtain a trigonometric interpolation of the data, input :

```
tp:=triginterp([11,10,17,24,32,26,23,19],x=0..21)
```

Output :

```
81/4+(-21*sqrt(2)-42)/8*cos(pi/12*x)+  
(-11*sqrt(2)-12)/8*sin(pi/12*x)+3/4*cos(pi/6*x)  
-7/4*sin(pi/6*x)+(21*sqrt(2)-42)/8*cos(pi/4*x)  
+(-11*sqrt(2)+12)/8*sin(pi/4*x)+1/2*cos(pi/3*x)
```

Now a temperature at 13:45 hrs can be approximated with the value of `tp` for  $x = 13.75$ . Input :

```
tp | x=13.75
```

Output :

```
29.4863181684
```

If one of the input parameters is inexact, the result will be inexact too. For example, input :

```
Digits:=3;  
triginterp([11,10,17,24,32,26,23,19],x=0..21.0)
```

Output :

```
0.5*cos(1.05*x)-1.54*cos(0.785*x)+0.75*cos(0.524*x)  
-8.96*cos(0.262*x)-0.445*sin(0.785*x)-1.75*sin(0.524*x)  
-3.44*sin(0.262*x)+20.2
```

### 5.29.31 Natural splines: spline

#### Definition

Let  $\sigma_n$  be a subdivision of a real interval  $[a, b]$  :

$$a = x_0, \quad x_1, \quad \dots, \quad x_n = b$$

$s$  is a spline function of degree  $l$ , if  $s$  is a function from  $[a, b]$  to  $\mathbb{R}$  such that :

- $s$  has continuous derivatives up to the order  $l - 1$ ,
- on each interval of the subdivision,  $s$  is a polynomial of degree less or equal than  $l$ .

#### Theorem

The set of spline functions of degree  $l$  on  $\sigma_n$  is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector subspace of dimension  $n + l$ .

#### Proof

On  $[a, x_1]$ ,  $s$  is a polynomial  $A$  of degree less or equal to  $l$ , hence on  $[a, x_1]$ ,  $s = A(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_lx^l$  and  $A$  is a linear combination of  $1, x, \dots, x^l$ .

On  $[x_1, x_2]$ ,  $s$  is a polynomial  $B$  of degree less or equal to  $l$ , hence on  $[x_1, x_2]$ ,  $s = B(x) = b_0 + b_1x + \dots + b_lx^l$ .

$s$  has continuous derivatives up to order  $l - 1$ , hence :

$$\forall 0 \leq j \leq l - 1, \quad B^{(j)}(x_1) - A^{(j)}(x_1) = 0$$

therefore  $B(x) - A(x) = \alpha_1(x - x_1)^l$  or  $B(x) = A(x) + \alpha_1(x - x_1)^l$ .

Define the function :

$$q_1(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{on } [a, x_1] \\ (x - x_1)^l & \text{on } [x_1, b] \end{cases}$$

Hence :

$$s|_{[a, x_2]} = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_lx^l + \alpha_1 q_1(x)$$

On  $[x_2, x_3]$ ,  $s$  is a polynomial  $C$  of degree less or equal than  $l$ , hence on  $[x_2, x_3]$ ,  $s = C(x) = c_0 + c_1x + \dots + c_lx^l$ .

$s$  has continuous derivatives until  $l - 1$ , hence :

$$\forall 0 \leq j \leq l - 1, \quad C^{(j)}(x_2) - B^{(j)}(x_2) = 0$$

therefore  $C(x) - B(x) = \alpha_2(x - x_2)^l$  or  $C(x) = B(x) + \alpha_2(x - x_2)^l$ .

Define the function :

$$q_2(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{on } [a, x_2] \\ (x - x_2)^l & \text{on } [x_2, b] \end{cases}$$

Hence :  $s|_{[a, x_3]} = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_lx^l + \alpha_1 q_1(x) + \alpha_2 q_2(x)$

And so on, the functions are defined by :

$$\forall 1 \leq j \leq n - 1, q_j(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{on } [a, x_j] \\ (x - x_j)^l & \text{on } [x_j, b] \end{cases}$$

hence,

$$s|_{[a, b]} = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_lx^l + \alpha_1 q_1(x) + \dots + \alpha_{n-1} q_{n-1}(x)$$

and  $s$  is a linear combination of  $n + l$  independent functions  $1, x, \dots, x^l, q_1, \dots, q_{n-1}$ .

### Interpolation with spline functions

If we want to interpolate a function  $f$  on  $\sigma_n$  by a spline function  $s$  of degree  $l$ , then  $s$  must verify  $s(x_k) = y_k = f(x_k)$  for all  $0 \leq k \leq n$ . Hence there are  $n + 1$  conditions, and  $l - 1$  degrees of liberty. We can therefore add  $l - 1$  conditions, these conditions are on the derivatives of  $s$  at  $a$  and  $b$ .

Hermite interpolation, natural interpolation and periodic interpolation are three kinds of interpolation obtained by specifying three kinds of constraints. The unicity of the solution of the interpolation problem can be proved for each kind of constraints.

If  $l$  is odd ( $l = 2m - 1$ ), there are  $2m - 2$  degrees of freedom. The constraints are defined by :

- Hermite interpolation

$$\forall 1 \leq j \leq m - 1, \quad s^{(j)}(a) = f^{(j)}(a), s^{(j)}(b) = f^{(j)}(b)$$

- Natural interpolation

$$\forall m \leq j \leq 2m - 2, \quad s^{(j)}(a) = s^{(j)}(b) = 0$$

- periodic interpolation

$$\forall 1 \leq j \leq 2m - 2, \quad s^{(j)}(a) = s^{(j)}(b)$$

If  $l$  is even ( $l = 2m$ ), there are  $2m - 1$  degrees of liberty. The constraints are defined by :

- Hermite interpolation

$$\forall 1 \leq j \leq m - 1, \quad s^{(j)}(a) = f^{(j)}(a), s^{(j)}(b) = f^{(j)}(b)$$

and

$$s^{(m)}(a) = f^{(m)}(a)$$

- Natural interpolation

$$\forall m \leq j \leq 2m - 2, \quad s^{(j)}(a) = s^{(j)}(b) = 0$$

and

$$s^{(2m-1)}(a) = 0$$

- Periodic interpolation

$$\forall 1 \leq j \leq 2m - 1, \quad s^{(j)}(a) = s^{(j)}(b)$$

A natural spline is a spline function which verifies the natural interpolation constraints.

`spline` takes as arguments a list of abscissa (by increasing order), a list of ordinates, a variable name, and a degree.

`spline` returns the natural spline function (with the specified degree and crossing points) as a list of polynomials, each polynomial being valid on an interval.

Examples:

1. a natural spline of degree 3, crossing through the points  $x_0 = 0, y_0 = 1, x_1 = 1, y_1 = 3$  and  $x_2 = 2, y_2 = 0$ , input :

```
spline([0,1,2],[1,3,0],x,3)
```

Output is a list of two polynomial expressions of  $x$  :

$$[-5*x^3/4 + 13*x/4 + 1, \quad 5*(x-1)^3/4 - 15*(x-1)^2/4 + (x-1)/-2 + 3]$$

defined respectively on the intervals  $[0, 1]$  and  $[1, 2]$ .

2. a natural spline of degree 4, crossing through the points  $x_0 = 0, y_0 = 1, x_1 = 1, y_1 = 3, x_2 = 2, y_2 = 0$  and  $x_3 = 3, y_3 = -1$ , input :

```
spline([0,1,2,3],[1,3,0,-1],x,4)
```

Output is a list of three polynomial functions of  $x$  :

$$[(-62*x^4 + 304*x)/121 + 1,$$

$$(201*(x-1)^4 - 248*(x-1)^3 - 372*(x-1)^2 + 56*(x-1))/121 + 3,$$

$$(-139*(x-2)^4 + 556*(x-2)^3 + 90*(x-2)^2 - 628*(x-2))/121]$$

defined respectively on the intervals  $[0, 1]$ ,  $[1, 2]$  and  $[2, 3]$ .

3. The natural spline interpolation of  $\cos$  on  $[0, \pi/2, 3\pi/2]$ , input :

```
spline([0,pi/2,3*pi/2],cos([0,pi/2,3*pi/2]),x,3)
```

Output :

$$[((3*\pi^3 + (-7*\pi^2)*x + 4*x^3)*1/3)/(\pi^3),$$

$$((15*\pi^3 + (-46*\pi^2)*x + 36*\pi*x^2 - 8*x^3)*1/12)/(\pi^3)]$$

### 5.29.32 Rational interpolation : thielle

`thielle` takes as the first argument a matrix `data` of type  $n \times 2$  where that  $i$ -th row holds coordinates  $x$  and  $y$  of  $i$ -th point, respectively. The second argument is `v`, which may be an identifier, number or any symbolic expression. Function returns  $R(v)$  where  $R$  is the rational interpolant. Instead of a single matrix `data`, two vectors  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  and  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)$  may be given (in this case, `v` is given as the third argument).

This method computes Thiele interpolated continued fraction based on the concept of reciprocal differences.

It is not guaranteed that  $R$  is continuous, i.e. it may have singularities in the shortest segment which contains all components of  $\mathbf{x}$ .

### Examples

Input :

```
thiele([[1,3],[2,4],[4,5],[5,8]],x)
```

Output :

```
(19*x^2-45*x-154)/(18*x-78)
```

Input :

```
thiele([1,2,a],[3,4,5],3)
```

Output :

```
(13*a-29)/(3*a-7)
```

In the following example, data is obtained by sampling the function  $f(x) = (1 - x^4) e^{1-x^3}$ .

Input :

```
data_x:=[-1,-0.75,-0.5,-0.25,0,
0.25,0.5,0.75,1,1.25,1.5,1.75,2];
data_y:=[0.0,2.83341735599,2.88770329586,
2.75030303645,2.71828182846,2.66568510781,
2.24894558809,1.21863761951,0.0,-0.555711613283,
-0.377871362418,-0.107135851128,-0.0136782294833];
thiele(data_x,data_y,x)
```

Output :

```
(-1.55286115659*x^6+5.87298387514*x^5-5.4439152812*x^4
+1.68655817708*x^3-2.40784868317*x^2-7.55954205222*x
+9.40462512097)/(x^6-1.24295718965*x^5-1.33526268624*x^4
+4.03629272425*x^3-0.885419321*x^2-2.77913222418*x
+3.45976823393)
```

## 5.30 Arithmetic and polynomials

Polynomials are represented by expressions or by list of coefficients by decreasing power order. In the first case, for instructions requiring a main variable (like extended gcd computations), the variable used by default is  $x$  if not specified. For modular coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ , use  $\% n$  for each coefficient of the list or apply it to the expression defining the polynomial.

### 5.30.1 The divisors of a polynomial : divis

`divis` takes as argument a polynomial (or a list of polynomials) and returns the list of the divisors of the polynomial(s).

Input :

```
divis(x^4-1)
```

Output :

```
[1, x^2+1, x+1, (x^2+1)*(x+1), x-1, (x^2+1)*(x-1),
(x+1)*(x-1), (x^2+1)*(x+1)*(x-1)]
```

Input :

```
divis([x^2, x^2-1])
```

Output :

```
[[1, x, x^2], [1, x+1, x-1, (x+1)*(x-1)]]
```

### 5.30.2 Euclidean quotient : quo

`quo` returns the euclidean quotient  $q$  of the Euclidean division between two polynomials (decreasing power order). If the polynomials are represented as expressions, the variable may be specified as a third argument.

Input :

```
quo(x^2+2*x +1, x)
```

Output :

```
x+2
```

Input :

```
quo(y^2+2*y +1, y, y)
```

Output :

```
y+2
```

In list representation, the quotient of  $x^2 + 2x + 4$  by  $x^2 + x + 2$  one can also input :

```
quo([1, 2, 4], [1, 1, 2])
```

Output :

```
[1]
```

that is to say the polynomial 1.

### 5.30.3 Euclidean quotient : Quo

`Quo` is the inert form of `quo`.

`Quo` returns the euclidean quotient between two polynomials (decreasing power division) without evaluation. It is used when `Xcas` is in Maple mode to compute the euclidean quotient of the division of two polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  using Maple-like syntax.

In `Xcas` mode, input :

```
Quo(x^2+2*x+1, x)
```

Output :

```
quo(x^2+2*x+1, x)
```

In Maple mode, input :

```
Quo(x^3+3*x, 2*x^2+6*x+5) mod 5
```

Output :

```
- (2)*x+1
```

The division was done using modular arithmetic, unlike with

```
quo(x^3+3*x, 2*x^2+6*x+5) mod 5
```

where the division is done in  $\mathbb{Z}[X]$  and reduced after to:

```
3*x-9
```

If `xCAS` is not in Maple mode, polynomial division in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[X]$  is done e.g. by :

```
quo((x^3+3*x) % 5, (2*x^2+6*x+5) % 5)
```

#### 5.30.4 Euclidean remainder : `rem`

`rem` returns the euclidean remainder between two polynomials (decreasing power division). If the polynomials are represented as expressions, the variable may be specified as a third argument.

Input :

```
rem(x^3-1, x^2-1)
```

Output :

```
x-1
```

To have the remainder of  $x^2 + 2x + 4$  by  $x^2 + x + 2$  we can also input :

```
rem([1, 2, 4], [1, 1, 2])
```

Output :

```
[1, 2]
```

i.e. the polynomial  $x + 2$ .

### 5.30.5 Euclidean remainder: Rem

Rem is the inert form of rem.

Rem returns the euclidean remainder between two polynomials (decreasing power division) without evaluation. It is used when Xcas is in Maple mode to compute the euclidean remainder of the division of two polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  using Maple-like syntax.

In Xcas mode, input :

```
Rem(x^3-1, x^2-1)
```

Output :

```
rem(x^3-1, x^2-1)
```

In Maple mode, input :

```
Rem(x^3+3*x, 2*x^2+6*x+5) mod 5
```

Output :

```
2*x
```

The division was done using modular arithmetic, unlike with

```
rem(x^3+3*x, 2*x^2+6*x+5) mod 5
```

where the division is done in  $\mathbb{Z}[X]$  and reduced after to:

```
12*x
```

If Xcas is not in Maple mode, polynomial division in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[X]$  is done e.g. by :

```
rem((x^3+3*x) % 5, (2*x^2+6*x+5) % 5)
```

### 5.30.6 Quotient and remainder : quorem divide

quorem (or divide) returns the list of the quotient and the remainder of the euclidean division (by decreasing power) of two polynomials.

Input :

```
quorem([1, 2, 4], [1, 1, 2])
```

Output :

```
[poly1[1], poly1[1, 2]]
```

Input :

```
quorem(x^3-1, x^2-1)
```

Output :

```
[x, x-1]
```

### 5.30.7 GCD of two polynomials with the Euclidean algorithm: gcd

`gcd` denotes the gcd (greatest common divisor) of two polynomials (or of a list of polynomials or of a sequence of polynomials) (see also [5.6.2](#) for GCD of integers).

#### Examples

Input :

$$\text{gcd}(x^2+2*x+1, x^2-1)$$

Output :

$$x+1$$

Input :

$$\text{gcd}(x^2-2*x+1, x^3-1, x^2-1, x^2+x-2)$$

or

$$\text{gcd}([x^2-2*x+1, x^3-1, x^2-1, x^2+x-2])$$

Output :

$$x-1$$

For polynomials with modular coefficients, input e.g. :

$$\text{gcd}((x^2+2*x+1) \bmod 5, (x^2-1) \bmod 5)$$

Output :

$$x \% 5$$

Note that :

$$\text{gcd}(x^2+2*x+1, x^2-1) \bmod 5$$

will output :

$$1$$

since the mod operation is done after the GCD is computed in  $\mathbb{Z}[X]$ .

### 5.30.8 GCD of two polynomials with the Euclidean algorithm : Gcd

`Gcd` is the inert form of `gcd`. `Gcd` returns the gcd (greatest common divisor) of two polynomials (or of a list of polynomials or of a sequence of polynomials) without evaluation. It is used when `Xcas` is in Maple mode to compute the gcd of polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  using Maple-like syntax.

Input in `Xcas` mode :

$$\text{Gcd}(x^3-1, x^2-1)$$

Output :

$$\text{gcd}(x^3-1, x^2-1)$$

Input in `Maple` mode :

$$\text{Gcd}(x^2+2*x, x^2+6*x+5) \bmod 5$$

Output :

$$1$$

**5.30.9 Choosing the GCD algorithm of two polynomials :** `ezgcd heugcd modgcd psrgcd`

`ezgcd heugcd modgcd psrgcd` denote the gcd (greatest common divisor) of two univariate or multivariate polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}$  or  $\mathbb{Z}[i]$  using a specific algorithm :

- `ezgcd` `ezgcd` algorithm,
- `heugcd` heuristic gcd algorithm,
- `modgcd` modular algorithm,
- `psrgcd` sub-resultant algorithm.

Input :

`ezgcd(x^2-2*x*y+y^2-1, x-y)`

or :

`heugcd(x^2-2*x*y+y^2-1, x-y)`

or :

`modgcd(x^2-2*x*y+y^2-1, x-y)`

or :

`psrgcd(x^2-2*x*y+y^2-1, x-y)`

Output :

1

Input :

`ezgcd((x+y-1)*(x+y+1), (x+y+1)^2)`

or :

`heugcd((x+y-1)*(x+y+1), (x+y+1)^2)`

or :

`modgcd((x+y-1)*(x+y+1), (x+y+1)^2)`

Output :

$x+y+1$

Input :

`psrgcd((x+y-1)*(x+y+1), (x+y+1)^2)`

Output :

$-x-y-1$

Input :

```
ezgcd( (x+1)^4-y^4, (x+1-y)^2)
```

Output :

```
"GCD not successful Error: Bad Argument Value"
```

But input :

```
heugcd( (x+1)^4-y^4, (x+1-y)^2)
```

or :

```
modgcd( (x+1)^4-y^4, (x+1-y)^2)
```

or :

```
psrgcd( (x+1)^4-y^4, (x+1-y)^2)
```

Output :

$$x-y+1$$

### 5.30.10 LCM of two polynomials : lcm

`lcm` returns the LCM (Least Common Multiple) of two polynomials (or of a list of polynomials or of a sequence of polynomials) (see [5.6.5](#) for LCM of integers).

Input :

```
lcm(x^2+2*x+1, x^2-1)
```

Output :

$$(x+1) * (x^2-1)$$

Input :

```
lcm(x, x^2+2*x+1, x^2-1)
```

or

```
lcm( [x, x^2+2*x+1, x^2-1] )
```

Output :

$$(x^2+x) * (x^2-1)$$

**5.30.11 Bézout's Identity : egcd gcdex**

This function computes the polynomial coefficients of Bézout's Identity (also known as Extended Greatest Common Divisor). Given two polynomials  $A(x), B(x)$ , `egcd` computes 3 polynomials  $U(x), V(x)$  and  $D(x)$  such that :

$$U(x) * A(x) + V(x) * B(x) = D(x) = GCD(A(x), B(x))$$

`egcd` takes 2 or 3 arguments: the polynomials  $A$  and  $B$  as expressions in terms of a variable, if the variable is not specified it will default to  $x$ . Alternatively,  $A$  and  $B$  may be given as list-polynomials.

Input :

```
egcd(x^2+2*x+1, x^2-1)
```

Output :

```
[1, -1, 2*x+2]
```

Input :

```
egcd([1, 2, 1], [1, 0, -1])
```

Output :

```
[[1], [-1], [2, 2]]
```

Input :

```
egcd(y^2-2*y+1, y^2-y+2, y)
```

Output :

```
[y-2, -y+3, 4]
```

Input :

```
egcd([1, -2, 1], [1, -1, 2])
```

Output :

```
[[1, -2], [-1, 3], [4]]
```

**5.30.12 Solving  $au+bv=c$  over polynomials: abcuv**

`abcuv` solves the polynomial equation

$$C(x) = U(x) * A(x) + V(x) * B(x)$$

where  $A, B, C$  are given polynomials and  $U$  and  $V$  are unknown polynomials.  $C$  must be a multiple of the gcd of  $A$  and  $B$  for a solution to exist. `abcuv` takes 3 expressions as argument, and an optional variable specification (which defaults to  $x$ ) and returns a list of 2 expressions ( $U$  and  $V$ ). Alternatively, the polynomials  $A, B, C$  may be entered as list-polynomials.

Input :

`abcuv(x^2+2*x+1 , x^2-1, x+1)`

Output :

`[1/2, 1/-2]`

Input :

`abcuv(x^2+2*x+1 , x^2-1, x^3+1)`

Output :

`[1/2*x^2+1/-2*x+1/2, -1/2*x^2-1/-2*x-1/2]`

Input :

`abcuv([1, 2, 1], [1, 0, -1], [1, 0, 0, 1])`

Output :

`[poly1[1/2, 1/-2, 1/2], poly1[1/-2, 1/2, 1/-2]]`

### 5.30.13 Chinese remainders : `chinrem`

`chinrem` takes two lists as argument, each list being made of 2 polynomials (either expressions or as a list of coefficients in decreasing order). If the polynomials are expressions, an optional third argument may be provided to specify the main variable, by default `x` is used. `chinrem([A, R], [B, Q])` returns the list of two polynomials `P` and `S` such that :

$$S = RQ, \quad P = A \pmod{R}, \quad P = B \pmod{Q}$$

If `R` and `Q` are coprime, a solution `P` always exists and all the solutions are congruent modulo `S=R*Q`. For example, assume we want to solve :

$$\begin{cases} P(x) = x \pmod{x^2 + 1} \\ P(x) = x - 1 \pmod{x^2 - 1} \end{cases}$$

Input :

`chinrem([[1, 0], [1, 0, 1]], [[1, -1], [1, 0, -1]])`

Output :

`[[1/-2, 1, 1/-2], [1, 0, 0, 0, -1]]`

or :

`chinrem([x, x^2+1], [x-1, x^2-1])`

Output :

`[1/-2*x^2+x+1/-2, x^4-1]`

hence  $P(x) = -\frac{x^2 - 2x + 1}{2} \pmod{x^4 - 1}$

Another example, input :

```
chinrem([[1,2],[1,0,1]],[[1,1],[1,1,1]])
```

Output :

```
[[[-1,-1,0,1],[1,1,2,1,1]]]
```

or :

```
chinrem([y+2,y^2+1],[y+1,y^2+y+1],y)
```

Output :

```
[-y^3-y^2+1,y^4+y^3+2*y^2+y+1]
```

#### 5.30.14 Cyclotomic polynomial : cyclotomic

`cyclotomic` takes an integer  $n$  as argument and returns the list of the coefficients of the cyclotomic polynomial of index  $n$ . This is the polynomial having the  $n$ -th primitive roots of unity as zeros (an  $n$ -th root of unity is primitive if the set of its powers is the set of all the  $n$ -th roots of unity).

For example, let  $n = 4$ , the fourth roots of unity are:  $\{1, i, -1, -i\}$  and the primitive roots are:  $\{i, -i\}$ . Hence, the cyclotomic polynomial of index 4 is  $(x - i).(x + i) = x^2 + 1$ . Verification:

```
cyclotomic(4)
```

Output :

```
[1,0,1]
```

Another example, input :

```
cyclotomic(5)
```

Output :

```
[1,1,1,1,1]
```

Hence, the cyclotomic polynomial of index 5 is  $x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$  which divides  $x^5 - 1$  since  $(x - 1) * (x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1) = x^5 - 1$ .

Input :

```
cyclotomic(10)
```

Output :

```
[1,-1,1,-1,1]
```

Hence, the cyclotomic polynomial of index 10 is  $x^4 - x^3 + x^2 - x + 1$  and

$$(x^5 - 1) * (x + 1) * (x^4 - x^3 + x^2 - x + 1) = x^{10} - 1$$

Input :

```
cyclotomic(20)
```

Output :

```
[1,0,-1,0,1,0,-1,0,1]
```

Hence, the cyclotomic polynomial of index 20 is  $x^8 - x^6 + x^4 - x^2 + 1$  and

$$(x^{10} - 1) * (x^2 + 1) * (x^8 - x^6 + x^4 - x^2 + 1) = x^{20} - 1$$

**5.30.15 Sturm sequences and number of sign changes of  $P$  on  $(a, b]$  :**  
**sturm**

`sturm` takes two or four arguments :  $P$  a polynomial expression or  $P/Q$  a rational fraction and a variable name or  $P$  a polynomial expression, a variable name and two real or complex numbers  $a$  and  $b$ .

If `sturm` takes two arguments, `sturm` returns the list of the Sturm sequences and multiplicities of the square-free factors of  $P$  (or  $P/Q$ ) (in this case `sturm` behaves like `sturmseq`).

If `sturm` takes four arguments, it behaves like `sturmab` :

- if  $a$  and  $b$  are reals, `sturm` returns the number of sign changes of  $P$  on  $(a, b]$
- if  $a$  or  $b$  are complex, `sturm` returns the number of complex roots of  $P$  in the rectangle having  $a$  and  $b$  as opposite vertices.

Input :

```
sturm(2*x^3+2, x)
```

Output :

```
[2, [[1, 0, 0, 1], [3, 0, 0], -9], 1]
```

Input :

```
sturm((2*x^3+2)/(x+2), x)
```

Output :

```
[2, [[1, 0, 0, 1], [3, 0, 0], -9], 1, [[1, 2], 1]]
```

Input :

```
sturm(x^2*(x^3+2), x, -2, 0)
```

Output :

```
1
```

**5.30.16 Number of zeros in  $[a, b]$  :** `sturmab`

`sturmab` takes four arguments: a polynomial expression  $P$ , a variable name and two real or complex numbers  $a$  and  $b$

- if  $a$  and  $b$  are reals, `sturmab` returns the number of sign changes of  $P$  on  $(a, b]$ . In other words, it returns the number of zeros in  $[a, b]$  of the polynomial  $P/G$  where  $G = \text{gcd}(P, \text{diff}(P))$ .
- if  $a$  or  $b$  are complex, `sturmab` returns the number of complex roots of  $P$  in the rectangle having  $a$  and  $b$  as opposite vertices.

Input :

```
sturmab(x^2*(x^3+2), x, -2, 0)
```

Output :

1

Input :

```
sturmab(x^3-1,x,-2-i,5+3i)
```

Output :

3

Input :

```
sturmab(x^3-1,x,-i,5+3i)
```

Output :

1

### **Warning !!!!**

$P$  is defined by its symbolic expression.

Input :

```
sturmab([1,0,0,2,0,0],x,-2,0),
```

Output :

Bad argument type.

### **5.30.17 Sturm sequences : sturmseq**

`sturmseq` takes as argument, a polynomial expression  $P$  or a rational fraction  $P/Q$  and returns the list of the Sturm sequences of the square-free factors of odd multiplicity of  $P$  (or of  $P/Q$ ). For  $F$  a square-free factor of odd multiplicity, the Sturm sequence  $R_1, R_2, \dots$  is made from  $F, F'$  by a recurrence relation :

- $R_1$  is the opposite of the euclidean division remainder of  $F$  by  $F'$  then,
- $R_2$  is the opposite of the euclidean division remainder of  $F'$  by  $R_1$ ,
- ...
- and so on until  $R_k = 0$ .

Input :

```
sturmseq(2*x^3+2)
```

or

```
sturmseq(2*y^3+2,y)
```

Output :

```
[2, [[1, 0, 0, 1], [3, 0, 0], -9], 1]
```

The first term gives the content of the numerator (here 2), then the Sturm sequence (in list representation)  $[x^3 + 1, 3x^2, -9]$ .

Input :

```
sturmseq( (2*x^3+2) / (3*x^2+2) , x)
```

Output :

```
[2, [[1,0,0,1], [3,0,0], -9], 1, [1, [[3,0,2], [6,0], -72]]]
```

The first term gives the content of the numerator (here 2), then the Sturm sequence of the numerator ([[1,0,0,1],[3,0,0],-9]), then the content of the denominator (here 1) and the Sturm sequence of the denominator ([[3,0,2],[6,0],-72]). As expressions,  $[x^3 + 1, 3x^2, -9]$  is the Sturm sequence of the numerator and  $[3x^2 + 2, 6x, -72]$  is the Sturm sequence of the denominator.

Input :

```
sturmseq( (x^3+1)^2, x)
```

Output :

```
[1, 1]
```

Indeed  $F = 1$ .

Input :

```
sturmseq(3*(3*x^3+1) / (2*x+2) , x)
```

Output :

```
[3, [[3,0,0,1], [9,0,0], -81], 2, [[1,1], 1]]
```

The first term gives the content of the numerator (here 3),  
the second term gives the Sturm sequence of the numerator (here  $3x^3+1, 9x^2, -81$ ),  
the third term gives the content of the denominator (here 2),  
the fourth term gives the Sturm sequence of the denominator ( $x+1, 1$ ).

#### **Warning !!!!**

$P$  is defined by its symbolic expression.

Input :

```
sturmseq([1,0,0,1], x)
```

Output :

```
Bad argument type.
```

### 5.30.18 Sylvester matrix of two polynomials : sylvester

sylvester takes two polynomials as arguments.

sylvester returns the Sylvester matrix  $S$  of these polynomials.

If  $A(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} a_i x^i$  and  $B(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} b_i x^i$  are 2 polynomials, their Sylvester matrix  $S$  is a square matrix of size  $m+n$  where  $m=\text{degree}(B(x))$  and  $n=\text{degree}(A(x))$ . The  $m$  first lines are made with the  $A(x)$  coefficients, so that :

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccccccccc} s_{11} = a_n & s_{12} = a_{n-1} & \cdots & s_{1(n+1)} = a_0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ s_{21} = 0 & s_{22} = a_n & \cdots & s_{2(n+1)} = a_1 & s_{2(n+2)} = a_0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ s_{m1} = 0 & s_{m2} = 0 & \cdots & s_{m(n+1)} = a_{m-1} & s_{m(n+2)} = a_{m-2} & \cdots & a_0 \end{array} \right)$$

and the  $n$  further lines are made with the  $B(x)$  coefficients, so that :

$$\begin{pmatrix} s_{(m+1)1} = b_m & s_{(m+1)2} = b_{m-1} & \cdots & s_{(m+1)(m+1)} = b_0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ s_{(m+n)1} = 0 & s_{(m+n)2} = 0 & \cdots & s_{(m+n)(m+1)} = b_{n-1} & b_{n-2} & \cdots & b_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Input :

```
sylvester(x^3-p*x+q, 3*x^2-p, x)
```

Output :

```
[[1, 0, -p, q, 0], [0, 1, 0, -p, q], [3, 0, -p, 0, 0],
 [0, 3, 0, -p, 0], [0, 0, 3, 0, -p]]
```

Input :

```
det([[1, 0, -p, q, 0], [0, 1, 0, -p, q], [3, 0, -p, 0, 0],
 [0, 3, 0, -p, 0], [0, 0, 3, 0, -p]])
```

Output :

```
-4*p^3-27*q^2
```

### 5.30.19 Resultant of two polynomials : resultant

`resultant` takes as argument two polynomials and returns the resultant of the two polynomials.

The resultant of two polynomials is the determinant of their Sylvester matrix  $S$ . The Sylvester matrix  $S$  of two polynomials  $A(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{m-n} a_i x^i$  and  $B(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{m-n} b_i x^i$  is a square matrix with  $m + n$  rows and columns; its first  $m$  rows are made from the coefficients of  $A(X)$ :

$$\begin{pmatrix} s_{11} = a_n & s_{12} = a_{n-1} & \cdots & s_{1(n+1)} = a_0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ s_{21} = 0 & s_{22} = a_n & \cdots & s_{2(n+1)} = a_1 & s_{2(n+2)} = a_0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ s_{m1} = 0 & s_{m2} = 0 & \cdots & s_{m(n+1)} = a_{m-1} & s_{m(n+2)} = a_{m-2} & \cdots & a_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and the following  $n$  rows are made in the same way from the coefficients of  $B(x)$  :

$$\begin{pmatrix} s_{(m+1)1} = b_m & s_{(m+1)2} = b_{m-1} & \cdots & s_{(m+1)(m+1)} = b_0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ s_{(m+n)1} = 0 & s_{(m+n)2} = 0 & \cdots & s_{(m+n)(m+1)} = b_{n-1} & b_{n-2} & \cdots & b_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

If  $A$  and  $B$  have integer coefficients with non-zero resultant  $r$ , then the polynomials equation

$$AU + BV = r$$

has a unique solution  $U, V$  such that  $\text{degree}(U) < \text{degree}(B)$  and  $\text{degree}(V) < \text{degree}(A)$ , and this solution has integer coefficients.

Input :

```
resultant(x^3-p*x+q, 3*x^2-p, x)
```

Output :

```
-4*p^3-27*q^2
```

### Remark

$\text{discriminant}(P) = \text{resultant}(P, P')$ .

### An example using the resultant

Let,  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  be 2 fixed points in the plane and  $A$ , a variable point on the circle of center  $F_1$  and radius  $2a$ . Find the cartesian equation of the set of points  $M$ , intersection of the line  $F_1A$  and of the perpendicular bisector of  $F_2A$ .

Geometric answer :

$$MF_1 + MF_2 = MF_1 + MA = F_1A = 2a$$

hence  $M$  is on an ellipse with focus  $F_1, F_2$  and major axis  $2a$ .

Analytic answer : In the Cartesian coordinate system with center  $F_1$  and  $x$ -axis having the same direction as the vector  $F_1F_2$ , the coordinates of  $A$  are :

$$A = (2a \cos(\theta), 2a \sin(\theta))$$

where  $\theta$  is the  $(Ox, OA)$  angle. Now choose  $t = \tan(\theta/2)$  as parameter, so that the coordinates of  $A$  are rational functions with respect to  $t$ . More precisely :

$$A = (ax, ay) = \left(2a \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}, 2a \frac{2t}{1+t^2}\right)$$

If  $F_1F_2 = 2c$  and if  $I$  is the midpoint of  $AF_2$ , since the coordinates of  $F_2$  are  $F_2 = (2c, 0)$ , the coordinates of  $I$

$$I = (c + ax/2; ay/2) = \left(c + a \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}; a \frac{2t}{1+t^2}\right)$$

$IM$  is orthogonal to  $AF_2$ , hence  $M = (x; y)$  satisfies the equation  $eq1 = 0$  where

$$eq1 := (x - ix) * (ax - 2 * c) + (y - iy) * ay$$

But  $M = (x, y)$  is also on  $F_1A$ , hence  $M$  satisfies the equation  $eq2 = 0$

$$eq2 := y/x - ay/ax$$

The resultant of both equations with respect to  $t$   $\text{resultant}(eq1, eq2, t)$  is a polynomial  $eq3$  depending on the variables  $x, y$ , independent of  $t$  which is the cartesian equation of the set of points  $M$  when  $t$  varies.

Input :

```
ax:=2*a*(1-t^2)/(1+t^2); ay:=2*a*2*t/(1+t^2);
ix:=(ax+2*c)/2; iy:=(ay/2)
eq1:=(x-ix)*(ax-2*c)+(y-iy)*ay
eq2:=y/x-ay/ax
factor(resultant(eq1, eq2, t))
```

Output gives as resultant :

$$-(64 \cdot (x^2 + y^2) \cdot (x^2 \cdot a^2 - x^2 \cdot c^2 + -2 \cdot x \cdot a^2 \cdot c + 2 \cdot x \cdot c^3 - a^4 + 2 \cdot a^2 \cdot c^2 + a^2 \cdot y^2 - c^4))$$

The factor  $-64 \cdot (x^2 + y^2)$  is always different from zero, hence the locus equation of  $M$  :

$$x^2 a^2 - x^2 c^2 + -2 x a^2 c + 2 x c^3 - a^4 + 2 a^2 c^2 + a^2 y^2 - c^4 = 0$$

If the frame origin is  $O$ , the middle point of  $F1F2$ , we find the cartesian equation of an ellipse. To make the change of origin  $\overrightarrow{F1M} = \overrightarrow{F1O} + \overrightarrow{OM}$ , input :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{normal}(\text{subst}(x^2 \cdot a^2 - x^2 \cdot c^2 + -2 \cdot x \cdot a^2 \cdot c + 2 \cdot x \cdot c^3 - a^4 + 2 \cdot a^2 \cdot c^2 + \\ a^2 \cdot y^2 - c^4, [x, y] = [c + X, Y])) \end{aligned}$$

Output :

$$-c^2 * X^2 + c^2 * a^2 + X^2 * a^2 - a^4 + a^2 * Y^2$$

or if  $b^2 = a^2 - c^2$ , input :

$$\text{normal}(\text{subst}(-c^2 * X^2 + c^2 * a^2 + X^2 * a^2 - a^4 + a^2 * Y^2, c^2 = a^2 - b^2))$$

Output :

$$-a^2 * b^2 + a^2 * Y^2 + b^2 * X^2$$

that is to say, after division by  $a^2 * b^2$ ,  $M$  verifies the equation :

$$\frac{X^2}{a^2} + \frac{Y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

### Another example using the resultant

Let  $F1$  and  $F2$  be fixed points and  $A$  a variable point on the circle of center  $F1$  and radius  $2a$ . Find the cartesian equation of the hull of  $D$ , the segment bisector of  $F2A$ .

The segment bisector of  $F2A$  is tangent to the ellipse of focus  $F1, F2$  and major axis  $2a$ .

In the Cartesian coordinate system of center  $F1$  and  $x$ -axis having the same direction than the vector  $F1F2$ , the coordinates of  $A$  are :

$$A = (2a \cos(\theta); 2a \sin(\theta))$$

where  $\theta$  is the  $(Ox, OA)$  angle. Choose  $t = \tan(\theta/2)$  as parameter such that the coordinates of  $A$  are rational functions with respect to  $t$ . More precisely :

$$A = (ax; ay) = (2a \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}; 2a \frac{2t}{1+t^2})$$

If  $F1F2 = 2c$  and if  $I$  is the middle point of  $AF2$ :

$$F2 = (2c, 0), \quad I = (c + ax/2; ay/2) = (c + a \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}; a \frac{2t}{1+t^2})$$

Since  $D$  is orthogonal to  $AF2$ , the equation of  $D$  is  $eq1 = 0$  where

$$eq1 := (x - ix) * (ax - 2 * c) + (y - iy) * ay$$

So, the hull of  $D$  is the locus of  $M$ , the intersection point of  $D$  and  $D'$  where  $D'$  has equation  $eq2 := diff(eq1, t) = 0$ . Input :

```
ax:=2*a*(1-t^2)/(1+t^2);ay:=2*a*2*t/(1+t^2);
ix:=(ax+2*c)/2; iy:=(ay/2)
eq1:=normal((x-ix)*(ax-2*c)+(y-iy)*ay)
eq2:=normal(diff(eq1,t))
factor(resultant(eq1,eq2,t))
```

Output gives as resultant :

$$(-(64 \cdot a^2) \cdot (x^2 + y^2) \cdot (x^2 \cdot a^2 - x^2 \cdot c^2 + -2 \cdot x \cdot a^2 \cdot c + 2 \cdot x \cdot c^3 - a^4 + 2 \cdot a^2 \cdot c^2 + a^2 \cdot y^2 - c^4))$$

The factor  $-64 \cdot (x^2 + y^2)$  is always different from zero, therefore the locus equation is :

$$x^2a^2 - x^2c^2 + -2xa^2c + 2xc^3 - a^4 + 2a^2c^2 + a^2y^2 - c^4 = 0$$

If  $O$ , the middle point of  $F1F2$ , is chosen as origin, we find again the cartesian equation of the ellipse :

$$\frac{X^2}{a^2} + \frac{Y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

## 5.31 Orthogonal polynomials

### 5.31.1 Legendre polynomials: legendre

`legendre` takes as argument an integer  $n$  and optionally a variable name (by default  $x$ ).

`legendre` returns the Legendre polynomial of degree  $n$  : it is a polynomial  $L(n, x)$ , solution of the differential equation:

$$(x^2 - 1)y'' - 2xy' - n(n + 1)y = 0$$

The Legendre polynomials verify the following recurrence relation:

$$L(0, x) = 1, \quad L(1, x) = x, \quad L(n, x) = \frac{2n - 1}{n}xL(n - 1, x) - \frac{n - 1}{n}L(n - 2, x)$$

These polynomials are orthogonal for the scalar product :

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_{-1}^{+1} f(x)g(x) dx$$

Input :

```
legendre(4)
```

Output :

(35\*x^4+-30\*x^2+3) / 8

Input :

legendre(4, y)

Output :

(35\*y^4+-30\*y^2+3) / 8

### 5.31.2 Hermite polynomial : hermite

hermite takes as argument an integer  $n$  and optionally a variable name (by default  $x$ ).

hermite returns the Hermite polynomial of degree  $n$ .

If  $H(n, x)$  denotes the Hermite polynomial of degree  $n$ , the following recurrence relation holds:

$$H(0, x) = 1, \quad H(1, x) = 2x, \quad H(n, x) = 2xH(n-1, x) - 2(n-1)H(n-2, x)$$

These polynomials are orthogonal for the scalar product:

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(x)g(x)e^{-x^2} dx$$

Input :

hermite(6)

Output :

64\*x^6+-480\*x^4+720\*x^2-120

Input :

hermite(6, y)

Output :

64\*y^6+-480\*y^4+720\*y^2-120

### 5.31.3 Laguerre polynomials: laguerre

laguerre takes as argument an integer  $n$  and optionally a variable name (by default  $x$ ) and a parameter name (by default  $a$ ).

laguerre returns the Laguerre polynomial of degree  $n$  and of parameter  $a$ .

If  $L(n, a, x)$  denotes the Laguerre polynomial of degree  $n$  and parameter  $a$ , the following recurrence relation holds:

$$L(0, a, x) = 1, \quad L(1, a, x) = 1+a-x, \quad L(n, a, x) = \frac{2n + a - 1 - x}{n} L(n-1, a, x) - \frac{n + a - 1}{n} L(n-2, a, x)$$

These polynomials are orthogonal for the scalar product

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_0^{+\infty} f(x)g(x)x^a e^{-x} dx$$

Input :

laguerre(2)

Output :

$(a^2 - 2*a*x + 3*a + x^2 - 4*x + 2) / 2$

Input :

laguerre(2, y)

Output :

$(a^2 - 2*a*y + 3*a + y^2 - 4*y + 2) / 2$

Input :

laguerre(2, y, b)

Output :

$(b^2 - 2*b*y + 3*b + y^2 - 4*y + 2) / 2$

#### 5.31.4 Tchebychev polynomials of the first kind: tchebyshev1

tchebyshev1 takes as argument an integer  $n$  and optionally a variable name (by default  $x$ ).

tchebyshev1 returns the Tchebychev polynomial of first kind of degree  $n$ .  
The Tchebychev polynomial of first kind  $T(n, x)$  is defined by

$$T(n, x) = \cos(n \arccos(x))$$

and satisfy the recurrence relation:

$$T(0, x) = 1, \quad T(1, x) = x, \quad T(n, x) = 2xT(n - 1, x) - T(n - 2, x)$$

The polynomials  $T(n, x)$  are orthogonal for the scalar product

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_{-1}^{+1} \frac{f(x)g(x)}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx$$

Input :

tchebyshev1(4)

Output :

$8*x^4 - 8*x^2 + 1$

Input :

tchebyshev1(4, y)

Output :

$8*y^4 - 8*y^2 + 1$

Indeed

$$\begin{aligned} \cos(4x) &= \operatorname{Re}((\cos(x) + i \sin(x))^4) \\ &= \cos(x)^4 - 6 \cdot \cos(x)^2(1 - \cos(x)^2) + ((1 - \cos(x)^2)^2 \\ &= T(4, \cos(x)) \end{aligned}$$

### 5.31.5 Tchebychev polynomial of the second kind: `tchebyshev2`

`tchebyshev2` takes as argument an integer  $n$  and optionally a variable name (by default  $x$ ).

`tchebyshev2` returns the Tchebychev polynomial of second kind of degree  $n$ .  
The Tchebychev polynomial of second kind  $U(n, x)$  is defined by:

$$U(n, x) = \frac{\sin((n + 1) \cdot \arccos(x))}{\sin(\arccos(x))}$$

or equivalently:

$$\sin((n + 1)x) = \sin(x) * U(n, \cos(x))$$

Then  $U(n, x)$  satisfies the recurrence relation:

$$U(0, x) = 1, \quad U(1, x) = 2x, \quad U(n, x) = 2xU(n - 1, x) - U(n - 2, x)$$

The polynomials  $U(n, x)$  are orthogonal for the scalar product

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_{-1}^{+1} f(x)g(x)\sqrt{1 - x^2}dx$$

Input :

```
tchebyshev2(3)
```

Output :

```
8*x^3+-4*x
```

Input :

```
tchebyshev2(3, y)
```

Output :

```
8*y^3+-4*y
```

Indeed:

$$\sin(4x) = \sin(x) * (8 * \cos(x)^3 - 4 \cos(x)) = \sin(x) * U(3, \cos(x))$$

## 5.32 Gröbner basis and Gröbner reduction

### 5.32.1 Gröbner basis : `gbasis`

`gbasis` takes at least two arguments

- a vector of multivariate polynomials
- a vector of variables names,

Optional arguments may be used to specify the ordering and algorithms. By default, the ordering is lexicographic (with respect to the list of variable names ordering) and the polynomials are written in decreasing power orders with respect to this order. For example, the output will be like  $\dots + x^2y^4z^3 + x^2y^3z^4 + \dots$  if the second argument is  $[x, y, z]$  because  $(2, 4, 3) > (2, 3, 4)$  but the output would be like  $\dots + x^2y^3z^4 + x^2y^4z^3 + \dots$  if the second argument is  $[x, z, y]$ .

`gbasis` returns a Gröbner basis of the polynomial ideal spanned by these polynomials.

#### Property

If  $I$  is an ideal and if  $(G_k)_{k \in K}$  is a Gröbner basis of this ideal  $I$  then, if  $F$  is a non-zero polynomial in  $I$ , the greatest monomial of  $F$  is divisible by the greatest monomial of one of the  $G_k$ . In other words, if you do an euclidean division of  $F \neq 0$  by the corresponding  $G_k$ , take the remainder of this division, do again the same and so on, at some point you get a null remainder.

Input :

```
gbasis([2*x*y-y^2, x^2-2*x*y], [x, y])
```

Output :

```
[4*x^2+-4*y^2, 2*x*y-y^2, -(3*y^3)]
```

As indicated above, `gbasis` may have more than 2 arguments :

- `plex` (lexicographic only), `tdeg` (total degree then lexicographic order), `revlex` (total degree then inverse lexicographic order), to specify an order on the monomials (`plex` is the order by default),
- `with_cocoa=true` or `with_cocoa=false`, if you want to use the CoCoA library to compute the Gröbner basis (recommended, requires that CoCoA support compiled in)
- `with_f5=true` or `with_f5=false` for using the F5 algorithm of the CoCoA library . In this case the specified order is not used (the polynomials are homogenized).

Input :

```
gbasis([x1+x2+x3, x1*x2+x1*x3+x2*x3, x1*x2*x3-1],  
[x1, x2, x3], tdeg, with_cocoa=false)
```

Output

```
[x3^3-1, -x2^2-x2*x3-x3^2, x1+x2+x3]
```

#### 5.32.2 Gröbner reduction : `greduce`

`greduce` has three arguments : a multivariate polynomial, a vector made of polynomials which is supposed to be a Gröbner basis, and a vector of variable names. `greduce` returns the reduction of the polynomial given as first argument with respect to the Gröbner basis given as the second argument. It is 0 if and only if the polynomial belongs to the ideal.

Input:

```
greduce(x*y-1, [x^2-y^2, 2*x*y-y^2, y^3], [x, y])
```

Output:

```
y^2-2
```

that is to say  $xy - 1 = \frac{1}{2}(y^2 - 2) \pmod{I}$  where  $I$  is the ideal generated by the Gröbner basis  $[x^2 - y^2, 2xy - y^2, y^3]$ , because  $y^2 - 2$  is the euclidean division remainder of  $2(xy - 1)$  by  $G_2 = 2xy - y^2$ .

Like `gbasis` (cf. 5.32.1), `greduce` may have more than 3 arguments to specify ordering and algorithm if they differ from the default (lexicographic ordering).

Input :

```
greduce(x1^2*x3^2, [x3^3-1, -x2^2-x2*x3-x3^2, x1+x2+x3],
        [x1, x2, x3], tdeg)
```

Output

```
x2
```

### 5.32.3 Test if a polynomial or list of polynomials belongs to an ideal given by a Gröbner basis: `in_ideal`

The `in_ideal` command takes three mandatory arguments and one optional argument. The mandatory arguments are a polynomial (or list of polynomials), a list giving a Gröbner basis, and the list of polynomial variables. The optional fourth argument can be an optional argument from `gbasic` (see section 5.32.1), such as `plex` or `tdeg`. By default it will be `plex`. If a Gröbner basis is computed with a different order from the default, then `in_ideal` must use the same order.

`in_basis` returns the value `true` (1) or `false` (0), or a list of `trues` and `falses`, indicating whether or not the polynomial(s) in the first argument are in the ideal generated by the Gröbner basis in the second argument, using the variables from the third argument.

Input:

```
in_ideal((x+y)^2, [y^2, x^2 + 2*x*y], [x, y])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
in_ideal([(x+y)^2, x+y], [y^2, x^2+2*x*y], [x, y])
```

Output:

```
[1, 0]
```

Input:

```
in_ideal(x+y, [y^2, x^2+2*x*y], [x, y])
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 5.32.4 Build a polynomial from its evaluation : genpoly

`indexgenpoly` `genpoly` takes three arguments : a polynomial  $P$  with  $n - 1$  variables, an integer  $b$  and the name of a variable `var`.

`genpoly` returns the polynomial  $Q$  with  $n$  variables (the  $P$  variables and the variable `var` given as second argument), such that :

- `subst (Q, var=b) == P`
- the coefficients of  $Q$  belongs to the interval  $(-b/2, b/2]$

In other words,  $P$  is written in base  $b$  but using the convention that the euclidean remainder belongs to  $] -b/2 ; b/2 ]$  (this convention is also known as s-mod representation). Input :

```
genpoly(61, 6, x)
```

Output :

$$2*x^2 - 2*x + 1$$

Indeed 61 divided by 6 is 10 with remainder 1, then 10 divided by 6 is 2 with remainder -2 (instead of the usual quotient 1 and remainder 4 out of bounds),

$$61 = 2 * 6^2 - 2 * 6 + 1$$

Input :

```
genpoly(5, 6, x)
```

Output :

$$x - 1$$

Indeed :  $5 = 6 - 1$

Input :

```
genpoly(7, 6, x)
```

Output :

$$x + 1$$

Indeed :  $7 = 6 + 1$

Input :

```
genpoly(7*y+5, 6, x)
```

Output :

$$x*y + x + y - 1$$

Indeed :  $x * y + x + y - 1 = y(x + 1) + (x - 1)$

Input :

```
genpoly(7*y+5*z^2, 6, x)
```

Output :

$$x*y + x*z + y - z$$

Indeed :  $x * y + x * z + y - z = y * (x + 1) + z * (x - 1)$

## 5.33 Rational fractions

### 5.33.1 Numerator : `getNum`

`getNum` takes as argument a rational fraction and returns the numerator of this fraction. Unlike `numer`, `getNum` does not simplify the fraction before extracting the numerator.

Input :

```
getNum( (x^2-1) / (x-1) )
```

Output :

 $x^2-1$ 

Input :

```
getNum( (x^2+2*x+1) / (x^2-1) )
```

Output :

 $x^2+2*x+1$ 

### 5.33.2 Numerator after simplification : `numer`

`numer` takes as argument a rational fraction and returns the numerator of the irreducible representation of this fraction (see also 5.8.3).

Input :

```
numer( (x^2-1) / (x-1) )
```

Output :

 $x+1$ 

Input :

```
numer( (x^2+2*x+1) / (x^2-1) )
```

Output :

 $x+1$ 

### 5.33.3 Denominator : `getDenom`

`getDenom` takes as argument a rational fraction and returns the denominator of this fraction. Unlike `denom`, `getDenom` does not simplify the fraction before extracting the denominator.

Input :

```
getDenom( (x^2-1) / (x-1) )
```

Output :

 $x-1$ 

Input :

```
getDenom( (x^2+2*x+1) / (x^2-1) )
```

Output :

 $x^2-1$

### 5.33.4 Denominator after simplification : `denom`

`denom` (or `getDenom`) takes as argument a rational fraction and returns the denominator of an irreducible representation of this fraction (see also [5.8.4](#)).

Input :

```
denom( (x^2-1) / (x-1) )
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
denom( (x^2+2*x+1) / (x^2-1) )
```

Output :

```
x-1
```

### 5.33.5 Numerator and denominator : `f2nd` `fxnd`

`f2nd` (or `fxnd`) takes as argument a rational fraction and returns the list of the numerator and the denominator of the irreducible representation of this fraction (see also [5.8.5](#)).

Input :

```
f2nd( (x^2-1) / (x-1) )
```

Output :

```
[x+1, 1]
```

Input :

```
f2nd( (x^2+2*x+1) / (x^2-1) )
```

Output :

```
[x+1, x-1]
```

### 5.33.6 Simplify : `simp2`

`simp2` takes as argument two polynomials (or two integers see [5.8.6](#)). These two polynomials are seen as the numerator and denominator of a rational fraction.

`simp2` returns a list of two polynomials seen as the numerator and denominator of the irreducible representation of this rational fraction.

Input :

```
simp2(x^3-1, x^2-1)
```

Output :

```
[x^2+x+1, x+1]
```

### 5.33.7 Common denominator : comDenom

`comDenom` takes as argument a sum of rational fractions.

`comDenom` rewrite the sum as a unique rational fraction. The denominator of this rational fraction is the common denominator of the rational fractions given as argument.

Input :

```
comDenom (x-1 / (x-1) - 1 / (x^2-1))
```

Output :

```
(x^3 - 2*x - 2) / (x^2 - 1)
```

### 5.33.8 Integer and fractional part : propfrac

`propfrac` takes as argument a rational fraction.

`propfrac` rewrites this rational fraction as the sum of its integer part and proper fractional part.

`propfrac(A(x) / B(x))` writes the fraction  $\frac{A(x)}{B(x)}$  (after reduction), as :

$$Q(x) + \frac{R(x)}{B(x)} \quad \text{where } R(x) = 0 \text{ or } 0 \leq \text{degree}(R(x)) < \text{degree}(B(x))$$

Input :

```
propfrac ((5*x+3) * (x-1) / (x+2))
```

Output :

```
5*x - 12 + 21 / (x+2)
```

### 5.33.9 Partial fraction expansion : partfrac

`partfrac` takes as argument a rational fraction.

`partfrac` returns the partial fraction expansion of this rational fraction.

The `partfrac` command is equivalent to the `convert` command with `parfrac` (or `partfrac` or `fullparfrac`) as option (see also [5.24.27](#)).

**Example :**

Find the partial fraction expansion of :

$$\frac{x^5 - 2x^3 + 1}{x^4 - 2x^3 + 2x^2 - 2x + 1}$$

Input :

```
partfrac ((x^5 - 2*x^3 + 1) / (x^4 - 2*x^3 + 2*x^2 - 2*x + 1))
```

Output in real mode :

```
x + 2 - 1 / (2 * (x - 1)) + (x - 3) / (2 * (x^2 + 1)) +
```

Output in complex mode:

```
x + 2 + (-1 + 2*i) / ((2 - 2*i) * ((i) * x + 1)) + 1 / (2 * (-x + 1)) +  
(-1 - 2*i) / ((2 - 2*i) * (x + i))
```

### 5.33.10 Partial fraction expansion over $\mathbb{C}$ : cpartfrac

cpartfrac takes as argument a rational fraction.

cpartfrac returns the partial fraction expansion of this rational fraction over the complex numbers, whether Xcas is in real or complex mode.

**Example :**

Find the partial fraction expansion of :

$$\frac{x^5 - 2x^3 + 1}{x^4 - 2x^3 + 2x^2 - 2x + 1}$$

Input :

```
cpartfrac( (x^5-2*x^3+1) / (x^4-2*x^3+2*x^2-2*x+1) )
```

Output:

```
x+2+(-1+2*i) / ((2-2*i)*(i*x+1))+1/(2*(-x+1))+  
(-1-2*i) / ((2-2*i)*(x+i))
```

## 5.34 Exact roots of a polynomial

### 5.34.1 Exact bounds for complex roots of a polynomial : complexroot

complexroot takes 2 or 4 arguments : a polynomial and a real number  $\epsilon$  and optionally two complex numbers  $\alpha, \beta$ .

complexroot returns a list of vectors.

- If complexroot has 2 arguments, the elements of each vector are
  - either an interval (the boundaries of this interval are the opposite vertices of a rectangle with sides parallel to the axis and containing a complex root of the polynomial) and the multiplicity of this root.  
Let the interval be  $[a_1 + ib_1, a_2 + ib_2]$  then  $|a_1 - a_2| < \epsilon, |b_1 - b_2| < \epsilon$  and the root  $a + ib$  verifies  $a_1 \leq a \leq a_2$  and  $b_1 \leq b \leq b_2$ .
  - or the value of an exact complex root of the polynomial and the multiplicity of this root
- If complexroot has 4 arguments, complexroot returns a list of vectors as above, but only for the roots lying in the rectangle with sides parallel to the axis having  $\alpha, \beta$  as opposite vertices.

To find the roots of  $x^3 + 1$ , input:

```
complexroot(x^3+1, 0.1)
```

Output :

```
[[[-1, 1], [[(4-7*i)/8, (8-13*i)/16], 1], [[[8+13*i]/16, (4+7*i)/8], 1]]]
```

Hence, for  $x^3 + 1$ :

- -1 is a root of multiplicity 1,
- $1/2+i*b$  is a root of multiplicity 1 with  $-7/8 \leq b \leq -13/16$ ,
- $1/2+i*c$  is a root of multiplicity 1 with  $13/16 \leq c \leq 7/8$ .

To find the roots of  $x^3 + 1$  lying inside the rectangle of opposite vertices  $-1, 1+2*i$ , input:

```
complexroot (x^3+1, 0.1, -1, 1+2*i)
```

Output :

```
[ [-1, 1], [[(8+13*i)/16, (4+7*i)/8], 1]]
```

### 5.34.2 Exact bounds for real roots of a polynomial : realroot

`realroot` has 2 or 4 arguments : a polynomial and a real number  $\epsilon$  and optionally two real numbers  $\alpha, \beta$ .

`realroot` returns a list of vectors.

- If `realroot` has 2 arguments, the elements of each vector are
  - either a real interval containing a real root of the polynomial and the multiplicity of this root. Let the interval be  $[a_1, a_2]$  then  $|a_1 - a_2| < \epsilon$  and the root  $a$  verifies  $a_1 \leq a \leq a_2$ .
  - or the value of an exact real root of the polynomial and the multiplicity of this root.
- If `realroot` has 4 arguments, `realroot` returns a list of vectors as above, but only for the roots inside the interval  $[\alpha, \beta]$ .

To find the real roots of  $x^3 + 1$ , input:

```
realroot (x^3+1, 0.1)
```

Output :

```
[ [-1, 1]]
```

To find the real roots of  $x^3 - x^2 - 2x + 2$ , input:

```
realroot (x^3-x^2-2*x+2, 0.1)
```

Output :

```
[[1, 1], [[(-3)/2, (-45)/32], 1], [[45/32, 3/2], 1]]
```

To find the real roots of  $x^3 - x^2 - 2x + 2$  in the interval  $[0; 2]$ , input:

```
realroot (x^3-x^2-2*x+2, 0.1, 0, 2)
```

Output :

```
[[1, 1], [[11/8, 23/16], 1]]
```

### 5.34.3 Exact bounds for real roots of a polynomial: VAS

The VAS command takes one argument, a polynomial.

VAS returns a list of intervals which contain the real roots of the polynomial using the Vincent-Akritas-Strzebonski algorithm. Each interval will contain exactly one root.

Input:

```
VAS(x^3 - 7*x + 7)
```

Output:

```
[[-4, 0], [1, 3/2], [3/2, 2]]
```

Input:

```
VAS(x^5 + 2*x^4 - 6*x^3 - 7*x^2 + 7*x + 7)
```

Output:

```
[[-5, -1], -1, [1, 3/2], [3/2, 2]]
```

Input:

```
VAS(x^3 - x^2 - 2*x + 2)
```

Output:

```
[[-3, 0], 1, [1, 3]]
```

### 5.34.4 Exact bounds for positive real roots of a polynomial: VAS\_positive

The VAS\_positive command takes one argument, a polynomial.

VAS\_positive returns a list of intervals which contain the positive real roots of the polynomial using the Vincent-Akritas-Strzebonski algorithm. Each interval will contain exactly one interval.

Input:

```
VAS_positive(x^3 - 7*x + 7)
```

Output:

```
[[1, 3/2], [3/2, 2]]
```

Input:

```
VAS_positive(x^5 + 2*x^4 - 6*x^3 - 7*x^2 + 7*x + 7)
```

Output:

```
[[1, 3/2], [3/2, 2]]
```

Input:

```
VAS_positive(x^3 - x^2 - 2*x + 2)
```

Output:

```
[1, [1, 3]]
```

### 5.34.5 An upper bound for the positive real roots of a polynomial: posubLMQ

The posubLMQ command takes one argument, a polynomial.

posubLMQ returns a (non-optimal) upper bound for the positive real roots of the polynomial using the Local Max Quadratic (LMQ) Akritas-Strzebonski-Vigklas algorithm.

Input:

```
posubLMQ(x^3 - 7*x + 7)
```

Output:

```
4
```

Input:

```
posubLMQ(x^5 + 2*x^4 - 6*x^3 - 7*x^2 + 7*x + 7)
```

Output:

```
4
```

Input:

```
posubLMQ(x^3 - x^2 - 2*x + 2)
```

Output:

```
3
```

### 5.34.6 A lower bound for the positive real roots of a polynomial: poslbdLMQ

The poslbdLMQ command takes one argument, a polynomial.

poslbdLMQ returns a (non-optimal) lower bound for the positive real roots of the polynomial using the Local Max Quadratic (LMQ) Akritas-Strzebonski-Vigklas algorithm.

Input:

```
poslbdLMQ(x^3 - 7*x + 7)
```

Output:

```
1/2
```

Input:

```
poslbdLMQ(x^5 + 2*x^4 - 6*x^3 - 7*x^2 + 7*x + 7)
```

Output:

```
1/2
```

Input:

```
poslbdLMQ(x^3 - x^2 - 2*x + 2)
```

Output:

```
1/2
```

### 5.34.7 Exact values of rational roots of a polynomial : rationalroot

rationalroot takes 1 or 3 arguments : a polynomial and optionally two real numbers  $\alpha, \beta$ .

- If rationalroot has 1 argument, rationalroot returns the list of the value of the rational roots of the polynomial without multiplicity.
- If rationalroot has 3 arguments, rationalroot returns only the rational roots of the polynomial which are in the interval  $[\alpha, \beta]$ .

To find the rational roots of  $2 * x^3 - 3 * x^2 - 8 * x + 12$ , input:

```
rationalroot(2*x^3-3*x^2-8*x+12)
```

Output :

```
[2, 3/2, -2]
```

To find the rational roots of  $2 * x^3 - 3 * x^2 - 8 * x + 12$  in  $[1; 2]$ , input:

```
rationalroot(2*x^3-3*x^2-8*x+12, 1, 2)
```

Output :

```
[2, 3/2]
```

To find the rational roots of  $2 * x^3 - 3 * x^2 + 8 * x - 12$ , input:

```
rationalroot(2*x^3-3*x^2+8*x-12)
```

Output :

```
[3/2]
```

To find the rational roots of  $2 * x^3 - 3 * x^2 + 8 * x - 12$ , input:

```
rationalroot(2*x^3-3*x^2+8*x-12)
```

Output :

```
[3/2]
```

To find the rational roots of  $(3 * x - 2)^2 * (2x + 1) = 18 * x^3 - 15 * x^2 - 4 * x + 4$ , input:

```
rationalroot(18*x^3-15*x^2-4*x+4)
```

Output :

```
[( -1 ) / 2, 2 / 3]
```

### 5.34.8 Exact values of the complex rational roots of a polynomial: crationalroot

crationalroot takes 1 or 3 arguments : a polynomial and optionally two complex numbers  $\alpha, \beta$ .

- If crationalroot has 1 argument, crationalroot returns the list of the complex rational roots of the polynomial without multiplicity.
- if crationalroot has 3 arguments, crationalroot returns only the complex rational roots of the polynomial which are in the rectangle with sides parallel to the axis having  $[\alpha, \beta]$  as opposite vertices.

To find the rational complex roots of  $(x^2+4)*(2x-3) = 2*x^3 - 3*x^2 + 8*x - 12$ , input :

```
crationalroot (2*x^3-3*x^2+8*x-12)
```

Output :

```
[2*i, 3/2, -2*i]
```

## 5.35 Exact roots and poles

### 5.35.1 Roots and poles of a rational function : froot

froot takes a rational function  $F(x)$  as argument.

froot returns a vector whose components are the roots and the poles of  $F[x]$ , each one followed by its multiplicity.

If Xcas can not find the exact values of the roots or poles, it tries to find approximate values if  $F(x)$  has numeric coefficients.

Input :

```
froot ((x^5-2*x^4+x^3) / (x-2))
```

Output :

```
[1, 2, 0, 3, 2, -1]
```

Hence, for  $F(x) = \frac{x^5 - 2x^4 + x^3}{x - 2}$  :

- 1 is a root of multiplicity 2,
- 0 is a root of multiplicity 3,
- 2 is a pole of order 1.

Input :

```
froot ((x^3-2*x^2+1) / (x-2))
```

Output :

```
[1, 1, (1+sqrt(5))/2, 1, (1-sqrt(5))/2, 1, 2, -1]
```

**Remark :** to have the complex roots and poles, check Complex in the cas configuration (red button giving the state line).

Input :

```
froot( (x^2+1) / (x-2) )
```

Output :

```
[-i, 1, i, 1, 2, -1]
```

### 5.35.2 Rational function given by roots and poles : fcoeff

`fcoeff` has as argument a vector whose components are the roots and poles of a rational function  $F[x]$ , each one followed by its multiplicity.

`fcoeff` returns the rational function  $F(x)$ .

Input :

```
fcoeff([1, 2, 0, 3, 2, -1])
```

Output :

```
(x-1)^2*x^3 / (x-2)
```

## 5.36 Computing in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ or in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$

The way to compute over  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  or over  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$  depends on the syntax mode :

- In `Xcas` mode, an object  $n$  over  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  is written  $n\%p$ . Some examples of input for

- an integer  $n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$

```
n:=12%13.
```

- a vector  $V$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$

```
V:=[1, 2, 3]\%13 or V:=[1%13, 2%13, 3%13].
```

- a matrix  $A$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$

```
A:=[[1, 2, 3], [2, 3, 4]]\%13 or
```

```
A:=[[1%13, 2%13, 3%13], [[2%13, 3%13, 4%13]]].
```

- a polynomial  $A$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}[x]$  in symbolic representation

```
A:=(2*x^2+3*x-1)\%13 or
```

```
A:=2%13*x^2+3%13*x-1%13.
```

- a polynomial  $A$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}[x]$  in list representation

```
A:=poly1[1, 2, 3]\%13 or A:=poly1[1%13, 2%13, 3%13].
```

To recover an object  $o$  with integer coefficients instead of modular coefficients, input  $o \ % \ 0$ . For example, input  $o:=4\%7$  and  $o\%0$ , then output is  $-3$ .

- In `Maple` mode, integers modulo  $p$  are represented like usual integers instead of using specific modular integers. To avoid confusion with normal commands, modular commands are written with a capital letter (inert form) and followed by the mod command (see also the next section).

**Remark**

- For some commands in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  or in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ ,  $p$  must be a prime integer.
- The representation is the symmetric representation :  
 $11 \% 13$  returns  $-2 \% 13$ .

**5.36.1 Expand and reduce : normal**

`normal` takes as argument a polynomial expression.

`normal` expands and reduces this expression in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ .

Input :

```
normal( ((2*x^2+12)*( 5*x-4)) \% 13)
```

Output :

```
(-3 \% 13) * x^3 + (5 \% 13) * x^2 + (-5 \% 13) * x + 4 \% 13
```

**5.36.2 Addition in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  or in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$  : +**

`+` adds two integers in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , or two polynomials in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ . For polynomial expressions, use the `normal` command to simplify.

For integers in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , input :

```
3 \% 13 + 10 \% 13
```

Output :

```
0 \% 13
```

For polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , input :

```
normal( (11*x+5) \% 13 + (8*x+6) \% 13)
```

or

```
normal( 11 \% 13 * x + 5 \% 13 + 8 \% 13 * x + 6 \% 13 )
```

Output :

```
(6 \% 13) * x + -2 \% 13
```

**5.36.3 Subtraction in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  or in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$  : -**

`-` subtracts two integers in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  or two polynomials in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ . For polynomial expressions, use the `normal` command to simplify.

For integers in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , input :

```
31 \% 13 - 10 \% 13
```

Output :

```
-5 \% 13
```

For polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , input :

```
normal((11*x+5)%13-(8*x+6)%13)
```

or :

```
normal(11% 13*x+5%13-8% 13*x+6%13)
```

Output :

```
(3%13)*x+-1%13
```

#### 5.36.4 Multiplication in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ or in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : \*

\* multiplies two integers in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  or two polynomials in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ . For polynomial expressions, use the `normal` command to simplify.

For integers in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , input :

```
31%13*10%13
```

Output :

```
-2%13
```

For polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , input :

```
normal((11*x+5)%13*(8*x+6)% 13)
```

or :

```
normal((11% 13*x+5%13)*(8% 13*x+6%13))
```

Output :

```
(-3%13)*x^2+(2%13)*x+4%13
```

#### 5.36.5 Euclidean quotient : quo

`quo` takes as arguments two polynomials  $A$  and  $B$  with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , where  $A$  and  $B$  are list polynomials or symbolic polynomials with respect to  $x$  or to an optional third argument.

`quo` returns the quotient of the euclidean division of  $A$  by  $B$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ .

Input :

```
quo((x^3+x^2+1)%13, (2*x^2+4)%13)
```

or :

```
quo((x^3+x^2+1, 2*x^2+4)%13)
```

Output:

```
(-6%13)*x+-6%13
```

Indeed  $x^3+x^2+1 = (2x^2+4)\left(\frac{x+1}{2}\right) + \frac{5x-4}{4}$  and  $-3*4 = -6*2 = 1 \pmod{13}$ .

### 5.36.6 Euclidean remainder : rem

rem takes as arguments two polynomials  $A$  and  $B$  with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , where  $A$  and  $B$  are list polynomials or symbolic polynomials with respect to  $x$  or to an optional third argument.

rem returns the remainder of the euclidean division of  $A$  by  $B$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ .

Input :

```
rem( (x^3+x^2+1) %13, (2*x^2+4) %13)
```

or :

```
rem( (x^3+x^2+1, 2*x^2+4) %13)
```

Output:

$$(-2 \% 13) * x + -1 \% 13$$

Indeed  $x^3 + x^2 + 1 = (2x^2 + 4)(\frac{x + 1}{2}) + \frac{5x - 4}{4}$  and  $-3 * 4 = -6 * 2 = 1 \bmod 13$ .

### 5.36.7 Euclidean quotient and euclidean remainder : quorem

quorem takes as arguments two polynomials  $A$  and  $B$  with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , where  $A$  and  $B$  are list polynomials or symbolic polynomials with respect to  $x$  or to an optional third argument.

quorem returns the list of the quotient and remainder of the euclidean division of  $A$  by  $B$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$  (see also 5.6.12 and 5.30.6).

Input :

```
quorem( (x^3+x^2+1) %13, (2*x^2+4) %13)
```

or :

```
quorem( (x^3+x^2+1, 2*x^2+4) %13)
```

Output:

$$[ (-6 \% 13) * x + -6 \% 13, (-2 \% 13) * x + -1 \% 13 ]$$

Indeed  $x^3 + x^2 + 1 = (2x^2 + 4)(\frac{x + 1}{2}) + \frac{5x - 4}{4}$   
and  $-3 * 4 = -6 * 2 = 1 \bmod 13$ .

### 5.36.8 Division in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ or in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : /

/ divides two integers in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  or two polynomials  $A$  and  $B$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ .

For polynomials, the result is the irreducible representation of the fraction  $\frac{A}{B}$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ .

For integers in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , input :

```
5 \% 13 / 2 \% 13
```

Since 2 is invertible in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$ , we get the output :

```
-4 \% 13
```

For polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , input :

```
(2*x^2+5) %13 / (5*x^2+2*x-3) %13
```

Output :

```
((6%13)*x+1%13) / ((2%13)*x+2%13)
```

### 5.36.9 Power in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ and in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : ^

To compute  $a$  to the power  $n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , we use the operator  $^$ . Xcas implementation is the binary power algorithm.

Input :

```
(5%13)^2
```

Output :

```
-1%13
```

To compute  $A$  to the power  $n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ , we use the operator  $^$  and the normal command .

Input :

```
normal( (2*x+1)%13)^5)
```

Output :

```
(6%13)*x^5+(2%13)*x^4+(2%13)*x^3+(1%13)*x^2+(-3%13)*x+1%13
```

because  $10 = -3 \pmod{13}$ ,  $40 = 1 \pmod{13}$ ,  $80 = 2 \pmod{13}$ ,  $32 = 6 \pmod{13}$ .

### 5.36.10 Compute $a^n \pmod{p}$ : powmod powermod

powmod (or powermod) takes as argument  $a, n, p$ .

powmod (or powermod) returns  $a^n \pmod{p}$  in  $[0; p - 1]$ .

Input :

```
powmod(5, 2, 13)
```

Output :

```
12
```

Input :

```
powmod(5, 2, 12)
```

Output :

**5.36.11 Inverse in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  : inv inverse or /**

To compute the inverse of an integer  $n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , input  $1/n\%p$  or  $\text{inv}(n\%p)$  or  $\text{inverse}(n\%p)$ .

Input :

```
inv(3%13)
```

Output :

```
-4%13
```

Indeed  $3 \times -4 = -12 = 1 \pmod{13}$ .

**5.36.12 Rebuild a fraction from its value modulo  $p$  : fracmod iratrecon**

`fracmod` (or `iratrecon` for Maple compatibility) takes two arguments, an integer  $n$  (representing a fraction) and an integer  $p$  (the modulus).

If possible, `fracmod` returns a fraction  $a/b$  such that

$$-\frac{\sqrt{p}}{2} < a \leq \frac{\sqrt{p}}{2}, \quad 0 \leq b < \frac{\sqrt{p}}{2}, \quad n \times b = a \pmod{p}$$

In other words  $n = a/b \pmod{p}$ .

Input :

```
fracmod(3, 13)
```

Output :

```
-1/4
```

Indeed :  $3 * -4 = -12 = 1 \pmod{13}$ , hence  $3 = -1/4\%13$ .

Input :

```
fracmod(13, 121)
```

Output :

```
-4/9
```

Indeed :  $13 \times -9 = -117 = 4 \pmod{121}$  hence  $13 = -4/9\%13$ .

**5.36.13 GCD in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$  : gcd**

`gcd` takes as arguments two polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  ( $p$  must be prime).

`gcd` returns the GCD of these polynomials computed in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$  (see also [5.30.7](#) for polynomials with non modular coefficients).

Input :

```
gcd((2*x^2+5)%13, (5*x^2+2*x-3)%13)
```

Output :

```
(-4%13)*x+5%13
```

Input :

```
gcd( (x^2+2*x+1, x^2-1)) mod 5
```

Output :

```
x%5
```

Note the difference with a gcd computation in  $\mathbb{Z}[X]$  followed by a reduction modulo 5, input:

```
gcd(x^2+2*x+1, x^2-1) mod 5
```

Output :

```
1
```

#### 5.36.14 Factorization over $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : factor factoriser

`factor` takes as argument a polynomial with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ .

`factor` factorizes this polynomial in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$  ( $p$  must be prime).

Input :

```
factor( (-3*x^3+5*x^2-5*x+4) %13)
```

Output :

```
((1%13)*x+-6%13)*( (-3%13)*x^2+-5%13)
```

#### 5.36.15 Determinant of a matrix in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : det

`det` takes as argument a matrix  $A$  with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

`det` returns the determinant of this matrix  $A$ .

Computations are done in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  by Gauss reduction.

Input :

```
det( [[1,2,9]%13, [3,10,0]%13, [3,11,1]%13])
```

or :

```
det( [[1,2,9], [3,10,0], [3,11,1]]%13)
```

Output :

```
5%13
```

hence, in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$ , the determinant of  $A = [[1, 2, 9], [3, 10, 0], [3, 11, 1]]$  is  $5\%13$  (in  $\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\det(A) = 31$ ).

**5.36.16 Inverse of a matrix with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  : inv inverse**

inverse (or inv) takes as argument a matrix  $A$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

inverse (or inv) returns the inverse of the matrix  $A$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

Input :

```
inverse([[1,2,9]%13,[3,10,0]%13,[3,11,1]%13])
```

or :

```
inv([[1,2,9]%13,[3,10,0]%13,[3,11,1]%13])
```

or :

```
inverse([[1,2,9],[3,10,0],[3,11,1]]%13)
```

or :

```
inv([[1,2,9],[3,10,0],[3,11,1]]%13)
```

Output :

```
[[2%13,-4%13,-5%13],[2%13,0%13,-5%13],  
[-2%13,-1%13,6%13]]
```

it is the inverse of  $A = [[1, 2, 9], [3, 10, 0], [3, 11, 1]]$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$ .

**5.36.17 Row reduction to echelon form in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  : rref**

rref finds the row reduction to echelon form of a matrix with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

This may be used to solve a linear system of equations with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  by rewriting it in matrix form (see also 5.61.3) :

$$A \star X = B$$

rref takes as argument the augmented matrix of the system (the matrix obtained by augmenting matrix A to the right with the column vector B).

rref returns a matrix  $[A1, B1]$  : A1 has 1 on its principal diagonal, and zeros outside, and the solutions in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ , of :

$$A1 \star X = B1$$

are the same as the solutions of:

$$A \star X = B$$

Example, solve in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$

$$\begin{cases} x + 2 \cdot y = 9 \\ 3 \cdot x + 10 \cdot y = 0 \end{cases}$$

Input :

```
rref([[1, 2, 9]%13,[3,10,0]%13])
```

or :

```
rref([[1, 2, 9],[3,10,0]])%13
```

Output :

```
[[1%13,0%13,3%13],[0%13,1%13,3%13]]
```

hence  $x=3\%13$  and  $y=3\%13$ .

### 5.36.18 Construction of a Galois field : GF

GF takes as arguments a prime integer  $p$  and an integer  $n > 1$ .

GF returns a Galois field of characteristic  $p$  having  $p^n$  elements.

Elements of the field and the field itself are represented by GF( . . . ) where . . . is the following sequence:

- the characteristic  $p$  ( $px = 0$ ),
- an irreducible primitive minimal polynomial generating an ideal  $I$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[X]$ , the Galois field being the quotient of  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[X]$  by  $I$ ,
- the name of the polynomial variable, by default  $x$ ,
- a polynomial (a remainder modulo the minimal polynomial) for an element of the field (field elements are represented with the additive representation) or `undef` for the field itself.

You should give a name to this field (for example `G:=GF(p, n)`), in order to build elements of the field from a polynomial in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[X]$ , for example `G(x^3+x)`. Note that `G(x)` is a generator of the multiplicative group  $G^*$ .

Input :

```
G:=GF(2, 8)
```

Output :

```
GF(2, x^8-x^6-x^4-x^3-x^2-x-1, x, undef)
```

The field  $G$  has  $2^8 = 256$  elements and  $x$  generates the multiplicative group of this field ( $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^{254}\}$ ).

Input :

```
G(x^9)
```

Output :

```
GF(2, x^8-x^6-x^4-x^3-x^2-x-1, x, x^7+x^5+x^4+x^3+x^2+x)
```

indeed  $x^8 = x^6 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$ , hence  $x^9 = x^7 + x^5 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x$ .

Input :

```
G(x)^255
```

Output should be the unit, indeed:

```
GF(2, x^8-x^6-x^4-x^3-x^2-x-1, x, 1)
```

As one can see in these examples, the output contains many times the same information that you would prefer not to see if you work many times with the same field. For this reason, the definition of a Galois field may have an optional argument, a variable name which will be used thereafter to represent elements of the field. Since you will also most likely want to modify the name of the indeterminate, the field name is grouped with the variable name in a list passed as third argument to GF. Note that these two variable names must be quoted.

Example,

Input :

```
G:=GF(2,2,['w','G']):; G(w^2)
```

Output :

```
Done, G(w+1)
```

Input :

```
G(w^3)
```

Output :

```
G(1)
```

Hence, the elements of  $\text{GF}(2, 2)$  are  $G(0), G(1), G(w), G(w^2) = G(w+1)$ .

We may also impose the irreducible primitive polynomial that we wish to use, by putting it as second argument (instead of  $n$ ), for example :

```
G:=GF(2,w^8+w^6+w^3+w^2+1,['w','G'])
```

If the polynomial is not primitive, Xcas will replace it automatically by a primitive polynomial, for example :

Input :

```
G:=GF(2,w^8+w^7+w^5+w+1,['w','G'])
```

Output :

```
G:=GF(2,w^8-w^6-w^3-w^2-1,['w','G'],undef)
```

### 5.36.19 Factorize a polynomial with coefficients in a Galois field : factor

`factor` can also factorize a univariate polynomial with coefficients in a Galois field.

Input for example to have  $G=\mathbb{F}_4$ :

```
G:=GF(2,2,['w','G'])
```

Output :

```
GF(2,w^2+w+1,[w,G],undef)
```

Input for example :

```
a:=G(w)
```

```
factor(a^2*x^2+1)
```

Output :

```
(G(w+1))*(x+G(w+1))^2
```

## 5.37 Compute in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ using Maple syntax

### 5.37.1 Euclidean quotient : Quo

`Quo` is the inert form of `quo`.

`Quo` returns the euclidean quotient between two polynomials without evaluation. It is used in conjunction with `mod` in Maple syntax mode to compute the euclidean quotient of the division of two polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

Input in Xcas mode:

```
Quo( (x^3+x^2+1) mod 13, (2*x^2+4) mod 13)
```

Output :

```
quo( (x^3+x^2+1)%13, (2*x^2+4)%13)
```

you need to `eval(ans())` to get :

```
(-6%13)*x+-6%13
```

Input in Maple mode :

```
Quo(x^3+x^2+1, 2*x^2+4) mod 13
```

Output :

```
(-6)*x-6
```

Input in Maple mode :

```
Quo(x^2+2*x, x^2+6*x+5) mod 5
```

Output :

```
1
```

### 5.37.2 Euclidean remainder: Rem

`Rem` is the inert form of `rem`.

`Rem` returns the euclidean remainder between two polynomials without evaluation. It is used in conjunction with `mod` in Maple syntax mode to compute the euclidean remainder of the division of two polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

Input in Xcas mode :

```
Rem( (x^3+x^2+1) mod 13, (2*x^2+4) mod 13)
```

Output :

```
rem( (x^3+x^2+1)%13, (2*x^2+4)%13)
```

you need to `eval(ans())` to get :

```
(-2%13)*x+-1%13
```

Input in Maple mode :

```
Rem(x^3+x^2+1, 2*x^2+4) mod 13
```

Output :

$$(-2) * x - 1$$

Input in Maple mode :

$$\text{Rem}(x^2+2*x, x^2+6*x+5) \bmod 5$$

Output :

$$1*x$$

### 5.37.3 GCD in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : Gcd

Gcd is the inert form of gcd.

Gcd returns the gcd (greatest common divisor) of two polynomials (or of a list of polynomials or of a sequence of polynomials) without evaluation.

It is used in conjunction with mod in Maple syntax mode to compute the gcd of two polynomials with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  with  $p$  prime (see also 5.30.7).

Input in Xcas mode :

$$\text{Gcd}((2*x^2+5, 5*x^2+2*x-3)\%13)$$

Output :

$$\text{gcd}((2*x^2+5)\%13, (5*x^2+2*x-3)\%13)$$

you need to eval(ans()) to get :

$$(1\%13)*x + 2\%13$$

Input in Maple mode :

$$\text{Gcd}(2*x^2+5, 5*x^2+2*x-3) \bmod 13$$

Output :

$$1*x + 2$$

Input:

$$\text{Gcd}(x^2+2*x, x^2+6*x+5) \bmod 5$$

Output :

$$1*x$$

### 5.37.4 Factorization in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[x]$ : Factor

Factor is the inert form of factor.

Factor takes as argument a polynomial.

Factor returns factor without evaluation. It is used in conjunction with mod in Maple syntax mode to factorize a polynomial with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  where  $p$  must be prime.

Input in Xcas mode :

```
Factor((-3*x^3+5*x^2-5*x+4)%13)
```

Output :

```
factor((-3*x^3+5*x^2-5*x+4)%13)
```

you need to eval(ans()) to get :

```
((1%13)*x+-6%13)*((-3%13)*x^2+-5%13)
```

Input in Maple mode :

```
Factor(-3*x^3+5*x^2-5*x+4) mod 13
```

Output :

```
-3*(1*x-6)*(1*x^2+6)
```

### 5.37.5 Determinant of a matrix with coefficients in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : Det

Det is the inert form of det.

Det takes as argument a matrix with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

Det returns det without evaluation. It is used in conjunction with mod in Maple syntax mode to find the determinant of a matrix with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

Input in Xcas mode :

```
Det([[1,2,9] mod 13,[3,10,0] mod 13,[3,11,1] mod 13])
```

Output :

```
det([[1%13,2%13,-4%13],[3%13,-3%13,0%13],  
[3%13,-2%13,1%13]])
```

you need to eval(ans()) to get :

```
5%13
```

hence, in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$ , the determinant of  $A = [[1, 2, 9], [3, 10, 0], [3, 11, 1]]$  is 5%13 (in  $\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\det(A)=31$ ).

Input in Maple mode :

```
Det([[1,2,9],[3,10,0],[3,11,1]]) mod 13
```

Output :

### 5.37.6 Inverse of a matrix in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : Inverse

Inverse is the inert form of inverse.

Inverse takes as argument a matrix with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

Inverse returns inverse without evaluation. It is used in conjunction with mod in Maple syntax mode to find the inverse of a matrix with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ .

Input in Xcas mode :

```
Inverse([[1,2,9] mod 13,[3,10,0] mod 13,[3,11,1]
mod13])
```

Output :

```
inverse([[1%13,2%13,9%13],[3%13,10%13,0%13],
[3%13,11%13,1%13]])
```

you need to eval(ans()) to get :

```
[[2%13,-4%13,-5%13],[2%13,0%13,-5%13],
[-2%13,-1%13,6%13]]
```

which is the inverse of  $A = [[1,2,9], [3,10,0], [3,11,1]]$  in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$ .

Input in Maple mode :

```
Inverse([[1,2,9],[3,10,0],[3,11,1]]) mod 13
```

Output :

```
[[2,-4,-5],[2,0,-5],[-2,-1,6]]
```

### 5.37.7 Row reduction to echelon form in $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ : Rref

Rref is the inert form of rref.

Rref returns rref without evaluation. It is used in conjunction with mod in Maple syntax mode to find the row reduction to echelon form of a matrix with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$  (see also 5.61.3).

Example, solve in  $\mathbb{Z}/13\mathbb{Z}$

$$\begin{cases} x + 2 \cdot y = 9 \\ 3 \cdot x + 10 \cdot y = 0 \end{cases}$$

Input in Xcas mode :

```
Rref([[1,2,9] mod 13,[3,10,0] mod 13])
```

Output :

```
rref([[1%13, 2%13, 9%13],[3%13,10%13,0%13]])
```

you need to eval(ans()) to get :

```
[[1%13,0%13,3%13],[0%13,1%13,3%13]]
```

and conclude that  $x=3\%13$  and  $y=3\%13$ .

Input in Maple mode :

```
Rref([[1,2,9],[3,10,0],[3,11,1]]) mod 13
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,0],[0,1,0],[0,0,1]]
```

## 5.38 Taylor and asymptotic expansions

### 5.38.1 Division by increasing power order : `divpc`

`divpc` takes three arguments : two polynomials expressions  $A$ ,  $B$  depending on  $x$ , such that the constant term of  $B$  is not 0, and an integer  $n$ .

`divpc` returns the quotient  $Q$  of the division of  $A$  by  $B$  by increasing power order, with  $\text{degree}(Q) \leq n$  or  $Q = 0$ . In other words,  $Q$  is the Taylor expansion of

order  $n$  of  $\frac{A}{B}$  in the vicinity of  $x = 0$ .

Input :

```
divpc(1+x^2+x^3, 1+x^2, 5)
```

Output :

```
-x^5+x^3+1
```

Note that this command does not work on polynomials written as a list of coefficients.

### 5.38.2 Taylor expansion : `taylor`

`taylor` takes from one to four arguments :

- an expression depending of a variable (by default  $x$ ),
- an equality variable=value (e.g.  $x = a$ ) where to compute the Taylor expansion, by default  $x=0$ ,
- an integer  $n$ , the order of the series expansion, by default 5
- a direction  $-1$ ,  $1$  (for unidirectional series expansion) or  $0$  (for bidirectional series expansion) (by default  $0$ ).

Note that the syntax  $\dots, x, n, a, \dots$  (instead of  $\dots, x=a, n, \dots$ ) is also accepted.

`taylor` returns a polynomial in  $x-a$ , plus a remainder of the form:

$(x-a)^n * \text{order\_size}(x-a)$

where `order_size` is a function such that,

$$\forall r > 0, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x^r \text{order\_size}(x) = 0$$

For regular series expansion, `order_size` is a bounded function, but for non regular series expansion, it might tend slowly to infinity, for example like a power of  $\ln(x)$ .

Input :

```
taylor(sin(x), x=1, 2)
```

Or (be careful with the order of the arguments !) :

```
taylor(sin(x), x, 2, 1)
```

Output :

```
sin(1)+cos(1)*(x-1)+(-(1/2*sin(1)))*(x-1)^2+
(x-1)^3*order_size(x-1)
```

**Remark**

The order returned by `taylor` may be smaller than  $n$  if cancellations between numerator and denominator occur, for example

$$\text{taylor}\left(\frac{x^3 + \sin(x)^3}{x - \sin(x)}\right)$$

Input :

```
taylor(x^3+sin(x)^3/(x-sin(x)))
```

The output is only a 2nd-order series expansion :

```
6+-27/10*x^2+x^3*order_size(x)
```

Indeed the numerator and denominator valuation is 3, hence we lose 3 orders. To get order 4, we should use  $n = 7$ .

Input :

```
taylor(x^3+sin(x)^3/(x-sin(x)), x=0, 7)
```

Output is a 4th-order series expansion :

```
6+-27/10*x^2+x^3+711/1400*x^4+x^5*order_size(x)
```

**5.38.3 Series expansion : `series`**

`series` takes from one to four arguments :

- an expression depending of a variable (by default `x`),
- an equality `variable=value` (e.g.  $x = a$ ) where to compute the series expansion, by default `x=0`,
- an integer  $n$ , the order of the series expansion, by default 5
- a direction `-1`, `1` (for unidirectional series expansion) or `0` (for bidirectional series expansion) (by default 0).

Note that the syntax `..., x, a, n, ...` (instead of `..., x=a, n, ...`) is also accepted.

`series` returns a polynomial in `x-a`, plus a remainder of the form:

```
(x-a)^n*order_size(x-a)
```

where `order_size` is a function such that,

$$\forall r > 0, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x^r \text{order\_size}(x) = 0$$

The order returned by `series` may be smaller than  $n$  if cancellations between numerator and denominator occur.

Examples :

- series expansion in the vicinity of  $x=0$

Find an series expansion of  $\frac{x^3 + \sin(x)^3}{x - \sin(x)}$  in the vicinity of  $x=0$ .

Input :

```
series(x^3+sin(x)^3/(x-sin(x)))
```

Output is only a 2nd-order series expansion :

```
6+-27/10*x^2+x^3*order_size(x)
```

We have lost 3 orders because the valuation of the numerator and denominator is 3. To get a 4-th order expansion, we must therefore take  $n = 7$ .

Input :

```
series(x^3+sin(x)^3/(x-sin(x)), x=0, 7)
```

or :

```
series(x^3+sin(x)^3/(x-sin(x)), x, 0, 7)
```

Output is a 4th-order series expansion :

```
6+-27/10*x^2+x^3+711/1400*x^4+ x^5*order_size(x)
```

- series expansion in the vicinity of  $x=a$

Find a series 4th-order expansion of  $\cos(2x)^2$  in the vicinity of  $x = \frac{\pi}{6}$ .

Input:

```
series(cos(2*x)^2, x=pi/6, 4)
```

Output :

```
1/4+(-(4*sqrt(3)))/4*(x-pi/6)+(4*3-4)/4*(x-pi/6)^2+
32*sqrt(3)/3/4*(x-pi/6)^3+(-16*3+16)/3/4*(x-pi/6)^4+
(x-pi/6)^5*order_size(x-pi/6)
```

- series expansion in the vicinity of  $x=+\infty$  or  $x=-\infty$

1. Find a 5th-order series expansion of  $\arctan(x)$  in the vicinity of  $x=+\infty$ .

Input :

```
series(arctan(x), x=+infinity, 5)
```

Output :

```
pi/2-1/x+1/3*(1/x)^3+1/-5*(1/x)^5+
(1/x)^6*order_size(1/x)
```

Note that the expansion variable and the argument of the `order_size` function is  $h = \frac{1}{x} \rightarrow_{x \rightarrow +\infty} 0$ .

2. Find a series 2nd-order expansion of  $(2x - 1)e^{\frac{1}{x-1}}$  in the vicinity of  $x = +\infty$ .

Input :

```
series((2*x-1)*exp(1/(x-1)), x=+infinity, 3)
```

Output is only a 1st-order series expansion :

```
2*x+1+2/x+(1/x)^2*order_size(1/x)
```

To get a 2nd-order series expansion in  $1/x$ , input:

```
series((2*x-1)*exp(1/(x-1)), x=+infinity, 4)
```

Output :

```
2*x+1+2/x+17/6*(1/x)^2+(1/x)^3*order_size(1/x)
```

3. Find a 2nd-order series expansion of  $(2x - 1)e^{\frac{1}{x-1}}$  in the vicinity of  $x = -\infty$ .

Input :

```
series((2*x-1)*exp(1/(x-1)), x=-infinity, 4)
```

Output :

```
-2*(-x)+1-2*(-1/x)+17/6*(-1/x)^2+
(-1/x)^3*order_size(-1/x)
```

- unidirectional series expansion.

The fourth parameter indicates the direction :

- 1 to do an series expansion in the vicinity of  $x = a$  with  $x > a$ ,
- $-1$  to do an series expansion in the vicinity of  $x = a$  with  $x < a$ ,
- 0 to do an series expansion in the vicinity of  $x = a$  with  $x \neq a$ .

For example, find a 2nd-order series expansion of  $\frac{(1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}}}{x^3}$  in the vicinity of  $x = 0^+$ .

Input :

```
series((1+x)^(1/x)/x^3, x=0, 2, 1)
```

Output :

```
exp(1)/x^3+(-(exp(1))/2/x^2+1/x*order_size(x))
```

#### 5.38.4 The inverse of a series: **revert**

The **revert** command takes as argument an expression which represents the beginning of a power series centered at 0 for a function  $f$ . By default, the variable is  $x$ , if a different variable is used, then that variable should be the second argument. **revert** returns the beginning of the power series for the inverse of  $f$ , namely the beginning of the power series for  $g(f(0) + x)$  where the function  $g$  satisfies  $g(f(x)) = x$ .

Input:

```
revert (x + x^2 + x^4)
```

Output:

```
x-x^2+2*x^3-6*x^4
```

Note that if the power series of a function  $f$  begins with  $x+x^2+x^4$ , then  $f(0) = 0$ ,  $f'(0) = 1$ ,  $f''(0) = 2$ ,  $f'''(0) = 0$  and  $f^{(4)}(0) = 24$ . The function  $g$  with  $g(f(x)) = x$  will then satisfy  $g(0) = 0$ ,  $g'(0) = 1/f'(0) = 1$ ,  $g''(0) = -2$ ,  $g'''(0) = 12$  and  $g^{(4)}(0) = -144$ . The power series for  $g$  will then begin  $x - x^2 + 2x^3 - 6x^4$ .

Entering the beginning of the power series for  $\exp(x)$ ,

Input:

```
revert (1 + x + x^2/2 + x^3/6 + x^4/24)
```

Output:

```
x-1/2*x^2+1/3*x^3-1/4*x^4
```

returns the beginning of the power series for  $\ln(1+x)$ .

### 5.38.5 The residue of an expression at a point : residue

`residue` takes as argument an expression depending on a variable, the variable name and a complex  $a$  or an expression depending on a variable and the equality : `variable_name=a`. `residue` returns the residue of this expression at the point  $a$ .

Input :

```
residue (cos (x) /x^3, x, 0)
```

or :

```
residue (cos (x) /x^3, x=0)
```

Output :

```
(-1)/2
```

### 5.38.6 Padé expansion: pade

`pade` takes 4 arguments

- an expression,
- the variable name the expression depends on,
- an integer  $n$  or a polynomial  $N$ ,
- an integer  $p$ .

`pade` returns a rational fraction  $P/Q$  such that  $\text{degree}(P) < p$  and  $P/Q = f \pmod{x^{n+1}}$  or  $P/Q = f \pmod{N}$ . In the first case, it means that  $P/Q$  and  $f$  have the same Taylor expansion at 0 up to order  $n$ .

Input :

`pade(exp(x), x, 5, 3)`

or :

`pade(exp(x), x, x^6, 3)`

Output :

$(3*x^2+24*x+60) / (-x^3+9*x^2-36*x+60)$

To verify input :

`taylor((3*x^2+24*x+60) / (-x^3+9*x^2-36*x+60))`

Output :

$1+x+1/2*x^2+1/6*x^3+1/24*x^4+1/120*x^5+x^6*order\_size(x)$

which is the 5th-order series expansion of  $\exp(x)$  at  $x = 0$ .

Input :

`pade((x^15+x+1) / (x^12+1), x, 12, 3)`

or :

`pade((x^15+x+1) / (x^12+1), x, x^13, 3)`

Output :

$x+1$

Input :

`pade((x^15+x+1) / (x^12+1), x, 14, 4)`

or :

`pade((x^15+x+1) / (x^12+1), x, x^15, 4)`

Output :

$(-2*x^3-1) / (-x^11+x^10-x^9+x^8-x^7+x^6-x^5+x^4-x^3-x^2+x-1)$

To verify, input :

`series(ans(), x=0, 15)`

Output :

$1+x-x^12-x^13+2x^15+x^16*order\_size(x)$

then input :

`series((x^15+x+1) / (x^12+1), x=0, 15)`

Output :

$1+x-x^12-x^13+x^15+x^16*order\_size(x)$

These two expressions have the same 14th-order series expansion at  $x = 0$ .

## 5.39 Ranges of values

### 5.39.1 Definition of a range of values: `a1..a2`

A range of values is represented by two real numbers separated by `..`, for example

```
1..4
1.2..sqrt(2)
```

Input :

```
A:=1..4
```

```
B:=1.2..sqrt(2)
```

#### Warning!

The order of the boundaries of the range is significant. For example, if you input

```
B:=2..3; C:=3..2,
```

then `B` and `C` are different, `B==C` returns 0.

### 5.39.2 Boundaries of a range of values: `left right`

`left` (resp. `right`) takes as argument a range of values.

`left` (resp. `right`) returns the left (resp. right) boundary of this range.

Note that `..` is an infix operator, therefore:

- `sommet(1..5)` is equal to `'..'` and `feuille(1..5)` is equal to `(1,5)`.
- the name of the range followed by `[0]` returns the operator `..`
- the name of the range followed by `[1]` (or the `left` command) returns the left boundary.
- The name of the range followed by `[2]` (or the `right` command) returns the right boundary.

Input :

```
(3..5)[0]
```

or :

```
sommet(3..5)
```

Output :

```
'..'
```

Input :

```
left(3..5)
```

or :

(3..5) [1]

or :

feuille(3..5) [0]

or :

op(3..5) [0]

Output :

3

Input :

right(3..5)

or :

(2..5) [2]

or :

feuille(3..5) [1]

or :

op(3..5) [1]

Output :

5

### Remark

`left` (resp. `right`) returns also the left (resp. right) member of an equation (for example `left(2*x+1=x+2)` returns `2*x+1`).

### 5.39.3 Center of a range of values: `interval2center`

`interval2center` takes as argument a range of values interval or a list of ranges of values.

`interval2center` returns the center of this range or the list of centers of these ranges.

Input :

`interval2center(3..5)`

Output :

4

Input :

`interval2center([2..4, 4..6, 6..10])`

Output :

[3, 5, 8]

### 5.39.4 Ranges of values defined by their center : `center2interval`

`center2interval` takes as argument a vector  $V$  of reals and optionally a real as second argument (by default  $V[0] - (V[1] - V[0]) / 2$ ).

`center2interval` returns a vector of ranges of values having the real values of the first argument as centers, where the value of the second argument is the left boundary of the first range.

Input :

```
center2interval([3,5,8])
```

Or (since the default value is  $3 - (5 - 3) / 2 = 2$ ) :

```
center2interval([3,5,8],2)
```

Output :

```
[2..4,4..6,6..10]
```

Input :

```
center2interval([3,5,8],2.5)
```

Output :

```
[2.5..3.5,3.5..6.5,6.5..9.5]
```

## 5.40 Intervals

### 5.40.1 Defining intervals: `i[]`

An interval is a range of real numbers, whose end points will be floats with at least 15 significant digits. The interval from  $a$  to  $b$  is created with `i[a,b]`.

Input:

```
i[1,13/11]
```

Output:

```
[1.0000000000000..1.181818181819]
```

If  $a > b$ , then `i[a,b]` returns `i[evalf(b,15)-epsilon, evalf(a,15)+epsilon]`.  
Input:

```
i[pi,sqrt(3)]
```

Output:

```
[1.73205080756886..3.14159265358980]
```

Intervals can also be created by following a decimal number with a question mark. If the decimal number contains  $n$  digits, the interval will be centered at  $a$  and have width  $2 \cdot 10^{-n}$ .

Input:

```
0.123?
```

Output:

```
[0.12199999999999..0.12400000000000]
```

Input:

```
789.123456?
```

Output:

```
[0.789123454999990e3..0.78912345699998e3]
```

### 5.40.2 The endpoints of an interval: `left`,`right`

The `left` and `right` commands take an interval as an argument.

`left` and `right` return the left and right endpoints of the interval, respectively.

Input:

```
left(i[2,5])
```

Output:

```
2.00000000000000
```

Input:

```
right(i[2,5])
```

Output:

```
5.00000000000000
```

### 5.40.3 Adding intervals

Intervals are added by adding the left end points and adding the right end points.

Input:

```
i[1,4] + i[2,3]
```

Output:

```
[3.00000000000000..7.00000000000000]
```

### 5.40.4 The negative of an interval

The negative of an interval is computed by taking the negative of the end points of the interval. The new end points will have to be switched.

Input:

```
-i[2,3]
```

Output:

```
[-3.00000000000000..-2.00000000000000]
```

### 5.40.5 Multiplying intervals

Intervals are multiplied by multiplying both end points of the first interval by both end points of the second interval. The smallest product will be the left end point of the product interval, and the largest product will be the right end point of the product interval.

Input:

```
i[1,4]*i[2,3]
```

Output:

```
[2.00000000000000..0.1200000000000e2]
```

Input:

```
i[-2,4]*i[3,5]
```

Output:

```
[-0.1000000000000e2..0.2000000000000e2]
```

### 5.40.6 The reciprocal of an interval

The reciprocal of an interval the interval determined by the reciprocals of the end points.

Input:

```
1/i[2,3]
```

Output:

```
[0.3333333333333..0.5000000000000]
```

Input:

```
1/i[-6,-3]
```

Output:

```
[-0.3333333333333..-0.1666666666667]
```

If the original interval has zero as an end point, then the reciprocal interval will have infinity or minus infinity as one of the end points.

Input:

```
1/i[0,2]
```

Output:

```
[0.5000000000000..+infinity]
```

Input:

```
1/i[-1,0]
```

Output:

```
[ -infinity .. -1.000000000000000 ]
```

If one end point is positive and the other is negative, then the reciprocal will simply be the interval from -infinity to infinity.

Input:

```
1/i [-2, 3]
```

Output:

```
[ -infinity .. +infinity ]
```

### 5.40.7 The midpoint of an interval: midpoint

The midpoint takes an interval as argument.

midpoint returns the midpoint of the interval.

Input:

```
midpoint(i[2, 3])
```

Output:

```
2.500000000000000
```

### 5.40.8 The union of intervals: union

The union operator is an infix operator.

union takes two intervals and returns their convex hull.

Input:

```
i[1, 3] union i[2, 4]
```

Output:

```
[ 1.000000000000000 .. 4.000000000000000 ]
```

Input:

```
i[2, 4] union i[6, 9]
```

Output:

```
[ 2.000000000000000 .. 9.000000000000000 ]
```

### 5.40.9 The intersection of intervals: intersect

The intersect operator is an infix operator.

intersect takes two intervals and returns their intersection.

Input:

```
i[1, 3] intersect i[2, 4]
```

Output:

```
[ 2.000000000000000 .. 3.000000000000000 ]
```

### 5.40.10 Test if an object is in an interval: `contains`

The `contains` command takes two arguments; an interval and an object to test. `contains` returns 1 if the object is contained in the interval; i.e., if the object is a number then it must be an element of the interval, if the object is another interval it must be a subset of the interval. `contains` returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
contains(i[0,2],1)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
contains(i[0,2],3)
```

Output:

```
0
```

Input:

```
contains(i[0,2],i[1,2])
```

Output:

```
1
```

### 5.40.11 Convert a number to an interval: `convert`

To convert a number to an interval, the `convert` command takes two mandatory arguments and one optional argument. The first argument is an expression which evaluates to the desired number, and the second argument is the reserved word `interval`. The optional argument is an integer greater than 15 giving the desired number of digits.

`convert` returns the smallest interval containing the value of the expression.

Input:

```
convert(sin(3)+1, interval)
```

Output:

```
[1.14112000805985 .. 1.14112000805990]
```

Input:

```
convert(sin(3)+1, interval, 20)
```

Output:

```
[1.1411200080598672220 .. 1.1411200080598672222]
```

## 5.41 Sequences

### 5.41.1 Definition : seq[] ()

A sequence is represented by a sequence of elements separated by commas, without delimiters or with either ( ) or seq[...] as delimiters, for example

```
(1,2,3,4)
seq[1,2,3,4]
```

Input :

```
A:=(1,2,3,4) or A:=seq[1,2,3,4]
```

```
B:=(5,6,3,4) or B:=seq[5,6,3,4]
```

### Remarks

- The order of the elements of the sequence is significant. For example, if  $B:=(5,6,3,4)$  and  $C:=(3,4,5,6)$ , then  $B==C$  returns 0.
- (see also 5.41)
   
 $\text{seq}([0,2])=(0,0)$  and  $\text{seq}([0,1,1,5])=[0,0,0,0,0]$  but
   
 $\text{seq}[0,2]=(0,2)$  and  $\text{seq}[0,1,1,5]=(0,1,1,5)$

### 5.41.2 Concat two sequences : ,

The infix operator , concatenates two sequences.

Input :

```
A:=(1,2,3,4)
```

```
B:=(5,6,3,4)
```

```
A,B
```

Output :

```
(1,2,3,4,5,6,3,4)
```

### 5.41.3 Get an element of a sequence : [ ], [ [ ] ]

The elements of a sequence have indexes beginning at 0 in Xcas mode or 1 in other modes.

A sequence or a variable name assigned to a sequence followed by [n] returns the element of index n of the sequence.

Input :

```
(0,3,2)[1]
```

Output :

#### 5.41.4 Sub-sequence of a sequence : [ ]

A sequence or a variable name assigned to a sequence followed by `[n1..n2]` returns the sub-sequence of this sequence starting at index `n1` and ending at index `n2`.

Input :

`(0,1,2,3,4) [1..3]`

Output :

`(1,2,3)`

#### 5.41.5 Make a sequence or a list : seq \$

`seq` takes two, three, four or five arguments : the first argument is an expression depending of a parameter (for example  $j$ ) and the remaining argument(s) describe which values of  $j$  will be used to generate the sequence. More precisely  $j$  is assumed to move from  $a$  to  $b$ :

- with a default step of 1 or -1: `j=a..b` or `j,a..b` (Maple-like syntax), `j,a,b` (TI-like syntax)
- or with a specific step: `j=a..b,p` (Maple-like syntax), `j,a,b,p` (TI-like syntax).

If the Maple-like syntax is used, `seq` returns a sequence, if the TI-like syntax is used, `seq` returns a list.

`$` is the infix version of `seq` when `seq` has only two arguments and always returns a sequence.

**Remark:**

- In Xcas mode, the precedence of `$` is not the same as for example in Maple, in case of doubt put the arguments of `$` in parenthesis. For example, the equivalent of `seq(j^2, j=-1..3)` is `(j^2)$ (j=-1..3)` and returns `(1,0,1,4,9)`. The equivalent of `seq(4,3)` is `4$3` and returns `(4,4,4)`.
- With Maple syntax, `j,a..b,p` is not valid. To specify a step  $p$  for the variation of  $j$  from  $a$  to  $b$ , use `j=a..b,p` or use the TI syntax `j,a,b,p` and get the sequence from the list with `op(...)`.

In summary, the different way to build a sequence are :

- with **Maple-like syntax**
  1. `seq` has two arguments, either an expression depending on a parameter (for example  $j$ ) and  $j = a..b$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are reals, or a constant expression and an integer  $n$ .  
`seq` returns the sequence where  $j$  is replaced in the expression by  $a$ ,  $a+1,...,b$  if  $b > a$  and by  $a, a-1,...,b$  if  $b < a$ , or `seq` returns the sequence made by copying the constant  $n$  times.

2. `seq` has three arguments, an expression depending on a parameter (for example  $j$ ) and  $j = a..b, p$  where  $a, b$  are reals and  $p$  is a real number.  
`seq` returns the sequence where  $j$  is replaced in the expression by  $a, a + p, \dots, b$  if  $b > a$  and by  $a, a - p, \dots, b$  if  $b < a$ .  
Note that  $j, a..b$  is also valid but  $j, a..b, p$  is not valid.

- TI syntax

1. `seq` has four arguments, an expression depending on a parameter (for example  $j$ ), the name of the parameter (for example  $j$ ),  $a$  and  $b$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are reals.  
`seq` returns the list where  $j$  is replaced in the expression by  $a, a+1, \dots, b$  if  $b > a$  and by  $a, a-1, \dots, b$  if  $b < a$ .
2. `seq` has five arguments, an expression depending on a parameter (for example  $j$ ), the name of the parameter (for example  $j$ ),  $a, b$  and  $p$  where  $a, b$  and  $p$  are reals.  
`seq` returns the list where  $j$  is substituted in the expression by  $a, a + p, \dots, a + k * p$  ( $a + k * p \leq b < a + (k + 1) * p$  or  $a + k * p \geq b > a + (k + 1) * p$ ). By default,  $p=1$  if  $b > a$  and  $p=-1$  if  $b < a$ .

**Note** that in Maple syntax, `seq` takes no more than 3 arguments and returns a sequence, while in TI syntax, `seq` takes at least 4 arguments and returns a list.

Input to have a sequence with same elements :

`seq(t, 4)`

or :

`seq(t, k=1..4)`

or :

`t\$4`

Output :

`(t,t,t,t)`

Input to have a sequence :

`seq(j^3, j=1..4)`

or :

`(j^3) $(j=1..4)`

or :

`seq(j^3, j, 1..4)`

Output :

`(1,8,27,64)`

Input to have a sequence :

`seq(j^3, j=-1..4, 2)`

Output :

`(-1, 1, 27)`

Or to have a list,

Input :

`seq(j^3, j, 1, 4)`

Output :

`[1, 8, 27, 64]`

Input :

`seq(j^3, j, 0, 5, 2)`

Output :

`[0, 8, 64]`

Input :

`seq(j^3, j, 5, 0, -2)`

or

`seq(j^3, j, 5, 0, 2)`

Output :

`[125, 27, 1]`

Input :

`seq(j^3, j, 1, 3, 0.5)`

Output :

`[1, 3.375, 8, 15.625, 27]`

Input :

`seq(j^3, j, 1, 3, 1/2)`

Output :

`[1, 27/8, 8, 125/8, 27]`

### Examples

- Find the third derivative of  $\ln(t)$ , input:

`diff(log(t), t$3)`

Output :

$-((-(2*t))/t^4)$

- Input :

```
l:=[[2,3],[5,1],[7,2]]
seq((l[k][0])$(l[k][1]),k=0 .. size(l)-1)
```

Output :

$2, 2, 2, \text{seq}[5], 7, 7$

then eval(ans()) returns:

$2, 2, 2, 5, 7, 7$

- Input to transform a string into the list of its characters :

```
f(chn):={
local l;
l:=size(chn);
return seq(chn[j],j,0,l-1);
}
```

then input:

`f("abracadabra")`

Output :

$["a", "b", "r", "a", "c", "a", "d", "a", "b", "r", "a"]$

#### 5.41.6 Transform a sequence into a list : [] nop

To transform a sequence into list, just put square brackets ([ ]) around the sequence or use the command `nop`.

Input :

`[seq(j^3, j=1..4)]`

or :

`seq(j^3, j, 1, 4)`

or :

`[(j^3) $(j=1..4)]`

Output :

$[1, 4, 9, 16]$

Input :

`nop(1, 4, 9, 16)`

Output :

$[1, 4, 9, 16]$

### 5.41.7 The + operator applied on sequences

The infix operator `+`, with two sequences as argument, returns the total sum of the elements of the two sequences.

Note the difference with the lists, where the term by term sums of the elements of the two lists would be returned.

Input :

```
(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) + (4, 3, 5)
```

or :

```
'+' ((1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6), (4, 3, 5))
```

Output :

```
33
```

But input :

```
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6] + [4, 3, 5]
```

Output :

```
[5, 5, 8, 4, 5, 6]
```

#### Warning

When the operator `+` is prefixed, it has to be quoted (`'+'`).

## 5.42 Sets

### 5.42.1 Definition : `set []`

To define a set of elements, put the elements separated by a comma, with `%{ ... %}` or `set [ ... ]` as delimiters.

Input :

```
%{1, 2, 3, 4%}
set [1, 2, 3, 4]
```

In the Xcas answers, the set delimiters are displayed as `[[` and `]]` in order not to confuse sets with lists. For example, `[[1,2,3]]` is the set `%{1, 2, 3%}`, unlike `[1,2,3]` (normal brackets) which is the list `[1, 2, 3]`.

Input :

```
A:=%{1, 2, 3, 4%} or A:=set [1, 2, 3, 4]
```

Output :

```
[[1, 2, 3, 4]]
```

Input :

```
B:=%{5, 5, 6, 3, 4%} or B:=set [5, 5, 6, 3, 4]
```

Output :

```
[[5, 6, 3, 4]]
```

**Remark**

The order in a set is not significant and the elements in a set are all distinct. If you input `B := %{5, 5, 6, 3, 4%}` and `C := %{3, 4, 5, 3, 6%}`, then `B == C` will return 1.

### 5.42.2 Union of two sets or of two lists : union

`union` is an infix operator.

`union` takes as argument two sets or two lists, `union` returns the union set of the arguments.

**Input :**

```
set[1, 2, 3, 4] union set[5, 6, 3, 4]
```

or :

```
%{1, 2, 3, 4%} union %{5, 6, 3, 4%}
```

**Output :**

```
[[1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]]
```

**Input :**

```
[1, 2, 3] union [2, 5, 6]
```

**Output :**

```
[[1, 2, 3, 5, 6]]
```

### 5.42.3 Intersection of two sets or of two lists : intersect

`intersect` is an infix operator.

`intersect` takes as argument two sets or two lists.

`intersect` returns the intersection set of the arguments.

**Input :**

```
set[1, 2, 3, 4] intersect set[5, 6, 3, 4]
```

or :

```
%{1, 2, 3, 4%} intersect %{5, 6, 3, 4%}
```

**Output :**

```
[[3, 4]]
```

**Input :**

```
[1, 2, 3, 4] intersect [5, 6, 3, 4]
```

**Output :**

```
[[3, 4]]
```

#### 5.42.4 Difference of two sets or of two lists : minus

minus is an infix operator.

minus takes as argument two sets or two lists.

minus returns the difference set of the arguments.

Input :

```
set[1,2,3,4] minus set[5,6,3,4]
```

or :

```
%{1,2,3,4%} minus %{5,6,3,4%}
```

Output :

```
[[1,2]]
```

Input :

```
[1,2,3,4] minus [5,6,3,4]
```

Output :

```
[[1,2]]
```

#### 5.42.5 Defining an $n$ -tuple: tuple

To define an  $n$ -tuple, rather than a list of  $n$  objects, the objects should be put inside the delimiters `tuple[` and `]`. For example, the set consisting of the points  $[1, 3, 4], [1, 3, 5], [2, 3, 4]$  and  $[2, 3, 5]$  is written

```
set[tuple[1,3,4],tuple[1,3,5],tuple[2,3,4],tuple[2,3,5]]
```

The Cartesian product of two sets: \*

The Cartesian product of two sets is computed with the infix operator `*`.

Input:

```
set[1,2] * set[3,4]
```

Output:

```
set[tuple[1,3],tuple[1,4],tuple[2,3],tuple[2,4]]
```

Input:

```
set[1,2] * set[3,4] * set[5,6]
```

Output:

```
set[tuple[1,3,5],tuple[1,3,6],tuple[1,4,5],tuple[1,4,6],
tuple[2,3,5],tuple[2,3,6],tuple[2,4,5],tuple[2,4,6]]
```

## 5.43 Lists and vectors

### 5.43.1 Definition

A list (or a vector) is delimited by [ ], its elements must be separated by commas. For example, [1, 2, 5] is a list of three integers.

Lists can contain lists (for example, a matrix is a list of lists of the same size). Lists may be used to represent vectors (list of coordinates), matrices, univariate polynomials (list of coefficients by decreasing order).

Lists are different from sequences, because sequences are flat : an element of a sequence cannot be a sequence. Lists are different from sets, because for a list, the order is important and the same element can be repeated in a list (unlike in a set where each element is unique).

In Xcas output :

- vector (or list) delimiters are displayed as [ ],
- matrix delimiters are displayed as [ ],
- polynomial delimiters are displayed as [ ] [ ],
- set delimiters are displayed as [ ] [ ].

The list elements are indexed starting from 0 in Xcas syntax mode and from 1 in all other syntax modes. To access an element of a list, follow the list with the index between square brackets.

Input:

```
L := [2, 5, 1, 4]
```

Output:

```
[2, 5, 1, 4]
```

Input:

```
L[1]
```

Output:

```
5
```

To access the last element of a list, you can put -1 between square brackets.

Input:

```
L[-1]
```

Output:

```
4
```

If you want the indices to start from 1 in Xcas syntax mode, you can enter the index between double brackets.

Input:

```
L[[1]]
```

Output:

```
2
```

### 5.43.2 Define a list: `makelist`

See also section [5.43.41](#).

A list can be defined by listing its elements, separated by commas, between square brackets.

Input:

```
L1 := [1, 2, 3]
```

To define the empty list, simply enter the brackets.

Input:

```
L0 := []
```

`L0` is now the empty list.

The `subsop` command (see section [5.43.14](#)) can be used to modify lists. You can also redefine elements (or define new elements) with `:=`.

Input:

```
L1
```

Output:

```
[1, 2, 3]
```

Input:

```
L1[2] := 16
```

then:

```
L1
```

Output:

```
[1, 2, 16]
```

Input:

```
L0
```

Output:

```
[]
```

Input:

```
L0[5] := 16
```

then:

```
L0
```

Output:

```
[0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 16]
```

You can also define a list with the `makelist` command.

Input:

```
makelist(4,1,3)
```

creates a list with entries 4, from integers 1 to 3. This is the same as [4 \$ 3].

Output:

```
[4,4,4]
```

Input:

```
makelist(4,2,7)
```

creates a list with entries 4, from integers 2 to 7. This is the same as [4 \$ 6].

Output:

```
[4,4,4,4,4,4]
```

Input:

```
makelist(x -> x^2,1,10,2)
```

creates a list of the squares of the numbers, starting at 1, ending at 10, and going in steps of 2. This is the same as [(k^2) \$ (k = 1..10,2)]. Output:

```
[1,9,25,49,81]
```

### 5.43.3 Flatten a list: `flatten`

The `flatten` takes a list as argument.

`flatten` returns a list which is the result of recursively replacing any elements that are lists by the elements, resulting in a list with no lists as elements.

Input:

```
flatten([[1,[2,3],4],[5,6]])
```

Output:

```
[1,2,3,4,5,6]
```

If the original list is a matrix, you can use the `mat2list` command for this (see section 5.43.45).

### 5.43.4 Get an element or a sub-list of a list : `at` []

#### Get an element

The  $n$ -th element of a list  $l$  of size  $s$  is addressed by  $l[n]$  where  $n$  is in  $[0..s - 1]$  or  $[1..s]$ . The equivalent prefixed function is `at`, which takes as argument a list and an integer  $n$ .

`at` returns the element of the list at index  $n$ .

Input :

```
[0,1,2][1]
```

or :

```
at([0,1,2],1)
```

Output :

### Extract a sub-list

If  $l$  is a list of size  $s$ ,  $l[n_1..n_2]$  returns the list extracted from  $l$  containing the elements of indexes  $n_1$  to  $n_2$  where  $0 \leq n_1 \leq n_2 < s$  (in Xcas syntax mode) or  $0 < n_1 \leq n_2 \leq s$  in other syntax modes. The equivalent prefixed function is `at` with a list and an interval of integers ( $n_1..n_2$ ) as arguments.

**See also :** `mid`, section 5.43.5.

**Input :**

```
[0,1,2,3,4][1..3]
```

or :

```
at([0,1,2,3,4],1..3)
```

**Output :**

```
[1,2,3]
```

#### Warning

`at` can not be used for sequences, index notation must be used, as in  $(0,1,2,3,4,5)[2..3]$ .

### 5.43.5 Extract a sub-list : `mid`

**See also :** `at` section 5.43.4.

`mid` is used to extract a sub-list of a list.

`mid` takes as argument a list, the index of the beginning of the sub-list and the length of the sub-list.

`mid` returns the sub-list.

**Input :**

```
mid([0,1,2,3,4,5],2,3)
```

**Output :**

```
[1,2,3]
```

#### Warning

`mid` can not be used to extract a subsequence of a sequence, because the arguments of `mid` would be merged with the sequence. Index notation must be used, like e.g.  $(0,1,2,3,4,5)[2..3]$ .

### 5.43.6 Get the first element of a list : `head`

`head` takes as argument a list.

`head` returns the first element of this list.

**Input :**

```
head([0,1,2,3])
```

**Output :**

```
0
```

`a:=head([0,1,2,3])` does the same thing as `a:=[0,1,2,3][0]`

**5.43.7 Remove an element in a list : suppress**

`suppress` takes as argument a list and an integer `n`.  
`suppress` returns the list where the element of index `n` is removed.  
Input :

```
suppress([3,4,2],1)
```

Output :

```
[3,2]
```

**5.43.8 Insert an element into a list or a string: insert**

The `insert` command takes three arguments, a list (or string), and index, and an element.

`insert` returns the list (or string) with the element inserted into the position given by the index, with all other elements shifted to the right.

Input:

```
insert([3,4,2],2,5)
```

Output:

```
[3,4,5,2]
```

Input:

```
insert("342",2,"5")
```

Output:

```
"3452"
```

`insert` returns an error if the index is too large.

Input:

```
insert([3,4,2],4,5)
```

Output:

```
insert([3,4,2],4,5) Error: Invalid dimension
```

**5.43.9 Remove the first element : tail**

`tail` takes as argument a list. `tail` returns the list without its first element.

Input :

```
tail([0,1,2,3])
```

Output :

```
[1,2,3]
```

`l:=tail([0,1,2,3])` does the same thing as `l:=suppress([0,1,2,3],0)`

### 5.43.10 The right and left portions of a list: `right`, `left`

The `right` command takes two arguments, a list and an integer  $n$ .  
`right` returns the last  $n$  elements of the list.

Input:

```
right([0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8],4)
```

Output:

```
[5,6,7,8]
```

Similarly, `left` returns the first part of a list.

Input:

```
left([0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8],3)
```

Output:

```
[0,1,2]
```

### 5.43.11 Reverse order in a list : `revlist`

`revlist` takes as argument a list (resp. sequence).  
`revlist` returns the list (resp. sequence) in the reverse order.  
Input :

```
revlist([0,1,2,3,4])
```

Output :

```
[4,3,2,1,0]
```

Input :

```
revlist([0,1,2,3,4],3)
```

Output :

```
3,[0,1,2,3,4]
```

### 5.43.12 Reverse a list starting from its n-th element : `rotate`

`rotate` takes as argument a list and an integer  $n$  (by default  $n=-1$ ).  
`rotate` rotates the list by  $n$  places to the left if  $n>0$  or to the right if  $n<0$ . Elements leaving the list from one side come back on the other side. By default  $n=-1$  and the last element becomes first.

Input :

```
rotate([0,1,2,3,4])
```

Output :

```
[4,0,1,2,3]
```

Input :

```
rotate([0,1,2,3,4],2)
```

Output :

```
[2,3,4,0,1]
```

Input :

```
rotate([0,1,2,3,4],-2)
```

Output :

```
[3,4,0,1,2]
```

#### 5.43.13 Permutated list from its n-th element : shift

`shift` takes as argument a list `l` and an integer `n` (by default `n=-1`).

`shift` rotates the list to the left if `n>0` or to the right if `n<0`. Elements leaving the list from one side are replaced by `undef` on the other side.

Input :

```
shift([0,1,2,3,4])
```

Output :

```
[undef,0,1,2,3]
```

Input :

```
shift([0,1,2,3,4],2)
```

Output :

```
[2,3,4,undef,undef]
```

Input :

```
shift([0,1,2,3,4],-2)
```

Output :

```
[undef,undef,0,1,2]
```

#### 5.43.14 Modify an element in a list : subsop

`subsop` modifies an element in a list. `subsop` takes as argument a list and an equality (an `index=a` new value) in all syntax modes, but in `Maple` syntax mode the order of the arguments is reversed.

**Remark** If the second argument is '`k=NULL`', the element of index `k` is removed of the list.

Input in `Xcas` mode (the index of the first element is 0) :

```
subsop([0,1,2],1=5)
```

or :

```
L:=[0,1,2];L[1]:=5
```

Output :

```
[0,5,2]
```

Input in Xcas mode (the index of the first element is 0) :

```
subsop([0,1,2],'1=NULL')
```

Output :

```
[0,2]
```

Input in Mupad TI mode (the index of the first element is 1) :

```
subsop([0,1,2],2=5)
```

or :

```
L:=[0,1,2];L[2]:=5
```

Output :

```
[0,5,2]
```

In Maple mode the arguments are permuted and the index of the first element is 1.

Input :

```
subsop(2=5,[0,1,2])
```

or :

```
L:=[0,1,2];L[2]:=5
```

Output :

```
[0,5,2]
```

### 5.43.15 Transform a list into a sequence : op makesuite

op or makesuite takes as argument a list.

op or makesuite transforms this list into a sequence.

See 5.16.3 for other usages of op.

Input :

```
op([0,1,2])
```

or :

```
makesuite([0,1,2])
```

Output :

```
(0,1,2)
```

**5.43.16 Transform a sequence into a list : makevector []**

Square brackets put around a sequence transform this sequence into a list or vector. The equivalent prefixed function is `makevector` which takes a sequence as argument.

`makevector` transforms this sequence into a list or vector.

Input :

```
makevector(0,1,2)
```

Output :

```
[0,1,2]
```

Input :

```
a:=(0,1,2)
```

Input :

```
[a]
```

or :

```
makevector(a)
```

Output :

```
[0,1,2]
```

**5.43.17 Length of a list : size nops length**

`size` or `nops` or `length` takes as argument a list (resp. sequence).

`size` or `nops` or `length` returns the length of this list (resp. sequence).

Input :

```
nops([3,4,2])
```

or :

```
size([3,4,2])
```

or :

```
length([3,4,2])
```

Output :

```
3
```

**5.43.18 Sizes of a list of lists : sizes**

`sizes` takes as argument a list of lists.

`sizes` returns the list of the lengths of these lists.

Input :

```
sizes([[3,4],[2]])
```

Output :

```
[2,1]
```

**5.43.19 Concatenate two lists or a list and an element :** concat augment

concat (or augment) takes as argument a list and an element or two lists.

concat (or augment) concats this list and this element, or concats these two lists.

**Input :**

```
concat([3,4,2],[1,2,4])
```

or :

```
augment([3,4,2],[1,2,4])
```

**Output :**

```
[3,4,2,1,2,4]
```

**Input :**

```
concat([3,4,2],5)
```

or :

```
augment([3,4,2],5)
```

**Output :**

```
[3,4,2,5]
```

**Warning** If you input :

```
concat([[3,4,2]],[[1,2,4]])
```

or

```
augment([[3,4,2]],[[1,2,4]])
```

the output will be:

```
[[3,4,2,1,2,4]]
```

**5.43.20 Append an element at the end of a list :** append

append takes as argument a list and an element.

append puts this element at the end of this list.

**Input :**

```
append([3,4,2],1)
```

**Output :**

```
[3,4,2,1]
```

**Input :**

```
append([1,2],[3,4])
```

**Output :**

```
[1,2,[3,4]]
```

**5.43.21 Prepend an element at the beginning of a list : prepend**

`prepend` takes as argument a list and an element.

`prepend` puts this element at the beginning of this list.

Input :

```
prepend([3, 4, 2], 1)
```

Output :

```
[1, 3, 4, 2]
```

Input :

```
prepend([1, 2], [3, 4])
```

Output :

```
[[3, 4], 1, 2]
```

**5.43.22 Sort : sort**

`sort` takes as argument a list or an expression.

- For a list,

`sort` returns the list sorted in increasing order.

Input :

```
sort([3, 4, 2])
```

Output :

```
[2, 3, 4]
```

- For an expression,

`sort` sorts and collects terms in sums and products.

Input :

```
sort(exp(2*ln(x))+x*y-x+y*x+2*x)
```

Output :

```
2*x*y+exp(2*ln(x))+x
```

Input :

```
simplify(exp(2*ln(x))+x*y-x+y*x+2*x)
```

Output :

```
x^2+2*x*y+x
```

`sort` accepts an optional second argument, which is a bivariate function returning 0 or 1. If provided, this function will be used to sort the list, for example  $(x, y) \rightarrow x \geq y$  may be used as second argument to sort the list in decreasing order. This may also be used to sort list of lists (that `sort` with one argument does not know how to sort).

Input :

```
sort ([3, 4, 2], (x, y) → x ≥ y)
```

Output :

```
[4, 3, 2]
```

#### 5.43.23 Sort a list by increasing order : `SortA`

`SortA` takes as argument a list.

`SortA` returns this list sorted by increasing order.

Input :

```
SortA ([3, 4, 2])
```

Output :

```
[2, 3, 4]
```

`SortA` may have a matrix as argument and in this case, `SortA` modifies the order of columns by sorting the first matrix row by increasing order.

Input :

```
SortA ([[3, 4, 2], [6, 4, 5]])
```

Output :

```
[[2, 3, 4], [5, 6, 4]]
```

#### 5.43.24 Sort a list by decreasing order : `SortD`

`SortD` takes a list as argument.

`SortD` returns this list sorted by decreasing order.

Input :

```
SortD ([3, 4, 2])
```

Output :

```
[2, 3, 4]
```

`SortD` may have a matrix as argument and in this case, `SortD` modifies the order of columns by sorting the first matrix row by decreasing order.

Input :

```
SortD ([[3, 4, 2], [6, 4, 5]])
```

Output :

```
[[4, 3, 2], [4, 6, 5]]
```

**5.43.25 Select the elements of a list : select**

`select` takes as arguments : a boolean function `f` and a list `L`.  
`select` selects in the list `L`, the elements `c` such that `f(c) == true`.  
Input :

```
select(x->(x>=2), [0,1,2,3,1,5])
```

Output :

```
[2,3,5]
```

**5.43.26 Remove elements of a list : remove**

`remove` takes as argument : a boolean function `f` and a list `L`.  
`remove` removes in the list `L`, the elements `c` such that `f(c) == true`.  
Input :

```
remove(x->(x>=2), [0,1,2,3,1,5])
```

Output :

```
[0,1,1]
```

**Remark** The same applies on strings, for example, to remove all the "a" of a string:

Input :

```
ord("a")
```

Output :

```
97
```

Input :

```
f(chn):={  
    local l:=length(chn)-1;  
    return remove(x->(ord(x)==97), seq(chn[k], k, 0, l));  
}
```

Then, input :

```
f("abracadabra")
```

Output :

```
["b", "r", "c", "d", "b", "r"]
```

To get a string, input :

```
char(ord(["b", "r", "c", "d", "b", "r"]))
```

Output :

```
"brcadbr"
```

**5.43.27 Test if a value is in a list : member**

`member` takes as argument a value  $c$  and a list (or a set)  $L$ .

`member` is a function that tests if  $c$  is an element of the list  $L$ .

`member` returns 0 if  $c$  is not in  $L$ , or a strictly positive integer which is 1 plus the index of the first occurrence of  $c$  in  $L$ .

Note the order of the arguments (required for compatibility reasons)

Input :

```
member(2, [0,1,2,3,4,2])
```

Output :

```
3
```

Input :

```
member(2, %{0,1,2,3,4,2%})
```

Output :

```
3
```

**5.43.28 Test if a value is in a list : contains**

`contains` takes as argument a list (or a set)  $L$  and a value  $c$ .

`contains` tests if  $c$  is an element of the list  $L$ .

`contains` returns 0 if  $c$  is not in  $L$ , or a strictly positive integer which is 1+the index of the first occurrence of  $c$  in  $L$ .

Input :

```
contains([0,1,2,3,4,2],2)
```

Output :

```
3
```

Input :

```
contains(%{0,1,2,3,4,2%},2)
```

Output :

```
3
```

**5.43.29 Sum of list (or matrix) elements transformed by a function :**

`count`

`count` takes as argument : a real function  $f$  and a list  $l$  of length  $n$  (or a matrix  $A$  of dimension  $p \times q$ ).

`count` applies the function to the list (or matrix) elements and returns their sum, i.e. :

`count(f,l)` returns  $f(l[0])+f(l[1])+\dots+f(l[n-1])$  or

`count(f,A)` returns  $f(A[0,0])+\dots+f(A[p-1,q-1])$ .

If  $f$  is a boolean function `count` returns the number of elements of the list (or of the matrix) for which the boolean function is true.

Input :

```
count ((x)->x, [2,12,45,3,7,78])
```

Output :

147

because :  $2+12+45+3+7+78=147$ .

Input :

```
count ((x)->x<12, [2,12,45,3,7,78])
```

Output :

3

Input :

```
count ((x)->x==12, [2,12,45,3,7,78])
```

Output :

1

Input :

```
count ((x)->x>12, [2,12,45,3,7,78])
```

Output :

2

Input :

```
count (x->x^2, [3,5,1])
```

Output :

35

Indeed  $3^2 + 5^2 + 1^1 = 35$ .

Input :

```
count (id, [3,5,1])
```

Output :

9

Indeed, `id` is the identity functions and  $3+5+1=9$ .

Input :

```
count (1, [3,5,1])
```

Output :

3

Indeed, `1` is the constant function equal to 1 and  $1+1+1=3$ .

**5.43.30 Number of elements equal to a given value : count\_eq**

count\_eq takes as argument : a real and a real list (or matrix).

count\_eq returns the number of elements of the list (or matrix) which are equal to the first argument.

Input :

```
count_eq(12, [2, 12, 45, 3, 7, 78])
```

Output :

1

**5.43.31 Number of elements smaller than a given value : count\_inf**

count\_inf takes as argument : a real and a real list (or matrix).

count\_inf returns the number of elements of the list (or matrix) which are strictly less than the first argument.

Input :

```
count_inf(12, [2, 12, 45, 3, 7, 78])
```

Output :

3

**5.43.32 Number of elements greater than a given value : count\_sup**

count\_sup takes as argument : a real and a real list (or matrix).

count\_sup returns the number of elements of the list (or matrix) which are strictly greater than the first argument.

Input :

```
count_sup(12, [2, 12, 45, 3, 7, 78])
```

Output :

2

**5.43.33 Sum of elements of a list : sum add**

sum or add takes as argument a list l (resp. sequence) of reals.

sum or add returns the sum of the elements of l.

Input :

```
sum(2, 3, 4, 5, 6)
```

Output :

**5.43.34 Cumulated sum of the elements of a list : cumSum**

cumSum takes as argument a list  $l$  (resp. sequence) of numbers or of strings.  
 cumSum returns the list (resp. sequence) with same length as  $l$  and with  $k$ -th element the sum (or concatenation) of the elements  $l[0], \dots, l[k]$ .

Input :

```
cumSum(sqrt(2), 3, 4, 5, 6)
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2), 3+sqrt(2), 3+sqrt(2)+4, 3+sqrt(2)+4+5,  
3+sqrt(2)+4+5+6
```

Input :

```
normal(cumSum(sqrt(2), 3, 4, 5, 6))
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2), sqrt(2)+3, sqrt(2)+7, sqrt(2)+12, sqrt(2)+18
```

Input :

```
cumSum(1.2, 3, 4.5, 6)
```

Output :

```
1.2, 4.2, 8.7, 14.7
```

Input :

```
cumSum([0, 1, 2, 3, 4])
```

Output :

```
[0, 1, 3, 6, 10]
```

Input :

```
cumSum("a", "b", "c", "d")
```

Output :

```
"a", "ab", "abc", "abcd"
```

Input :

```
cumSum("a", "ab", "abc", "abcd")
```

Output :

```
"a", "aab", "aababc", "aababcaabcd"
```

**5.43.35 Product : product mul**

See also [5.43.35](#), [5.49.6](#) and [5.49.8](#)).

**Product of values of an expression : product**

`product(expr, var, a, b, p)` or `mul(expr, var, a, b, p)` returns the product of values of an expression `ex` when the variable `var` goes from `a` to `b` with a step `p` (by default `p=1`) : this syntax is for compatibility with Maple.

Input :

```
product(x^2+1, x, 1, 4)
```

or:

```
mul(x^2+1, x, 1, 4)
```

Output :

```
1700
```

Indeed  $2 * 5 * 10 * 17 = 1700$

Input :

```
product(x^2+1, x, 1, 5, 2)
```

or:

```
mul(x^2+1, x, 1, 5, 2)
```

Output :

```
520
```

Indeed  $2 * 10 * 26 = 520$

**Product of elements of a list : product**

`product` or `mul` takes as argument a list `l` of reals (or floating numbers) or two lists of the same size (see also [5.43.35](#), [5.49.6](#) and [5.49.8](#)).

- if `product` or `mul` has a list `l` as argument, `product` or `mul` returns the product of the elements of `l`.

Input :

```
product([2, 3, 4])
```

or :

```
mul([2, 3, 4])
```

Output :

```
24
```

Input :

```
product([[2, 3, 4], [5, 6, 7]])
```

Output :

```
[10,18,28]
```

- if product or mul takes as arguments l1 and l2 (two lists or two matrices), product or mul returns the term by term product of the elements of l1 and l2.

Input :

```
product([2,3,4],[5,6,7])
```

or :

```
mul([2,3,4],[5,6,7])
```

Output :

```
[10,18,28]
```

Input :

```
product([[2,3,4],[5,6,7]],[[2,3,4],[5,6,7]])
```

or :

```
mul([[2,3,4],[5,6,7]],[[2,3,4],[5,6,7]])
```

Output :

```
[[4,9,16],[25,36,49]]
```

#### 5.43.36 Apply a function of one variable to the elements of a list : map apply of

map or apply or of applies a function to a list of elements.

of is the prefixed function equivalent to the parenthesis : xcas translates  $f(x)$  internally to  $of(f,x)$ . It is more natural to call map or apply than of. Be careful with the order of arguments (that is required for compatibility reasons).

Note that apply returns a list ([]) even if the second argument is not a list.

Input :

```
apply(x->x^2,[3,5,1])
```

or :

```
of(x->x^2,[3,5,1])
```

or :

```
map([3,5,1],x->x^2)
```

or first define the function  $h(x) = x^2$ , input :

$h(x) := x^2$

then :

`apply(h, [3, 5, 1])`

or :

`of(h, [3, 5, 1])`

or :

`map([3, 5, 1], h)`

Output :

`[9, 25, 1]`

Next example, define the function  $g(x) = [x, x^2, x^3]$ , input :

`g := (x) -> [x, x^2, x^3]`

then :

`apply(g, [3, 5, 1])`

or :

`of(g, [3, 5, 1])`

or :

`map([3, 5, 1], g)`

Output :

`[[3, 9, 27], [5, 25, 125], [1, 1, 1]]`

**Warning!!!** first purge  $x$  if  $x$  is not symbolic.

Note that if  $l1, l2, l3$  are lists `sizes([l1, l2, l3])` is equivalent to `map(size, [l1, l2, l3])`.

### 5.43.37 Apply a bivariate function to the elements of two lists : `zip`

`zip` applies a bivariate function to the elements of 2 lists.

Input :

`zip('sum', [a, b, c, d], [1, 2, 3, 4])`

Output :

`[a+1, b+2, c+3, d+4]`

Input :

`zip((x, y) -> x^2 + y^2, [4, 2, 1], [3, 5, 1])`

or :

`f := (x, y) -> x^2 + y^2`

then,

```
zip(f, [4, 2, 1], [3, 5, 1])
```

Output :

```
[25, 29, 2]
```

Input :

```
f := (x, y) -> [x^2 + y^2, x + y]
```

then :

```
zip(f, [4, 2, 1], [3, 5, 1])
```

Output :

```
[[25, 7], [29, 7], [2, 2]]
```

### 5.43.38 Fold operators : foldl, foldr

The fold operators `foldl` and `foldr` both take a binary operator, identifier or function  $R$  as the first argument followed by an argument  $I$  and an arbitrary number of arguments  $a, b, c, \dots$ , like for example `foldl(R, I, a, b, c, \dots)`.

The left-fold operator `foldl` composes a binary operator  $R$  with initial value  $I$  onto the arguments  $a, b, \dots$  (which may be zero in number), associating from the left. For example, input :

```
foldl(R, I, a, b, c)
```

Output :

```
R(R(R(I, a), b), c)
```

The right-fold operator `foldr` is similar but associates operands from the right. For example, input :

```
foldr(R, I, a, b, c)
```

Output :

```
R(a, R(b, R(c, I)))
```

### 5.43.39 Make a list with zeros : newList

`newList(n)` makes a list of  $n$  zeros.

Input :

```
newList(3)
```

Output :

```
[0, 0, 0]
```

### 5.43.40 Make a list of integers: `range`

The `range` command takes one, two or three arguments.

- For one argument, the argument must be a non-negative integer  $n$ . `range` will then return the list  $[0, 1, \dots, n - 1]$

Input:

```
range(5)
```

Output:

```
[0, 1, 2, 3, 4]
```

- For two arguments, the arguments must be two numbers  $a$  and  $b$ , with  $a \leq b$ . `range` will then return the list  $[a, a + 1, \dots]$  up to, but not including,  $b$ .

Input:

```
range(4, 10)
```

Output:

```
[4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
```

- For three arguments, the arguments must be three numbers  $a$ ,  $b$  and a non-zero  $p$ . `range` will then return the list  $[a, a + p, a + 2p, \dots]$  up to, but not including,  $b$ . If  $p > 0$ , then  $a \leq b$ ; if  $p < 0$ , then  $a \geq b$ .

Input:

```
range(4, 13, 2)
```

Output:

```
[4, 6, 8, 10, 12]
```

Input:

```
range(10, 4, -1)
```

Output:

```
[10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5]
```

The `range` command can be used to create a list of values  $f(k)$ , where  $k$  is an integer satisfying a certain condition.

- You can list the values of an expression in a variable which goes over a range defined by `range`.

Input:

```
[k^2 + k for k in range(10)]
```

Output:

```
[0, 2, 6, 12, 20, 30, 42, 56, 72, 90]
```

- You can list the values of an expression in a variable which goes over a range defined by `range` and which satisfies a given condition.

Input:

```
[k for k in range (4,10) if isprime(k)]
```

Output:

```
[5, 7]
```

Input:

```
[k^2 + k for k in range (1,10,2) if isprime(k)]
```

Output:

```
[12, 30, 56]
```

#### 5.43.41 Make a list with a function : `makelist`

`makelist` takes as argument a function `f`, the bounds `a, b` of an index variable and a step `p` (by default 1 or -1 depending on the bounds order).

`makelist` makes the list `[f(a), f(a+p) ... f(a+k*p)]` with `k` such that :  $a < a + k * p \leq b < a + (k + 1) * p$  or  $a > a + k * p \geq b > a + (k + 1) * p$ .

Input :

```
makelist(x->x^2, 3, 5)
```

or

```
makelist(x->x^2, 3, 5, 1)
```

or first define the function  $h(x) = x^2$  by `h(x) := x^2` then input

```
makelist(h, 3, 5, 1)
```

Output :

```
[9, 16, 25]
```

Input :

```
makelist(x->x^2, 3, 6, 2)
```

Output :

```
[9, 25]
```

**Warning!!!** purge `x` if `x` is not symbolic.

**5.43.42 Make a random vector or list : randvector**

`randvector` takes as argument an integer  $n$  and optionally a second argument, either an integer  $k$  or the quoted name of a random distribution law (see also [5.29.28](#)).

`randvector` returns a vector of size  $n$  containing random integers uniformly distributed between -99 and +99 (default), or between 0 and  $k - 1$  or containing random integers according to the law put between quotes.

Input :

```
randvector(3)
```

Output :

```
[-54, 78, -29]
```

Input :

```
randvector(3, 5)
```

or :

```
randvector(3, 'rand(5)')
```

Output :

```
[1, 2, 4]
```

Input :

```
randvector(3, 'randnorm(0,1)')
```

Output :

```
[1.39091705476, -0.136794772167, 0.187312440336]
```

Input :

```
randvector(3, 2..4)
```

Output :

```
[3.92450003885, 3.50059241243, 2.7322040787]
```

**5.43.43 List of differences of consecutive terms : deltalist**

`deltalist` takes as argument a list.

`deltalist` returns the list of the difference of all pairs of consecutive terms of this list.

Input :

```
deltalist([5, 8, 1, 9])
```

Output :

```
[3, -7, 8]
```

**5.43.44 Make a matrix with a list : list2mat**

`list2mat` takes as argument a list `l` and an integer `p`.

`list2mat` returns a matrix having `p` columns by cutting the list `l` in rows of length `p`. The matrix is filled with 0s if the size of `l` is not a multiple of `p`.

Input :

```
list2mat([5,8,1,9,5,6],2)
```

Output :

```
[[5,8],[1,9],[5,6]]
```

Input :

```
list2mat([5,8,1,9],3)
```

Output :

```
[[5,8,1],[9,0,0]]
```

**Remark**

Xcas displays matrix with [ and ] and lists with [ and ] as delimiters (the vertical bar of the brackets are thicker for matrices).

**5.43.45 Make a list with a matrix : mat2list**

`mat2list` takes as argument a matrix.

`mat2list` returns the list of the coefficients of this matrix.

Input :

```
mat2list([[5,8],[1,9]])
```

Output :

```
[5,8,1,9]
```

**5.44 Functions for vectors****5.44.1 Norms of a vector : maxnorm l1norm l2norm norm**

The instructions to compute the different norm of a vector are :

- `maxnorm` returns the  $l^\infty$  norm of a vector, defined as the maximum of the absolute values of its coordinates.

Input :

```
maxnorm([3,-4,2])
```

Output :

- `l1norm` returns the  $l^1$  norm of a vector defined as the sum of the absolute values of its coordinates.

Input :

```
l1norm([3,-4,2])
```

Output :

```
9
```

Indeed :  $x=3$ ,  $y=-4$ ,  $z=2$  and  $9=|x|+|y|+|z|$ .

- `norm` or `l2norm` returns the  $l^2$  norm of a vector defined as the square root of the sum of the squares of its coordinates.

Input :

```
norm([3,-4,2])
```

Output :

```
sqrt(29)
```

Indeed :  $x=3$ ,  $y=-4$ ,  $z=2$  and  $29 = |x|^2 + |y|^2 + |z|^2$ .

#### 5.44.2 Normalize a vector : `normalize unitV`

`normalize` or `unitV` takes as argument a vector.

`normalize` or `unitV` normalizes this vector for the  $l^2$  norm (the square root of the sum of the squares of its coordinates).

Input :

```
normalize([3,4,5])
```

Output :

```
[3/(5*sqrt(2)),4/(5*sqrt(2)),5/(5*sqrt(2))]
```

Indeed :  $x=3$ ,  $y=4$ ,  $z=5$  and  $50 = |x|^2 + |y|^2 + |z|^2$ .

#### 5.44.3 Term by term sum of two lists : `+ .+`

The infix operator `+` or `.+` and the prefixed operator `'+'` returns the term by term sum of two lists.

If the two lists do not have the same size, the smaller list is completed with zeros. Note the difference with sequences : if the infix operator `+` or the prefixed operator `'+'` takes as arguments two sequences, it merges the sequences, hence return the sum of all the terms of the two sequences.

Input :

```
[1,2,3]+[4,3,5]
```

or :

[1, 2, 3] .+[4, 3, 5]

or :

'+' ([1, 2, 3], [4, 3, 5])

or :

'+' ([[1, 2, 3], [4, 3, 5]])

Output :

[5, 5, 8]

Input :

[1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]+[4, 3, 5]

or :

'+' ([1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6], [4, 3, 5])

or :

'+' ([[1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6], [4, 3, 5]])

Output :

[5, 5, 8, 4, 5, 6]

### **Warning !**

When the operator + is prefixed, it should be quoted (' +' ).

#### **5.44.4 Term by term difference of two lists : - .-**

The infix operator - or .- and the prefixed operator '- ' returns the term by term difference of two lists.

If the two lists do not have the same size, the smaller list is completed with zeros.

Input :

[1, 2, 3]-[4, 3, 5]

or :

[1, 2, 3] .-[4, 3, 5]

or :

'-' ([1, 2, 3], [4, 3, 5])

or :

'-' ([[1, 2, 3], [4, 3, 5]])

Output :

[-3, -1, -2]

### **Warning !**

When the operator - is prefixed, it should be quoted (' -').

**5.44.5 Term by term product of two lists : .\***

The infix operator `.*` returns the term by term product of two lists of the same size.

Input :

```
[1, 2, 3] .* [4, 3, 5]
```

Output :

```
[4, 6, 15]
```

**5.44.6 Term by term quotient of two lists : ./**

The infix operator `./` returns the term by term quotient of two lists of the same size.

Input :

```
[1, 2, 3] ./ [4, 3, 5]
```

Output :

```
[1/4, 2/3, 3/5]
```

**5.44.7 Scalar product : scalar\_product \* dotprod dot dotP  
scalar\_Product**

`dot` or `dotP` or `dotprod` or `scalar_product` or `scalarProduct` or the infix operator `*` takes as argument two vectors.

`dot` or `dotP` or `dotprod` or `scalar_product` or `scalarProduct` or `*` returns the scalar product of these two vectors.

Input :

```
dot ([1, 2, 3], [4, 3, 5])
```

or :

```
scalar_product ([1, 2, 3], [4, 3, 5])
```

or :

```
[1, 2, 3] * [4, 3, 5]
```

or :

```
'*' ([1, 2, 3], [4, 3, 5])
```

Output :

25

Indeed  $25=1*4+2*3+3*5$ .

Note that `*` may be used to find the product of two polynomials represented as list of their coefficients, but to avoid ambiguity, the polynomial lists must be `poly1[...]`.

## 5.45. STATISTICS FUNCTIONS : MEAN, VARIANCE, STDDEV, STDDEVP, MEDIAN, QUANTILE, QUARTILE

### 5.44.8 Cross product: cross crossP crossproduct

cross or crossP or crossproduct takes as argument two vectors.  
cross or crossP or crossproduct returns the cross product of these two vectors.

Input :

```
cross([1,2,3],[4,3,2])
```

Output :

```
[-5,10,-5]
```

Indeed :  $-5 = 2 * 2 - 3 * 3$ ,  $10 = -1 * 2 + 4 * 3$ ,  $-5 = 1 * 3 - 2 * 4$ .

### 5.45 Statistics functions : mean, variance, stddev, stddevp, median, quantile, quartiles, boxwhisker

The functions described here may be used if the statistics series is contained in a list. See also section [5.49.32](#) for matrices.

- mean computes the arithmetic mean of a list

Input :

```
mean([3,4,2])
```

Output :

```
3
```

Input :

```
mean([1,0,1])
```

Output

```
2/3
```

- stddev computes the standard deviation of a population, if the argument is the population.

Input :

```
stddev([3,4,2])
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2/3)
```

- stddevp computes an unbiased estimate of the standard deviation of the population, if the argument is a sample. The following relation holds:

```
stddevp(l)^2=size(l)*stddev(l)^2/(size(l)-1).
```

Input :

```
stddevp([3,4,2])
```

Output :

```
1
```

- `variance` computes the variance of a list, that is the square of `stddevp`

Input :

```
variance([3,4,2])
```

Output :

```
2/3
```

- `median` computes the median of a list.

Input :

```
median([0,1,3,4,2,5,6])
```

Output :

```
3.0
```

- `quantile` computes the deciles of a list given as first argument, where the decile is the second argument.

Input :

```
quantile([0,1,3,4,2,5,6],0.25)
```

Output the first quartile :

```
[1.0]
```

Input :

```
quantile([0,1,3,4,2,5,6],0.5)
```

Output the median :

```
[3.0]
```

Input :

```
quantile([0,1,3,4,2,5,6],0.75)
```

## 5.45. STATISTICS FUNCTIONS :MEAN, VARIANCE, STDDEV, STDDEVP, MEDIAN, QUANTILE, QUARTILE

Output the third quartile :

```
[4.0]
```

- `quartiles` computes the minimum, the first quartile, the median, the third quartile and the maximum of a list.

Input :

```
quartiles([0,1,3,4,2,5,6])
```

Output :

```
[[0.0],[1.0],[3.0],[4.0],[6.0]]
```

- `boxwhisker` draws the whisker box of a statistics series stored in a list.

Input :

```
boxwhisker([0,1,3,4,2,5,6])
```

Output

the graph of the whisker box of this statistic  
list

### Example

Define the list A by:

```
A:=[0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11]
```

Outputs :

1. `11/2` for `mean(A)`
2. `sqrt(143/12)` for `stddev(A)`
3. `0` for `min(A)`
4. `[1.0]` for `quantile(A, 0.1)`
5. `[2.0]` for `quantile(A, 0.25)`
6. `[5.0]` for `median(A)` or for `quantile(A, 0.5)`
7. `[8.0]` for `quantile(A, 0.75)`
8. `[9.0]` for `quantile(A, 0.9)`
9. `11` for `max(A)`
10. `[[0.0],[2.0],[5.0],[8.0],[11.0]]` for `quartiles(A)`

## 5.46 Table with strings as indexes : `table`

A table is an associative container (or map), it is used to store information associated to indexes which are much more general than integers, like strings or sequences. It may be used for example to store a table of phone numbers indexed by names.

In Xcas, the indexes in a table may be any kind of Xcas objects. Access is done by a binary search algorithm, where the sorting function first sorts by type then uses an order for each type (e.g.  $<$  for numeric types, lexicographic order for strings, etc.)

`table` takes as argument a list or a sequence of equalities `index_name=element_value`. `table` returns this table.

Input :

```
T:=table(3=-10,"a"=10,"b"=20,"c"=30,"d"=40)
```

Input :

```
T["b"]
```

Output :

```
20
```

Input :

```
T[3]
```

Output :

```
-10
```

### Remark

If you assign `T[n]:= . . .` where `T` is a variable name and `n` an integer

- if the variable name was assigned to a list or a sequence, then the  $n$ -th element of `T` is modified,
- if the variable name was not assigned, a table `T` is created with one entry (corresponding to the index  $n$ ). Note that after the assignation `T` is not a list, despite the fact that  $n$  was an integer.

## 5.47 Usual matrix

A matrix is represented by a list of lists, all having the same size. In the Xcas answers, the matrix delimiters are `[]` (bold brackets). For example, `[1,2,3]` is the matrix `[[1,2,3]]` with only one row, unlike `[1,2,3]` (normal brackets) which is the list `[1,2,3]`.

In this document, the input notation (`[[1,2,3]]`) will be used for input and output.

**5.47.1 Identity matrix :** idn identity

`idn` takes as argument an integer  $n$  or a square matrix.

`idn` returns the identity matrix of size  $n$  or of the same size as the matrix argument.

Input :

```
idn(2)
```

Output :

```
[[1, 0], [0, 1]]
```

Input :

```
idn(3)
```

Output :

```
[[1, 0, 0], [0, 1, 0], [0, 0, 1]]
```

**5.47.2 Zero matrix :** newMat matrix

`newMat(n, p)` or `matrix(n, p)` takes as argument two integers.

`newMat(n, p)` returns the zero matrix with  $n$  rows and  $p$  columns.

Input :

```
newMat(4, 3)
```

Output :

```
[[0, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0]]
```

**5.47.3 Random matrix :** ranm randMat randmatrix

`ranm` or `randMat` or `randmatrix` takes as argument an integer  $n$  or two integers  $n, m$  and optionally a third argument, either an integer  $k$  or the quoted name of a random distribution law (see also [5.29.28](#) and [5.43.42](#)).

`ranm` returns a vector of size  $n$  or a matrix of size  $n \times m$  containing random integers uniformly distributed between -99 and +99 (default), or between 0 and  $k - 1$  or a matrix of size  $n \times m$  containing random integers according to the law put between quotes.

Input :

```
ranm(3)
```

Output :

```
[-54, 78, -29]
```

Input :

```
ranm(2, 4)
```

Output :

```
[[27, -29, 37, -66], [-11, 76, 65, -33]]
```

Input :

```
ranm(2,4,3)
```

or :

```
ranm(2,4,'rand(3)')
```

Output :

```
[[0,1,1,0],[0,1,2,0]]
```

Input :

```
ranm(2,4,'randnorm(0,1)')
```

Output :

```
[[1.83785427742,0.793007112053,-0.978388964902,-1.88602023857],  
[-1.50900874199,-0.241173369698,0.311373795585,-0.532752431454]]
```

Input :

```
ranm(2,4,2..4)
```

Output :

```
[[2.00549363438,3.03381264955,2.06539073586,2.04844321217],  
[3.88383254968,3.28664474655,3.76909781061,2.39113253355]]
```

#### **5.47.4 Diagonal of a matrix or matrix of a diagonal :** BlockDiagonal diag

diag or BlockDiagonal takes as argument a matrix  $A$  or a list  $l$ .

diag returns the diagonal of  $A$  or the diagonal matrix with the list  $l$  on the diagonal (and 0 elsewhere).

Input :

```
diag([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

Output :

```
[1,4]
```

Input :

```
diag([1,4])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0],[0,4]]
```

### 5.47.5 Jordan block : `JordanBlock`

`JordanBlock` takes as argument an expression  $a$  and an integer  $n$ .

`JordanBlock` returns a square matrix of size  $n$  with  $a$  on the principal diagonal, 1 above this diagonal and 0 elsewhere.

Input :

```
JordanBlock(7,3)
```

Output :

```
[[7,1,0],[0,7,1],[0,0,7]]
```

### 5.47.6 Hilbert matrix : `hilbert`

`hilbert` takes as argument an integer  $n$ .

`hilbert` returns the Hilbert matrix.

A Hilbert matrix is a square matrix of size  $n$  whose elements  $a_{j,k}$  are :

$$a_{j,k} = \frac{1}{j+k+1}, \quad 0 \leq j, 0 \leq k$$

Input :

```
hilbert(4)
```

Output :

```
[[1,1/2,1/3,1/4],[1/2,1/3,1/4,1/5],[1/3,1/4,1/5,1/6],
 [1/4,1/5,1/6,1/7]]
```

### 5.47.7 Vandermonde matrix : `vandermonde`

`vandermonde` takes as argument a vector whose components are denoted by  $x_j$  for  $j = 0..n - 1$ .

`vandermonde` returns the corresponding Vandermonde matrix (the  $k$ -th row of the matrix is the vector whose components are  $x_i^k$  for  $i = 0..n - 1$  and  $k = 0..n - 1$ ).

**Warning !**

The indices of the rows and columns begin at 0 with Xcas.

Input :

```
vandermonde([a,2,3])
```

Output (if  $a$  is symbolic else `purge(a)`) :

```
[[1,1,1],[a,2,3],[a*a,4,9]]
```

## 5.48 Creating matrices and extracting elements

### 5.48.1 Creating matrices and modifying elements by assignment

You can give a matrix a name with assignment.

Input:

```
A := [[1,2,6], [3,4,8], [1,0,1]]
```

The rows are then accessed with indices.

Input:

```
A[0]
```

Output:

```
[1,2,6]
```

Individual elements are simply elements of the rows.

Input:

```
A[0][1]
```

Output:

```
2
```

This can be abbreviated by listing the row and column separated by a comma.

Input:

```
A[0,1]
```

Output:

```
2
```

The indexing begins with 0; if you want the indexing to begin with 1 by enclosing them in double brackets.

Input:

```
A[[1,2]]
```

Output:

```
2
```

You can use a range of indices to get submatrices.

Input:

```
A[0..2,1]
```

Output:

```
[2,4,0]
```

Input:

```
A[0..2,1..2]
```

Output:

```
[[2,6],[4,8],[0,1]]
```

Input:

```
A[0..1,1..2]
```

Output:

```
[[2,6],[4,8]]
```

An index of -1 returns the last element of a list, an index of -2 the second to last element, etc.

Input:

```
A[-1]
```

Output:

```
[1,0,1]
```

Input:

```
A[1,-1]
```

Output:

```
8
```

Individual elements of a matrix can be changed by assignment.

Input:

```
A[0,1] := 5
```

then:

```
A
```

Output:

```
[[1,5,6],[3,4,8],[1,0,1]]
```

### 5.48.2 Changing a matrix by multi-assignment

You can use assignment to change several entries of a matrix at once. For example, to create a diagonal matrix with a diagonal of [1, 2, 3]:

Input:

```
M := matrix(3,3)
```

Output:

```
[[0,0,0],[0,0,0],[0,0,0]]
```

Input:

```
M[0..2,0..2] := [1,2,3]
```

Output:

```
matrix[[1,0,0],[0,2,0],[0,0,3]]
```

To make the last column [4, 5, 6]:

Input:

```
M[0..2,2] := [4,5,6]
```

Output:

```
matrix[[1,0,4],[0,2,5],[0,0,6]]
```

### 5.48.3 Build a matrix with a function : makemat

`makemat` takes three arguments :

- a function of two variables  $j$  and  $k$  which should return the value of  $a_{j,k}$ , the element of row index  $j$  and column index  $k$  of the matrix to be built.
- two integers  $n$  and  $p$ .

`makemat` returns the matrix  $A = (a_{j,k})$  ( $j = 0..n - 1$  and  $k = 0..p - 1$ ) of dimension  $n \times p$ .

Input :

```
makemat( (j, k) ->j+k, 4, 3)
```

or first define the  $h$  function:

```
h(j, k) := j+k
```

then, input:

```
makemat(h, 4, 3)
```

Output :

```
[[0, 1, 2], [1, 2, 3], [2, 3, 4], [3, 4, 5]]
```

Note that the indices are counted starting from 0.

### 5.48.4 Define a matrix : matrix

`matrix` takes three arguments :

- two integers  $n$  and  $p$ .
- a function of two variables  $j$  and  $k$  which should return the value of  $a_{j,k}$ , the element of row index  $j$  and column index  $k$  of the matrix to be build.

`matrix` returns the matrix  $A = (a_{j,k})$  ( $j = 1..n$  and  $k = 1..p$ ) of dimension  $n \times p$ .

Input :

```
matrix(4, 3, (j, k) ->j+k)
```

or first define the  $h$  function:

```
h(j, k) := j+k
```

then, input:

```
matrix(4, 3, h)
```

Output :

```
[[2, 3, 4], [3, 4, 5], [4, 5, 6], [5, 6, 7]]
```

Note the argument order and the fact that the indices are counted starting from 1. If the last argument is not provided, it defaults to 0.

### 5.48.5 Modify an element or row of a matrix assigned to a variable:

`: :=, =<`

For named matrices, the elements can be changed by assignment. Recall the elements are indexed starting at 0, using double brackets allows you to use indices starting at 1.

Input:

```
A := [[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6]]
```

Output:

```
[[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6]]
```

Input:

```
A[0, 2] := 7
```

then:

```
A
```

Output:

```
[[1, 2, 7], [4, 5, 6]]
```

Input:

```
A[[1, 2]] := 9
```

then:

```
A
```

Output:

```
[[1, 9, 7], [4, 5, 6]]
```

When an element of a matrix is changed with the `:=` assignment, a new copy of the matrix is created with the modified element. Particularly for large matrices, it is more efficient to use the `=<` assignment, which will change the element of the matrix without making a copy. For example, defining A as

Input:

```
A := [[4, 5], [2, 6]]
```

the following commands will all return the matrix A with the element in the second row, first column, changed to 3.

Input:

```
A[1, 0] := 3
```

or:

```
A[1, 0] = < 3
```

or:

A[[2,1]] := 3

or:

A[[2,1]] =< 3

then:

A

Output:

[[4,5],[3,6]]

Larger parts of a matrix can be changed simultaneously. Letting A := [[4,5],[2,6]] again, the following commands will change the second row to [3,7]

Input:

A[1] := [3,7]

or:

A[1] =< [3,7]

or:

A[[2]] := [3,7]

or:

A[[2]] =< [3,7]

The =< assignment must be used carefully, since it not only modifies a matrix A, it modifies all objects pointing to the matrix. In a program, initialization should contain a line like A := copy(B), so modifications done on A don't affect B, and modifications done on B don't affect A. For example,

Input:

B := [[4,5],[2,6]]

then:

A := B

or

Input:

A =< B

creates two matrices equal to [[4,5],[2,6]]. Then  
Input:

A[1] =< [3,7]

or:

B[1] =< [3,7]

will transform both A and B to  $\begin{bmatrix} 4, 5 \\ 3, 7 \end{bmatrix}$ . On the other hand, creating A and B with

Input:

```
B := [[4,5],[2,6]]
A := copy(B)
```

will again create two matrices equal to  $\begin{bmatrix} 4, 5 \\ 2, 6 \end{bmatrix}$ . But

Input:

```
A[1] =< [3,7]
```

will change A to  $\begin{bmatrix} 4, 5 \\ 3, 7 \end{bmatrix}$ , but B will still be  $\begin{bmatrix} 4, 5 \\ 2, 6 \end{bmatrix}$ .

## 5.49 Arithmetic and matrices

### 5.49.1 Evaluate a matrix : evalm

`evalm` is used in Maple to evaluate a matrix. In Xcas, matrices are evaluated by default, the command `evalm` is only available for compatibility, it is equivalent to `eval`.

### 5.49.2 Addition and subtraction of two matrices : + - .+ .-

The infix operator `+` or `.+` (resp. `-` or `.-`) are used for the addition (resp. subtraction) of two matrices.

Input :

```
[[1,2],[3,4]] + [[5,6],[7,8]]
```

Output :

```
[[6,8],[10,12]]
```

Input :

```
[[1,2],[3,4]] - [[5,6],[7,8]]
```

Output :

```
[[ -4,-4],[-4,-4]]
```

#### Remark

`+` can be used as a prefixed operator, in that case `+` must be quoted (`'+'`).

Input :

```
'+'([[1,2],[3,4]],[[5,6],[7,8]],[[2,2],[3,3]])
```

Output :

```
[[8,10],[13,15]]
```

### 5.49.3 Multiplication of two matrices : `*` & `*`

The infix operator `*` (or `&*`) is used for the multiplication of two matrices.

Input :

```
[[1,2],[3,4]] * [[5,6],[7,8]]
```

or :

```
[[1,2],[3,4]] &* [[5,6],[7,8]]
```

Output :

```
[[19,22],[43,50]]
```

### 5.49.4 Addition of elements of a column of a matrix : `sum`

`sum` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`sum` returns the list whose elements are the sum of the elements of each column of the matrix  $A$ .

Input :

```
sum([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

Output :

```
[4,6]
```

### 5.49.5 Cumulated sum of elements of each column of a matrix : `cumSum`

`cumSum` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`cumSum` returns the matrix whose columns are the cumulated sum of the elements of the corresponding column of the matrix  $A$ .

Input :

```
cumSum([[1,2],[3,4],[5,6]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,2],[4,6],[9,12]]
```

since the cumulated sums are : 1,  $1+3=4$ ,  $1+3+5=9$  and 2,  $2+4=6$ ,  $2+4+6=12$ .

### 5.49.6 Multiplication of elements of each column of a matrix : `product`

`product` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`product` returns the list whose elements are the product of the elements of each column of the matrix  $A$  (see also [5.43.35](#) and [5.49.8](#)).

Input :

```
product([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

Output :

```
[3,8]
```

**5.49.7 Power of a matrix : ^ &^**

The infix operator `^` (or `&^`) is used to raise a matrix to an integral power.

Input :

```
[[1, 2], [3, 4]] ^ 5
```

or :

```
[[1, 2], [3, 4]] &^ 5
```

Output :

```
[[1069, 1558], [2337, 3406]]
```

**5.49.8 Hadamard product : hadamard, product**

`hadamard` (or `product`) takes as arguments two matrices  $A$  and  $B$  of the same size.

`hadamard` (or `product`) returns the matrix where each term is the term by term product of  $A$  and  $B$ .

Input :

```
hadamard([[1, 2], [3, 4]], [[5, 6], [7, 8]])
```

Output :

```
[[5, 12], [21, 32]]
```

See also [5.43.35](#) and [5.49.6](#) for `product`.

**5.49.9 Hadamard product (infix version): .\***

`.*` takes as arguments two matrices or two lists  $A$  and  $B$  of the same size.

`.*` is an infix operator that returns the matrix or the list where each term is the term by term product of the corresponding terms of  $A$  and  $B$ .

Input :

```
[[1, 2], [3, 4]] .* [[5, 6], [7, 8]]
```

Output :

```
[[5, 12], [21, 32]]
```

Input :

```
[1, 2, 3, 4] .* [5, 6, 7, 8]
```

Output :

```
[5, 12, 21, 32]
```

**5.49.10 Hadamard division (infix version): . /**

. / takes as arguments two matrices or two lists  $A$  and  $B$  of the same size.

. / is an infix operator that returns the matrix or the list where each term is the term by term division of the corresponding terms of  $A$  and  $B$ .

Input :

```
[[1, 2], [3, 4]] . / [[5, 6], [7, 8]]
```

Output :

```
[[1/5, 1/3], [3/7, 1/2]]
```

**5.49.11 Hadamard power (infix version): . ^**

. ^ takes as arguments a matrix or a list  $A$  and a real  $b$ .

. ^ is an infix operator that returns the matrix or the list where each term is the corresponding term of  $A$  raised to the power  $b$ .

Input :

```
[[1, 2], [3, 4]] . ^ 2
```

Output :

```
[[1, 4], [9, 16]]
```

**5.49.12 Extracting element(s) of a matrix : [] at**

Recall that a matrix is a list of lists with the same size.

Input :

```
A:=[[3, 4, 5], [1, 2, 6]]
```

Output :

```
[[3, 4, 5], [1, 2, 6]]
```

The prefixed function `at` or the index notation `[...]` is used to access to an element or a row or a column of a matrix:

- To extract an element, put the matrix and then, between square brackets put its row index, a comma, and its column index. In Xcas mode the first index is 0, in other modes the first index is 1.

Input :

```
[[3, 4, 5], [1, 2, 6]][0, 1]
```

or :

```
A[0, 1]
```

or :

```
A[0][1]
```

or :

`at (A, [0, 1])`

Output :

4

- To extract a row of the matrix A, put the matrix and then, between square brackets put the row index, input :

`[ [3, 4, 5], [1, 2, 6] ] [0]`

or :

`A[0]`

or :

`at (A, 0)`

Output :

`[3, 4, 2]`

- To extract a part of a row, put two arguments between the square brackets : the row index and an interval to designate the selected columns.

Input :

`A[1, 0..2]`

Output :

`[1, 2, 6]`

Input :

`A[1, 1..2]`

Output :

`[2, 6]`

- To extract a column of the matrix A, first transpose A (`transpose (A)`) then extract the row like above.

Input :

`tran (A) [1]`

or :

```
at(tran(A),1)
```

Output :

```
[4,2]
```

- To extract a part of a column of the matrix A as a list, put two arguments between the square brackets : an index interval to designate the selected rows and the column index.

Input :

```
A[0..0,1]
```

Output :

```
[4]
```

This may be used to extract a full column, by specifying all the rows as an index interval.

Input :

```
A[0..1,1]
```

Output :

```
[4,2]
```

- To extract a sub-matrix of a matrix, put between the square brackets two intervals : one interval for the selected rows and one interval for the selected columns.

To define the matrix A, input :

```
A:=[[3,4,5],[1,2,6]]
```

Input :

```
A[0..1,1..2]
```

Output :

```
[[4,5],[2,6]]
```

Input :

```
A[0..1,1..1]
```

Output :

```
[[4],[2]]
```

**Remark** If the second interval is omitted, the sub-matrix is made with the consecutive rows given by the first interval.

Input :

```
A[1..1]
```

Output :

```
[[1, 2, 6]]
```

You may also assign an element of a matrix using index notation, if you assign with `:=` a new copy of the matrix is created and the element is modified, if you assign with `=<`, the matrix is modified in place.

#### 5.49.13 Modify an element or a row of a matrix : `subsop`

`subsop` modifies an element or a row of a matrix. It is used mainly for Maple and MuPAD compatibility. Unlike `:=` or `=<`, it does not require the matrix to be stored in a variable.

`subsop` takes two or three arguments, **these arguments are permuted** in Maple mode.

##### 1. Modify an element

- In Xcas mode, the first index is 0  
`subsop` has two (resp. three) arguments: a matrix `A` and an equality `[r, c]=v` (resp. a matrix `A`, a list of indexes `[r, c]`, a value `v`).  
`subsop` replaces the element `A[r, c]` by `v`.

Input in Xcas mode :

```
subsop([[4, 5], [2, 6]], [1, 0]=3)
```

or :

```
subsop([[4, 5], [2, 6]], [1, 0], 3)
```

Output :

```
[[4, 5], [3, 6]]
```

##### Remark

If the matrix is stored in a variable, for example `A:=[[4, 5], [2, 6]]`, it is easier to input `A[1, 0]:=3` which modifies `A` into the matrix `[[4, 5], [3, 6]]`.

- In Mupad, TI mode, the first index is 1  
`subsop` has two (resp. three) arguments: a matrix `A` and an equality `[r, c]=v` (resp. a matrix `A`, a list of index `[r, c]`, a value `v`).  
`subsop` replaces the element `A[r, c]` by `v`.

Input in Mupad, TI mode :

```
subsop([[4, 5], [2, 6]], [2, 1]=3)
```

or :

`subsop([[4,5],[2,6]],[2,1],3)`

Output :

`[[4,5],[3,6]]`

**Remark**

If the matrix is stored in a variable, for example `A:=[[4,5],[2,6]]`, it is easier to input `A[2,1]:=3` which modifies `A` into the matrix `[[4,5],[3,6]]`.

- In Maple mode, the arguments are permuted and the first index is 1  
`subsop` has two arguments: an equality `[r,c]=v` and a matrix `A`. `subsop` replaces the element `A[r,c]` by `v`.

Input in Maple mode

`subsop([2,1]=3, [[4,5],[2,6]])`

Output :

`[[4,5],[3,6]]`

**Remark**

If the matrix is stored in a variable, for example `A:=[[4,5],[2,6]]`, it is easier to input `A[2,1]:=3` which modifies `A` into the matrix `[[4,5],[3,6]]`.

## 2. Modify a row

- in Xcas mode, the first index is 0  
`subsop` takes two arguments : a matrix and an equality (the index of the row to be modified, the = sign and the new row value).

Input in Xcas mode :

`subsop([[4,5],[2,6]],1=[3,3])`

Output :

`[[4,5],[3,3]]`

**Remark**

If the matrix is stored in a variable, for example `A:=[[4,5],[2,6]]`, it is easier to input `A[1]:=[3,3]` which modifies `A` into the matrix `[[4,5],[3,3]]`.

- In Mupad, TI mode, the first index is 1  
`subsop` takes two arguments : a matrix and an equality (the index of the row to be modified, the = sign and the new row value).

Input in Mupad, TI mode :

`subsop([[4,5],[2,6]],2=[3,3])`

Output :

`[[4,5],[3,3]]`

**Remark**

If the matrix is stored in a variable, for example `A:=[[4,5],[2,6]]`, it is easier to input `A[2]:=[3,3]` which modifies `A` into the matrix `[[4,5],[3,3]]`.

- in Maple mode, the arguments are permuted and the first index is 1 : subsop takes two arguments : an equality (the index of the row to be modified, the = sign and the new row value) and a matrix.

Input in Maple mode :

```
subsop(2=[3,3], [[4,5], [2,6]])
```

Output :

```
[[4,5], [3,3]]
```

### Remark

If the matrix is stored in a variable, for example  $A := [[4, 5], [2, 6]]$ , it is easier to input  $A[2] := [3, 3]$  which modifies  $A$  into the matrix  $[[4, 5], [3, 3]]$ .

### Remark

Note also that subsop with a 'n=NULL' argument deletes row number n. In Xcas mode input :

```
subsop([[4,5], [2,6]], '1=NULL')
```

Output :

```
[[4,5]]
```

### 5.49.14 Extract rows or columns of a matrix (Maple compatibility) :

`row` `col`

`row` (resp. `col`) extracts one or several rows (resp. columns) of a matrix.  
`row` (resp. `col`) takes 2 arguments : a matrix  $A$ , and an integer  $n$  or an interval  $n_1..n_2$ .

`row` (resp. `col`) returns the row (resp. column) of index  $n$  of  $A$ , or the sequence of rows (resp. columns) of index from  $n_1$  to  $n_2$  of  $A$ .

Input :

```
row([[1,2,3], [4,5,6], [7,8,9]], 1)
```

Output :

```
[4,5,6]
```

Input :

```
row([[1,2,3], [4,5,6], [7,8,9]], 0..1)
```

Output :

```
([1,2,3], [4,5,6])
```

Input :

```
col([[1,2,3], [4,5,6], [7,8,9]], 1)
```

Output :

[2,5,8]

Input :

```
col([[1,2,3],[4,5,6],[7,8,9]],0..1)
```

Output :

```
([1,4,7,[2,5,8])
```

#### **5.49.15 Remove rows or columns of a matrix : delrows delcols**

delrows (resp. delcols) removes one or several rows (resp. columns) of a matrix.

delrows (resp. delcols) takes 2 arguments : a matrix  $A$ , and an interval  $n_1..n_2$ .

delrows (resp. delcols) returns the matrix where the rows (resp. columns) of index from  $n_1$  to  $n_2$  of  $A$  are removed.

Input :

```
delrows([[1,2,3],[4,5,6],[7,8,9]],1..1)
```

Output :

```
[[1,2,3],[7,8,9]]
```

Input :

```
delrows([[1,2,3],[4,5,6],[7,8,9]],0..1)
```

Output :

```
[[7,8,9]]
```

Input :

```
delcols([[1,2,3],[4,5,6],[7,8,9]],1..1)
```

Output :

```
[[1,3],[4,6],[7,9]]
```

Input :

```
delcols([[1,2,3],[4,5,6],[7,8,9]],0..1)
```

Output :

```
[[3],[6],[9]]
```

**5.49.16 Extract a sub-matrix of a matrix (TI compatibility) : subMat**

subMat takes 5 arguments : a matrix  $A$ , and 4 integers  $nl1, nc1, nl2, nc2$ , where  $nl1$  is the index of the first row,  $nc1$  is the index of the first column,  $nl2$  is the index of the last row and  $nc2$  is the index of the last column.

`subMat(A, nl1, nc1, nl2, nc2)` extracts the sub-matrix of the matrix  $A$  with first element  $A[nl1, nc1]$  and last element  $A[nl2, nc2]$ .

Define the matrix  $A$  :

```
A := [ [ 3, 4, 5 ], [ 1, 2, 6 ] ]
```

Input :

```
subMat(A, 0, 1, 1, 2)
```

Output :

```
[ [ 4, 5 ], [ 2, 6 ] ]
```

Input :

```
subMat(A, 0, 1, 1, 1)
```

Output :

```
[ [ 4 ], [ 2 ] ]
```

By default  $nl1 = 0, nc1 = 0, nl2 = \text{nrows}(A) - 1$  and  $nc2 = \text{ncols}(A) - 1$

Input :

```
subMat(A, 1)
```

or :

```
subMat(A, 1, 0)
```

or :

```
subMat(A, 1, 0, 1)
```

or :

```
subMat(A, 1, 0, 1, 2)
```

Output :

```
[ [ 1, 2, 6 ] ]
```

### 5.49.17 Resize a matrix or vector:REDIM, redim

The REDIM (or redim) command takes two arguments. They are either a matrix and a list of two integers, or a vector and an integer.

REDIM returns the matrix or vector resized according to the second argument; removing elements to make it shorter, if necessary, or adding 0s to make it larger.

Input:

```
REDIM([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]],[5,4])
```

Output:

```
[[4,1,-2,0],[1,2,-1,0],[2,1,0,0],[0,0,0,0],[0,0,0,0]]
```

Input:

```
REDIM([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]],[2,1])
```

Output:

```
[[4],[1]]
```

Input:

```
REDIM([4,1,-2,1,2,-1],10)
```

Output:

```
[4,1,-2,1,2,-1,0,0,0,0]
```

Input:

```
REDIM([4,1,-2,1,2,-1],3)
```

Output:

```
[4,1,-2]
```

### 5.49.18 Replacing part of a matrix or vector: REPLACE, replace

The REPLACE (or replace) command takes three arguments; either a matrix, a list of two indices, and another matrix, or a vector, a single index, and another vector.

REPLACE returns the first matrix (or vector) with the second matrix (or vector) placed at the location given by the indices, replacing the elements previously there. The second matrix (or vector) will be shrunk, if necessary, so that it fits in the first matrix (or vector).

Input:

```
REPLACE([[1,2,3],[4,5,6]],[0,1],[[5,6],[7,8]])
```

Output:

```
[[1,5,6],[4,7,8]]
```

Input:

```
REPLACE([[1,2,3],[4,5,6]],[1,2],[[7,8],[9,0]])
```

Output:

```
[[1,2,3],[4,5,7]]
```

Input:

```
REPLACE([4,1,-2,1,2,-1],2,[10,11])
```

Output:

```
[4,1,10,11,2,-1]
```

Input:

```
REPLACE([4,1,-2,1,2,-1],1,[10,11,13])
```

Output:

```
[4,10,11,13,2,-1]
```

#### 5.49.19 Add a row to another row : `rowAdd`

`rowAdd` takes three arguments : a matrix  $A$  and two integers  $n1$  and  $n2$ .

`rowAdd` returns the matrix obtained by replacing in  $A$ , the row of index  $n2$  by the sum of the rows of index  $n1$  and  $n2$ .

Input :

```
rowAdd([[1,2],[3,4]],0,1)
```

Output :

```
[[1,2],[4,6]]
```

#### 5.49.20 Multiply a row by an expression : `mRow`, `scale`, `SCALE`

`mRow` takes three arguments : an expression, a matrix  $A$  and an integer  $n$ .

`mRow` returns the matrix obtained by replacing in  $A$ , the row of index  $n$  by the product of the row of index  $n$  by the expression.

Input :

```
mRow(12,[[1,2],[3,4]],1)
```

Output :

```
[[1,2],[36,48]]
```

The `scale` (or `SCALE`) command is the same as `mRow` except that it takes the arguments in a different order; the matrix comes first, then the expression, then the integer.

Input:

```
scale([[1,2],[3,4]],12,1)
```

Output:

```
[[1,2],[36,48]]
```

**5.49.21 Add  $k$  times a row to an another row :** mRowAdd, scaleadd, SCALEADD

mRowAdd takes four arguments : a real  $k$ , a matrix  $A$  and two integers  $n1$  and  $n2$ . mRowAdd returns the matrix obtained by replacing in  $A$ , the row of index  $n2$  by the sum of the row of index  $n2$  and  $k$  times the row of index  $n1$ .

Input :

```
mRowAdd(1.1, [[5, 7], [3, 4], [1, 2]], 1, 2)
```

Output :

```
[[5, 7], [3, 4], [4.3, 6.4]]
```

The scaleadd (or SCALEADD) command is the same as mRowAdd, except that it takes the arguments in a different order; the matrix comes first, then the real number, then the two integers.

Input:

```
scaleadd([[5, 7], [3, 4], [1, 2]], 1.1, 1, 2)
```

Output:

```
[[5, 7], [3, 4], [4.3, 6.4]]
```

**5.49.22 Exchange two rows :** rowSwap, rowswap, swaprow

rowSwap (or rowswap or swaprow) takes three arguments : a matrix  $A$  and two integers  $n1$  and  $n2$ .

rowSwap returns the matrix obtained by exchanging in  $A$ , the row of index  $n1$  with the row of index  $n2$ .

Input :

```
rowSwap([[1, 2], [3, 4]], 0, 1)
```

Output :

```
[[3, 4], [1, 2]]
```

**5.49.23 Exchange two columns :** colSwap, colswap, swapcol

colSwap (or colswap or swapcol) takes three arguments : a matrix  $A$  and two integers  $n1$  and  $n2$ .

colSwap returns the matrix obtained by exchanging in  $A$  the column of index  $n1$  with the column of index  $n2$ .

Input :

```
colSwap([[1, 2], [3, 4]], 0, 1)
```

Output :

```
[[2, 1], [4, 3]]
```

**5.49.24 Make a matrix with a list of matrices : blockmatrix**

`blockmatrix` takes as arguments two integers  $n, m$  and a list of size  $n * m$  of matrices of the same dimension  $p \times q$  (or more generally such that the  $m$  first matrices have the same number of rows and  $c$  columns, the  $m$  next rows have the same number of rows and  $c$  columns, and so on ...). In both cases, we have  $n$  blocks of  $c$  columns.

`blockmatrix` returns a matrix having  $c$  columns by putting these  $n$  blocks one under another (vertical gluing). If the matrix arguments have the same dimension  $p \times q$ , the answer is a matrix of dimension  $p * n \times q * m$ .

Input :

```
blockmatrix(2,3,[idn(2),idn(2),idn(2),
                idn(2),idn(2),idn(2)])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,1,0,1,0],[0,1,0,1,0,1],
 [1,0,1,0,1,0],[0,1,0,1,0,1]]
```

Input :

```
blockmatrix(3,2,[idn(2),idn(2),
                idn(2),idn(2),idn(2),idn(2)])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,1,0],[0,1,0,1],
 [1,0,1,0],[0,1,0,1],[1,0,1,0],[0,1,0,1]]
```

Input :

```
blockmatrix(2,2,[idn(2),newMat(2,3),
                newMat(3,2),idn(3)])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,0,0,0],[0,1,0,0,0],[0,0,1,0,0],
 [0,0,0,1,0],[0,0,0,0,1]]
```

Input :

```
blockmatrix(3,2,[idn(1),newMat(1,4),
                newMat(2,3),idn(2),newMat(1,2),[[1,1,1]]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,0,0,0],[0,0,0,1,0],[0,0,0,0,1],[0,0,1,1,1]]
```

Input :

```
A:=[[1,1],[1,1]];B:=[[1],[1]]
```

then :

```
blockmatrix(2,3,[2*A,3*A,4*A,5*B,newMat(2,4),6*B])
```

Output :

```
[[2,2,3,3,4,4],[2,2,3,3,4,4],
 [5,0,0,0,0,6],[5,0,0,0,0,6]]
```

**5.49.25 Make a matrix from two matrices : semi\_augment**

semi\_augment concat two matrices with the same number of columns.

Input :

```
semi_augment ([[3,4],[2,1],[0,1]],[[1,2],[4,5]])
```

Output :

```
[[3,4],[2,1],[0,1],[1,2],[4,5]]
```

Input :

```
semi_augment ([[3,4,2]],[[1,2,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[3,4,2],[1,2,4]]
```

Note the difference with concat.

Input :

```
concat ([[3,4,2]],[[1,2,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[3,4,2,1,2,4]]
```

Indeed, when the two matrices  $A$  and  $B$  have the same dimension, concat makes a matrix with the same number of rows as  $A$  and  $B$  by gluing them side by side.

Input :

```
concat ([[3,4],[2,1],[0,1]],[[1,2],[4,5]])
```

Output :

```
[[3,4],[2,1],[0,1],[1,2],[4,5]]
```

but input :

```
concat ([[3,4],[2,1]],[[1,2],[4,5]])
```

Output :

```
[[3,4,1,2],[2,1,4,5]]
```

**5.49.26 Make a matrix from two matrices : augment concat**

augment or concat concats two matrices  $A$  and  $B$  having the same number of rows, or having the same number of columns. In the first case, it returns a matrix having the same number of rows as  $A$  and  $B$  by horizontal gluing, in the second case it returns a matrix having the same number of columns by vertical gluing.

Input :

```
augment ([[3,4,5],[2,1,0]],[[1,2],[4,5]])
```

Output :

```
[ [3, 4, 5, 1, 2], [2, 1, 0, 4, 5] ]
```

Input :

```
augment( [[3, 4], [2, 1], [0, 1]], [[1, 2], [4, 5]])
```

Output :

```
[ [3, 4], [2, 1], [0, 1], [1, 2], [4, 5] ]
```

Input :

```
augment( [[3, 4, 2]], [[1, 2, 4]])
```

Output :

```
[ [3, 4, 2, 1, 2, 4] ]
```

Note that if  $A$  and  $B$  have the same dimension, `augment` makes a matrix with the same number of rows as  $A$  and  $B$  by horizontal gluing, in that case you must use `semi_augment` for vertical gluing.

Input :

```
augment( [[3, 4], [2, 1]], [[1, 2], [4, 5]])
```

Output :

```
[ [3, 4, 1, 2], [2, 1, 4, 5] ]
```

### 5.49.27 Append a column to a matrix : `border`

`border` takes as argument a matrix  $A$  of dimension  $p * q$  and a list  $b$  of size  $p$  (i.e. `nrows(A)=size(b)`).

`border` returns the matrix obtained by appending `tran(b)` as last column to the matrix  $A$ , therefore:

```
border(A,b)=tran([op(tran(A)),b])=tran(append(tran(A),b))
```

Input :

```
border( [[1, 2, 4], [3, 4, 5]], [6, 7] )
```

Output :

```
[ [1, 2, 4, 6], [3, 4, 5, 7] ]
```

Input :

```
border( [[1, 2, 3, 4], [4, 5, 6, 8], [7, 8, 9, 10]], [1, 3, 5] )
```

Output :

```
[ [1, 2, 3, 4, 1], [4, 5, 6, 8, 3], [7, 8, 9, 10, 5] ]
```

**5.49.28 Count the elements of a matrix verifying a property : count**

count takes as arguments : a real function  $f$  and a real matrix  $A$  of dimension  $p \times q$  (resp. a list  $l$  of size  $n$ ).

count returns  $f(A[0,0]) + \dots + f(A[p-1,q-1])$  (resp.  $f(l[0]) + \dots + f(l[n-1])$ )  
Hence, if  $f$  is a boolean function, count returns the number of elements of the matrix  $A$  (resp. the list  $l$ ) verifying the property  $f$ .

Input :

```
count (x->x, [[2,12], [45,3], [7,78]])
```

Output :

```
147
```

indeed:  $2+12+45+3+7+78=147$ .

Input :

```
count (x->x<10, [[2,12], [45,3], [7,78]])
```

Output :

```
3
```

**5.49.29 Count the elements equal to a given value : count\_eq**

count\_eq takes as arguments: a real and a real list or a real matrix.

count\_eq returns the number of elements of the list or matrix equal to the first argument.

Input :

```
count_eq(12, [[2,12,45], [3,7,78]])
```

Output :

```
1
```

**5.49.30 Count the elements smaller than a given value : count\_inf**

count\_inf takes as arguments: a real and a real list or a real matrix.

count\_inf returns the number of elements of the list or matrix which are strictly less than the first argument.

Input :

```
count_inf(12, [2,12,45,3,7,78])
```

Output :

```
3
```

**5.49.31 Count the elements greater than a given value : count\_sup**

count\_sup takes as arguments: a real and a real list or a real matrix.

count\_sup returns the number of elements of the list or matrix which are strictly greater to the first argument.

Input :

```
count_sup(12, [[2,12,45], [3,7,78]])
```

Output :

```
2
```

**5.49.32 Statistics functions acting on column matrices : mean, stddev, variance, median, quantile, quartiles, boxwhisker**

The following functions work on matrices, acting column by column:

- mean computes the arithmetic means of the statistical series stored in the columns of a matrix.

Input :

```
mean([[3,4,2], [1,2,6]])
```

Output is the vector of the means of each column :

```
[2,3,4]
```

Input :

```
mean([[1,0,0], [0,1,0], [0,0,1]])
```

Output

```
[1/3,1/3,1/3]
```

- stddev computes the standard deviations of the population statistical series stored in the columns of a matrix.

Input :

```
stddev([[3,4,2], [1,2,6]])
```

Output is the vector of the standard deviations of each column :

```
[1,1,2]
```

- variance computes the variances of the statistical series stored in the columns of a matrix.

Input :

```
variance([[3,4,2], [1,2,6]])
```

Output is the vector of the variance of each column :

[1,1,4]

- `median` computes the medians of the statistical series stored in the columns of a matrix.

Input :

```
median([[6,0,1,3,4,2,5],[0,1,3,4,2,5,6],[1,3,4,2,5,6,0],
[3,4,2,5,6,0,1],[4,2,5,6,0,1,3],[2,5,6,0,1,3,4]])
```

Output is the vector of the median of each column :

[3,3,4,4,4,3,4]

- `quantile` computes the deciles as specified by the second argument of the statistical series stored in the columns of a matrix.

Input :

```
quantile([[6,0,1,3,4,2,5],[0,1,3,4,2,5,6],[1,3,4,2,5,6,0],
[3,4,2,5,6,0,1],[4,2,5,6,0,1,3],[2,5,6,0,1,3,4]],0.25)
```

Output is the vector of the first quartile of each column :

[1,1,2,2,1,1,1]

Input :

```
quantile([[6,0,1,3,4,2,5],[0,1,3,4,2,5,6],[1,3,4,2,5,6,0],
[3,4,2,5,6,0,1],[4,2,5,6,0,1,3],[2,5,6,0,1,3,4]],0.75)
```

Output is the vector of the third quartile of each column :

[3,3,4,4,4,3,4]

- `quartiles` computes the minima, the first quartiles, the medians, the third quartiles and the maxima of the statistical series stored in the columns of a matrix.

Input :

```
quartiles([[6,0,1,3,4,2,5],[0,1,3,4,2,5,6],[1,3,4,2,5,6,0],
[3,4,2,5,6,0,1],[4,2,5,6,0,1,3],[2,5,6,0,1,3,4]])
```

Output is a matrix, its first row is the minima of each column, its second row is the fist quartiles of each column, its third row the medians of each column, its fourth row the third quartiles of each column and its last row the maxima of each column:

```
[[0,0,1,0,0,0,0],[1,1,2,2,1,1,1],[2,2,3,3,2,2,3],
 [3,3,4,4,4,3,4],[6,5,6,6,6,6,6]]
```

- `boxwhisker` draws the whisker boxes of the statistical series stored in the columns of a matrix .

Input :

```
boxwhisker([[6,0,1,3,4,2,5],[0,1,3,4,2,5,6],
 [1,3,4,2,5,6,0],[3,4,2,5,6,0,1],
 [4,2,5,6,0,1,3],[2,5,6,0,1,3,4]])
```

Output :

```
the drawing of the whisker boxes of the
statistical series of each column of the matrix
argument
```

#### 5.49.33 Dimension of a matrix : `dim`

`dim` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`dim` returns the list of the number of rows and columns of the matrix  $A$ .

Input :

```
dim([[1,2,3],[3,4,5]])
```

Output :

```
[2,3]
```

#### 5.49.34 Number of rows : `rowdim` `rowDim` `nrows`

`rowdim` (or `rowDim` or `nrows`) takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`rowdim` (or `rowDim` or `nrows`) returns the number of rows of the matrix  $A$ .

Input :

```
rowdim([[1,2,3],[3,4,5]])
```

or :

```
nrows([[1,2,3],[3,4,5]])
```

Output :

### 5.49.35 Number of columns : coldim colDim ncols

`coldim` (or `colDim` or `ncols`) takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`coldim` (or `colDim` or `ncols`) returns the number of columns of the matrix  $A$ .

Input :

```
coldim([[1,2,3],[3,4,5]])
```

or :

```
ncols([[1,2,3],[3,4,5]])
```

Output :

```
3
```

## 5.50 Sparse matrices

### 5.50.1 Defining sparse matrices

A matrix is *sparse* if most of its elements are 0. To define a sparse matrix, it is enough to define the non-zero elements, which can be done with a table. The `matrix` command can then turn the table into a matrix.

Input:

```
A := table((0,0)=1, (1,1)=2, (2,2)=3, (3,3) = 4, (4,4)
          = 5)
```

or:

```
purge(A)
A[0..4,0..4]:=[1,2,3,4,5]
```

Output:

```
table((0,0) = 1, (1,1) = 2, (2,2) = 3, (3,3) = 4,
      (4,4) = 5)
```

This table can be converted to a matrix with either the `convert` command or the `matrix` command.

Input:

```
a := convert(A,array)
```

or:

```
a := matrix(A)
```

Output:

```
[[1,0,0,0,0],[0,2,0,0,0],[0,0,3,0,0],[0,0,0,4,0],[0,0,0,0,5]]
```

### 5.50.2 Operations on sparse matrices

All matrix operations can be done on tables that are used to define sparse matrices.

Input:

```
purge(A), purge(B)
```

Input:

```
A[0..2,0..2] := [1,2,3]
```

Output:

```
table((0,0) = 1, (1,1) = 2, (2,2) = 3)
```

Input:

```
B[0..1,1..2] := [1,2]
```

Input:

```
B[0..2,0]:=5
```

Output:

```
table((0,0) = 5, (0,1) = 1, (1,0) = 5, (1,2) = 2,
      (2,0) = 5)
```

The usual operations will work on A and B.

Input:

```
A + B
```

Output:

```
table((0,0) = 6, (0,1) = 1, (1,0) = 5, (1,1) = 2,
      (1,2) = 2, (2,0) = 5, (2,2) = 3)
```

Input:

```
A * B
```

Output:

```
table((0,0) = 5, (0,1) = 1, (1,0) = 10, (1,2) = 4,
      (2,0) = 15)
```

Input:

```
2*A
```

Output:

```
table((0,0) = 2, (1,1) = 4, (2,2) = 6)
```

## 5.51 Linear algebra

### 5.51.1 Transpose of a matrix : `tran transpose`

`tran` or `transpose` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`tran` or `transpose` returns the transpose matrix of  $A$ .

Input :

```
tran([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,3],[2,4]]
```

### 5.51.2 Inverse of a matrix : `inv /`

`inv` takes as argument a square matrix  $A$ .

`inv` returns the inverse matrix of  $A$ .

Input :

```
inv([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

or :

```
1/[[1,2],[3,4]])
```

or :

```
A:=[[1,2],[3,4]];1/A
```

Output :

```
[-2,1],[3/2,1/-2]]
```

### 5.51.3 Trace of a matrix : `trace`

`trace` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`trace` returns the trace of the matrix  $A$ , that is the sum of the diagonal elements.

Input :

```
trace([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

Output :

5

### 5.51.4 Determinant of a matrix : `det`

`det` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`det` returns the determinant of the matrix  $A$ .

Input :

```
det([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

Output :

-2

Input :

```
det(idn(3))
```

Output :

1

An optional argument can be used to specify with an optional argument.

- `lagrange` When the matrix elements are polynomials or rational functions, this method computes the determinant by evaluating the elements and using Lagrange interpolation.
- `rational_det` This method uses Gaussian elimination without converting to the internal format for fractions.
- `bareiss` This uses the Gauss-Bareiss algorithm.
- `linsolve` This uses the  $p$ -adic algorithm for matrices with integer coefficients.
- `minor_det` This uses expansion by minor determinants. This requires  $2^n$  operations, but can still be faster for average sized matrices (up to about  $n = 20$ ).

### 5.51.5 Determinant of a sparse matrix : `det_minor`

`det_minor` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`det_minor` returns the determinant of the matrix  $A$  computed by expanding the determinant using Laplace's algorithm.

Input :

```
det_minor([[1, 2], [3, 4]])
```

Output :

-2

Input :

```
det_minor(idn(3))
```

Output :

1

**5.51.6 Rank of a matrix : rank**

`rank` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`rank` returns the rank of the matrix  $A$ .

Input :

```
rank([[1, 2], [3, 4]])
```

Output :

```
2
```

Input :

```
rank([[1, 2], [2, 4]])
```

Output :

```
1
```

**5.51.7 Transconjugate of a matrix : trn**

`trn` takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

`trn` returns the transconjugate of  $A$  (i.e. the conjugate of the transpose matrix of  $A$ ).

Input :

```
trn([[i, 1+i], [1, 1-i]])
```

Output after simplification:

```
[[ -i, 1], [1-i, 1+i]]
```

**5.51.8 Equivalent matrix : changebase**

`changebase` takes as argument a matrix  $A$  and a change-of-basis matrix  $P$ .

`changebase` returns the matrix  $B$  such that  $B = P^{-1}AP$ .

Input :

```
changebase([[1, 2], [3, 4]], [[1, 0], [0, 1]])
```

Output :

```
[[1, 2], [3, 4]]
```

Input :

```
changebase([[1, 1], [0, 1]], [[1, 2], [3, 4]])
```

Output :

```
[[ -5, -8], [9/2, 7]]
```

Indeed :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} * \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} * \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & -8 \\ \frac{9}{2} & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

.

**5.51.9 Basis of a linear subspace : basis**

`basis` takes as argument a list of vectors generating a linear subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

`basis` returns a list of vectors, that is a basis of this linear subspace.

Input :

```
basis([[1,2,3],[1,1,1],[2,3,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,-1], [0,1,2]]
```

**5.51.10 Basis of the intersection of two subspaces : ibasis**

`ibasis` takes as argument two lists of vectors generating two subspaces of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

`ibasis` returns a list of vectors, that is a basis of the intersection of these two subspaces.

Input :

```
ibasis([[1,2]],[[2,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,2]]
```

**5.51.11 Image of a linear function : image**

`image` takes as argument the matrix of a linear function  $f$  with respect to the canonical basis.

`image` returns a list of vectors that is a basis of the image of  $f$ .

Input :

```
image([[1,1,2],[2,1,3],[3,1,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[ -1, 0, 1], [ 0, -1, -2]]
```

**5.51.12 Kernel of a linear function : kernel nullspace ker**

`ker` (or `kernel` or `nullspace`) takes as argument the matrix of an linear function  $f$  with respect to the canonical basis.

`ker` (or `kernel` or `nullspace`) returns a list of vectors that is a basis of the kernel of  $f$ .

Input :

```
ker([[1,1,2],[2,1,3],[3,1,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[ 1, 1, -1]]
```

The kernel is generated by the vector  $[1, 1, -1]$ .

### 5.51.13 Kernel of a linear function : Nullspace

**Warning** This function is useful in Maple mode only (hit the state line red button then `Prog style`, then choose `Maple` and `Apply`).

`Nullspace` is the inert form of `nullspace`.

`Nullspace` takes as argument an integer matrix of a linear function  $f$  with respect to the canonical basis.

`Nullspace`) followed by `mod p` returns a list of vectors that is a basis of the kernel of  $f$  computed in  $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}[X]$ .

Input :

```
Nullspace([[1,1,2],[2,1,3],[3,1,4]])
```

Output :

```
nullspace([[1,1,2],[2,1,3],[3,1,4]])
```

Input (in Maple mode):

```
Nullspace([[1,2],[3,1]]) mod 5
```

Output :

```
[2,-1]
```

In Xcas mode, the equivalent input is :

```
nullspace([[1,2],[3,1]] % 5)
```

Output :

```
[2% 5,-1]
```

### 5.51.14 Subspace generated by the columns of a matrix : colspace

`coldspace` takes as argument the matrix  $A$  of a linear function  $f$  with respect to the canonical basis.

`coldspace` returns a matrix. The columns of this matrix are a basis of the subspace generated by the columns of  $A$ .

`coldspace` may have a variable name as second argument, where Xcas will store the dimension of the subspace generated by the columns of  $A$ .

Input :

```
coldspace([[1,1,2],[2,1,3],[3,1,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[[-1,0],[0,-1],[1,-2]]
```

Input :

```
coldspace([[1,1,2],[2,1,3],[3,1,4]],dimension)
```

Output :

```
[[[-1,0],[0,-1],[1,-2]]
```

Then input:

```
dimension
```

Output :

### 5.51.15 Subspace generated by the rows of a matrix : `rowspace`

`rowspace` takes as argument the matrix  $A$  of a linear function  $f$  with respect to the canonical basis.

`rowspace` returns a list of vectors that is a basis of the subspace generated by the rows of  $A$ .

`rowspace` may have a variable name as second argument where `Xcas` will store the dimension of the subspace generated by the rows of  $A$ .

Input :

```
rowspace([[1,1,2],[2,1,3],[3,1,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[[-1,0,-1],[0,-1,-1]]]
```

Input :

```
rowspace([[1,1,2],[2,1,3],[3,1,4]],dimension)
```

Output :

```
[[[-1,0,-1],[0,-1,-1]]]
```

Then input:

```
dimension
```

Output :

```
2
```

## 5.52 Linear Programmation

Linear programming problems are maximization problem of a linear functionals under linear equality or inequality constraints. The most simple case can be solved directly by the so-called simplex algorithm. Most cases require to solve an auxiliary linear programming problem to find an initial vertex for the simplex algorithm.

### 5.52.1 Simplex algorithm: `simplex_reduce`

#### The simple case

The function `simplex_reduce` makes the reduction by the simplex algorithm to find :

$$\max(c \cdot x), \quad A \cdot x \leq b, \quad x \geq 0, \quad b \geq 0$$

where  $c, x$  are vectors of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $b \geq 0$  is a vector in  $\mathbb{R}^p$  and  $A$  is a matrix of  $p$  rows and  $n$  columns.

`simplex_reduce` takes as argument `A, b, c` and returns `max(c . x)`, the augmented solution of  $x$  (augmented since the algorithm works by adding rows( $A$ ) auxiliary variables) and the reduced matrix.

**Example**

Find

$$\max(X + 2Y) \text{ where } \begin{cases} (X, Y) \geq 0 \\ -3X + 2Y \leq 3 \\ X + Y \leq 4 \end{cases}$$

Input :

```
simplex_reduce([[-3, 2], [1, 1]], [3, 4], [1, 2])
```

Output :

```
7, [1, 3, 0, 0], [[0, 1, 1/5, 3/5, 3], [1, 0, (-1)/5, 2/5, 1], [0, 0, 1/5, 8/5, 7]]
```

Which means that the maximum of  $X+2Y$  under these conditions is 7, it is obtained for  $X=1, Y=3$  because  $[1, 3, 0, 0]$  is the augmented solution and the reduced matrix is :

```
[[0, 1, 1/5, 3/5, 3], [1, 0, (-1)/5, 2/5, 1], [0, 0, 1/5, 8/5, 7]].
```

**A more complicated case that reduces to the simple case**With the former call of `simplex_reduce`, we have to :

- rewrite constraints to the form  $x_k \geq 0$ ,
- remove variables without constraints,
- add variables such that all the constraints have positive components.

For example, find :

$$\min(2x + y - z + 4) \text{ where } \begin{cases} x \leq 1 \\ y \geq 2 \\ x + 3y - z = 2 \\ 2x - y + z \leq 8 \\ -x + y \leq 5 \end{cases} \quad (5.6)$$

Let  $x = 1 - X, y = Y + 2, z = 5 - X + 3Y$  the problem is equivalent to finding the minimum of  $(-2X + Y - (5 - X + 3Y) + 8)$  where :

$$\begin{cases} X \geq 0 \\ Y \geq 0 \\ 2(1 - X) - (Y + 2) + 5 - X + 3Y \leq 8 \\ -(1 - X) + (Y + 2) \leq 5 \end{cases}$$

or to find the minimum of :

$$(-X - 2Y + 3) \text{ where } \begin{cases} X \geq 0 \\ Y \geq 0 \\ -3X + 2Y \leq 3 \\ X + Y \leq 4 \end{cases}$$

i.e. to find the maximum of  $-(-X - 2Y + 3) = X + 2Y - 3$  under the same conditions, hence it is the same problem as to find the maximum of  $X + 2Y$  seen before. We found 7, hence, the result here is  $7-3=4$ .

### The general case

A linear programming problem may not in general be directly reduced like above to the simple case. The reason is that a starting vertex must be found before applying the simplex algorithm. Therefore, `simplex_reduce` may be called by specifying this starting vertex, in that case, all the arguments including the starting vertex are grouped in a single matrix.

We first illustrate this kind of call in the simple case where the starting point does not require solving an auxiliary problem. If  $A$  has  $p$  rows and  $n$  columns and if we define :

```
B:=augment (A, idn (p)) ; C:=border (B, b) ;
d:=append (-c, 0$(p+1)) ; D:=augment (C, [d]) ;
```

`simplex_reduce` may be called with  $D$  as single argument.

For the previous example, input :

```
A:=[[-3,2],[1,1]] ; B:=augment (A, idn (2)) ;
C:=border (B, [3,4]) ; D:=augment (C, [[-1,-2,0,0,0]])
```

Here  $C = [[-3, 2, 1, 0, 3], [1, 1, 0, 1, 4]]$

and  $D = [[-3, 2, 1, 0, 3], [1, 1, 0, 1, 4], [-1, -2, 0, 0, 0]]$

Input :

```
simplex_reduce (D)
```

Output is the same result as before.

### Back to the general case.

The standard form of a linear programming problem is similar to the simplest case above, but with  $Ax = b$  (instead of  $Ax \leq b$ ) under the conditions  $x \geq 0$ . We may further assume that  $b \geq 0$  (if not, one can change the sign of the corresponding line).

- The first problem is to find an  $x$  in the  $Ax = b, x \geq 0$  domain. Let  $m$  be the number of lines of  $A$ . Add artificial variables  $y_1, \dots, y_m$  and maximize  $-\sum y_i$  under the conditions  $Ax = b, x \geq 0, y \geq 0$  starting with initial value 0 for  $x$  variables and  $y = b$  (to solve this with `Xcas`, call `simplex_reduce` with a single matrix argument obtained by augmenting  $A$  by the identity,  $b$  unchanged and an artificial  $c$  with 0 under  $A$  and 1 under the identity). If the maximum exists and is 0, the identity submatrix above the last column corresponds to an  $x$  solution, we may forget the artificial variables (they are 0 if the maximum is 0).
- Now we make a second call to `simplex_reduce` with the original  $c$  and the value of  $x$  we found in the domain.
- Example : find the minimum of  $2x + 3y - z + t$  with  $x, y, z, t \geq 0$  and :

$$\begin{cases} -x - y + t &= 1 \\ y - z + t &= 3 \end{cases}$$

This is equivalent to find the opposite of the maximum of  $-(2x + 3y - z + t)$ .

Let us add two artificial variables  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ ,

```
simplex_reduce([[ -1,-1,0,1,1,0,1],
[0,1,-1,1,0,1,3],
[0,0,0,0,1,1,0]])
```

Output: optimum=0, artificial variables=0, and the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1/2 & 0 & -1/2 & 1 & 1/2 & 1/2 & 2 \\ 1/2 & 1 & -1/2 & 0 & -1/2 & 1/2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Columns 2 and 4 are the columns of the identity (in lines 1 and 2). Hence  $x = (0, 1, 0, 2)$  is an initial point in the domain. We are reduced to solve the initial problem, after replacing the lines of  $Ax = b$  by the two first lines of the answer above, removing the last columns corresponding to the artificial variables. We add  $c.x$  as last line

```
simplex_reduce([-1/2,0,-1/2,1,2],
[1/2,1,-1/2,0,1],[2,3,-1,1,0]))
```

Output: maximum=-5, hence the minimum of the opposite is 5, obtained for  $(0, 1, 0, 2)$ , after replacement  $x = 0, y = 1, z = 0$  and  $t = 2$ .

For more details, search google for simplex algorithm.

### 5.52.2 Solving general linear programming problems: lpsolve

Linear programming problems (where a multivariate linear function needs to be maximized or minimized subject to linear (in)equality constraints), as well as (mixed) integer programming problems, can be solved by using the function `lpsolve`. Problems can be entered directly (in symbolic or matrix form) or loaded from a file in LP or (gzipped) MPS format.

`lpsolve` accepts four arguments :

1. `obj` : symbolic expression representing the objective function or path to file containing LP problem (in the latter case parameter `constr` should not be given)
2. `constr` (optional) : list of linear constraints which may be equalities or inequalities or bounded expressions entered as `expr=a..b`
3. `bd` (optional) : sequence of expressions of type `var=a..b` specifying that the variable `var` is bounded with `a` below and with `b` above
4. `opts` (optional) : sequence of solver settings in form `option=value`, where `option` may be one of :

```
assume – one of lp_nonnegative, lp_integer(integer), lp_binary
or lp_nonnegint (or nonnegint), default : unset
lp_integervariables – list of identifiers or indices (of integer vari-
ables), default : empty
```

lp\_binaryvariables – list of identifiers or indices (of binary variables), default : *empty*  
 lp\_maximize (or maximize) – *true* or *false* (objective direction), default : *false*  
 lp\_method – one of exact, float, lp\_simplex or lp\_interiorpoint (solver type), default lp\_simplex  
 lp\_depthlimit – positive integer (max. depth of branch&bound tree), default : *unlimited*  
 lp\_nodelimit – positive integer (max. nodes in branch&bound tree), default : *unlimited*  
 lp\_iterationlimit – positive integer (max. iterations of simplex algorithm), default : *unlimited*  
 lp\_timelimit – positive number (max. solving time in milliseconds), default : *unlimited*  
 lp\_maxcuts – nonnegative integer (max. GMI cuts per node), default : 5  
 lp\_gaptolerance – positive number (relative integrality gap threshold), default : 0  
 lp\_nodeselect – one of lp\_depthfirst, lp\_breadthfirst, lp\_hybrid or lp\_bestprojection (branching node selection strategy), default : lp\_hybrid  
 lp\_varselect – one of lp\_firstfractional, lp\_lastfractional, lp\_mostfractional or lp\_pseudocost (branching variable selection strategy), default : lp\_pseudocost  
 lp\_verbose – *true* or *false*, default : *false*

The return value is in the form [optimum, soln] where optimum is the minimum/maximum value of the objective function and soln is the list of coordinates corresponding to the point at which the optimal value is attained, i.e. the optimal solution. If there is no feasible solution, an empty list is returned. When the objective function is unbounded, optimum is returned as +infinity (for maximization problems) or -infinity (for minimization problems). If an error is experienced while solving (terminating the process), undef is returned.

The given objective function is minimized by default. To maximize it, include the option lp\_maximize=true or lp\_maximize or simply maximize. Also note that all variables are, unless specified otherwise, assumed to be continuous and unrestricted in sign.

### Solving LP problems

By default, lpsolve uses primal simplex method implementation to solve LP problems. For example, to solve the problem specified in (5.6), input :

```
constr:=[x<=1, y>=2, x+3y-z=2, 3x-y+z<=8, -x+y<=5];
lpsolve(2x+y-z+4, constr)
```

Output :

```
[ -4, [x=0, y=5, z=13] ]
```

Therefore, the minimum value of  $f(x, y, z) = 2x + y - z + 4$  is equal to  $-4$  under the given constraints. The optimal value is attained at point  $(x, y, z) = (0, 5, 13)$ .

Constraints may also take the form `expr=a..b` for bounded linear expressions.

Input :

```
lpsolve(x+2y+3z, [x+y=1..5, y+z+1=2..4, x>=0, y>=0])
```

Output :

```
[ -2, [x=0, y=5, z=-4] ]
```

Use the `assume=lp_nonnegative` option to specify that all variables are nonnegative. It is easier than entering the nonnegativity constraints explicitly.

Input:

```
lpsolve(-x-y, [y<=3x+1/2, y<=-5x+2],
        assume=lp_nonnegative)
```

Output:

```
[ -5/4, [x=3/16, y=17/16] ]
```

Bounds can be added separately for some variables. They should be entered after constraints.

Input :

```
constr:=[5x-10y<=20, 2z-3y=6, -x+3y<=3];
lpsolve(-6x+4y+z, constr, x=1..20, y=0..inf)
```

Output :

```
[ -133/2, [x=18, y=7, z=27/2] ]
```

Number of iterations can be limited by setting `lp_iterationlimit` to some positive integer. If maximum number of iterations is reached, the current feasible solution (not necessarily an optimal one) is returned.

### Entering problems in matrix form

`lpsolve` supports entering linear programming problems in matrix form, where `obj` is a vector of coefficients `c` and `constr` is a list `[A, b, Aeq, beq]` such that objective function  $\mathbf{c}^T \mathbf{x}$  is to be minimized/maximized subject to constraints  $\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \leq \mathbf{b}$  and  $\mathbf{A}_{eq} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}_{eq}$ . If a problem does not contain equality constraints, parameters `Aeq` and `beq` may be omitted. For a problem that does not contain inequality constraints, empty lists must be entered in place of `A` and in place of `b`.

The parameter `bd` is entered as a list of two vectors `bl` and `bu` of the same length as the vector `c` such that  $\mathbf{b}_l \leq \mathbf{x} \leq \mathbf{b}_u$ . These vectors may contain `+infinity` or `-infinity`.

Input :

```
c:=[-2,1];A:=[[ -1,1],[1,1],[-1,0],[0,-1]];
b:=[3,5,0,0];lpsolve(c,[A,b])
```

Output :

```
[-10,[5,0]]
```

Input :

```
c:=[-2,5,-3];bl:=[2,3,1];bu:=[6,10,7/2];
lpsolve(c,[],[bl,bu])
```

Output :

```
[-15/2,[6,3,7/2]]
```

Input :

```
c:=[4,5];Aeq:=[[ -1,3/2],[-3,2]];beq:=[2,3];
lpsolve(c,[],[],Aeq,beq))
```

Output :

```
[26/5,[-1/5,6/5]]
```

### Solving MIP (Mixed Integer Programming) problems

`lpsolve` allows restricting (some) variables to integer values. Such problems, called (*mixed*) *integer programming problems*, are solved by applying branch&bound method.

To solve pure integer programming problems, in which all variables are integers, use option `assume=integer` or `assume=lp_integer`.

Input :

```
lpsolve(-5x-7y, [7x+y<=35,-x+3y<=6], assume=integer)
```

Output :

```
[-41,[x=4,y=3]]
```

Use option `assume=lp_binary` to specify that all variables are binary, i.e. the only allowed values are 0 and 1. These usually represent `false` and `true`, respectively, giving the variable a certain meaning in logical context.

Input :

```
lpsolve(8x1+11x2+6x3+4x4, [5x1+7x2+4x3+3x4<=14],
assume=lp_binary,maximize)
```

Output :

```
[21,[x1=0,x2=1,x3=1,x4=1]]
```

To solve mixed integer problems, where some variables are integers and some are continuous, use option keywords `lp_integervariables` to specify integer variables and/or `lp_binaryvariables` to specify binary variables.

Input :

```
lpsolve(x+3y+3z, [x+3y+2z<=7, 2x+2y+z<=11],
        assume=lp_nonnegative, lp_maximize,
        lp_integervariables=[x, z])
```

Output :

```
[10, [x=1, y=0, z=3]]
```

Use the `assume=lp_nonnegint` or `assume=nonnegint` option to get nonnegative integer values.

Input :

```
lpsolve(2x+5y, [3x-y=1, x-y<=5], assume=nonnegint)
```

Output :

```
[12, [x=1, y=2]]
```

When specifying MIP problems in matrix form, lists corresponding to options `lp_integervariables` and `lp_binaryvariables` are populated with variable indices, like in the following example.

Input :

```
c:=[2,-3,-5];A:=[[ -5, 4, -5], [2, 5, 7], [2, -3, 4]];
b:=[3,1,-2];lpsolve(c, [A,b], lp_integervariables=[0,2])
```

Output :

```
[19, [1, 3/4, -1]]
```

One can also specify a range of indices instead of a list when there is too much variables. Example : `lp_binaryvariables=0..99` means that all variables  $x_i$  such that  $0 \leq i \leq 99$  are binary.

**Implementation details.** Branch&bound algorithm by definition generates a binary tree of subproblems by branching on integer variables with fractional values. `lpsolve` features an implementation which stores only active nodes of branch&bound tree in a list, thus saving a lot of space. Also, since variable bounds are the only parameters that change during branch&bound algorithm, number of constraints does not rise with depth, which is the benefit of the upper-bounding technique built in the simplex algorithm. Therefore a steady speed and minimal resource usage is always maintained, no matter how long the execution time is. This allows for solving problems that require tens or hundreds of thousands of nodes to be generated before finding an optimal solution.

**Stopping criteria.** There are several ways to force the branch&bound algorithm to stop prematurely when the execution takes too much time. One can set `lp_timelimit` to integer number which defines the maximum number of milliseconds allowed to find an optimal solution. Other ways are to set `lp_nodelimit` or `lp_depthlimit` to limit the number of nodes generated in branch&bound tree or its depth, respectively. Finally, one can set `lp_gaptolerance` to some positive value, say  $t > 0$ , which terminates the algorithm after finding an incumbent solution and proving

that the corresponding objective value differs from optimum value for less than  $t \cdot 100\%$ . It is done by monitoring the size of integrality gap, i.e. the difference between current incumbent objective value and the best objective value bound among active nodes.

If branch&bound algorithm terminates prematurely, a warning message indicating the cause is displayed. Incumbent solution, if any, is returned as the result, else the problem is declared to be infeasible.

**Branching strategies.** At every iteration of branch&bound algorithm, a node must be selected for branching on some variable that has a fractional optimal value for the corresponding relaxed subproblem. There exist different methods for making such decisions, called *branching strategies*. Two types of branching strategies exist: *node selection* and *variable selection* strategy.

Node selection strategy can be set by using the `lp_nodeselect` option. Possible values are :

`lp_breadthfirst` – choose the active node which provides the best bound for the objective value,

`lp_depthfirst` – choose the deepest active node and break ties by selecting the node providing the best bound,

`lp_hybrid` – combine the above two strategies,

`lp_bestprojection` – choose the node with best simple projection.

By default, `lp_bestprojection` strategy is used. Another sophisticated strategy is `lp_hybrid`: before an incumbent solution is found, solver uses `lp_depthfirst` strategy, “diving” into the tree as an incumbent solution is more likely to be located deeply. When an incumbent is found, solver switches to `lp_breadthfirst` strategy trying to close the integrality gap as quickly as possible.

Variable selection strategy can be set by using the `lp_varselect` option. Possible values are :

`lp_firstfractional` – choose the first fractional variable,

`lp_lastfractional` – choose the last fractional variable,

`lp_mostfractional` – choose the variable with fractional part closest to 0.5,

`lp_pseudocost` – choose the variable which had the greatest impact on the objective value in previous branchings.

By default, `lp_pseudocost` strategy is used. However, since pseudocost-based choice cannot be made before all integer variables have been branched upon at least one time in each direction, `lp_mostfractional` strategy is used until that condition is fulfilled.

Using the right combination of branching strategies may significantly reduce the number of subproblems needed to be examined when solving a particular MIP problem. However, what is “right” varies from problem to problem. Default strategies are the most sophisticated (as they use the available data most extensively) and usually the most effective ones. But that is not always the case, as illustrated by the following example :

Minimize  $\mathbf{c}^T \mathbf{x}$  subject to  $\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ , where  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{Z}_+^8$  and

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} 22 & 13 & 26 & 33 & 21 & 3 & 14 & 26 \\ 39 & 16 & 22 & 28 & 26 & 30 & 23 & 24 \\ 18 & 14 & 29 & 27 & 30 & 38 & 26 & 26 \\ 41 & 26 & 28 & 36 & 18 & 38 & 16 & 26 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 7872 \\ 10466 \\ 11322 \\ 12058 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{c} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 10 \\ 13 \\ 17 \\ 7 \\ 5 \\ 7 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

When using the default settings, about 24000 subproblems need to be examined before an optimal solution is found. When `lp_nodeselect` is set to `lp_breadthfirst` the solver needs to examine only about 20000 subproblems, but when set to `lp_hybrid` (a strategy which in general performs better) it examines about 111000 nodes in total.

**Cutting planes.** Strong Gomory mixed integer cuts are generated at every node of the branch&bound tree and used to improve the objective value bound. After solving the relaxed subproblem with simplex method, at most one strong cut is generated and added to the subproblem which is subsequently reoptimized. Simplex reoptimizations are fast because they start with the last feasible basis, but applying cuts makes the simplex tableau larger, hence applying many of them may actually slow the computation down. To limit the number of cuts that can be applied to a subproblem, one can use `lp_maxcuts` option, setting it either to zero (which disables cut generation altogether) or to some positive integer. Also, one may set it to `+infinity`, which means that any number of cuts may be applied to any node. By default, `lp_maxcuts` equals to 5.

**Displaying detailed output.** By typing `lp_verbose=true` or simply `lp_verbose` when specifying options for `lpsolve`, detailed messages are printed during and after solving a MIP problem. During branch&bound algorithm a status report in form

```
<n>: <m> nodes active, lower bound: <lb>[, integrality gap: <g>]
```

is displayed every 5 seconds, where `n` is the number of already examined subproblems. Also, a report is printed every time incumbent solution is found or updated, as well as when the solver switches to pseudocost-based branching. After the algorithm is finished, i.e. when an optimal solution is found, summary is displayed containing the total number of examined subproblems, the number of most nodes being active at the same time and the number of applied Gomory mixed integer cuts.

In the following example, two nonnegative integers  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  are found such that  $1867x_1 + 1913x_2 = 3618894$  and  $x_1 + x_2$  is minimal. The solver shows all progress and summary messages.

Input :

```
lpsolve(x1+x2, [1867*x1+1913*x2=3618894],  
       assume=nonnegint, lp_verbose=true)
```

Output :

```

Optimizing...
Applying branch&bound method to find integer feasible solutions...
    3937: Incumbent solution found
Summary:
 * 3938 subproblem(s) examined
 * max. tree size: 1 nodes
 * 0 Gomory cut(s) applied

[1916, [x1=1009, x2=907]]

```

### Solving problems in floating-point arithmetic

`lpsolve` provides, in addition to its own exact solver implementing primal simplex method with upper-bounding technique, an interface to GLPK (GNU Linear Programming Kit) library which contains sophisticated LP/MIP solvers in floating-point arithmetic, designed to be very fast and to handle large problems. Choosing between the available solvers is done by setting `lp_method` option.

By default, `lp_method` is set to `lp_simplex`, which solves the problem using primal simplex method, but performing exact computation only when all problem coefficients are exact. If at least one of them is approximative (a floating-point number), GLPK solver is used instead (see below).

Setting `lp_method` to `exact` forces the solver to perform exact computation even when some coefficients are inexact (they are converted to rational equivalents before applying simplex method).

Specifying `lp_method=float` forces `lpsolve` to use floating-point solver. If a MIP problem is given, it is combined with branch&cut algorithm. GLPK simplex solver parameters can be controlled by setting `lp_timelimit`, `lp_gaptolerance` and `lp_varselect` options. If the latter is not set, Driebeek–Tomlin heuristic is used by default (see GLPK manual for details). If `lp_maxcuts` is greater than zero, GMI and MIR cut generation is enabled, else it is disabled. If the problem contains binary variables, cover and clique cut generation is enabled, else it is disabled. Finally, `lp_verbose=true` enables detailed messages.

Setting `lp_method` to `lp_interiorpoint` uses primal-dual interior-point algorithm which is part of GLPK. The only parameter that can be controlled via options is the verbosity level.

For example, try to solve the following LP problem using the default settings.

$$\text{Minimize } 1.06 x_1 + 0.56 x_2 + 3.0 x_3$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned}
 1.06 x_1 + 0.015 x_3 &\geq 729824.87 \\
 0.56 x_2 + 0.649 x_3 &\geq 1522188.03 \\
 x_3 &\geq 1680.05 \\
 x_k &\geq 0 \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, 3
 \end{aligned}$$

Input :

```
lpsolve(1.06x1+0.56x2+3x3, [1.06x1+0.015x3>=729824.87,
                                0.56x2+0.649x3>=1522188.03, x3>=1680.05],
                                assume=lp_nonnegative)
```

Output :

```
[2255937.4968, [x1=688490.254009, x2=2716245.85277, x3=1680.05]]
```

If `assume=nonnegint` is used for the same problem, i.e. when  $x_k \in \mathbb{Z}_+$  for  $k = 1, 2, 3$ , the following result is obtained by GLPK MIP solver :

```
[2255940.66, [x1=688491.0, x2=2716245.0, x3=1681.0]]
```

The solution of the original problem can also be obtained with interior-point solver by including `lp_method=lp_interiorpoint` after `assume=lp_nonnegative`:

```
[2255937.50731, [x1=688490.256652, x2=2716245.85608,
                                x3=1680.05195065]]
```

### Loading problem from a file

Linear (integer) programming problems can be loaded from MPS or CPLEX LP format files (these formats are described in GLPK manual, Appendices B and C). The file name string needs to be passed as `obj` parameter. If the file name has extension “lp”, CPLEX LP format is assumed, and if the extension is “mps” or “gz”, MPS or gzipped MPS format is assumed.

For example, assume that `somefile.lp` file is stored in directory `/path/to/file` contains the following lines of text :

```
Maximize
obj: x1 + 2 x2 + 3 x3 + x4
Subject To
c1: - x1 + x2 + x3 + 10 x4 <= 20
c2: x1 - 3 x2 + x3 <= 30
c3: x2 - 3.5 x4 = 0
Bounds
0 <= x1 <= 40
2 <= x4 <= 3
End
```

To find an optimal solution to linear program specified in the file, one just needs to input :

```
lpsolve("/path/to/file/somefile.lp")
```

Output :

```
Reading problem data from '/path/to/file/somefile.lp'...
3 rows, 4 columns, 9 non-zeros
10 lines were read
```

```
[116, [x1=38, x2=9, x3=19, x4=3]]
```

Additional variable bounds and options may be provided alongside the file name. Note that the original constraints (those which are read from file) cannot be removed.

Input :

```
lpsolve("/path/to/file/somefile.lp", x2=1..8, x3=-10..10,
       lp_integervariables=[x4])
```

Output :

```
[82, [x1=38, x2=6, x3=10, x4=2]]
```

It is advisable to use only (capital) letters, digits and underscore when naming variables in a LP file, although the corresponding format allows many more characters. That is because these names are converted to Giac identifiers during the loading process.

**Warning!** Too large problems won't be loaded. More precisely, if  $n_v \cdot n_c > 10^5$ , where  $n_v$  is the number of variables and  $n_c$  is the number of constraints, loading is aborted. Many MPS files available, for example, in the Netlib repository (<http://www.netlib.org/>), contain very large problems with thousands of variables and constraints. Trying to load them to Xcas without a safety limit could easily eat up huge amounts of available memory, probably freezing up the whole system. If a large LP problem needs to be solved, one may consider using GLPK standalone solver<sup>1</sup>.

### 5.52.3 Solving transportation problems: tpsolve

The objective of a transportation problem is to minimize the cost of distributing a product from  $m$  sources to  $n$  destinations. It is determined by three parameters :

- supply vector  $\mathbf{s} = (s_1, s_2, \dots, s_m)$ , where  $s_k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $s_k > 0$  is the maximum number of units that can be delivered from  $k$ -th source for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, m$ ,
- demand vector  $\mathbf{d} = (d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n)$ , where  $d_k \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $d_k > 0$  is the minimum number of units required by  $k$ -th destination for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ,
- cost matrix  $\mathbf{C} = [c_{ij}]_{m \times n}$ , where  $c_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $c_{ij} \geq 0$  is the cost of transporting one unit of product from  $i$ -th source to  $j$ -th destination for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$  and  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

The optimal solution is represented as matrix  $\mathbf{X}^* = [x_{ij}^*]_{m \times n}$ , where  $x_{ij}^*$  is number of units that must be transported from  $i$ -th source to  $j$ -th destination for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$  and  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

Function `tpsolve` accepts three arguments: supply vector, demand vector and cost matrix, respectively. It returns a sequence of two elements: the total (minimal) cost  $c = \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n c_{ij} x_{ij}^*$  of transportation and the optimal solution  $\mathbf{X}^*$ .

Input :

---

<sup>1</sup>See <https://www.gnu.org/software/glpk/> for installing GLPK in Linux or <http://winglpk.sourceforge.net/> for MS Windows.

```
s:=[12,17,11];d:=[10,10,10,10];
C:=[[50,75,30,45],[65,80,40,60],[40,70,50,55]];
tpsolve(s,d,C)
```

Output :

```
2020, [[0,0,2,10],[0,9,8,0],[10,1,0,0]]
```

If total supply and total demand are equal, i.e. if  $\sum_{i=1}^m s_i = \sum_{j=1}^n d_j$  holds, transportation problem is *closed* or *balanced*. If total supply exceeds total demand or vice versa, the problem is *unbalanced*. The excess supply/demand is covered by adding a dummy demand/supply point with zero cost of “transportation” from/to that point. Function `tpsolve` handles such cases automatically.

Input :

```
s:=[7,10,8,8,9,6];d:=[9,6,12,8,10];
C:=[[36,40,32,43,29],[28,27,29,40,38],[34,35,41,29,31],
[41,42,35,27,36],[25,28,40,34,38],[31,30,43,38,40]];
tpsolve(s,d,C)
```

Output :

```
1275, [[0,0,2,0,5],[0,0,10,0,0],[0,0,0,0,5],
[0,0,0,8,0],[9,0,0,0,0],[0,6,0,0,0]]
```

Sometimes it is desirable to forbid transportation on certain routes. That is usually achieved by setting very high cost to these routes, represented by symbol  $M$ . If `tpsolve` detects a symbol in the cost matrix, it interprets it as  $M$  and assigns 100 times larger cost than the largest numeric element of  $\mathbf{C}$  to the corresponding routes, which forces the algorithm to avoid them.

Input :

```
s:=[95,70,165,165];d:=[195,150,30,45,75];
C:=[[15,M,45,M,0],[12,40,M,M,0],
[0,15,25,25,0],[M,0,M,12,0]];
tpsolve(s,d,C)
```

Output :

```
2820, [[20,0,0,0,75],[70,0,0,0,0],
[105,0,30,30,0],[0,150,0,15,0]]
```

## 5.53 Nonlinear optimization

### 5.53.1 Global extrema: `minimize` `maximize`

The function `minimize` takes four arguments :

- `obj` : univariate or multivariate expression
- `constr` (optional) : list of equality and inequality constraints
- `vars` : list of variables

- `location` (optional) : option keyword which may be `coordinates`, `locus` or `point`

The expression `obj` is minimized on the domain specified by constraints and/or bounding variables, which can be done as specifying e.g. `x=a..b` in `vars`. The domain must be closed and bounded and `obj` must be continuous in every point of it. Else, the final result may be incorrect or meaningless.

Constraints may be given as equalities or inequalities, but also as expressions which are assumed to be equal to zero. If there is only one constraint, the list delimiters may be dropped. The same applies to the specification of variables.

`minimize` returns the minimal value. If it could not be obtained, it returns `undef`. If `location` is specified, the list of points where the minimum is achieved is also returned as the second member in a list. Keywords `locus`, `coordinates` and `point` all have the same effect.

The function `maximize` takes the same parameters as `minimize`. The difference is that it computes global maximum of `obj` on the specified domain.

### Examples

Input :

```
minimize(sin(x), [x=0..4])
```

Output :

```
sin(4)
```

Input :

```
minimize(asin(x), x=-1..1)
```

Output :

```
-pi/2
```

Input :

```
minimize(x^4-x^2, x=-3..3, locus)
```

Output :

```
-1/4, [-sqrt(2)/2]
```

Input :

```
minimize(x-abs(x), x=-1..1)
```

Output :

```
-2
```

Input :

```
minimize(when(x==0, 0, exp(-1/x^2)), x=-1..1)
```

Output :

0

Input :

```
minimize(sin(x)+cos(x),x=0..20,coordinates)
```

Output :

```
-sqrt(2), [5*pi/4, 13*pi/4, 21*pi/4]
```

Input :

```
minimize(x^2-3x+y^2+3y+3,[x=2..4,y=-4..-2],point)
```

Output :

```
-1, [[2, -2]]
```

Input :

```
obj:=sqrt(x^2+y^2)-z;
constr:=[x^2+y^2<=16,x+y+z=10];
minimize(obj,constr,[x,y,z])
```

Output :

```
-4*sqrt(2)-6
```

Input :

```
minimize(x^2*(y+1)-2y,[y<=2,sqrt(1+x^2)<=y],[x,y])
```

Output :

-4

Input :

```
maximize(cos(x),x=1..3)
```

Output :

cos(1)

Input :

```
obj:=piecewise(x<=-2,x+6,x<=1,x^2,3/2-x/2);
maximize(obj,x=-3..2)
```

Output :

4

Input :

```
maximize(x*y*z,x^2+2*y^2+3*z^2<=1,[x,y,z])
```

Output :

```
sqrt(2)/18
```

Input :

```
maximize(x*y, [x+y^2<=2, x>=0, y>=0], [x, y], locus)
```

Output :

```
4*sqrt(6)/9, [[4/3, sqrt(6)/3]]
```

Input :

```
maximize(y^2-x^2*y, y<=x, [x=0..2, y=0..2])
```

Output :

```
4/27
```

Input :

```
assume(a>0);
maximize(x^2*y^2*z^2, x^2+y^2+z^2=a^2, [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
a^6/27
```

### 5.53.2 Local extrema: `extrema`

Local extrema of a univariate or multivariate differentiable expression under equality constraints can be obtained by using function `extrema` which takes four arguments :

- `expr` : differentiable expression
- `constr` (optional) : list of equality constraints
- `vars` : list of variables
- `order=<positive integer>` or `lagrange` (optional) : upper bound for the order of derivatives examined in the process (defaults to 5) or the specifier for the method of Lagrange multipliers

Function returns a list containing two lists of points: local minima and local maxima of `expr`, respectively. Saddle and unclassified points are reported in the message area. Also, information about possible (non)strict extrema is printed out. If `lagrange` is passed as an optional last argument, the method of Lagrange multipliers is used. Else, the problem is reduced to an unconstrained one by applying implicit differentiation.

A single constraint/variable can be specified without list delimiters. A constraint may be specified as an equality or expression which is assumed to be equal to zero.

Number of constraints must be strictly less than number of variables. Additionally, denoting  $k$ -th constraint by  $g_k(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = 0$  for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, m$  and

letting  $\mathbf{g} = (g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m)$ , Jacobian matrix of  $\mathbf{g}$  has to be full rank (i.e. equal to  $m$ ).

Variables may be specified with bounds, e.g.  $x=a..b$ , which is interpreted as  $x \in (a, b)$ . For semi-bounded variables one can use  $-\text{infinity}$  for  $a$  or  $+\text{infinity}$  for  $b$ . Also, parameter `vars` may be entered as e.g. `[x1=a1, x2=a2, ..., xn=an]`, in which case the critical point close to  $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  is computed numerically, applying an iterative method with initial point  $\mathbf{a}$ .

If `order=<n>` is specified as the fourth argument, derivatives up to order  $n$  are inspected to find critical points and classify them. For `order=1` the function returns a single list containing all critical points found. The default is  $n = 5$ . If some critical points are left unclassified one might consider repeating the process with larger value of  $n$ , although the success is not guaranteed.

### Examples

Input :

```
extrema (-2*cos (x) -cos (x)^2, x)
```

Output :

```
[0], [pi]
```

Input :

```
extrema (x/2-2*sin (x/2), x=-12..12)
```

Output :

```
[2*pi/3, -10*pi/3], [10*pi/3, -2*pi/3]
```

Input :

```
assume (a>=0); extrema (x^2+a*x, x)
```

Output :

```
[-a/2], []
```

Input :

```
extrema (exp (x^2-2*x) *ln (x) *ln (1-x), x=0..5)
```

Output :

```
[], [0.277769149124]
```

Input :

```
extrema (x^3-2*x*y+3*y^4, [x, y])
```

Output :

```
[[12^(1/5)/3, (12^(1/5))^2/6]], []
```

Input :

```
assume(a>0); extrema(x/a^2+a*y^2, x+y=a, [x,y])
```

Output :

```
[[ (2*a^4-1) / (2*a^3), 1 / (2*a^3) ]], []
```

Input :

```
extrema(x^2+y^2, x*y=1, [x=0..inf, y=0..inf])
```

Output :

```
[[1,1]], []
```

Input :

```
extrema(x*y*z, x+y+z=1, [x,y,z], order=1)
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,0], [0,1,0], [0,0,1], [1/3,1/3,1/3]]
```

### 5.53.3 Global extrema without using derivatives : nlp solve

`nlp solve` computes the optimum of a (not necessarily differentiable) nonlinear (multivariate) objective function, subject to a set of nonlinear equality and/or inequality constraints, using the COBYLA algorithm. The command takes the following arguments:

- `obj` : objective expression
- `constr` : list of equality and inequality constraints (optional)
- `bd` : sequence of variable boundaries (optional) : `x=a..b, y=c..d, ...`
- `opt` : sequence of options (optional), which may be one of:
  - `maximize=true` or `false` (or just `maximize`)
  - `nlp_initialpoint=[x=x0, y=y0, ...]`
  - `nlp_iterationlimit=n`
  - `assume=nlp_nonnegative`
  - `nlp_precision=eps`

`nlp solve` returns a list containing the optimal value of the objective and a vector of optimal values of the decision variables.

The objective is minimized by default, unless `maximize` or `maximize=true` is specified as an option.

Initial point, if given, does not need to be feasible. Note, however, that the initial value of a variable must not be zero. If the initial point is not given or isn't feasible, a feasible starting guess is automatically generated. Note that choosing a good initial point is needed for obtaining a correct solution in some cases.

Input syntax for `nlp solve` resembles that of Maple's `NLP Solve` (entering the objective as a function (univariate case) is not supported, however).

### Examples

Input :

```
nlpsolve(ln(1+x1^2)-x2, [(1+x1^2)^2+x2^2=4])
```

Output :

```
[-1.73205080757, [x1=-4.77142305945e-08, x2=1.73205080757]]
```

Input :

```
nlpsolve(-x1*x2*x3, [72-x1-2*x2-2*x3>=0],  
x1=0..20, x2=0..11, x3=0..42)
```

Output :

```
[-3300.0, [x1=20.0, x2=11.0, x3=15.0]]
```

Input :

```
nlpsolve(x^3+2*x*y-2*y^2, x=-10..10, y=-10..10,  
nlp_initialpoint=[x=3, y=4], maximize)
```

Output :

```
[1050.0, [x=10.0, y=4.9999985519]]
```

Input :

```
nlpsolve(sin(x)/x, x=1..30)
```

Output :

```
[-0.217233628211, [x=4.49340942383]]
```

Input :

```
nlpsolve(2-1/120*x1*x2*x3*x4*x5,  
[x1<=1, x2<=2, x3<=3, x4<=4, x5<=5], assume=nlp_nonnegative)
```

Output :

```
[1.0, [x1=1.0, x2=2.0, x3=3.0, x4=4.0, x5=5.0]]
```

#### 5.53.4 Minimax polynomial approximation: `minimax`

The function `minimax` is called by entering :

```
minimax(expr, var=a..b, n, [limit=m])
```

where `expr` is an univariate expression (e.g.  $f(x)$ ) to approximate, `var` is a variable (e.g.  $x$ ),  $[a, b] \subset \mathbb{R}$  and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Expression `expr` must be continuous on  $[a, b]$ . The function returns minimax polynomial (e.g.  $p(x)$ ) of degree  $n$  or lower that approximates `expr` on  $[a, b]$ . The approximation is found by applying Remez algorithm.

If the fourth argument is specified,  $m$  is used to limit the number of iterations of the algorithm. It is unlimited by default.

The largest absolute error of the approximation  $p(x)$ , i.e.  $\max_{a \leq x \leq b} |f(x) - p(x)|$ , is printed in the message area.

Since the coefficients of  $p$  are computed numerically, one should avoid setting  $n$  unnecessary high as it may result in a poor approximation due to the roundoff errors.

Input :

```
minimax(sin(x), x=0..2*pi, 10)
```

Output :

```
5.8514210172e-06+0.999777263385*x+0.00140015265723*x^2
-0.170089663733*x^3+0.0042684304696*x^4+
0.00525794766407*x^5+0.00135760214958*x^6
-0.000570502074548*x^7+6.07297119422e-05*x^8
-2.14787414001e-06*x^9-2.97767481643e-15*x^10
```

The largest absolute error of this approximation is  $5.85234008632 \times 10^{-6}$ .

## 5.54 Different matrix norms

See section 5.44.1 for different norms on vectors.

### 5.54.1 The Frobenius norm: `frobenius_norm`

The `frobenius_norm` command takes a matrix `A` as an argument.

`frobenius_norm` returns the Frobenius norm of the matrix; namely  $\sqrt{\sum_{i,j} (A[i, j])^2}$ .  
Input:

```
B := [[1, 2, 3], [3, -9, 6], [4, 5, 6]]
```

then:

```
frobenius_norm(B)
```

Output:

```
sqrt(217)
```

since  $\sqrt{1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + 3^2 + (-9)^2 + 6^2 + 4^2 + 5^2 + 6^2} = \sqrt{217}$ .

**5.54.2  $l^2$  matrix norm : norm l2norm**

`norm` (or `l2norm`) takes as argument a matrix  $A = a_{j,k}$  (see also 5.44.1).

`norm` (or `l2norm`) returns  $\sqrt{\sum_{j,k} a_{j,k}^2}$ .

Input :

```
norm( [[1,2], [3,-4]] )
```

or :

```
l2norm( [[1,2], [3,-4]] )
```

Output :

```
sqrt(30)
```

**5.54.3  $l^\infty$  matrix norm : maxnorm**

`maxnorm` takes as argument a matrix  $A = a_{j,k}$  (see also 5.44.1).

`maxnorm` returns  $\max(|a_{j,k}|)$ .

Input :

```
maxnorm( [[1,2], [3,-4]] )
```

Output :

```
4
```

**5.54.4 Matrix row norm : rownorm rowNorm**

`rownorm` (or `rowNorm`) takes as argument a matrix  $A = a_{j,k}$ .

`rownorm` (or `rowNorm`) returns  $\max_k (\sum_j |a_{j,k}|)$ .

Input :

```
rownorm( [[1,2], [3,-4]] )
```

or :

```
rowNorm( [[1,2], [3,-4]] )
```

Output :

```
7
```

Indeed :  $\max(1+2, 3+4) = 7$

### 5.54.5 Matrix column norm : colnorm colNorm

`colnorm` (or `colNorm`) takes as argument a matrix  $A = a_{j,k}$ .  
`colnorm` (or `colNorm`) returns  $\max_j (\sum_k (|a_{j,k}|))$ .

Input :

```
colnorm([[1, 2], [3, -4]])
```

or :

```
colNorm([[1, 2], [3, -4]])
```

Output :

6

Indeed :  $\max(1 + 3, 2 + 4) = 6$

### 5.54.6 The operator norm of a matrix: `matrix_norm`, `l1norm`, `l2norm`, `norm`, `specnorm`, `linfnorm`

The `matrix_norm` command takes two arguments, a matrix  $A$  and a second argument of either 1, 2 or inf.

`matrix_norm` returns the operator norm of the operator associated to the matrix.  
(See the reminder below for a discussion of operator norms.) The operator norm will be relative to the  $\ell_1$ ,  $\ell_2$  or  $\ell_\infty$  norm on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , depending on the second argument.  
Note that

- `matrix_norm(A, 1)` is the same as `l1norm(A)` and `colnorm(A)`.
- `matrix_norm(A, 2)` is the same as `l2norm(A)` and `max(SVL(A))`.
- `matrix_norm(A, inf)` is the same as `linfnorm(A)` and `rownorm(A)`.

Input:

```
B := [[1, 2, 3], [3, -9, 6], [4, 5, 6]]
```

then:

```
matrix_norm(B, 1)
```

or:

```
l1norm(B)
```

or:

```
colNorm(B)
```

Output:

16

since  $\max(1 + 3 + 4, 2 + 9 + 5, 3 + 6 + 6) = 16$ .

Input:

`matrix_norm(B, 2)`

or:

`l2norm(B)`

or:

`max(SVL(B))`

Output:

11.2449175989

Input:

`matrix_norm(B, inf)`

or:

`linfnorm(B)`

or:

`rowNorm(B)`

Output:

18

since  $\max(1 + 2 + 3, 3 + 9 + 6, 4 + 5 + 6) = 18$ .

Reminder:

In mathematics, particularly functional analysis, a linear function between two normed spaces  $f : E \rightarrow F$  is continuous exactly when there is a number  $K$  such that  $\|f(x)\|_F \leq K\|x\|$  for all  $x$  in  $E$ . For this reason, they are also called bounded linear functions. The infimum of all such  $K$  is defined to be the operator norm of  $f$ , and it depends on the norms of  $E$  and  $F$ . There are other characterizations of the operator norm of  $f$ , such as the supremum of  $\|f(x)\|_F$  over all  $x$  in  $E$  with  $\|x\|_E \leq 1$ .

If  $E$  and  $F$  are finite dimensional, then any linear function  $f : E \rightarrow F$  will be bounded.

Any  $m \times n$  matrix  $A = (a_{jk})$  corresponds to a linear function  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  defined by  $f(x) = Ax$ . We will refer to the operator norm of  $f$  as the operator norm of  $A$ .

- If  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbb{R}^m$  both have the  $\ell_1$  norm, namely for  $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots)$  the norm is  $\|x\| = \sum_j |x_j|$ , the operator norm of  $A$  is

$$\max_k \left( \sum_j |a_{jk}| \right),$$

which is given by `matrix_norm(A, 1)` and `colnorm(A)`.

- If  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbb{R}^m$  both have the  $\ell_2$  norm, namely for  $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots)$  the norm is  $\|x\| = \sqrt{\sum_j x_j^2}$  (the usual Euclidean norm), the operator norm of  $A$  is the largest eigenvalue of  $f^* \circ f$ , where  $f^*$  is the transpose of  $f$ , and so the largest singular value of  $f$ , which is given by `matrix_norm(A, 2)`, `l2norm(A)`, and `max(SVL(A))`.
- If  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbb{R}^m$  both have the  $\ell_\infty$  norm, namely for  $x = (x_1, x_2, \dots)$  the norm is  $|x| = \max_j |x_j|$ , the operator norm of  $A$  is

$$\max_j \left( \sum_k |a_{jk}| \right),$$

which is given by `matrix_norm(A, inf)` and `rownorm(A)`.

## 5.55 Matrix reduction

### 5.55.1 Eigenvalues : `eigenvals`

`eigenvals` takes as argument a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$ .

`eigenvals` returns the sequence of the  $n$  eigenvalues of  $A$ .

**Remark :** If  $A$  is exact, Xcas may not be able to find the exact roots of the characteristic polynomial, `eigenvals` will return approximate eigenvalues of  $A$  if the coefficients are numeric or a subset of the eigenvalues if the coefficients are symbolic.

Input :

```
eigenvals([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]])
```

Output :

```
(2,2,2)
```

Input :

```
eigenvals([[4,1,0],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]])
```

Output :

```
(0.324869129433,4.21431974338,1.46081112719)
```

### 5.55.2 Eigenvalues : `egvl` `eigenvalues` `eigVl`

`egvl` (or `eigenvalues` `eigVl`) takes as argument a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$ .

`egvl` (or `eigenvalues` `eigVl`) returns the Jordan normal form of  $A$ .

**Remark :** If  $A$  is exact, Xcas may not be able to find the exact roots of the characteristic polynomial, `eigenvalues` will return an approximate diagonalization of  $A$  if the coefficients are numeric.

Input :

```
egvl([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]])
```

Output :

```
[[2,1,0],[0,2,1],[0,0,2]]
```

Input :

```
egvl([[4,1,0],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]])
```

Output :

```
[[0.324869129433,0,0],[0,4.21431974338,0],[0,0,1.46081112719]]
```

### 5.55.3 Eigenvectors : `egv` `eigenvectors` `eigenvecs` `eigVc`

`egv` (or `eigenvectors` `eigenvecs` `eigVc`) takes as argument a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$ .

If  $A$  is a diagonalizable matrix, `egv` (or `eigenvectors` `eigenvecs` `eigVc`) returns a matrix whose columns are the eigenvectors of the matrix  $A$ . Otherwise, it will fail (see also `jordan` for characteristic vectors).

Input :

```
egv([[1,1,3],[1,3,1],[3,1,1]])
```

Output :

```
[[[-1,1,1],[2,1,0],[-1,1,-1]]]
```

Input :

```
egv([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]])
```

Output :

```
"Not diagonalizable at eigenvalue 2"
```

In complex mode, input :

```
egv([[2,0,0],[0,2,-1],[2,1,2]])
```

Output :

```
[0,1,0],[-1,-2,-1],[i,0,-i]]
```

### 5.55.4 Rational Jordan matrix : `rat_jordan`

`rat_jordan` takes as argument a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$  with exact coefficients.

`rat_jordan` returns :

- in Xcas, Mupad or TI mode
- a sequence of two matrices : a matrix  $P$  (the columns of  $P$  are the eigenvectors if  $A$  is diagonalizable in the field of its coefficients) and the rational Jordan matrix  $J$  of  $A$ , that is the most reduced matrix in the field of the coefficients of  $A$  (or the complexified field in complex mode), where

$$J = P^{-1}AP$$

- in Maple mode

the Jordan matrix  $J$  of  $A$ . We can also have the matrix  $P$  verifying  $J = P^{-1}AP$  in a variable by passing this variable as second argument, for example

```
rat_jordan([[1,0,0],[1,2,-1],[0,0,1]],'P')
```

### Remarks

- the syntax Maple is also valid in the other modes, for example, in Xcas mode input

```
rat_jordan([[4,1,1],[1,4,1],[1,1,4]],'P')
```

Output :

```
[[1,-1,1/2],[1,0,-1],[1,1,1/2]]
```

then  $P$  returns

```
[[6,0,0],[0,3,0],[0,0,3]]
```

- the coefficients of  $P$  and  $J$  belongs to the same field as the coefficients of  $A$ . For example, in Xcas mode, input :

```
rat_jordan([[1,0,1],[0,2,-1],[1,-1,1]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,1,2],[0,0,-1],[0,1,2]],[[0,0,-1],[1,0,-3],[0,1,4]]
```

Input (put -pcar(...)) because the argument of companion is a unit polynomial (see 5.55.11)

```
companion(-pcar([[1,0,1],[0,2,-1],[1,-1,1]]),x),x)
```

Output :

```
[[0,0,-1],[1,0,-3],[0,1,4]]
```

Input :

```
rat_jordan([[1,0,0],[0,1,1],[1,1,-1]])
```

Output :

```
[[[-1,0,0],[1,1,1],[0,0,1]],[[1,0,0],[0,0,2],[0,1,0]]]
```

**Input :**

```
factor(pcar([[1,0,0],[0,1,1],[1,1,-1]],x))
```

**Output :**

```
-(x-1)*(x^2-2)
```

**Input :**

```
companion((x^2-2),x)
```

**Output :**

```
[[0,2],[1,0]]
```

- When  $A$  is symmetric and has eigenvalues with an multiple order, Xcas returns orthogonal eigenvectors (not always of norm equal to 1) i.e.  $\text{tran}(P)*P$  is a diagonal matrix where the diagonal is the square norm of the eigenvectors, for example :

```
rat_jordan([[4,1,1],[1,4,1],[1,1,4]])
```

**returns :**

```
[[1,-1,1/2],[1,0,-1],[1,1,1/2]], [[6,0,0],[0,3,0],[0,0,3]]
```

**Input in Xcas, Mupad or TI mode :**

```
rat_jordan([[1,0,0],[1,2,-1],[0,0,1]])
```

**Output :**

```
[[0,1,0],[1,0,1],[0,1,1]], [[2,0,0],[0,1,0],[0,0,1]]
```

**Input in Xcas, Mupad or TI mode :**

```
rat_jordan([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]])
```

**Output :**

```
[[[1,2,1],[0,1,0],[1,2,0]],[[2,1,0],[0,2,1],[0,0,2]]]
```

**In complex mode and in Xcas, Mupad or TI mode , input :**

```
rat_jordan([[2,0,0],[0,2,-1],[2,1,2]])
```

**Output :**

```
[[1,0,0],[-2,-1,-1],[0,-i,i]],[[2,0,0],[0,2-i,0],[0,0,2+i]]
```

**Input in Maple mode :**

```
rat_jordan([[1,0,0],[1,2,-1],[0,0,1]],'P')
```

Output :

```
[[2,0,0],[0,1,0],[0,0,1]]
```

then input :

P

Output :

```
[[0,1,0],[1,0,1],[0,1,1]]
```

### 5.55.5 Jordan normal form : jordan

jordan takes as argument a square matrix A of size  $n$ .

jordan returns :

- in Xcas, Mupad or TI mode  
a sequence of two matrices : a matrix  $P$  whose columns are the eigenvectors and characteristic vectors of the matrix  $A$  and the Jordan matrix  $J$  of  $A$  verifying  $J = P^{-1}AP$ ,
- in Maple mode  
the Jordan matrix  $J$  of  $A$ . We can also have the matrix  $P$  verifying  $J = P^{-1}AP$  in a variable by passing this variable as second argument, for example

```
jordan([[1,0,0],[0,1,1],[1,1,-1]],'P')
```

#### Remarks

- the Maple syntax is also valid in the other modes, for example, in Xcas mode input :

```
jordan([[4,1,1],[1,4,1],[1,1,4]],'P')
```

Output :

```
[[1,-1,1/2],[1,0,-1],[1,1,1/2]]
```

then P returns

```
[[6,0,0],[0,3,0],[0,0,3]]
```

- When  $A$  is symmetric and has eigenvalues with multiple orders, Xcas returns orthogonal eigenvectors (not always of norm equal to 1) i.e.  $\text{tran}(P) * P$  is a diagonal matrix where the diagonal is the square norm of the eigenvectors, for example :

```
jordan([[4,1,1],[1,4,1],[1,1,4]])
```

returns :

$[[1, -1, 1/2], [1, 0, -1], [1, 1, 1/2]], [[6, 0, 0], [0, 3, 0], [0, 0, 3]]$

Input in Xcas, Mupad or TI mode :

`jordan([[1,0,0],[0,1,1],[1,1,-1]])`

Output :

$[[1, 0, 0], [0, 1, 1], [1, 1, -1]], [[-1, 0, 0], [1, 1, 1], [0, -\sqrt{2}-1, \sqrt{2}-1]]$

Input in Maple mode :

`jordan([[1,0,0],[0,1,1],[1,1,-1]])`

Output :

$[[1, 0, 0], [0, -(\sqrt{2}), 0], [0, 0, \sqrt{2}]]$

then input :

P

Output :

$[[ -1, 0, 0], [1, 1, 1], [0, -\sqrt{2}-1, \sqrt{2}-1]]$

Input in Xcas, Mupad or TI mode :

`jordan([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]])`

Output :

$[[[1, 2, 1], [0, 1, 0], [1, 2, 0]], [[2, 1, 0], [0, 2, 1], [0, 0, 2]]]$

In complex mode and in Xcas, Mupad or TI mode , input :

`jordan([[2,0,0],[0,2,-1],[2,1,2]])`

Output :

$[[1, 0, 0], [-2, -1, -1], [0, -i, i]], [[2, 0, 0], [0, 2-i, 0], [0, 0, 2+i]]$

### 5.55.6 Powers of a square matrix: `matpow`

The `matpow` command takes two arguments, a square matrix and an integer. `matpow` returns the corresponding power of the matrix, computed using the Jordan form.

Input:

`matpow([[1,2],[2,1]],n)`

Output:

$[[ (3^n + (-1)^n)/2, (3^n - (-1)^n)/2], [(3^n - (-1)^n)/2, (3^n + (-1)^n)/2]]$

Notice that `jordan([[1,2],[2,1]])` returns  $[[1, -1], [1, 1]], [[3, 0], [0, -1]]$ .

### 5.55.7 Characteristic polynomial : charpoly

`charpoly` (or `pcar`) takes one or two argument(s), a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$  and optionally the name of a symbolic variable.

`charpoly` returns the characteristic polynomial  $P$  of  $A$  written as the list of its coefficients if no variable name was provided or written as an expression with respect to the variable name provided as second argument.

The characteristic polynomial  $P$  of  $A$  is defined as

$$P(x) = \det(xI - A)$$

Input :

```
charpoly([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]])
```

Output :

```
[1, -6, 12, -8]
```

Hence, the characteristic polynomial of this matrix is  $x^3 - 6x^2 + 12x - 8$  (input `normal(poly2symb([1,-6,12,-8],x))` to get its symbolic representation).

Input :

```
purge(X)::; charpoly([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]],X)
```

Output :

```
X^3-6*X^2+12*X-8
```

### 5.55.8 Characteristic polynomial using Hessenberg algorithm : pcar\_hessenberg

`pcar_hessenberg` takes as argument a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$  and optionally the name of a symbolic variable.

`pcar_hessenberg` returns the characteristic polynomial  $P$  of  $A$  written as the list of its coefficients if no variable was provided or written in its symbolic form with respect to the variable name given as second argument, where

$$P(x) = \det(xI - A)$$

The characteristic polynomial is computed using the Hessenberg algorithm (see e.g. Cohen) which is more efficient ( $O(n^3)$  deterministic) if the coefficients of  $A$  are in a finite field or use a finite representation like approximate numeric coefficients. Note however that this algorithm behaves badly if the coefficients are e.g. in  $\mathbb{Q}$ .

Input :

```
pcar_hessenberg([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]] % 37)
```

Output :

```
[1 % 37 , -6% 37, 12 % 37, -8 % 37]
```

Input :

```
pcar_hessenberg([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]] % 37,x)
```

Output :

```
x^3-6 %37 *x^2+12 % 37 *x-8 % 37
```

Hence, the characteristic polynomial of [[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]] in  $\mathbb{Z}/37\mathbb{Z}$  is

$$x^3 - 6x^2 + 12x - 8$$

### 5.55.9 Minimal polynomial : pmin

pmin takes one (resp. two) argument(s): a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$  and optionally the name of a symbolic variable.

pmin returns the minimal polynomial of  $A$  written as a list of its coefficients if no variable was provided, or written in symbolic form with respect to the variable name given as second argument. The minimal polynomial of  $A$  is the polynomial  $P$  having minimal degree such that  $P(A) = 0$ .

Input :

```
pmin([[1,0],[0,1]])
```

Output :

```
[1,-1]
```

Input :

```
pmin([[1,0],[0,1]],x)
```

Output :

```
x-1
```

Hence the minimal polynomial of [[1,0],[0,1]] is  $x-1$ .

Input :

```
pmin([[2,1,0],[0,2,0],[0,0,2]])
```

Output :

```
[1,-4,4]
```

Input :

```
pmin([[2,1,0],[0,2,0],[0,0,2]],x)
```

Output :

```
x^2-4*x+4
```

Hence, the minimal polynomial of [[2,1,0],[0,2,0],[0,0,2]] is  $x^2 - 4x + 4$ .

### 5.55.10 Adjoint matrix : `adjoint_matrix`

`adjoint_matrix` takes as argument a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$ .  
`adjoint_matrix` returns the list of the coefficients of  $P$  (the characteristic polynomial of  $A$ ), and the list of the matrix coefficients of  $Q$  (the adjoint matrix of  $A$ ).

The comatrix of a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$  is the matrix  $B$  defined by  $A \times B = \det(A) \times I$ . The adjoint matrix of  $A$  is the comatrix of  $xI - A$ . It is a polynomial of degree  $n - 1$  in  $x$  having matrix coefficients. The following relation holds:

$$P(x) \times I = \det(xI - A)I = (xI - A)Q(x)$$

Since the polynomial  $P(x) \times I - P(A)$  (with matrix coefficients) is also divisible by  $x \times I - A$  (by algebraic identities), this proves that  $P(A) = 0$ . We also have  $Q(x) = I \times x^{n-1} + \dots + B_0$  where  $B_0$  = is the comatrix of  $A$  (up to the sign if  $n$  is odd).

Input :

```
adjoint_matrix([[4,1,-2],[1,2,-1],[2,1,0]])
```

Output :

```
[ [1,-6,12,-8],
  [ [[1,0,0],[0,1,0],[0,0,1]], [[-2,1,-2],
    [1,-4,-1],[2,1,-6]], [[1,-2,3],[-2,4,2],[-3,-2,7]] ] ]
```

Hence the characteristic polynomial is :

$$P(x) = x^3 - 6 * x^2 + 12 * x - 8$$

The determinant of  $A$  is equal to  $-P(0) = 8$ . The comatrix of  $A$  is equal to :

$$B = Q(0) = [[1,-2,3],[-2,4,2],[-3,-2,7]]$$

Hence the inverse of  $A$  is equal to :

$$1/8 * [[1,-2,3],[-2,4,2],[-3,-2,7]]$$

The adjoint matrix of  $A$  is :

$$[[x^2-2x+1, x-2, -2x+3], [x-2, x^2-4x+4, -x+2], [2x-3, x-2, x^2-6x+7]]$$

Input :

```
adjoint_matrix([[4,1],[1,2]])
```

Output :

$$[[1,-6,7], [[1,0],[0,1]], [[-2,1],[1,-4]]]]$$

Hence the characteristic polynomial  $P$  is :

$$P(x) = x^2 - 6 * x + 7$$

The determinant of  $A$  is equal to  $+P(0) = 7$ . The comatrix of  $A$  is equal to

$$Q(0) = -[[-2, 1], [1, -4]]$$

Hence the inverse of  $A$  is equal to :

$$-1/7 * [[-2, 1], [1, -4]]$$

The adjoint matrix of  $A$  is :

$$-[[x - 2, 1], [1, x - 4]]$$

### 5.55.11 Companion matrix of a polynomial : companion

companion takes as argument an unitary polynomial  $P$  and the name of its variable.

companion returns the matrix whose characteristic polynomial is  $P$ .

If  $P(x) = x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1x + a_0$ , this matrix is equal to the unit matrix of size  $n-1$  bordered with  $[0, 0, \dots, 0, -a_0]$  as first row, and with  $[-a_0, -a_1, \dots, -a_{n-1}]$  as last column.

Input :

```
companion(x^2+5x-7,x)
```

Output :

```
[[0, 7], [1, -5]]
```

Input :

```
companion(x^4+3x^3+2x^2+4x-1,x)
```

Output :

```
[[0, 0, 0, 1], [1, 0, 0, -4], [0, 1, 0, -2], [0, 0, 1, -3]]
```

### 5.55.12 Hessenberg matrix reduction : hessenberg

hessenberg takes as argument a matrix  $A$ .

hessenberg returns a matrix  $B$  equivalent to  $A$  where the coefficients below the sub-principal diagonal are zero.  $B$  is a Hessenberg matrix.

Input :

```
hessenberg([[3,2,2,2,2],[2,1,2,-1,-1],[2,2,1,-1,1],
[2,-1,-1,3,1],[2,-1,1,1,2]])
```

Output :

```
[[3,8,5,10,2],[2,1,1/2,-5,-1],[0,2,1,8,2],
[0,0,1/2,8,1],[0,0,0,-26,-3]]
```

Input

```
A:=[[3,2,2,2,2],[2,1,2,-1,-1],[2,2,1,-1,1],
[2,-1,-1,3,1],[2,-1,1,1,2]] ;;
B:= hessenberg(A); pcar(A); pcar(B)
```

Output: [1, -7, -66, -24].

### 5.55.13 Hermite normal form : ihermite

`ihermite` takes as argument a matrix  $A$  with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}$ .  
`ihermite` returns two matrices  $U$  and  $B$  such that  $B=U*A$ ,  $U$  is invertible in  $\mathbb{Z}$  ( $\det(U) = \pm 1$ ) and  $B$  is upper-triangular. Moreover, the absolute value of the coefficients above the diagonal of  $B$  are smaller than the pivot of the column divided by 2.

The answer is obtained by a Gauss-like reduction algorithm using only operations of rows with integer coefficients and invertible in  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

Input :

```
A:=[[9,-36,30],[-36,192,-180],[30,-180,180]];
U,B:=ihermite(A)
```

Output :

```
[[9,-36,30],[-36,192,-180],[30,-180,180]],
[[13,9,7],[6,4,3],[20,15,12]],[[3,0,30],[0,12,0],[0,0,60]]
```

#### Application: Compute a $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of the kernel of a matrix having integer coefficients

Let  $M$  be a matrix with integer coefficients.

Input :

```
(U,A):=ihermite(transpose(M)).
```

This returns  $U$  and  $A$  such that  $A=U*\text{transpose}(M)$  hence  $\text{transpose}(A)=M*\text{transpose}(U)$ .

The columns of  $\text{transpose}(A)$  which are identically 0 (at the right, coming from the rows of  $A$  which are identically 0 at the bottom) correspond to columns of  $\text{transpose}(U)$  which form a basis of  $\text{Ker}(M)$ . In other words, the rows of  $A$  which are identically 0 correspond to rows of  $U$  which form a basis of  $\text{Ker}(M)$ .

#### Example

Let  $M:=[[1,4,7],[2,5,8],[3,6,9]]$ . Input

```
U,A:=ihermite(tran(M))
```

Output

```
U:=[[-3,1,0],[4,-1,0],[-1,2,-1]] and
A:=[[1,-1,-3],[0,3,6],[0,0,0]]
```

Since  $A[2]=[0,0,0]$ , a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of  $\text{Ker}(M)$  is  $U[2]=[-1,2,-1]$ .

Verification  $M*U[2]=[0,0,0]$ .

### 5.55.14 Smith normal form in $\mathbb{Z}$ : ismith

`ismith` takes as argument a matrix with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

`ismith` returns three matrices  $U$ ,  $B$  and  $V$  such that  $B=U*A*V$ ,  $U$  and  $V$  are invertible in  $\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $B$  is diagonal, and  $B[i,i]$  divides  $B[i+1,i+1]$ . The coefficients  $B[i,i]$  are called invariant factors, they are used to describe the structure of finite abelian groups.

Input :

```
A:=[[9,-36,30],[-36,192,-180],[30,-180,180]];
U,B,V:=ismith(A)
```

Output :

```
[[[-3,0,1],[6,4,3],[20,15,12]],
[[3,0,0],[0,12,0],[0,0,60]],
[[1,24,-30],[0,1,0],[0,0,1]]]
```

The invariant factors are 3, 12 and 60.

### 5.55.15 Smith normal form: **smith**

The **smith** command takes one argument, a square matrix A with elements in a field K.

**smith** returns matrices U, V, and D, where U and V are invertible, D is diagonal, and  $D = U \cdot A \cdot V$ .

Input:

```
M:=[[5,-2,3,6],[1,-3,1,3],[7,-6,-4,7],[-2,-4,-3,0]])
% 17
A := x*idn(4) -M
```

Output:

```
[[x-5 % 17,2 % 17,-3 % 17,-6 % 17],[-1 % 17,x+3 % 17,-1 % 17,-3 % 17],[-7 % 17,6 % 17,x+4 % 17,-7 % 17],[2 % 17,4 % 17,3 % 17,x]]
```

Input:

```
U, D, V := smith(A)
```

then:

U

Output:

```
[[0 % 17,-1 % 17,0 % 17,0 % 17],[0 % 17,0 % 17,6 % 17,4 % 17],[(-2*x+5) % 17,(-4*x-5) % 17,(-3*x-6) % 17,(x^2-3*x+6) % 17],[2*x^2+5*x+6) % 17,(4*x^2+8*x+2) % 17,(3*x^2+4*x+1) % 17,(-x^3-2*x^2+2*x-6) % 17]]
```

Input:

V

Output:

```
[[1 % 17,(x+3) % 17,(-6*x^2-3*x-7) % 17,(6*x^5+2*x^4-2*x^3+x^2-8*x+6) % 17],[0 % 17,1 % 17,(-6*x-2) % 17,(6*x^4+x^3-6*x^2+5*x-6) % 17],[0 % 17,0 % 17,1 % 17,(-x^3+3*x^2+7) % 17],[0 % 17,0 % 17,0 % 17,1 % 17]]]
```

Input:

D

Output:

```
[[1 % 17, 0 % 17, 0 % 17, 0 % 17], [0 % 17, 1 % 17, 0 % 17, 0 % 17], [0 % 17, 0 % 17, 1 % 17, 0 % 17], [0 % 17, 0 % 17, 0 % 17, (-x^4-2*x^3+8*x^2-3*x+2) % 17]]
```

We can check this:

Input:

normal(U\*A\*V-D)

Output:

```
[[0, 0, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0, 0]]
```

Input:

```
B:=[[x^2+x-1, 1, 0, 1], [-1, x, 0, -1], [0, x^2+1, x, 0], [1, 0, 1, x^2+x+1]] % 3
L:=smith(B)
```

Output:

```
[[0 % 3, -1 % 3, 0 % 3, 0 % 3], [1 % 3, 0 % 3, 0 % 3, (-x^2-x+1) % 3], [0 % 3, (x^2+1) % 3, (-x) % 3, (x^2+1) % 3], [-1 % 3, (-x^4-x^3+x+1) % 3, (x^3+x^2-x+1) % 3, (-x^4-x^3+x^2-x) % 3]], [[1 % 3, 0 % 3, 0 % 3, 0 % 3], [0 % 3, 1 % 3, 0 % 3, 0 % 3], [0 % 3, 0 % 3, 1 % 3, 0 % 3], [0 % 3, 0 % 3, 0 % 3, (-x^6+x^5+x+1) % 3]], [[1 % 3, x % 3, (x^3+x^2-x) % 3, (-x^7+x^6+x^4+x^3+x^2+x-1) % 3], [0 % 3, 1 % 3, (x^2+x-1) % 3, (-x^6+x^5+x^3+x^2+x+1) % 3], [0 % 3, 0 % 3, 1 % 3, (-x^4-x^3-x^2-x) % 3], [0 % 3, 0 % 3, 0 % 3, 1 % 3]]]
```

## 5.56 Isometries

### 5.56.1 Recognize an isometry : isom

isom takes as argument the matrix of a linear function in dimension 2 or 3.

isom returns :

- if the linear function is a direct isometry,  
the list of the characteristic elements of this isometry and +1,
- if the linear function is an indirect isometry,  
the list of the characteristic elements of this isometry and -1
- if the linear function is not an isometry,  
[0].

Input :

```
isom([[0,0,1],[0,1,0],[1,0,0]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,-1],-1]
```

which means that this isometry is a 3-d symmetry with respect to the plane  $x - z = 0$ .

Input :

```
isom(sqrt(2)/2*[[1,-1],[1,1]])
```

Output :

```
[pi/4,1]
```

Hence, this isometry is a 2-d rotation of angle  $\frac{\pi}{4}$ .

Input :

```
isom([[0,0,1],[0,1,0],[0,0,1]])
```

Output :

```
[0]
```

therefore this transformation is not an isometry.

### 5.56.2 Find the matrix of an isometry : `mkisom`

`mkisom` takes as argument :

- In dimension 3, the list of characteristic elements (axis direction, angle for a rotation or normal to the plane for a symmetry) and +1 for a direct isometry or -1 an indirect isometry.
- In dimension 2, a characteristic element (an angle or a vector) and +1 for a direct isometry (rotation) or -1 for an indirect isometry (symmetry).

`mkisom` returns the matrix of the corresponding isometry.

Input :

```
mkisom([-1,2,-1],pi),1)
```

Output the matrix of the rotation of axis  $[-1,2,-1]$  and angle  $\pi$ :

```
[-2/3,-2/3,1/3],[-2/3,1/3,-2/3],[1/3,-2/3,-2/3]]
```

Input :

```
mkisom([pi],-1)
```

Output the matrix of the symmetry with respect to  $O$  :

```
[-1,0,0],[0,-1,0],[0,0,-1]]
```

Input :

```
mkisom([1,1,1],-1)
```

Output the matrix of the symmetry with respect to the plane  $x + y + z = 0$  :

```
[[1/3,-2/3,-2/3],[-2/3,1/3,-2/3],[-2/3,-2/3,1/3]]
```

Input :

```
mkisom([[1,1,1],pi/3],-1)
```

Output the matrix of the product of a rotation of axis [1,1,1] and angle  $\frac{\pi}{3}$  and of a symmetry with respect to the plane  $x + y + z = 0$ :

```
[[0,-1,0],[0,0,-1],[-1,0,0]]
```

Input :

```
mkisom(pi/2,1)
```

Output the matrix of the plane rotation of angle  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  :

```
[[0,-1],[1,0]]
```

Input :

```
mkisom([1,2],-1)
```

Output matrix of the plane symmetry with respect to the line of equation  $x + 2y = 0$ :

```
[[3/5,-4/5],[-4/5,-3/5]]
```

## 5.57 Matrix factorizations

Note that most matrix factorization algorithms are implemented numerically, only a few of them will work symbolically.

### 5.57.1 Cholesky decomposition : `cholesky`

`cholesky` takes as argument a square symmetric positive definite matrix  $M$  of size  $n$ .

`cholesky` returns a symbolic or numeric matrix  $P$ .  $P$  is a lower triangular matrix such that :

$$\text{tran}(P) * P = M$$

Input :

```
cholesky([[1,1],[1,5]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0],[1,2]]
```

Input :

```
cholesky([[3,1],[1,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[sqrt(3),0],[(sqrt(3))/3,(sqrt(33))/3]]
```

Input :

```
cholesky([[1,1],[1,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0],[1,sqrt(3)]]
```

**Warning** If the matrix argument  $A$  is not a symmetric matrix, `cholesky` does not return an error, instead `cholesky` will use the symmetric matrix  $B$  of the quadratic form  $q$  corresponding to the (non symmetric) bilinear form of the matrix  $A$ .

Input :

```
cholesky([[1,-1],[-1,4]])
```

or :

```
cholesky([[1,-3],[1,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0],[-1,sqrt(3)]]
```

### 5.57.2 QR decomposition : qr

`qr` takes as argument a numeric square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$ .

`qr` factorizes numerically this matrix as  $Q * R$  where  $Q$  is an orthogonal matrix ( ${}^t Q * Q = I$ ) and  $R$  is an upper triangular matrix. `qr(A)` returns only  $R$ , run `Q=A*inv(R)` to get  $Q$ .

Input :

```
qr([[3,5],[4,5]])
```

Output is the matrix  $R$  :

```
[-5,-7],[0,-1]]
```

Input :

```
qr([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

Output is the matrix  $R$  :

```
[-3.16227766017,-4.42718872424],[0,-0.632455532034]]
```

### 5.57.3 QR decomposition (for TI compatibility) : QR

QR takes as argument a numeric square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$  and two variable names, var1 and var2.

QR factorizes this matrix numerically as  $Q * R$  where  $Q$  is an orthogonal matrix ( ${}^t Q * Q = I$ ) and  $R$  is an upper triangular matrix. QR(A, var1, var2) returns R, stores  $Q=A*inv(R)$  in var1 and R in var2.

Input :

```
QR([[3, 5], [4, 5]], Q, R)
```

Output the matrix R :

```
[-5, -7], [0, -1]
```

Then input :

```
Q
```

Output the matrix Q :

```
[-0.6, -0.8], [-0.8, 0.6]
```

### 5.57.4 LQ decomposition (HP compatible): LQ

The LQ command takes a matrix A as argument.

LQ returns three matrices L, Q and P. If A is an  $m \times n$  matrix, then L will be an  $m \times n$  lower triangular matrix, Q will be an  $n \times n$  orthogonal matrix, and P will be an  $n \times n$  permutation matrix.

Input:

```
L, Q, P := LQ([[4, 0, 0], [8, -4, 3]])
```

Output:

```
[[[4.0, 0.0, 0.0], [8.0, 5.0, 0.0]], [[1.0, 0.0, 0.0], [0.0, -0.8, 0.6], [0.0, -0.6, -0.8]]]
```

Here,  $L * Q$  is the same as  $P * A$ .

Input:

```
L, Q, P := LQ([[24, 18], [30, 24]])
```

or:

```
[[[-30.0, 0.0], [-38.4, -1.2]], [[-0.8, -0.6], [0.6, -0.8]], [[1, 0], [0, 1]]]
```

Again,  $L * Q = P * A$ .

### 5.57.5 LU decomposition : `lu`

`lu` takes as argument a square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$  (numeric or symbolic).

`lu(A)` returns a permutation  $p$  of  $0..n - 1$ , a lower triangular matrix  $L$ , with 1s on the diagonal, and an upper triangular matrix  $U$ , such that :

- $P * A = L * U$  where  $P$  is the permutation matrix associated to  $p$  (that may be computed by `P := permu2mat(p)`),
- the equation  $A * x = B$  is equivalent to :

$$L * U * x = P * B \text{ where } p(B) = [b_{p(0)}, b_{p(1)}..b_{p(n-1)}], \quad B = [b_0, b_1..b_{n-1}]$$

The permutation matrix  $P$  is defined from  $p$  by :

$$P[i, p(i)] = 1, \quad P[i, j] = 0 \text{ if } j \neq p(i)$$

In other words, it is the identity matrix where the rows are permuted according to the permutation  $p$ . The function `permu2mat` may be used to compute  $P$  (`permu2mat(p)` returns  $P$ ).

Input :

$$(p, L, U) := \text{lu}([[3., 5.], [4., 5.]])$$

Output :

$$[1, 0], [[1, 0], [0.75, 1]], [[4, 5], [0, 1.25]]$$

Here  $n = 2$ , hence :

$$P[0, p(0)] = P_2[0, 1] = 1, \quad P[1, p(1)] = P_2[1, 0] = 1, \quad P = [[0, 1], [1, 0]]$$

Verification :

Input :

$$\text{permu2mat}(p) * A; \quad L * U$$

Output:

$$[[4.0, 5.0], [3.0, 5.0]], [[4.0, 5.0], [3.0, 5.0]]$$

Note that the permutation is different for exact input (the choice of pivot is the simplest instead of the largest in absolute value).

Input :

$$\text{lu}([[1, 2], [3, 4]])$$

Output :

$$[1, 0], [[1, 0], [3, 1]], [[1, 2], [0, -2]]$$

Input :

$$\text{lu}([[1.0, 2], [3, 4]])$$

Output :

$$[1, 0], [[1, 0], [0.333333333333, 1]], [[3, 4], [0, 0.666666666667]]$$

### 5.57.6 LU decomposition (for TI compatibility) : LU

LU takes as argument a numeric square matrix  $A$  of size  $n$  and three variable names, var1, var2 and var3.

$\text{LU}(A, \text{var1}, \text{var2}, \text{var3})$  returns  $P$ , a permutation matrix, and stores :

- a lower triangular matrix  $L$ , with 1 on the diagonal, in var1,
- an upper triangular matrix  $U$  in var2,
- the permutation matrix  $P$ , result of the command LU, in var3.

These matrices are such that

the equation  $A * x = B$  is equivalent to  $L * U * x = P * B$ .

Input :

```
LU( [[3,5], [4,5]], L, U, P)
```

Output :

```
[[0,1], [1,0]]
```

Input :

L

Output :

```
[[1,0], [0.75,1]]
```

Input :

U

Output :

```
[[4,5], [0,1.25]]
```

Input :

P

Output :

```
[[0,1], [1,0]]
```

### 5.57.7 Singular values (HP compatible): **SVL**, **svl**

The **SVL** (or **svl**) command takes a square matrix as argument.

**SVL** returns the singular values of the matrix.

The singular values of a matrix  $A$  are the positive square roots of the eigenvalues of  $A \cdot A^T$ . So, if  $A$  is symmetric, the singular values are the absolute values of the eigenvalues of  $A$ .

Input:

```
SVL([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

or:

```
svl([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

Output:

```
[0.365966190626, 5.46498570422]
```

Input:

```
evalf(sqrt(eigenvals([[1,2],[3,4]]*[[1,3],[2,4]])))
```

Output:

```
5.46498570422, 0.365966190626
```

Input:

```
SVL([[1,4],[4,1]])
```

or:

```
svl([[1,4],[4,1]])
```

or:

```
[5.0, 3.0]
```

or:

```
abs(eigenvals([[1,4],[4,1]]))
```

Output:

```
5, 3
```

### 5.57.8 Singular value decomposition : **svd**

**svd** (singular value decomposition) takes as argument a numeric square matrix of size  $n$ .

**svd(A)** returns an orthogonal matrix  $U$ , the diagonal  $s$  of a diagonal matrix  $S$  and an orthogonal matrix  $Q$  ( ${}^t Q * Q = I$ ) such that :

$$A = US^tQ$$

Input :

```
svd([[1,2],[3,4]])
```

Output :

```
[[[-0.404553584834,-0.914514295677],[-0.914514295677,
0.404553584834]], [[5.46498570422,0.365966190626],
[[-0.576048436766,0.81741556047],[-0.81741556047,
-0.576048436766]]]
```

Input :

```
(U,s,Q):=svd([[3,5],[4,5]])
```

Output :

```
[[[-0.672988041811,-0.739653361771],[-0.739653361771,
0.672988041811]], [[8.6409011028,0.578643354497],
[[-0.576048436766,0.81741556047],[-0.81741556047,
-0.576048436766]]]
```

Verification :

Input :

```
U*diag(s)*tran(Q)
```

Output :

```
[[3.0,5.0],[4.0,5.0]]
```

### 5.57.9 Short basis of a lattice : lll

lll takes as argument an invertible matrix  $M$  with integer coefficients.

lll returns  $(S, A, L, O)$  such that:

- the rows of  $S$  is a short basis of the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module generated by the rows of  $M$ ,
- $A$  is the change-of-basis matrix from the short basis to the basis defined by the rows of  $M$  ( $A * M = S$ ),
- $L$  is a lower triangular matrix, the modulus of its non diagonal coefficients are less than  $1/2$ ,
- $O$  is a matrix with orthogonal rows such that  $L * O = S$ .

Input :

```
(S,A,L,O):=lll(M:=[[2,1],[1,2]])
```

Output :

```
[[[-1,1],[2,1]],[[-1,1],[1,0]],[[1,0],[1/-2,1]],
[[-1,1],[3/2,3/2]]]
```

Hence :

```
S=[[-1,1],[2,1]]
A=[[-1,1],[1,0]]
L=[[1,0],[1/-2,1]]
O=[[-1,1],[3/2,3/2]]
```

Hence the original basis is  $v_1=[2,1]$ ,  $v_2=[1,2]$   
and the short basis is  $w_1=[-1,1]$ ,  $w_2=[2,1]$ .

Since  $w_1=-v_1+v_2$  and  $w_2=v_1$  then :

$A := [[-1,1],[1,0]], A*M==S$  and  $L*O==S$ .

Input :

```
(S,A,L,O):=l1l([[3,2,1],[1,2,3],[2,3,1]])
```

Output :

```
S=[[-1,1,0],[-1,-1,2],[3,2,1]]
A= [[-1,0,1],[0,1,-1],[1,0,0]]
L= [[1,0,0],[0,1,0],[(1)/2,(-1)/2,1]]
O= [[-1,1,0],[-1,-1,2],[2,2,2]]
```

Input :

$M := [[3,2,1],[1,2,3],[2,3,1]]$

Properties :

$A*M==S$  and  $L*O==S$

## 5.58 Quadratic forms

### 5.58.1 Matrix of a quadratic form : q2a

$q2a$  takes two arguments : the symbolic expression of a quadratic form  $q$  and a vector of variable names.

$q2a$  returns the matrix  $A$  of  $q$ .

Input :

```
q2a(2*x*y,[x,y])
```

Output :

```
[[0,1],[1,0]]
```

### 5.58.2 Transform a matrix into a quadratic form : a2q

$a2q$  takes two arguments : the symmetric matrix  $A$  of a quadratic form  $q$  and a vector of variable names of the same size.

$a2q$  returns the symbolic expression of the quadratic form  $q$ .

Input :

```
a2q([[0,1],[1,0]],[x,y])
```

Output :

$2*x*y$

Input :

`a2q([[1,2],[2,4]],[x,y])`

Output :

$x^2+4*x*y+4*y^2$

### 5.58.3 Reduction of a quadratic form : `gauss`

`gauss` takes two arguments : a symbolic expression representing a quadratic form  $q$  and a vector of variable names.

`gauss` returns  $q$  written as sum or difference of squares using Gauss algorithm.

Input :

`gauss(2*x*y,[x,y])`

Output :

$(y+x)^2/2 + (- (y-x)^2)/2$

### 5.58.4 The conjugate gradient algorithm: `conjugate_gradient`

The `conjugate_gradient` command takes two mandatory arguments and two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are an  $n \times n$  positive definite symmetric matrix  $A$  and a vector  $y$  of length  $n$ . The optional arguments are a vector  $x_0$  of length  $n$  and a positive number  $\epsilon$ .

`conjugate_gradient` uses the conjugate gradient algorithm to return the solution to  $Ax = y$  to within  $\epsilon$  or `epsilon`. The vector  $x_0$  is an optional initial approximation.

Input:

`conjugate_gradient([[2,1],[1,5]],[1,0])`

Output:

$[5/9, -1/9]$

Input:

`conjugate_gradient([[2,1],[1,5]],[1,0],[0.55,-0.11],1e-2)`

Output:

$[0.555, -0.11]$

Input:

`conjugate_gradient([[2,1],[1,5]],[1,0],[0.55,-0.11],1e-10)`

Output:

$[0.555555555556, -0.111111111111]$

### 5.58.5 Gram-Schmidt orthonormalization : `gramschmidt`

`gramschmidt` takes one or two arguments :

- a matrix viewed as a list of row vectors, the scalar product being the canonical scalar product, or
- a list of elements that is a basis of a vector subspace, and a function that defines a scalar product on this vector space.

`gramschmidt` returns an orthonormal basis for this scalar product.

Input :

```
normal(gramschmidt([[1,1,1],[0,0,1],[0,1,0]]))
```

Or input :

```
normal(gramschmidt([[1,1,1],[0,0,1],[0,1,0]],dot))
```

Output :

```
[[ (sqrt(3))/3, (sqrt(3))/3, (sqrt(3))/3], [(-(sqrt(6)))/6,
(-(sqrt(6)))/6, (sqrt(6))/3], [(-(sqrt(2)))/2, (sqrt(2))/2, 0]]
```

#### Example

We define a scalar product on the vector space of polynomials by:

$$P \cdot Q = \int_{-1}^1 P(x)Q(x)dx$$

Input :

```
gramschmidt([1,1+x],(p,q)->integrate(p*q,x,-1,1))
```

Or define the function `p_scal`, input :

```
p_scal(p,q):=integrate(p*q,x,-1,1)
```

then input :

```
gramschmidt([1,1+x],p_scal)
```

Output :

```
[1/(sqrt(2)), (1+x-1)/sqrt(2/3)]
```

### 5.58.6 Graph of a conic : `conic`

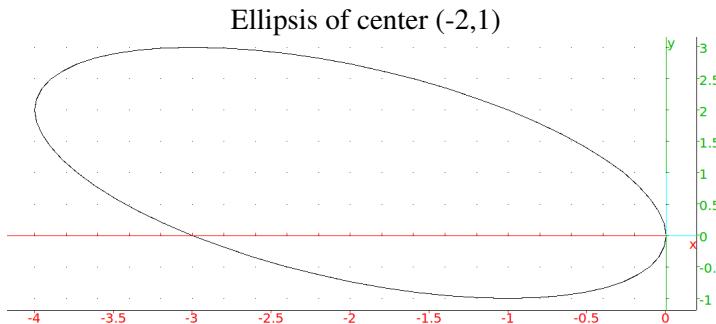
`conic` takes as argument the equation of a conic with respect to  $x, y$ . You may also specify the names of the variables as second and third arguments or as a vector as second argument.

`conic` draws this conic.

Input:

```
conic(2*x^2+2*x*y+2*y^2+6*x)
```

Output:

**Remark:**

See also `reduced_conic` for the parametric equation of the conic.

**5.58.7 Conic reduction : `reduced_conic`**

`reduced_conic` takes two arguments : the equation of a conic and a vector of variable names.

`reduced_conic` returns a list whose elements are:

- the origin of the conic,
- the matrix of a basis in which the conic is reduced,
- 0 or 1 (0 if the conic is degenerate),
- the reduced equation of the conic
- a vector of its parametric equations.

Input:

```
reduced_conic(2*x^2+2*x*y+2*y^2+5*x+3, [x, y])
```

Output:

```
[[-5/3, 5/6], [[-1/(sqrt(2)), 1/(sqrt(2))], [-1/(sqrt(2)), -1/(sqrt(2))]], 1, 3*x^2+y^2-7/6, [((-10+5*i)/6+(1/(sqrt(2))+(i)/(sqrt(2)))*((sqrt(14)*cos(`t`))/6+((i)*sqrt(42)*sin(`t`))/6), `t`, 0, 2*pi, (2*pi)/60]]]
```

Which means that the conic is not degenerate, its reduced equation is

$$3x^2 + y^2 - 7/6 = 0$$

its origin is  $-5/3 + 5*i/6$ , its axes are parallel to the vectors  $(-1, 1)$  and  $(-1, -1)$ .

Its parametric equation is

$$\frac{-10 + 5 * i}{6} + \frac{(1 + i)}{\sqrt{2}} * \frac{(\sqrt{14} * \cos(t) + i * \sqrt{42} * \sin(t))}{6}$$

where the suggested parameter values for drawing are  $t$  from 0 to  $2\pi$  with  $t$  step=  $2\pi/60$ .

**Remark :**

Note that if the conic is degenerate and is made of 1 or 2 line(s), the lines are not given by their parametric equation but by the list of two points of the line.

Input:

```
reduced_conic(x^2-y^2+3*x+y+2)
```

Output:

```
[ [ (-3)/2, 1/2], [[1, 0], [0, 1]], 0, x^2-y^2,
  [ [ (-1+2*i)/(1-i), (1+2*i)/(1-i)],
    [ (-1+2*i)/(1-i), (-1)/(1-i)] ]]
```

### 5.58.8 Graph of a quadric: quadric

`quadric` takes as arguments the expression of a quadric with respect to  $x, y, z$ . You may also specify the variables as a vector (second argument) or as second, third and fourth arguments.

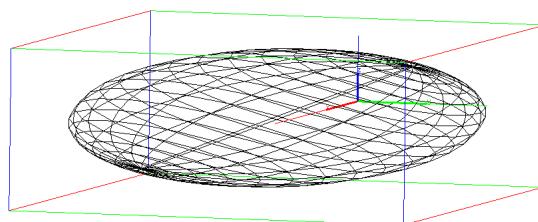
`quadric` draws this quadric.

Input:

```
quadric(7*x^2+4*y^2+4*z^2+4*x*y-
        4*x*z-2*y*z-4*x+5*y+4*z-18)
```

Output:

Ellipsoid of center [0.407407407407, -0.962962962963, -0.537037037037]



See also `reduced_quadric` for the parametric equation of the quadric.

### 5.58.9 Quadric reduction : reduced\_quadric

`reduced_quadric` takes two arguments : the equation of a quadric and a vector of variable names.

`reduced_quadric` returns a list whose elements are:

- the origin,
- the matrix of a basis where the quadric is reduced,
- 0 or 1 (0 if the quadric is degenerate),
- the reduced equation of the quadric
- a vector with its parametric equations.

**Warning !**  $u, v$  will be used as parameters of the parametric equations : these variables should not be assigned (purge them before calling `reduced_quadric`).

Input :

```
reduced_quadric(7*x^2+4*y^2+4*z^2+
4*x*y-4*x*z-2*y*z-4*x+5*y+4*z-18)
```

Output is a list containing :

- The origin (center of symmetry) of the quadric

$$[11/27, (-26)/27, (-29)/54],$$

- The matrix of the basis change:

$$\begin{bmatrix} [(\sqrt{6})/3, (\sqrt{5})/5, (-\sqrt{30}))/15], \\ [(\sqrt{6})/6, 0, (\sqrt{30})/6], \\ [(-\sqrt{6}))/6, (2*\sqrt{5})/5, (\sqrt{30})/30] \end{bmatrix},$$

- 1 hence the quadric is not degenerated
- the reduced equation of the quadric :

$$0, 9*x^2+3*y^2+3*z^2+(-602)/27,$$

- The parametric equations (in the original frame) are :

$$\begin{aligned} & [ [ (\sqrt{6})*\sqrt{602/243}*\sin(u)*\cos(v))/3+ \\ & (\sqrt{5})*\sqrt{602/81}*\sin(u)*\sin(v))/5+ \\ & ((-\sqrt{30}))*\sqrt{602/81}*\cos(u))/15+11/27, \\ & (\sqrt{6})*\sqrt{602/243}*\sin(u)*\cos(v))/6+ \\ & (\sqrt{30})*\sqrt{602/81}*\cos(u))/6+(-26)/27, \\ & ((-\sqrt{6}))*\sqrt{602/243}*\sin(u)*\cos(v))/6+ \\ & (2*\sqrt{5})*\sqrt{602/81}*\sin(u)*\sin(v))/5+ \\ & (\sqrt{30})*\sqrt{602/81}*\cos(u))/30+(-29)/54], \quad u=(0 \\ & .. \pi), v=(0..(2\pi)), ustep=(\pi/20), \\ & vstep=((2\pi)/20)] \end{aligned}$$

Hence the quadric is an ellipsoid and its reduced equation is :

$$9*x^2 + 3*y^2 + 3*z^2 + (-602)/27 = 0$$

after the change of origin  $[11/27, (-26)/27, (-29)/54]$ , the matrix of basis change  $P$  is :

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\sqrt{6}}{3} & \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5} & -\frac{\sqrt{30}}{15} \\ \frac{\sqrt{6}}{6} & 0 & \frac{\sqrt{30}}{6} \\ -\frac{\sqrt{6}}{6} & \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5} & \frac{\sqrt{30}}{30} \end{bmatrix}$$

Its parametric equation is :

$$\begin{cases} x = \frac{\sqrt{6}\sqrt{\frac{602}{243}}\sin(u)\cos(v)}{3} + \frac{\sqrt{5}\sqrt{\frac{602}{81}}\sin(u)\sin(v)}{5} - \frac{\sqrt{30}\sqrt{\frac{602}{81}}\cos(u)}{15} + \frac{11}{27} \\ y = \frac{\sqrt{6}\sqrt{\frac{602}{243}}\sin(u)\cos(v)}{6} + \frac{\sqrt{30}\sqrt{\frac{602}{81}}\cos(u)}{6} - \frac{26}{27} \\ z = \frac{-\sqrt{6}\sqrt{\frac{602}{243}}\sin(u)\cos(v)}{6} + \frac{2\sqrt{5}\sqrt{\frac{602}{81}}\sin(u)\sin(v)}{5} + \frac{\sqrt{30}\sqrt{\frac{602}{81}}\cos(u)}{30} - \frac{29}{54} \end{cases}$$

**Remark :**

Note that if the quadric is degenerate and made of 1 or 2 plane(s), each plane is not given by its parametric equation but by the list of a point of the plane and of a normal vector to the plane.

Input :

```
reduced_quadric(x^2-y^2+3*x+y+2)
```

Output :

```
[[(-3)/2, 1/2, 0], [[1, 0, 0], [0, 1, 0], [0, 0, -1]], 0, x^2-y^2,
 [hyperplan([1, 1, 0], [(-3)/2, 1/2, 0]),
 hyperplan([1, -1, 0], [(-3)/2, 1/2, 0])]]
```

## 5.59 Multivariate calculus

### 5.59.1 Gradient : derive deriver diff grad

`derive` (or `diff` or `grad`) takes two arguments : an expression  $F$  of  $n$  real variables and a vector of these variable names.

`derive` returns the gradient of  $F$ , where the gradient is the vector of all partial derivatives, for example in dimension  $n = 3$

$$\overrightarrow{\text{grad}}(F) = \left[ \frac{\partial F}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial F}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial F}{\partial z} \right]$$

**Example**

Find the gradient of  $F(x, y, z) = 2x^2y - xz^3$ .

Input :

```
derive(2*x^2*y-x*z^3, [x, y, z])
```

or :

```
diff(2*x^2*y-x*z^3, [x, y, z])
```

or :

```
grad(2*x^2*y-x*z^3, [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
[2*x^2*y-z^3, 2*x^2, -(x*3*z^2)]
```

Output after simplification with `normal(ans())` :

```
[4*x*y-z^3, 2*x^2, -(3*x*z^2)]
```

To find the critical points of  $F(x, y, z) = 2x^2y - xz^3$ , input :

```
solve(derive(2*x^2*y-x*z^3, [x, y, z]), [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
[[0, y, 0]]
```

### 5.59.2 Laplacian : laplacian

laplacian takes two arguments : an expression  $F$  of  $n$  real variables and a vector of these variable names.

laplacian returns the Laplacian of  $F$ , that is the sum of all second partial derivatives, for example in dimension  $n = 3$ :

$$\nabla^2(F) = \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial z^2}$$

#### Example

Find the Laplacian of  $F(x, y, z) = 2x^2y - xz^3$ .

Input :

```
laplacian(2*x^2*y-x*z^3, [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
4*y+-6*x*z
```

### 5.59.3 Hessian matrix : hessian

hessian takes two arguments : an expression  $F$  of  $n$  real variables and a vector of these variable names.

hessian returns the hessian matrix of  $F$ , that is the matrix of the derivatives of order 2.

#### Example

Find the hessian matrix of  $F(x, y, z) = 2x^2y - xz^3$ .

Input :

```
hessian(2*x^2*y-x*z^3, [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
[ [4*y, 4*x, -(3*z^2)], [2*2*x, 0, 0], [-(3*z^2), 0, x*3*2*z] ]
```

To have the hessian matrix at the critical points, first input :

```
solve(derive(2*x^2*y-x*z^3, [x, y, z]), [x, y, z])
```

Output is the critical points :

```
[ [0, y, 0] ]
```

Then, to have the hessian matrix at this points, input :

```
subst([ [4*y, 4*x, -(3*z^2)], [2*2*x, 0, 0],
       [-(3*z^2), 0, 6*x*z] ], [x, y, z], [0, y, 0])
```

Output :

```
[ [4*y, 4*0, -(3*0^2)], [4*0, 0, 0], [-(3*0^2), 0, 6*0*0] ]
```

and after simplification :

```
[ [4*y, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0], [0, 0, 0] ]
```

#### 5.59.4 Divergence : divergence

divergence takes two arguments : a vector field of dimension  $n$  depending on  $n$  real variables.

divergence returns the divergence of  $F$  that is the sum of the derivative of the  $k$ -th component with respect to the  $k$ -th variable. For example in dimension  $n = 3$ :

$$\text{divergence}([A, B, C], [x, y, z]) = \frac{\partial A}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial B}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial C}{\partial z}$$

Input :

```
divergence([x*z, -y^2, 2*x^y], [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
z+-2*y
```

#### 5.59.5 Rotational : curl

curl takes two arguments : a 3-d vector field depending on 3 variables.

curl returns the rotational of the vector, defined by:

$$\text{curl}([A, B, C], [x, y, z]) = \left[ \frac{\partial C}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial B}{\partial z}, \frac{\partial A}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial C}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial B}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial A}{\partial y} \right]$$

Note that  $n$  **must be equal to 3**.

Input :

```
curl([x*z, -y^2, 2*x^y], [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
[2*x^y*log(x), x-2*y*x^(y-1), 0]
```

#### 5.59.6 Potential : potential

potential takes two arguments : a vector field  $\vec{V}$  in  $R^n$  with respect to  $n$  real variables and the vector of these variable names.

potential returns, if it is possible, a function  $U$  such that  $\overrightarrow{\text{grad}}(U) = \vec{V}$ . When it is possible, we say that  $\vec{V}$  derives the potential  $U$ , and  $U$  is defined up to a constant.

potential is the reciprocal function of derive.

Input :

```
potential([2*x*y+3, x^2-4*z, -4*y], [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
2*y*x^2/ 2+3*x+(x^2-4*z-2*x^2/2)*y
```

Note that in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  a vector  $\vec{V}$  is a gradient if and only if its rotational is zero i.e. if  $\text{curl}(V)=0$ . In time-independent electro-magnetism,  $\vec{V}=\vec{E}$  is the electric field and  $U$  is the electric potential.

### 5.59.7 Conservative flux field : vpotential

`vpotential` takes two arguments : a vector field  $\vec{V}$  in  $R^n$  with respect to  $n$  real variables and the vector of these variable names.

`vpotential` returns, if it is possible, a vector  $\vec{U}$  such that  $\operatorname{curl}(\vec{U}) = \vec{V}$ . When it is possible we say that  $\vec{V}$  is a conservative flux field or a solenoidal field. The general solution is the sum of a particular solution and of the gradient of an arbitrary function, `Xcas` returns a particular solution with zero as first component.

`vpotential` is the reciprocal function of `curl`.

Input :

```
vpotential([2*x*y+3, x^2-4*z, -2*y*z], [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
[0, (- (2 * y) ) * z * x, -x^3 / 3 - (- (4 * z) ) * x + 3 * y]
```

In  $\mathbb{R}^3$ , a vector field  $\vec{V}$  is a rotational if and only if its divergence is zero ( $\operatorname{divergence}(V, [x, y, z]) = 0$ ). In time-independent electro-magnetism,  $\vec{V} = \vec{B}$  is the magnetic field and  $\vec{U} = \vec{A}$  is the potential vector.

## 5.60 Equations

### 5.60.1 Define an equation : equal

`equal` takes as argument the two members of an equation.

`equal` returns this equation. It is the prefixed version of `=`

Input :

```
equal(2*x-1, 3)
```

Output :

```
(2 * x - 1) = 3
```

We can also directly write  $(2 * x - 1) = 3$ .

### 5.60.2 Transform an equation into a difference : equal2diff

`equal2diff` takes as argument an equation.

`equal2diff` returns the difference of the two members of this equation.

Input :

```
equal2diff(2*x-1=3)
```

Output :

```
2 * x - 1 - 3
```

**5.60.3 Transform an equation into a list : equal2list**

`equal2list` takes as argument an equation.

`equal2list` returns the list of the two members of this equation.

Input :

```
equal2list (2x-1=3)
```

Output :

```
[2*x-1, 3]
```

**5.60.4 The left member of an equation : left gauche lhs**

`left` or `lhs` takes as argument an equation or an interval.

`left` or `lhs` returns the left member of this equation or the left bound of this interval.

Input :

```
left (2x-1=3)
```

Or input:

```
lhs (2x-1=3)
```

Output :

```
2*x-1
```

Input :

```
left (1..3)
```

Or input:

```
lhs (1..3)
```

Output :

```
1
```

**5.60.5 The right member of an equation : right droit rhs**

`right` or `rhs` takes as argument an equation or an interval.

`right` or `rhs` returns the right member of this equation or the right bound of this interval.

Input :

```
right (2x-1=3)
```

or :

```
rhs (2x-1=3)
```

Output :

3

Input :

`right (1..3)`

or :

`rhs (1..3)`

Output :

3

### 5.60.6 Solving equation(s): `solve`

`solve` solves an equation or a system of polynomial equations. It takes 2 arguments:

- Solving an equation

`solve` takes as arguments an equation between two expressions or an expression ( $=0$  is omitted), and a variable name (by default `x`).  
`solve` solves this equation.

- Solving a system of polynomial equations

`solve` takes as arguments two vectors : a vector of polynomial equations and a vector of variable names.  
`solve` solves this polynomial equation system.

#### Remarks:

- In real mode, `solve` returns only real solutions. To have the complex solutions, switch to complex mode, e.g. by checking `Complex` in the cas configuration, or use the `cSolve` command.
- For trigonometric equations, `solve` returns by default the principal solutions. To have all the solutions check `All_trig_sol` in the cas configuration.

#### Examples :

- Solve  $x^4 - 1 = 3$

Input :

`solve (x^4-1=3)`

Output in real mode :

`[sqrt(2), -(sqrt(2))]`

Output in complex mode :

`[sqrt(2), -(sqrt(2)), (i)*sqrt(2), -((i)*sqrt(2))]`

- Solve  $\exp(x) = 2$

Input :

```
solve(exp(x)=2)
```

Output in real mode :

```
[log(2)]
```

- Find  $x, y$  such that  $x + y = 1, x - y = 0$

Input :

```
solve([x+y=1, x-y], [x, y])
```

Output :

```
[[1/2, 1/2]]
```

- Find  $x, y$  such that  $x^2 + y = 2, x + y^2 = 2$

Input :

```
solve([x^2+y=2, x+y^2=2], [x, y])
```

Output :

```
[[[-2, -2], [1, 1], [(-sqrt(5)+1)/2, (1+sqrt(5))/2],
```

```
[(sqrt(5)+1)/2, (1-sqrt(5))/2]]
```

- Find  $x, y, z$  such that  $x^2 - y^2 = 0, x^2 - z^2 = 0$

Input :

```
solve([x^2-y^2=0, x^2-z^2=0], [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
[[x, x, x], [x, -x, -x], [x, -x, x], [x, x, -x]]
```

- Solve  $\cos(2 * x) = 1/2$

Input :

```
solve(cos(2*x)=1/2)
```

Output :

```
[pi/6, (-pi)/6]
```

Output with All\_trig\_sol checked :

```
[ (6*pi*n_0+pi)/6, (6*pi*n_0-pi)/6]
```

- Find the intersection of a straight line (given by a list of equations) and a plane.

For example, let  $D$  be the straight line of cartesian equations  $[y - z = 0, z - x = 0]$  and let  $P$  the plane of equation  $x - 1 + y + z = 0$ . Find the intersection of  $D$  and  $P$ .

Input :

```
solve([ [y-z=0, z-x=0], x-1+y+z=0 ], [x, y, z])
```

Output :

```
[ [1/3, 1/3, 1/3] ]
```

### 5.60.7 Equation solving in $\mathbb{C}$ : cSolve

cSolve takes two arguments and solves an equation or a system of polynomial equations.

- solving an equation

cSolve takes as arguments an equation between two expressions or an expression ( $=0$  is omitted), and a variable name (by default  $x$ ).

cSolve solves this equation in  $\mathbb{C}$  even if you are in real mode.

- solving a system of polynomial equations

cSolve takes as arguments two vectors : a vector of polynomial equations and a vector of variable names.

cSolve solves this equation system in  $\mathbb{C}$  even if you are in real mode.

Input :

```
cSolve(x^4-1=3)
```

Output :

```
[sqrt(2), -(sqrt(2)), (i)*sqrt(2), -((i)*sqrt(2))]
```

Input :

```
cSolve([-x^2+y=2, x^2+y], [x, y])
```

Output :

```
[ [i, 1], [-i, 1] ]
```

## 5.61 Linear systems

In this paragraph, we call the "augmented matrix" of the system  $A \cdot X = B$  (or matrix "representing" the system  $A \cdot X = B$ ), the matrix obtained by gluing the column vector  $B$  or  $-B$  to the right of the matrix  $A$ , as with `border(A, tran(B))`.

### 5.61.1 Matrix of a system : syst2mat

`syst2mat` takes two vectors as arguments. The components of the first vector are the equations of a linear system and the components of the second vector are the variable names.

`syst2mat` returns the augmented matrix of the system  $AX = B$ , obtained by gluing the column vector  $-B$  to the right of the matrix  $A$ .

Input :

```
syst2mat ([x+y, x-y-2], [x, y])
```

Output :

```
[[1, 1, 0], [1, -1, -2]]
```

Input :

```
syst2mat ([x+y=0, x-y=2], [x, y])
```

Output :

```
[[1, 1, 0], [1, -1, -2]]
```

#### Warning !!!

The variables (here `x` and `y`) must be purged.

### 5.61.2 Gauss reduction of a matrix : ref

`ref` is used to solve a linear system of equations written in matrix form:

```
A*X=B
```

The argument of `ref` is the augmented matrix of the system (the matrix obtained by augmenting the matrix `A` to the right with the column vector `B`).

The result is a matrix `[A1, B1]` where `A1` has zeros under its principal diagonal, and the solutions of:

```
A1*X=B1
```

are the same as the solutions of:

```
A*X=B
```

For example, solve the system :

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y &= -2 \\ 3x + 2y &= 2 \end{cases}$$

Input :

```
ref ([[3, 1, -2], [3, 2, 2]])
```

Output :

```
[[1, 1/3, -2/3], [0, 1, 4]]
```

Hence the solution is  $y = 4$  (last row) and  $x = -2$  (substitute  $y$  in the first row).

### 5.61.3 Gauss-Jordan reduction: rref gaussjord

`rref` solves a linear system of equations written in matrix form (see also 5.36.17)

:

$$A \star X = B$$

`rref` takes one or two arguments.

- If `rref` has only one argument, this argument is the augmented matrix of the system (the matrix obtained by augmenting matrix  $A$  to the right with the column vector  $B$ ).

The result is a matrix  $[A1, B1]$  :  $A1$  has zeros both above and under its principal diagonal and has 1 on its principal diagonal, and the solutions of:

$$A1 \star X = B1$$

are the same as :

$$A \star X = B$$

For example, to solve the system:

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y = -2 \\ 3x + 2y = 2 \end{cases}$$

Input :

```
rref([[3,1,-2],[3,2,2]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,-2],[0,1,4]]
```

Hence  $x = -2$  and  $y = 4$  is the solution of this system.

`rref` can also solve several linear systems of equations having the same first member. We write the second members as a column matrix.

Input :

```
rref([[3,1,-2,1],[3,2,2,2]])
```

Output :

```
[[1,0,-2,0],[0,1,4,1]]
```

Which means that ( $x = -2$  and  $y = 4$ ) is the solution of the system

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y = -2 \\ 3x + 2y = 2 \end{cases}$$

and ( $x = 0$  and  $y = 1$ ) is the solution of the system

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y = 1 \\ 3x + 2y = 2 \end{cases}$$

- If `rref` has two parameters, the second parameter must be an integer  $k$ , and the Gauss-Jordan reduction will be performed on (at most) the first  $k$  columns.

Input :

```
rref([[3,1,-2,1],[3,2,2,2]],1)
```

Output :

```
[[3,1,-2,1],[0,1,4,1]]
```

#### 5.61.4 Solving A\*X=B : `simult`

`simult` is used to solve a linear system of equations (resp. several linear systems of equations with the same matrix  $A$ ) written in matrix form (see also [5.36.17](#)) :

$A \cdot X = b$  (resp.  $A \cdot X = B$ )

`simult` takes as arguments the matrix  $A$  of the system and the column vector (i.e. a one column matrix)  $b$  of the second member of the system (resp. the matrix  $B$  whose columns are the vectors  $b$  of the second members of the different systems). The result is a column vector solution of the system (resp. a matrix whose columns are the solutions of the different systems).

For example, to solve the system :

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y &= -2 \\ 3x + 2y &= 2 \end{cases}$$

Input :

```
simult([[3,1],[3,2]],[[-2],[2]])
```

Output :

```
[[ -2], [4]]
```

Hence  $x = -2$  and  $y = 4$  is the solution.

Input :

```
simult([[3,1],[3,2]],[[-2,1],[2,2]])
```

Output :

```
[[ -2, 0], [4, 1]]
```

Hence  $x = -2$  and  $y = 4$  is the solution of

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y &= -2 \\ 3x + 2y &= 2 \end{cases}$$

whereas  $x = 0$  and  $y = 1$  is the solution of

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y &= 1 \\ 3x + 2y &= 2 \end{cases}$$

### 5.61.5 Step by step Gauss-Jordan reduction of a matrix : pivot

indexpivot

pivot takes three arguments : a matrix with  $n$  rows and  $p$  columns and two integers  $l$  and  $c$  such that  $0 \leq l < n$ ,  $0 \leq c < p$  and  $A_{l,c} \neq 0$ .

pivot ( $A, l, c$ ) performs one step of the Gauss-Jordan method using  $A[l, c]$  as pivot and returns an equivalent matrix with zeros in the column  $c$  of  $A$  (except at row  $l$ ).

Input :

```
pivot([[1,2],[3,4],[5,6]],1,1)
```

Output :

```
[[[-2,0],[3,4],[2,0]]]
```

Input :

```
pivot([[1,2],[3,4],[5,6]],0,1)
```

Output :

```
[[[1,2],[2,0],[4,0]]]
```

### 5.61.6 Linear system solving: linsolve

linsolve is used to solve a system of linear equations.

linsolve takes its arguments in two different ways.

- It can take two arguments, the first is a list of equations or expressions (in that case the convention is that the equation is  $expression = 0$ ), and a list of variable names.

linsolve returns the solution of the system in a list.

Input:

```
linsolve([2*x+y+z=1,x+y+2*z=1,x+2*y+z=4],[x,y,z])
```

Output :

```
[1/-2,5/2,1/-2]
```

Which means that

$$x = -\frac{1}{2}, y = \frac{5}{2}, z = -\frac{1}{2}$$

is the solution of the system :

$$\begin{cases} 2x + y + z = 1 \\ x + y + 2z = 1 \\ x + 2y + z = 4 \end{cases}$$

- It can take two arguments, the matrix of coefficients of a system and values of the right hand side in the form of a list.

Input:

```
linsolve ([[2,1,1], [1,1,2], [1,2,1]], [1,1,4])
```

Output:

```
[-1/2,5/2,-1/2]
```

- It can take four arguments; the matrices P, L, U from the lu decomposition and the values of the right hand side in the form of a list. This is useful when you have several systems of equations which only differ on their right hand side.

Input:

```
p,l,u:=lu([[2,1,1],[1,1,2],[1,2,1]])
linsolve(p,l,u,[1,1,4])
```

Output:

```
[-1/2,5/2,-1/2]
```

If the Step by step option is checked in the general configuration, a window will also pop up showing:

```
Matrix [[1,1,2, -1], [0,1, -1, -3], [0, -1, -3,1]]
Row operation L2 <- (1) * L1 - (1) * L2
Matrix [[1,0,3,2], [0,1, -1, -3], [0, -1, -3,1]]
Row operation L2 <- (1) * L3 - (- 1) * L2
Matrix [[1,0,3,2], [0,1, -1, -3], [0,0, -4, -2]]
Reducing column 3 using pivot -4 at row 3
Matrix [[1,0,3,2], [0,1, -1, -3], [0,0, -4, -2]]
Row operation L3 <- (-4) * L1 - (3) * L3
Matrix [[-4,0,0, -2], [0,1, -1, -3], [0,0, -4, -2]]
Row operation L3 <- (-4) * L2 - (- 1) * L3
End reduction [[-4,0,0, -2], [0, -4,0,10], [0,0, -4, -2]]
```

The linsolve command also solves systems with coefficients in  $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ .

Input:

```
linsolve([2*x+y+z-1,x+y+2*z-1,x+2*y+z-4]%,3,[x,y,z])
```

Output:

```
[1 % 3,1 % 3,1 % 3]
```

### 5.61.7 Solving a linear system using the Jacobi iteration method: `jacobi_linsolve`

The jacobi\_linsolve command takes two mandatory arguments and two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are the matrix of coefficients of a system and the right hand side of the system as a list. The optional arguments are an integer indicating the maximum number of iterations (by default maxiter) and a positive number indicating the error tolerance (by default epsilon).

jacobi\_linsolve uses the Jacobi iteration method to solve and return the solution of the system.

Input:

```
A:=[[100,2],[2,100]];
jacobi_linsolve(A,[0,1],1e-12);
```

Output:

```
[-0.000200080032,0.0100040016006]
```

Input:

```
evalf(linsolve(A,[0,1]))
```

Output:

```
[-0.000200080032013,0.0100040016006]
```

### 5.61.8 Solving a linear system using the Gauss-Seidel iteration method: **gauss\_seidel\_linsolve**

The `gauss_seidel_linsolve` command takes two mandatory arguments and two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are the matrix of coefficients of a system and the right hand side of the system as a list. The optional arguments are a positive number indicating the error tolerance (by default `epsilon`) and an integer indicating the maximum number of iterations (by default `maxiter`).

`jacobi_linsolve` uses the Gauss-Seidel iteration method to solve and return the solution of the system.

Input:

```
A:=[[100,2],[2,100]];
gauss_seidel_linsolve(A,[0,1],1e-12);
```

Output:

```
[-0.000200080032013,0.0100040016006]
```

Additionally, `gauss_seidel_linsolve` can take an optional *first* argument (by default 1) of  $\omega$  used for a general form of the Gauss-Seidel method (the successive overrelaxation method).

Input:

```
gauss_seidel_linsolve(1.5,A,[0,1],1e-12);
```

Output:

```
[-0.000200080032218,0.0100040016006]
```

### 5.61.9 The least squares solution of a linear system: **LSQ**, **lsq**

The `lsq` (or `LSQ`) command takes two arguments; a matrix `A` and a vector or matrix `B`.

`lsq` returns the least squares solution to the equation  $A \cdot X = B$ .

Input:

```
LSQ([[1,2],[3,4]],[5,11])
```

Output:

```
[[1], [2]]
```

Input:

```
LSQ([[1,2], [3,4]], [[5,7], [11,9]])
```

Output:

```
[[1, -5], [2, 6]]
```

Note that

Input:

```
linsolve([[1,2], [3,4], [3,6]]*[x, y] - [5,11,13], [x, y])
```

Output:

```
[]
```

since the linear system has no solution. We can still find the least squares solution  
Input:

```
LSQ([[1,2], [3,4], [3,6]], [5,11,13])
```

Output:

```
[[11/5], [11/10]]
```

The least squares solution

Input:

```
LSQ ([[3,4]], [12])
```

Output:

```
[[36/25], [48/25]]
```

represents the point on the line  $3x + 4y = 12$  closest to the origin;  
Input:

```
coordinates(projection(line(3*x+4*y=12), point(0)))
```

Output:

```
[36/25, 48/25]
```

### 5.61.10 Finding linear recurrences : reverse\_rsolve

`reverse_rsolve` takes as argument a vector  $v = [v_0 \dots v_{2n-1}]$  made of the first  $2n$  terms of a sequence  $(v_n)$  which is supposed to verify a linear recurrence relation of degree smaller than  $n$

$$x_n * v_{n+k} + \dots + x_0 * v_k = 0$$

where the  $x_j$  are  $n+1$  unknowns.

`reverse_rsolve` returns the list  $x = [x_n, \dots, x_0]$  of the  $x_j$  coefficients (if  $x_n \neq 0$  it is reduced to 1).

In other words `reverse_rsolve` solves the linear system of  $n$  equations :

$$\begin{aligned} x_n * v_n + \dots + x_0 * v_0 &= 0 \\ &\dots \\ x_n * v_{n+k} + \dots + x_0 * v_k &= 0 \\ &\dots \\ x_n * v_{2n-1} + \dots + x_0 * v_{n-1} &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

The matrix  $A$  of the system has  $n$  rows and  $n+1$  columns :

$$A = [[v_0, v_1 \dots v_n], [v_1, v_2, \dots v_{n-1}], \dots, [v_{n-1}, v_n \dots v_{2n-1}]]$$

`reverse_rsolve` returns the list  $x = [x_n, \dots, x_1, x_0]$  with  $x_n = 1$  and  $x$  is the solution of the system  $A * \text{revlist}(x)$ .

#### Examples

- Find a sequence satisfying a linear recurrence of degree at most 2 whose first elements 1, -1, 3, 3.

Input :

```
reverse_rsolve([1, -1, 3, 3])
```

Output :

```
[1, -3, -6]
```

Hence  $x_0 = -6$ ,  $x_1 = -3$ ,  $x_2 = 1$  and the recurrence relation is

$$v_{k+2} - 3v_{k+1} - 6v_k = 0$$

Without `reverse_rsolve`, we would write the matrix of the system :

`[[1, -1, 3], [-1, 3, 3]]` and use the `rref` command :

```
rref([[1, -1, 3], [-1, 3, 3]])
```

Output is `[[1, 0, 6], [0, 1, 3]]` hence  $x_0 = -6$  and  $x_1 = -3$  (because  $x_2 = 1$ ).

- Find a sequence satisfying a linear recurrence of degree at most 3 whose first elements are 1, -1, 3, 3, -1, 1.

Input :

```
reverse_rsolve([1,-1,3,3,-1,1])
```

Output :

```
[1, (-1)/2, 1/2, -1]
```

Hence so,  $x_0 = -1$ ,  $x_1 = 1/2$ ,  $x_2 = -1/2$ ,  $x_3 = 1$ , the recurrence relation is

$$v_{k+3} - \frac{1}{2}v_{k+2} + \frac{1}{2}v_{k+1} - v_k = 0$$

Without `reverse_rsolve`, we would write the matrix of the system :

```
[[1,-1,3,3],[-1,3,3,-1],[3,3,-1,1]].
```

Using `rref` command, we would input :

```
rref([[1,-1,3,3],[-1,3,3,-1],[3,3,-1,1]])
```

Output is `[1,0,0,1], [0,1,0,1/-2], [0,0,1,1/2]` hence  $x_0 = -1$ ,  $x_1 = 1/2$  and  $x_2 = -1/2$  because  $x_3 = 1$ ,

## 5.62 Differential equations

This section is limited to symbolic (or exact) solutions of differential equations. For numeric solutions of differential equations, see `odesolve`. For graphic representation of solutions of differential equations, see `plotfield`, `plotode` and `interactive_plotode`.

### 5.62.1 Solving differential equations : `desolve deSolve dsolve`

`desolve` (or `deSolve`) can solve :

- linear differential equations with constant coefficients,
- first order linear differential equations,
- first order differential equations without  $y$ ,
- first order differential equations without  $x$ ,
- first order differential equations with separable variables,
- first order homogeneous differential equations ( $y' = F(y/x)$ ),
- first order differential equations with integrating factor,
- first order Bernoulli differential equations ( $a(x)y' + b(x)y = c(x)y^n$ ),
- first order Clairaut differential equations ( $y = x * y' + f(y')$ ).

`desolve` takes as arguments :

- if the independent variable is the current variable (here supposed to be  $x$ ),
  - the differential equation (or the list of the differential equation and of the initial conditions)

- the unknown (usually  $y$ ).

In the differential equation, the function  $y$  is denoted by  $y$ , its first derivative  $y'$  is denoted by  $y'$ , and its second derivative  $y''$  is written  $y''$ .

For example `desolve(y''+2*y'+y, y)` or  
`desolve([y''+2*y'+y, y(0)=1, y'(0)=0], y)`.

- if the independent variable is not the current variable, for example  $t$  instead of  $x$ ,
  - the differential equation (or the list of the differential equation and of the initial conditions),
  - the variable, e.g.  $t$
  - the unknown as a variable  $y$  or as a function  $y(t)$ .

In the differential equation, the function  $y$  is denoted by  $y(t)$ , its derivative  $y'$  is denoted by `diff(y(t), t)`, and its second derivative  $y''$  is denoted by `diff(y(t), t$2)`.

For example :

`desolve(diff(y(t), t$2)+2*diff(y(t), t)+y(t), y(t))`; or  
`desolve(diff(y(t), t$2)+2*diff(y(t), t)+y(t), t, y)`; and

```
desolve([diff(y(t), t$2)+2*diff(y(t), t)+y(t),
         y(0)=1, y'(0)=0], y(t)); or
desolve([diff(y(t), t$2)+2*diff(y(t), t)+y(t),
         y(0)=1, y'(0)=0], t, y);
```

If there is no initial conditions (or one initial condition for a second order equation), `desolve` returns the general solution in terms of constants of integration  $c_0$ ,  $c_1$ , where  $y(0)=c_0$  and  $y'(0)=c_1$ , or a list of solutions.

### Examples

- Examples of second linear differential equations with constant coefficients.

1. Solve :

$$y'' + y = \cos(x)$$

Input (typing twice prime for  $y''$ ):

```
desolve(y''+y=cos(x), y)
```

or input :

```
desolve((diff(diff(y))+y)=(cos(x)), y)
```

Output :

$$c_0 \cos(x) + (x + 2c_1) \sin(x) / 2$$

$c_0$ ,  $c_1$  are the constants of integration :  $y(0)=c_0$  and  $y'(0)=c_1$ .

If the variable is not  $x$  but  $t$ , input :

```
desolve(derive(derive(y(t), t), t)+y(t)=cos(t), t, y)
```

Output :

$$c_0 \cos(t) + (t + 2*c_1)/2 \sin(t)$$

$c_0, c_1$  are the constants of integration :  $y(0) = c_0$  and  $y'(0) = c_1$ .

2. Solve :

$$y'' + y = \cos(x), \quad y(0) = 1$$

Input :

```
desolve([y''+y=cos(x), y(0)=1], y)
```

Output :

$$[\cos(x) + (x + 2*c_1)/2 \sin(x)]$$

the components of this vector are solutions (here there is just one component, so we have just one solution depending of the constant  $c_1$ ).

3. Solve :

$$y'' + y = \cos(x) \quad (y(0))^2 = 1$$

Input :

```
desolve([y''+y=cos(x), y(0)^2=1], y)
```

Output :

$$[-\cos(x) + (x + 2*c_1)/2 \sin(x), \cos(x) + (x + 2*c_1)/2 \sin(x)]$$

each component of this list is a solution, we have two solutions depending on the constant  $c_1$  ( $y'(0) = c_1$ ) and corresponding to  $y(0) = 1$  and to  $y(0) = -1$ .

4. Solve :

$$y'' + y = \cos(x), \quad (y(0))^2 = 1 \quad y'(0) = 1$$

Input :

```
desolve([y''+y=cos(x), y(0)^2=1, y'(0)=1], y)
```

Output :

$$[-\cos(x) + (x + 2)/2 \sin(x), \cos(x) + (x + 2)/2 \sin(x)]$$

each component of this list is a solution (we have two solutions).

5. Solve :

$$y'' + 2y' + y = 0$$

Input :

```
desolve(y''+2*y'+y=0, y)
```

Output :

$$(x*c_0 + x*c_1 + c_0) * \exp(-x)$$

the solution depends of 2 constants of integration :  $c_0, c_1$  ( $y(0) = c_0$  and  $y'(0) = c_1$ ).

6. Solve :

$$y'' - 6y' + 9y = xe^{3x}$$

Input:

```
desolve(y''-6*y'+9*y=(x*exp(3*x),y)
```

Output :

$$(x^3 + (-18*x) * c_0 + 6*x*c_1 + 6*c_0) * 1/6 * \exp(3*x)$$

the solution depends on 2 constants of integration :  $c_0$ ,  $c_1$  ( $y(0) = c_0$  and  $y'(0) = c_1$ ).

- Examples of first order linear differential equations.

1. Solve :

$$xy' + y - 3x^2 = 0$$

Input :

```
desolve(x*y'+y-3*x^2,y)
```

Output :

$$(3*1/3*x^3+c_0)/x$$

2. Solve :

$$y' + x * y = 0, y(0) = 1$$

Input :

```
desolve([y'+x*y=0, y(0)=1],y)
```

or :

```
desolve((y'+x*y=0) && (y(0)=1),y)
```

Output :

$$[1 / (\exp(1/2*x^2))]$$

3. Solve :

$$x(x^2 - 1)y' + 2y = 0$$

Input :

```
desolve(x*(x^2-1)*y'+2*y=0,y)
```

Output :

$$(c_0) / ((x^2-1) / (x^2))$$

4. Solve :

$$x(x^2 - 1)y' + 2y = x^2$$

Input :

```
desolve(x*(x^2-1)*y'+2*y=x^2,y)
```

Output :

$$(\ln(x) + c_0) / ((x^2-1) / (x^2))$$

5. If the variable is  $t$  instead of  $x$ , for example :

$$t(t^2 - 1)y'(t) + 2y(t) = t^2$$

Input :

```
desolve(t*(t^2-1)*diff(y(t),t)+2*y(t)=(t^2),y(t))
```

Output :

$$(\ln(t)+c_0)/((t^2-1)/(t^2))$$

6. Solve :

$$x(x^2 - 1)y' + 2y = x^2, y(2) = 0$$

Input :

```
desolve([x*(x^2-1)*y'+2*y=x^2,y(0)=1],y)
```

Output :

$$[(\ln(x)-\ln(2))*1/(x^2-1)*x^2]$$

7. Solve :

$$\sqrt{1+x^2}y' - x - y = \sqrt{1+x^2}$$

Input :

```
desolve(y'*sqrt(1+x^2)-x-y-sqrt(1+x^2),y)
```

Output :

$$(-c_0+\ln(\sqrt{x^2+1}-x))/(x-\sqrt{x^2+1})$$

- Examples of first differential equations with separable variables.

1. Solve :

$$y' = 2\sqrt{y}$$

Input :

```
desolve(y'=2*sqrt(y),y)
```

Output :

$$[x^2+-2*x*c_0+c_0^2]$$

2. Solve :

$$xy'\ln(x) - y(3\ln(x) + 1) = 0$$

Input :

```
desolve(x*y'*ln(x)-(3*ln(x)+1)*y,y)
```

Output :

$$c_0*x^3*ln(x)$$

- Examples of Bernoulli differential equations  $a(x)y' + b(x)y = c(x)y^n$  where  $n$  is a real constant.

The method used is to divide the equation by  $y^n$ , so that it becomes a first order linear differential equation in  $u = 1/y^{n-1}$ .

1. Solve :

$$xy' + 2y + xy^2 = 0$$

Input :

```
desolve(x*y' + 2*y + x*y^2, y)
```

Output :

```
[1 / (exp(2*ln(x)) * (-1/x + c_0))]
```

2. Solve :

$$xy' - 2y = xy^3$$

Input :

```
desolve(x*y' - 2*y - x*y^3, y)
```

Output :

```
[((-2*1/5*x^5+c_0)*exp(-(4*log(x))))^(1/-2),
 -((-2*1/5*x^5+c_0)*exp(-(4*log(x))))^(1/-2)]
```

3. Solve :

$$x^2y' - 2y = xe^{(4/x)}y^3$$

Input :

```
desolve(x*y' - 2*y - x*exp(4/x)*y^3, y)
```

Output :

```
[((-2*ln(x)+c_0)*exp(-(4*(-(1/x))))^(1/-2),
 -(((-2*ln(x)+c_0)*exp(-(4*(-(1/x))))^(1/-2)))]
```

- Examples of first order homogeneous differential equations ( $y' = F(y/x)$ , the method of integration is to search  $t = y/x$  instead of  $y$ ).

1. Solve :

$$3x^3y' = y(3x^2 - y^2)$$

Input :

```
desolve(3*x^3*diff(y) = ((3*x^2 - y^2)*y), y)
```

Output :

```
[0, pnt[c_0*exp((3*1/2)/(`t`^2)), `t`*c_0*exp((3*1/2)/(`t`^2))]]
```

hence the solutions are  $y = 0$  and the family of curves of parametric equation  $x = c_0 \exp(3/(2t^2))$ ,  $y = t * c_0 \exp(3/(2t^2))$  (the parameter is denoted by  $\backslash t$  in the answer).

2. Solve :

$$xy' = y + \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

Input :

```
desolve(x*y'=y+sqrt(x^2+y^2),y)
```

Output :

```
[(-i)*x,(i)*x,pnt[c_0/(sqrt('t'^2+1)-'t'),('t'*c_0)/(sqrt('t'^2+1)-'t')]]
```

hence the solutions are :

$$y = ix, y = -ix$$

and the family of curves of parametric equations

$$x = c_0/(\sqrt{t^2 + 1} - t), y = t * c_0/(\sqrt{t^2 + 1} - t)$$

(the parameter is denoted by 't' in the answer).

- Examples of first order differential equations with an integrating factor. By multiplying the equation by a function of  $x, y$ , it becomes a closed differential form.

1. Solve :

$$yy' + x$$

Input :

```
desolve(y*y'+x,y)
```

Output :

```
[sqrt(-2*c_0-x^2), -(sqrt(-2*c_0-x^2))]
```

In this example,  $xdx + ydy$  is closed, the integrating factor was 1.

2. Solve :

$$2xyy' + x^2 - y^2 + a^2 = 0$$

Input :

```
desolve(2*x*y*y'+x^2-y^2+a^2,y)
```

Output :

```
[sqrt(a^2-x^2-c_1*x), -(sqrt(a^2-x^2-c_1*x))]
```

In this example, the integrating factor was  $1/x^2$ .

- Example of first order differential equations without  $x$ .

Solve :

$$(y + y')^4 + y' + 3y = 0$$

This kind of equation cannot be solved directly by `Xcas`, we explain how to solve them with its help. The idea is to find a parametric representation of  $F(u, v) = 0$  where the equation is  $F(y, y') = 0$ . Let  $u = f(t), v = g(t)$  be such a parametrization of  $F = 0$ , then  $y = f(t)$  and  $dy/dx = y' = g(t)$ . Hence

$$dy/dt = f'(t) = y' * dx/dt = g(t) * dx/dt$$

The solution is the curve of parametric equations  $x(t), y(t) = f(t)$ , where  $x(t)$  is solution of the differential equation  $g(t)dx = f'(t)dt$ .

Back to the example, we put  $y + y' = t$ , hence:

$$y = -t - 8 * t^4, \quad y' = dy/dx = 3 * t + 8 * t^4 \quad dy/dt = -1 - 32 * t^3$$

therefore

$$(3 * t + 8 * t^4) * dx = (-1 - 32 * t^3)dt$$

Input :

```
desolve( (3*t+8*t^4)*diff(x(t),t)=(-1-32*t^3),x(t) )
```

Output :

$$-11*1/9*\ln(8*t^3+3)+1/-9*\ln(t^3)+c_0$$

eventually the solution is the curve of parametric equation :

$$x(t) = -11*1/9*\ln(8*t^3+3)+1/-9*\ln(t^3)+c_0, \quad y(t) = -t - 8*t^4$$

- Examples of first order Clairaut differential equations ( $y = x * y' + f(y')$ ). The solutions are the lines  $D_m$  of equation  $y = mx + f(m)$  where  $m$  is a real constant.

1. Solve :

$$xy' + y'^3 - y = 0$$

Input :

```
desolve(x*y'+y'^3-y,y)
```

Output :

$$c_0*x+c_0^3$$

2. Solve :

$$y - xy' - \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 * y'^2} = 0$$

Input :

```
desolve( (y-x*y'-sqrt(a^2+b^2*y'^2),y)
```

Output :

$$c_0*x+sqrt(a^2+b^2*c_0^2)$$

### 5.62.2 Laplace transform and inverse Laplace transform : `laplace` `ilaplace` `invlaplace`

`laplace` and `ilaplace` (or `invlaplace`) take one, two or three arguments : an expression and optionally the name(s) of the variable(s).

The expression is an expression of the current variable (here  $x$ ) or an expression of the variable given as second argument.

`laplace` returns the Laplace transform of the expression given as argument and `ilaplace` the inverse Laplace transform of the expression given as argument. The result of `laplace` or `ilaplace` is expressed in terms of the variable given as third argument if supplied or second argument if supplied or  $x$  otherwise.

The Laplace transform (`laplace`) and inverse Laplace transform (`ilaplace`) are useful to solve linear differential equations with constant coefficients. For example :

$$y'' + p.y' + q.y = f(x)$$

$$y(0) = a, y'(0) = b$$

Denoting by  $\mathcal{L}$  the Laplace transform, the following relations hold :

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}(y)(x) &= \int_0^{+\infty} e^{-xu} y(u) du \\ \mathcal{L}^{-1}(g)(x) &= \frac{1}{2i\pi} \int_C e^{zx} g(z) dz\end{aligned}$$

where  $C$  is a closed contour enclosing the poles of  $g$ .

Input :

```
laplace(sin(x))
```

The expression (here  $\sin(x)$ ) is an expression of the current variable (here  $x$ ) and the answer will also be an expression of the current variable  $x$ .

Output :

```
1 / ( (-x) ^ 2+1 )
```

or :

```
laplace(sin(t),t)
```

here the variable name is  $t$  and this name is also used in the answer.

Output :

```
1 / ( (-t) ^ 2+1 )
```

Or input :

```
laplace(sin(t),t,s)
```

here the variable name is  $t$  and the variable name of the answer is  $s$ .

Output:

```
1 / ( (-s) ^ 2+1 )
```

The following properties hold :

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}(y')(x) &= -y(0) + x\mathcal{L}(y)(x) \\ \mathcal{L}(y'')(x) &= -y'(0) + x\mathcal{L}(y')(x) \\ &= -y'(0) - x.y(0) + x^2\mathcal{L}(y)(x)\end{aligned}$$

If  $y''(x) + py'(x) + qy(x) = f(x)$ , then :

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}(f)(x) &= \mathcal{L}(y'' + p.y' + q.y)(x) \\ &= -y'(0) - xy(0) + x^2\mathcal{L}(y)(x) - py(0) + px\mathcal{L}(y)(x) + q\mathcal{L}(y)(x) \\ &= (x^2 + px + q)\mathcal{L}(y)(x) - y'(0) - (x + p)y(0)\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, if  $a = y(0)$  and  $b = y'(0)$ , we have

$$\mathcal{L}(f)(x) = (x^2 + px + q).\mathcal{L}(y)(x) - (x + p)a - b$$

and the solution of the differential equation is :

$$y(x) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}((\mathcal{L}(f)(x) + (x + p)a + b)/(x^2 + px + q))$$

Example :

Solve :

$$y'' - 6y' + 9y = xe^{3x}, \quad y(0) = c_0, \quad y'(0) = c_1$$

Here,  $p = -6$ ,  $q = 9$ .

Input :

```
laplace(x*exp(3*x))
```

Output :

```
1 / (x^2 - 6*x + 9)
```

Input :

```
ilaplace((1 / (x^2 - 6*x + 9) + (x - 6)*c_0 + c_1) / (x^2 - 6*x + 9))
```

Output :

```
(216*x^3 - 3888*x*c_0 + 1296*x*c_1 + 1296*c_0)*exp(3*x) / 1296
```

After simplification and factorization (`factor` command) the solution  $y$  is :

```
(-18*c_0*x + 6*c_0 + x^3 + 6*x*c_1)*exp(3*x) / 6
```

Note that this equation could be solved directly. Input :

```
desolve(y'' - 6*y' + 9*y = x*exp(3*x), y)
```

Output :

```
exp(3*x) * (-18*c_0*x + 6*c_0 + x^3 + 6*x*c_1) / 6
```

### 5.62.3 Solving linear homogeneous second-order ODE with rational coefficients : kovacicsols

`kovacicsols` uses Kovacic's algorithm to find a Liouvillian solution of an ordinary linear homogeneous second-order differential equation

$$a y'' + b y' + c y = 0, \quad (5.7)$$

where  $a$ ,  $b$  and  $c$  are rational functions of the independent variable. The command takes from one to three arguments :

- equation (5.7) as an expression (left-hand side), equality or a list of coefficients  $[a, b, c]$ ,
- independent variable (optional, by default  $x$ ),
- dependent variable (optional, by default  $y$ ).

The dependent variable should not be specified if the equation (5.7) is entered as a list of coefficients.

The return value can be a list or an expression. An empty list means that there are no Liouvillian solutions to the input equation. If a non-empty list is returned, it contains one or two independent solution(s)  $y_1$  (and  $y_2$ ) to the equation (5.7). The general solution to (5.7) is then

$$y = C_1 y_1 + C_2 y_2,$$

where  $C_1, C_2 \in \mathbb{R}$  are arbitrary constants. However, for some equations only  $y_1$  is returned, in which case  $y_2$  can be obtained as (using reduction of order) :

$$y_2 = y_1 \int y_1^{-2}. \quad (5.8)$$

If `kovacicsols` returns an expression, it means that the solution to (5.7) is given implicitly. In that case the return value is a polynomial  $P$  of order  $n \in \{4, 6, 12\}$  in the variable `omega_` (denoted here by  $\omega$ ) with rational coefficients  $r_k$ ,  $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n$ . If  $P(\omega_0) = 0$  for some  $\omega_0$ , then  $y = \exp(\int \omega_0)$  is a solution to the equation (5.7).

**Examples.** In the first example we find the general solution to the equation

$$y'' = \left( \frac{1}{x} - \frac{3}{16x^2} \right) y.$$

Input :

```
kovacicsols(y''=y*(1/x-3/16x^2))
```

Output :

```
[x^(1/4)*exp(2*sqrt(x)), x^(1/4)*exp(-2*sqrt(x))]
```

Therefore,  $y = C_1 x^{1/4} e^{2\sqrt{x}} + C_2 x^{1/4} e^{-2\sqrt{x}}$  is the general solution.

In the following example we solve the equation

$$x''(t) + \frac{3(t^2 - t + 1)}{16(t-1)^2 t^2} x(t) = 0.$$

Input :

```
kovacsols(x''+3*(t^2-t+1)/(16*(t-1)^2*t^2)*x,t,x)
```

Output :

$$[ (-t*(t-1)*(2*t+2*sqrt(t^2-t)-1))^{(1/4)}, \\ (t*(t-1)*(-2*t+2*sqrt(t^2-t)+1))^{(1/4)} ]$$

Now for arbitrary  $C_1, C_2 \in \mathbb{R}$  we have

$$x(t) = C_1 \sqrt[4]{t(t-1)(1-2t-2\sqrt{t^2-t})} + \\ C_2 \sqrt[4]{t(t-1)(1-2t+2\sqrt{t^2-t})}.$$

In the next example we find a particular solution to the equation

$$y'' = \frac{4x^6 - 8x^5 + 12x^4 + 4x^3 + 7x^2 - 20x + 4}{4x^4} y.$$

Input :

```
r:=(4x^6-8x^5+12x^4+4x^3+7x^2-20x+4)/(4x^4);;
kovacsols(y''=r*y)
```

Output :

$$[(x^2-1)/(x*sqrt(x))*exp((x^3-2*x^2-2)/(2*x))]$$

Hence  $y = (x^2 - 1) x^{-3/2} e^{\frac{x^3-2x^2-2}{2x}}$  is a solution to the given equation.

A similar output is obtained when solving the equation

$$y'' + y' = \frac{6y}{x^2}.$$

Input :

```
kovacsols(y''+y'=6y/x^2)
```

Output :

$$[(x^2+6*x+12)*exp(-x)/x^2]$$

To solve Titchmarsh equation

$$y'' + (19 - x^2) y = 0,$$

input :

```
kovacsols(y''+(19-x^2)*y=0,x,y)
```

We obtain a particular solution

$$y = \left( x^9 - 18x^7 + \frac{189x^5}{2} - \frac{315x^3}{2} + \frac{945x}{16} \right) \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{2}\right).$$

To find the general solution of Halm's equation

$$(1+x^2)^2 y''(x) + 3y(x) = 0,$$

input :

```
sol:=kovacicols((1+x^2)^2*y''+3*y=0,x,y)
```

Output :

```
[ (x^2-1) / (sqrt(x^2+1)) ]
```

The other basic solution is obtained by using (5.8). Input :

```
y1:=sol[0]; y2:=normal(y1*int(y1^-2,x))
```

Output :

```
(x^2-1) / (sqrt(x^2+1)), -x / (sqrt(x^2+1))
```

Therefore,  $y = C_1 \frac{x^2-1}{\sqrt{x^2+1}} + C_2 \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$ , where  $C_1, C_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ .

In the following example we find the general solution of the non-homogeneous equation

$$y'' - \frac{27y}{36(x-1)^2} = x+4.$$

First we need to find the general solution to the corresponding homogeneous equation  $y'' - \frac{27y}{36(x-1)^2} = 0$ . Input :

```
sols:=kovacicols(y''-y*27/(36*(x-1)^2),x,y)
```

Output :

```
[ (x^2-2*x) / (sqrt(x-1)) ]
```

We call the obtained solution  $y_1$  and find the other basic independent solution by using (5.8). Input :

```
y1:=sols[0]; y2:=y1*int(1/y1^2,x)
```

Output :

```
-1 / (sqrt(x-1)*2)
```

Now the general solution of the homogeneous equation is

$$y_h = C_1 y_1 + C_2 y_2 = \frac{C_1(x^2 - 2x) + C_2}{\sqrt{x-1}}, \quad C_1, C_2 \in \mathbb{R}.$$

A particular solution  $y_p$  of the non-homogeneous equation can be obtained by variation of parameters as

$$y_p = -y_1 \int \frac{y_2 f(x)}{W} dx + y_2 \int \frac{y_1 f(x)}{W} dx,$$

where  $f(x) = x+4$  and  $W$  is the Wronskian of  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ , i.e.

$$W = y_1 y'_2 - y_2 y'_1 \neq 0.$$

Input :

```
W:=y1*y2'-y2*y1'; f:=x+4;;
yp:=normal(-y1*int(y2*f/W,x)+y2*int(y1*f/W,x))
```

Output :

$$(4*x^3 + 72*x^2 - 156*x + 80) / 21$$

Hence  $y_p = \frac{1}{21}(4x^3 + 72x^2 - 156x + 80)$ . Now  $y = y_p + y_h$ . We proceed by checking that it is indeed the general solution of the given equation. Input :

```
purge(C1,C2); ysol:=yp+C1*y1+C2*y2;;
normal(diff(ysol,x,2)-27/(36*(x-1)^2)*ysol)==f
```

Output :

true

In the next example we attempt to solve the equation from the original Kovacic's paper :

$$y'' = \left( \frac{3}{16x(x-1)} - \frac{2}{9(x-1)^2} - \frac{3}{16x^2} \right) y.$$

Input :

```
r:=-3/(16x^2)-2/(9*(x-1)^2)+3/(16x*(x-1));;
kovacicsols(y''=r*y)
```

Output :

```
-omega_4*x^4*(x-1)^4 + omega_3*x^3*(x-1)^3*(7*x-3)/3 -
omega_2*x^2*(x-1)^2*(48*x^2-41*x+9)/24 +
omega_*x*(x-1)*(320*x^3-409*x^2+180*x-27)/432 +
(-2048*x^4+3484*x^3-2313*x^2+702*x-81)/20736
```

The solution is  $y = \exp(\int \omega_0)$ , where  $\omega_0$  is a zero of the above expression, thus being a root of a fourth-order polynomial in  $\omega$ . In similar cases one can try the Ferrari method to obtain  $\omega_0$ .

We get similar output while trying to solve the equation

$$48t(t+1)(5t-4)y'' + 8(25t+16)(t-2)y' - (5t+68)y = 0.$$

Input :

```
de:=[48t*(t+1)*(5t-4), 8*(25t+16)*(t-2), -(5t+68)];;
kovacicsols(de,t)
```

Output :

```
omega_4*(135*t^4-616*t^3-144*t^2+3072*t-4096)/20736-
omega_2*t^2*(t+1)*(15*t^3-80*t^2+80*t+256)/24-
t^4*(t+1)^2*(t+4)*(5*t+4) +
2*omega_*t^3*(t+1)^2*(t-4)*(5*t+8)/3-
omega_3*t*(t+1)*(23*t^2-92*t+128)/54
```

## 5.63 The Z-transform

### 5.63.1 The Z-transform of a sequence: `ztrans`

The Z-transform of a sequence  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n, \dots$  is the function

$$f(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_n}{z^n}.$$

The `ztrans` command takes one or three arguments.

- A formula in the variable `x` for the general term  $a_x$  of a sequence, or
- A formula for the general term of a sequence, the variable used in the formula, and a variable to be used by the resulting function.

`ztrans` returns the Z-transform of the sequence.

For example, the Z-transform of the sequence

$$0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

is

$$f(z) = 0 + 1/z + 2/z^2 + 3/z^3 + \dots$$

which has closed form

$$f(z) = z/(z - 1)^2.$$

Input:

`ztrans(x)`

Output:

`x / (x^2 - 2*x + 1)`

Input:

`ztrans(n, n, z)`

Output:

`z / (z^2 - 2*z + 1)`

Note that

Input:

`ztrans(1)`

Output:

`x / (x - 1)`

since

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 1/x^n = 1/(1 - 1/x) = x/(x - 1).$$

We also have

Input:

`ztrans(1,n,z)`

Output:

$$z / (z - 1)$$

Note that differentiating both sides of

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 1/z^n = z/(z - 1)$$

gives us

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n/z^{n-1} = 1/(z - 1)^2$$

and so, multiplying both sides by  $z$ ,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n/z^n = z/(z - 1)^2 = z/(z^2 - 2z + 1)$$

as indicated above.

### 5.63.2 The inverse Z-transform of a rational function: `invztrans`

The `invztrans` command takes one or three arguments.

- A rational expression in the variable  $x$ , or
- A rational expression, the variable used in the expression, and a variable to be used by the result.

`ztrans` returns the inverse Z-transform, namely a formula for the general term of a sequence with the given rational expression as its Z-transform.

Since `ztrans(1) = x / (x-1)`, we get

Input:

`invztrans(x / (x-1))`

Output:

1

Input:

`invztrans(z / (z-1), z, n)`

Output:

1

Similarly,

Input:

`invztrans(x / (x-1)^2)`

Output:

x

Input:

`invztrans(z/(z-1)^2, z, n)`

Output:

n

## 5.64 Other functions

### 5.64.1 Replace small values by 0: `epsilon2zero`

`epsilon2zero` takes as argument an expression of x.

`epsilon2zero` returns the expression where the values of modulus less than `epsilon` are replaced by zero. The expression is not evaluated.

The `epsilon` value is defined in the `cas` configuration (by default `epsilon=1e-10`).

Input :

`epsilon2zero(1e-13+x)`

Output (with `epsilon=1e-10`):

0+x

Input :

`epsilon2zero((1e-13+x)*100000)`

Output (with `epsilon=1e-10`):

`(0+x)*100000`

Input :

`epsilon2zero(0.001+x)`

Output (with `epsilon=0.0001`):

`0.001+x`

### 5.64.2 List of variables : `lname indets`

`lname` (or `indets`) takes as argument an expression.

`lname` (or `indets`) returns the list of the symbolic variable names used in this expression.

Input :

`lname(x*y*sin(x))`

Output :

[x, y]

Input :

```
a:=2; assume(b>0); assume(c=3);

lname(a*x^2+b*x+c)
```

Output :

```
[x, b, c]
```

### 5.64.3 List of variables and of expressions : lvar

`lvar` takes as argument an expression.

`lvar` returns a list of variable names and non-rational expressions such that its argument is a rational fraction with respect to the variables and expressions of the list.

Input :

```
lvar(x*y*sin(x)^2)
```

Output :

```
[x, y, sin(x)]
```

Input :

```
lvar(x*y*sin(x)^2+ln(x)*cos(y))
```

Output :

```
[x, y, sin(x), ln(x), cos(y)]
```

Input :

```
lvar(y+x*sqrt(z)+y*sin(x))
```

Output :

```
[x, y, sqrt(z), sin(x)]
```

### 5.64.4 List of variables of an algebraic expressions: algvar

`algvar` takes as argument an expression.

`algvar` returns the list of the symbolic variable names used in this expression. The list is ordered by the algebraic extensions required to build the original expression.

Input :

```
algvar(y+x*sqrt(z))
```

Output :

```
[[y, x], [z]]
```

Input :

```
algvar(y*sqrt(x)*sqrt(z))
```

Output :

```
[ [y], [z], [x] ]
```

Input :

```
algvar(y*sqrt(x*z))
```

Output :

```
[ [y], [x, z] ]
```

Input :

```
algvar(y+x*sqrt(z)+y*sin(x))
```

Output :

```
[ [x, y, sin(x)], [z] ]
```

#### **5.64.5 Test if a variable is in an expression : has**

has takes as argument an expression and the name of a variable.

has returns 1 if this variable is in this expression, and else returns 0.

Input :

```
has(x*y*sin(x), y)
```

Output :

```
1
```

Input :

```
has(x*y*sin(x), z)
```

Output :

```
0
```

#### **5.64.6 Numeric evaluation : evalf**

evalf takes as argument an expression or a matrix.

evalf returns the numeric value of this expression or of this matrix.

Input :

```
evalf(sqrt(2))
```

Output :

```
1.41421356237
```

Input :

```
evalf([[1, sqrt(2)], [0, 1]])
```

Output :

```
[[1.0, 1.41421356237], [0.0, 1.0]]
```

**5.64.7 Rational approximation : `float2rational exact`**

`float2rational` (or `exact`) takes as argument an expression.

`float2rational` returns a rational approximation of all the floating point numbers  $r$  contained in this expression, such that  $|r - \text{float2rational}(r)| < \epsilon$ , where  $\epsilon$  is defined by `epsilon` in the `Cfg` configuration (`Cfg` menu, or `cas_setup` command).

Input :

```
float2rational(1.5)
```

Output :

```
3/2
```

Input :

```
float2rational(1.414)
```

Output :

```
707/500
```

Input :

```
float2rational(0.156381102937*2)
```

Output :

```
5144/16447
```

Input :

```
float2rational(1.41421356237)
```

Output :

```
114243/80782
```

Input :

```
float2rational(1.41421356237^2)
```

Output :

```
2
```

**5.65 The day of the week: `dayofweek`**

The `dayofweek` command takes as arguments three integers; the first represents the day of the month, the second the month, and the third the year. The resulting date should be after 15 October 1582.

`dayofweek` returns an integer from 0 to 6; 0 represents a Sunday, 1 represents Monday, etc.

Input:

```
dayofweek(15,10,1582)
```

Output:

5

This indicates that 15 October 1582 was on a Friday.

The Gregorian calendar, the calendar used by most of the world, was introduced on 15 October 1582. Before that, the Julian calendar was used, which had a leap year every four years and so used years with an average of 365.25, which is slightly off from the actual value of about 365.242 days. To deal with this, the Gregorian calendar was introduced, which kept years for every year divisible by 4, except if a year is divisible by 100 but not 400 it is not a leap year. This gives an average length of year that is accurate to within 1 day every 3000 years.

Many countries switched from the Julian calendar to the Gregorian calendar after 4 October 1582 in the Julian calendar, and the next day was 15 October 1582.

Input:

```
dayofweek(1,10,2014)
```

Output:

3

This means that 1 October, 2014 was a Wednesday.

# Chapter 6

## Metric properties of curves

### 6.1 The center of curvature

Let  $\Gamma$  be a curve in space parameterized by a continuously differentiable function, and  $M_0$  be a point on the curve. The curve will have an arclength parameterization; namely, it can be parameterized by a function  $M(s)$ , where  $M(0) = M_0$  and  $|s|$  is the length of the curve from  $M_0$  to  $M(s)$ , in the direction of the curve if  $s > 0$  and the opposite direction if  $s < 0$ .

For such a  $\Gamma$ , the vector  $T(s) = M'(s)$  will be the unit tangent to the curve at  $M(s)$ , and  $N(s) = T'(s)$  will be perpendicular to the tangent. The circle through  $M(s)$  with center at  $M(s) + N(s)$  is called the *osculating circle* to  $\Gamma$  at  $M(s)$ . Informally, the osculating circle is the circle through  $M(s)$  which most closely approximates  $\Gamma$ . The set of all centers of curvature is another curve, called the *evolute* of  $\Gamma$ .

The radius of the osculating circle is  $|N(s)|$  and is called the *radius of curvature* of  $\Gamma$  at  $M(s)$ . The reciprocal of this is called the *curvature* of  $\Gamma$  at  $M(s)$ .

### 6.2 Computing the curvature and related values: `curvature`, `osculating_circle`, `evolute`

The `curvature` command takes two arguments and an optional third argument. The first argument is a curve, and the second argument is a point on the curve. If the curve is given by a parameterization, the second argument is the parameter, and an optional third argument is a value of the parameter.

`curvature` returns the curvature of the curve at the given point.

Input:

```
curvature(plot(x^2), point(1, 1))
```

Output:

```
2/25*sqrt(5)
```

Input:

```
trigsimplify(curvature([5*cos(t), 5*sin(t)], t))
```

Output:

1/5

Input:

```
curvature([2*cos(t), 3*sin(t)], t, pi/2)
```

Output:

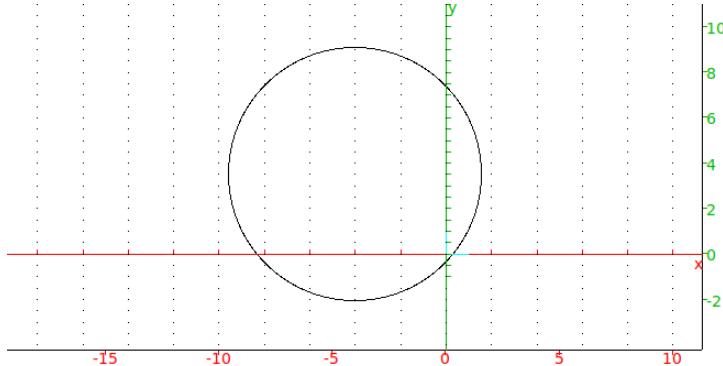
3/4

The `osculating_circle` command takes two or three arguments. The arguments can be either a curve in the plane and a point on the curve, or the parameterization of a curve in the plane, the parameter, and a value of the parameter. `osculating_circle` returns and draws the osculating circle.

Input:

```
osculating_circle(plot(x^2), point(1,1))
```

Output:



Input:

```
equation(osculating_circle(plot(x^2), point(1,1)))
```

Output:

$$(x+4)^2 + (y-7/2)^2 = (125/4)$$

Input:

```
equation(osculating_circle([t^2, t^3], t, 1))
```

Output:

$$(x+11/2)^2 + (y-16/3)^2 = (2197/36)$$

The `evolute` command takes one or two arguments. The arguments can be either a curve in the plane, or the parameterization of a curve in the plane and the parameter.

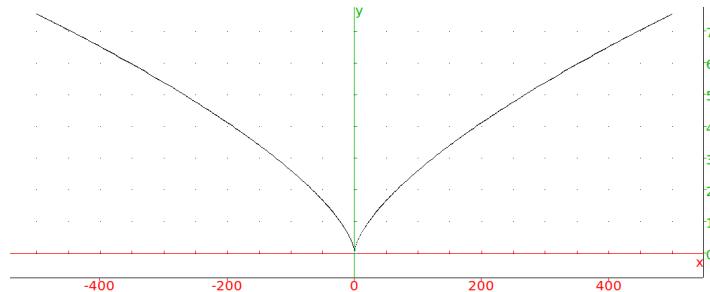
`evolute` draws and returns the evolute of the curve.

Input:

```
evolute(plot(x^2))
```

**6.2. COMPUTING THE CURVATURE AND RELATED VALUES: CURVATURE, OSCULATING\_CIRCLE, E**

Output:



Input:

```
equation(evolute(plot(x^2)))
```

Output:

$$27*x^2 - 16*y^3 + 24*y^2 - 12*y + 2 = 0$$

Input:

```
equation(evolute([t^2,t],t))
```

Output:

$$16*x^3 - 24*x^2 + 12*x - 27*y^2 - 2 = 0$$



# Chapter 7

## Graphs

### 7.1 Generalities

Most graph instructions take expressions as arguments. A few exceptions (mostly Maple-compatibility instructions) also accept functions. Some optional arguments, like `color`, `thickness`, can be used as optional attributes in all graphic instructions. They are described below.

If a graph depends on a user-defined function, you may want to define the function when the parameter is a formal variable. For this, it can be useful to test the type of the parameter while the function is being defined.

For example, suppose `f` and `g` are defined by

```
f(x) := {  
    if (type(x) !=DOM_FLOAT) return 'f'(x);  
    while(x>0) { x--; }  
    return x;  
}
```

and

```
g(x) := {  
    while(x>0) { x--; }  
    return x;  
};
```

Graphing these, with

Input:

```
F := plotfunc(f(x))
```

Input:

```
G := plotfunc(g(x))
```

will both produce the same graph. However, here the graphic `G` won't be reusable.

Entering

Input:

F

reproduces the graph, but entering

Input:

G

produces the error

Output:

```
"Unable to eval test in loop : x>0.0 Error: Bad
Argument Value Error: Bad Argument Value"
```

Internally, F and G contain the formal expressions  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$ , respectively. When Xcas tries to evaluate F and G, x has no value and so the test  $x > 0$  produces an error in  $g(x)$ , but the line `if (type(x) !=DOM_FLOAT) return 'f'(x);` avoids this problem in  $f(x)$ .

## 7.2 The graphic screen

A graphic screen, either two- or three-dimensional as appropriate, automatically opens in response to a graphic command. Alternatively, a graphic screen with its own command line will open with keystrokes; Alt-g for a two-dimensional screen and Alt-h for a three-dimensional screen. The graphic screen will have an array of buttons at the top right.

- There will be red arrows for moving the image in the  $x$  direction.
- There will be green arrows for moving the image in the  $y$  direction.
- There will be blue arrows for zooming in and out in a two-dimensional screen, and moving the image in the  $z$  direction in a three-dimensional screen.
- There will be `in` and `out` buttons for zooming in and out.
- There will be a `_|_` button to orthonormalize the graphic.
- There will be a `▶ |` button to start and stop animations.
- There will be an `auto` button to do automatic scaling.
- There will be a `cfg` button which will bring up a configuration screen (see XXXX).
- There will be an `M` button which is a menu. The menu has submenus:
  - `View` which has entries which do the same as the buttons.
  - `Trace` for working with traces.
  - `Animation` for working with animations.
  - `3-d` for working with three-dimensional graphics.
  - `Export/Print` to export and print the graphic.

The image can also be moved in the screen by clicking and dragging with the mouse. Scrolling with the mouse will also zoom the images.

## 7.3 Graph and geometric objects attributes

There are two kinds of attributes: global attributes of a graphic scene and individual attributes.

### 7.3.1 Individual attributes

Graphic attributes are optional arguments of the form `display=value`, they must be given as the last argument of a graphic instruction. Attributes are ordered in several categories: color, point shape, point width, line style, line thickness, legend value, position and presence. In addition, surfaces may be filled or not, 3-d surfaces may be filled with a texture, 3-d objects may also have properties with respect to the light. Attributes of different categories may be added, e.g.

```
plotfunc(x^2 + y^2, [x, y], display=red+line_width_3+filled)
```

- Colors `display=` or `color=`
  - black, white, red, blue, green, magenta, cyan, yellow,
  - a numeric value between 0 and 255,
  - a numeric value between 256 and 256+7\*16+14 for a color of the rainbow,
  - any other numeric value smaller than 65535, the rendering is not guaranteed to be portable.
- Point shapes `display=` one of the following value `rhombus_point`  
`plus_point` `square_point` `cross_point` `triangle_point` `star_point`  
`point_point` `invisible_point`
- Point width: `display=` one of the following value `point_width_n`  
where n is an integer between 1 and 7
- Line thickness: `thickness=n` or `display=line_width_n` where n  
is an integer between 1 and 7 or
- Line shape: `display=` one of the following values `dash_line` `solid_line`  
`dashdot_line` `dashdotdot_line` `cap_flat_line` `cap_square_line`  
`cap_round_line`
- Legend, value: `legend="legendname"`; position: `display=` one of  
`quadrant1` `quadrant2` `quadrant3` `quadrant4` corresponding to  
the position of the legend of the object (using the trigonometric plane conventions). The legend is not displayed if the attribute `display=hidden_name` is added
- `display=filled` specifies that surfaces will be filled,
- `gl_texture="picture_filename"` is used to fill a surface with a  
texture. Cf. the interface manual for a more complete description and for  
`gl_material=` options.

#### Examples

Input :

```
polygon (-1,-i,1,2*i,legend="P")
```

Input :

```
point (1+i,legend="hello")
```

Input :

```
A:=point (1+i);B:=point (-1);display (D:=droite (A,B),hidden_name)
```

Input :

```
color (segment (0,1+i),red)
```

Input :

```
segment (0,1+i,color=red)
```

### 7.3.2 Global attributes

These attributes are shared by all objects of the same scene

- title="titlename" defines the title
- labels=[ "xname", "yname", "zname" ]: names of the  $x, y, z$  axis
- gl\_x\_axis\_name="xname",gl\_y\_axis\_name="yname",gl\_z\_axis\_name="": individual definitions of the names of the  $x, y, z$  axis
- legend=[ "xunit", "yunit", "zunit" ]: units for the  $x, y, z$  axis
- gl\_x\_axis\_unit="xunit",gl\_y\_axis\_unit="yunit",gl\_z\_axis\_unit="": individual definition of the units of the  $x, y, z$  axis
- axes=true or false show or hide axis
- gl\_texture="filename": background image
- gl\_x=xmin..xmax, gl\_y=ymin..ymax, gl\_z=zmin..zmax: set the graphic configuration (do not use for interactive scenes)
- gl\_xtick=, gl\_ytick=, gl\_ztick=: set the tick mark for the axis
- gl\_shownames=true or false: show or hide objects names
- gl\_rotation=[x, y, z]: defines the rotation axis for the animation rotation of 3-d scenes.
- gl\_quaternion=[x, y, z, t]: defines the quaternion for the visualization in 3-d scenes (do not use for interactive scenes)
- a few other OpenGL light configuration options are available but not described here.

### Examples

Input :

#### 7.4. GRAPH OF A FUNCTION: PLOTFUNC FUNC PLOT DRAWFUNC GRAPH 525

```
legend=[ "mn", "kg" ]
```

Input :

```
title="median_line";triangle(-1-i,1,1+i);median_line(-1-i,1,1+i);median_line(
```

Input :

```
labels=[ "u", "v" ];plotfunc(u+1,u)
```

### 7.4 Graph of a function : plotfunc funcplot DrawFunc Graph

#### 7.4.1 2-d graph

`plotfunc(f(x),x)` draws the graph of  $y = f(x)$  for  $x$  in the default interval, `plotfunc(f(x),x=a..b)` draws the graph of  $y = f(x)$  for  $a \leq x \leq b$ . `plotfunc` accepts an optional `xstep=...` argument to specify the discretization step in  $x$ .

Input :

```
plotfunc(x^2-2)
```

or :

```
plotfunc(a^2-2,a=-1..2)
```

Output :

```
the graph of y=x^2-2
```

Input :

```
plotfunc(x^2-2,x,xstep=1)
```

Output :

```
a polygonal line which is a bad representation of  
y=x^2-2
```

It is also possible to specify the number of points used for the representation of the function with `nstep=` instead of `xstep=`. For example, input :

```
plotfunc(x^2-2,x=-2..3,nstep=30)
```

### 7.4.2 3-d graph

`plotfunc` takes two main arguments : an expression of two variables or a list of several expressions of two variables and the list of these two variables, where each variable may be replaced by an equality variable=interval to specify the range for this variable (if not specified, default values are taken from the graph configuration). `plotfunc` accepts two optional arguments to specify the discretization step in  $x$  and in  $y$  by `xstep=...` and `ystep=...`. Alternatively one can specify the number of points used for the representation of the function with `nstep=` (instead of `xstep` and `ystep`).

`plotfunc` draws the surface(s) defined by  $z =$  the first argument.

Input :

```
plotfunc( x^2+y^2, [x,y] )
```

Output :

```
A 3D graph of z=x^2+y^2
```

Input :

```
plotfunc(x*y, [x,y])
```

Output :

```
The surface z=x*y, default ranges
```

Input :

```
plotfunc([x*y-10,x*y,x*y+10], [x,y])
```

Output :

```
The surfaces z=x*y-10, z=x*y and z=x*y+10
```

Input :

```
plotfunc(x*sin(y), [x=0..2, y=-pi..pi])
```

Output :

```
The surface z = x * y for the specified ranges
```

Now an example where we specify the  $x$  and  $y$  discretization step with `xstep` and `ystep`.

Input :

```
plotfunc(x*sin(y), [x=0..2, y=-pi..pi], xstep=1, ystep=0.5)
```

Output :

```
A portion of surface z = x * y
```

Alternatively we may specify the number of points used for the representation of the function with `nstep` instead of `xstep` and `ystep`.

Input :

## 7.4. GRAPH OF A FUNCTION: PLOTFUNC FUNCPLOT DRAWFUNC GRAPH527

```
plotfunc(x*sin(y), [x=0..2, y=-pi..pi], nstep=300)
```

Output :

A portion of surface  $z = x * y$

### Remarks

- Like any 3-d scene, the viewpoint may be modified by rotation around the x axis, the y axis or the z axis, either by dragging the mouse inside the graphic window (push the mouse outside the parallelepiped used for the representation), or with the shortcuts x, X, y, Y, z and Z.
- If you want to print a graph or get a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X translation, use the graph menu  
Menu▶print▶Print (with Latex)

### 7.4.3 3-d graph with rainbow colors

`plotfunc` represents a pure imaginary expression  $i * E$  of two variables with a rainbow color depending on the value of  $z=E$ . This gives an easy way to find points having the same third coordinate.

The first arguments of `plotfunc` must be  $i * E$  instead of  $E$ , the remaining arguments are the same as for a real 3-d graph (cf 7.4.2) Input :

```
plotfunc(i*x*sin(y), [x=0..2, y=-pi..pi])
```

Output :

A piece of the surface  $z = x * \sin(y)$  with rainbow colors

### Remark

If you want the graphic in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, you have to use :

Menu▶print▶Print (with Latex).

### 7.4.4 4-d graph.

`plotfunc` represents a complex expression  $E$  (such that `re(E)` is not identically 0 on the discretization mesh) by the surface  $z=\text{abs}(E)$  where `arg(E)` defines the color from the rainbow. This gives an easy way to see the points having the same argument. Note that if `re(E)==0` on the discretization mesh, it is the surface  $z=E/i$  that is represented with rainbow colors (cf 7.4.3).

The first argument of `plotfunc` is  $E$ , the remaining arguments are the same as for a real 3-d graph (cf 7.4.2).

Input :

```
plotfunc((x+i*y)^2, [x, y])
```

Output :

A graph 3D of  $z=\text{abs}((x+i*y)^2)$  with the same color for points having the same argument

Input :

```
plotfunc((x+i*y)^2, [x,y], display=filled)
```

Output :

The same surface but filled

We may specify the range of variation of  $x$  and  $y$  and the number of discretization points.

Input :

```
plotfunc((x+i*y)^2, [x=-1..1, y=-2..2],  
nstep=900, display=filled)
```

Output :

The specified part of the surface with  $x$  between -1 and 1,  $y$  between -2 and 2 and with 900 points

## 7.5 2d graph for Maple compatibility : plot

`plot(f(x), x)` draws the graph of  $y = f(x)$ . The second argument may specify the range of values `x=xmin..xmax`. One can also plot a function instead of an expression using the syntax `plot(f, xmin..xmax)`. `plot` accepts an optional argument to specify the step used in  $x$  for the discretization with `xstep=` or the number of points of the discretization with `nstep=`.

Input :

```
plot(x^2-2, x)
```

Output :

the graph of  $y=x^2-2$

Input :

```
plot(x^2-2, xstep=1)
```

or :

```
plot(x^2-2, x, xstep=1)
```

Output :

a polygonal line which is a bad representation of  
 $y=x^2-2$

Input!

```
plot(x^2-2, x=-2..3, nstep=30)
```

## 7.6 3d surfaces for Maple compatibility plot3d

`plot3d` takes three arguments : a function of two variables or an expression of two variables or a list of three functions of two variables or a list of three expressions of two variables and the names of these two variables with an optional range (for expressions) or the ranges (for functions).

`plot3d(f(x,y),x,y)` (resp. `plot3d([f(u,v),g(u,v),h(u,v)],u,v)`) draws the surface  $z = f(x,y)$  (resp.  $x = f(u,v), y = g(u,v), z = h(u,v)$ ). The syntax `plot3d(f(x,y),x=x0..x1,y=y0..y1)` or `plot3d(f,x0..x1,y0..y1)` specifies which part of surface will be computed (otherwise default values are taken from the graph configuration).

Input :

```
plot3d(x*y,x,y)
```

Output :

The surface  $z = x * y$

Input :

```
plot3d([v*cos(u),v*sin(u),v],u,v)
```

Output :

The cone  $x = v * \cos(u), y = v * \sin(u), z = v$

Input :

```
plot3d([v*cos(u),v*sin(u),v],u=0..pi,v=0..3)
```

Output :

A portion of the cone  $x = v * \cos(u), y = v * \sin(u), z = v$

## 7.7 Graph of a line and tangent to a graph

### 7.7.1 Draw a line : line

`line` takes as argument cartesian equation(s) :

- in 2D: one line equation,
- in 3D: two plane equations.

`line` defines and draws the corresponding line.

Input :

```
line(2*y+x-1=0)
```

Output :

the line  $2*y+x-1=0$

Input :

```
line(y=1)
```

Output :

```
the horizontal line y=1
```

Input :

```
line(x=1)
```

Output :

```
the vertical line x=1
```

Input :

```
line(x+2*y+z-1=0, z=2)
```

Output :

```
the line x+2*y+1=0 in the plane z=2
```

Input :

```
line(y=1, x=1)
```

Output :

```
the vertical line crossing through (1, 1, 0)
```

### Remark

`line` defines an oriented line :

- when the 2D line is given by an equation, it is rewritten as "left\_member-right\_member=ax+by+c=0", this determines its normal vector  $[a, b]$  and the orientation is given by the vector  $[b, -a]$  (or its orientation is defined by the 3D cross product of its normal vectors (with third coordinate 0) and the vector  $[0, 0, 1]$ ).

For example `line(y=2*x)` defines the line  $-2x+y=0$  with as direction the vector  $[1, 2]$  (or `cross([-2, 1, 0], [0, 0, 1])=[1, 2, 0]).`

- when the 3D line is given by two plane equations, its direction is defined by the cross product of the normals to the planes (where the plane equation is rewritten as "left\_member-right\_member=ax+by+cz+d=0", so that the normal is  $[a, b, c]$ ).

For example the `line(x=y, y=z)` is the line  $x-y=0, y-z=0$  and its direction is :

```
cross([1, -1, 0], [0, 1, -1])=[1, 1, 1].
```

### 7.7.2 Draw an 2D horizontal line : LineHorz

`LineHorz` takes as argument an expression  $a$ .

`LineHorz` draws the horizontal line  $y = a$ .

Input :

```
LineHorz(1)
```

Output :

```
the line y=1
```

### 7.7.3 Draw a 2D vertical line : LineVert

LineVert takes as argument an expression  $a$ .

LineVert draws the vertical line  $x = a$ .

Input :

```
LineVert(1)
```

Output :

```
the line x=1
```

### 7.7.4 Tangent to a 2D graph : LineTan

LineTan takes two arguments : an expression  $E_x$  of the variable  $x$  and a value  $x_0$  of  $x$ .

LineTan draws the tangent at  $x = x_0$  to the graph of  $y = E_x$ .

Input :

```
LineTan(ln(x), 1)
```

Output :

```
the line y=x-1
```

Input :

```
equation(LineTan(ln(x), 1))
```

Output :

```
y=(x-1)
```

### 7.7.5 Tangent to a 2D graph : tangent

tangent takes two arguments : a geometric object and a point  $A$ .

tangent draws tangent(s) to this geometric object crossing through  $A$ . If the geometric object is the graph  $G$  of a 2D function, the second argument is either, a real number  $x_0$ , or a point  $A$  on  $G$ . In that case tangent draws a tangent to this graph  $G$  crossing through the point  $A$  or through the point of abscissa  $x_0$ .

For example, define the function  $g$

```
g(x):=x^2
```

then the graph  $G=\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2, y=g(x)\}$  of  $g$  and a point  $A$  on the graph  $G$ :

```
G:=plotfunc(g(x), x);
A:=point(1.2, g(1.2));
```

If we want to draw the tangent at the point  $A$  to the graph  $G$ , we will input:

```
T:=tangent(G, A)
```

or :

```
T:=tangent(G, 1.2)
```

For the equation of the tangent line, input :

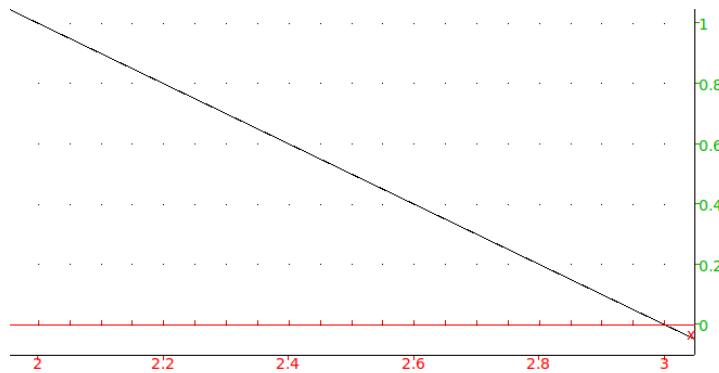
```
equation(T)
```

### 7.7.6 Plot a line with a point and the slope: DrawSlp

The `DrawSlp` command takes three arguments, real numbers  $a$ ,  $b$  and  $m$ .  
`DrawSlp` returns and draws the line through the point  $(a, b)$  with slope  $m$ .  
Input:

```
DrawSlp(2,1,-1)
```

Output:



### 7.7.7 Intersection of a 2D graph with the axis

- The ordinate of the intersection of the graph of  $f$  with the  $y$ -axis is returned by :

```
f(0)
```

indeed the point of coordinates  $(0, f(0))$  is the intersection point of the graph of  $f$  with the  $y$ -axis,

- Finding the intersection of the graph of  $f$  with the  $x$ -axis requires solving the equation  $f(x) = 0$ .

If the equation is polynomial-like, `solve` will find the exact values of the abscissa of these points. Input:

```
solve(f(x), x)
```

Otherwise, we can find numeric approximations of these abscissa. First look at the graph for an initial guess or a range with an intersection and refine with `fsolve`.

## 7.8 Graph of inequalities with 2 variables : `plotinequation` `inequationplot`

`plotinequation([f1(x,y)<a1,...fk(x,y)<ak], [x=x1..x2, y=y1..y2])`  
draws the points of the plane whose coordinates satisfy the inequalities of 2 variables :

$$\begin{cases} f_1(x, y) < a_1 \\ \dots \\ f_k(x, y) < a_k \end{cases}, \quad x_1 \leq x \leq x_2, y_1 \leq y \leq y_2$$

Input :

```
plotinequation(x^2-y^2<3,
[x=-2..2,y=-2..2],xstep=0.1,ystep=0.1)
```

**Output :**

the filled portion enclosing the origin and limited by  
the hyperbola  $x^2-y^2=3$

**Input :**

```
plotinequation([x+y>3,x^2<y],
[x-2..2,y=-1..10],xstep=0.2,ystep=0.2)
```

**Output :**

the filled portion of the plane defined by  
 $-2 < x < 2, y < 10, x+y>3, y>x^2$

Note that if the ranges for  $x$  and  $y$  are not specified, Xcas takes the default values of  $X_-, X_+, Y_-, Y_+$  defined in the general graphic configuration (Cfg►Graphic configuration).

## 7.9 The area under a curve: **area**

The **area** command takes four arguments; an expression  $f(x)$ , a range for the variable  $x = a..b$ , an integer  $n$ , and the name of the approximation method. The approximation method can be one of

- trapezoid
- left\_rectangle
- right\_rectangle
- middle\_point
- simpson
- rombergt (Romberg with the trapezoid method)
- rombergm (Romberg with the midpoint method)
- gauss15 (The 15 point Gaussian quadrature)

**area** returns an approximation to the area under the graph over the given interval, using the specified method with  $n$  subdivisions (or  $2^n$  subdivisions for **rombert**, **rombergm** and **gauss15**).

**Input:**

```
area(x^2,x=0..1,8,trapezoid)
```

**Output:**

0.3359375

Input:

```
area(x^2, x=0..1, 8, rombergm)
```

Output:

```
0.333333333333
```

Input:

```
area(x^2, x=0..1, 3, gauss15)
```

Output:

```
0.333333333333
```

Input:

```
area(x^2, x=0..1)
```

Output:

```
1/3
```

## 7.10 Graph of the area below a curve : plotarea areaplot

- With two arguments, `plotarea` shades the area below a curve.

`plotarea(f(x), x=a..b)` draws the area below the curve  $y = f(x)$  for  $a < x < b$ , i.e. the portion of the plane defined by the inequalities  $a < x < b$  and  $0 < y < f(x)$  or  $0 > y > f(x)$  according to the sign of  $f(x)$ .

Input :

```
plotarea(sin(x), x=0..2*pi)
```

Output :

```
the portion of plane locates in the two arches of
sin(x)
```

- With four arguments, `plotarea` represents a numeric approximation of the area below a curve, according to a quadrature method from the following list: `trapezoid`, `rectangle_left`, `rectangle_right`, `middle_point`. For example `plotarea(f(x), x=a..b, n, trapezoid)` draws the area of  $n$  trapezoids : the third argument is an integer  $n$ , and the fourth argument is the name of the numeric method of integration when  $[a, b]$  is cut into  $n$  equal parts.

Input :

```
plotarea((x^2, x=0..1, 5, trapezoid)
```

If you want to display the graph of the curve in contrast (e.g. in bold red), input :

## 7.11. CONTOUR LINES: PLOTCONTOUR CONTOURPLOT DRWCTOUR 535

```
plotarea(x^2,x=0..1,5,trapezoid);
plot(x^2,x=0..1,display=red+line_width_3)
```

Output :

the 5 trapezoids used in the trapezoid method to approach the integral

Input :

```
plotarea((x^2,x=0..1,5,middle_point))
```

Or with the graph of the curve in bold red, input :

```
plotarea(x^2,x=0..1,5,middle_point);
plot(x^2,x=0..1,display=red+line_width_3)
```

Output :

the 5 rectangles used in the middle\_point method to approach the integral

## 7.11 Contour lines: plotcontour contourplot DrwCtour

plotcontour(f(x,y), [x,y]) (or DrwCtour(f(x,y), [x,y]) or contourplot(f(x,y), [x,y])) draws the contour lines of the surface defined by  $z = f(x, y)$  for  $z = -10, z = -8, \dots, z = 0, z = 2, \dots, z = 10$ . You may specify the desired contour lines by a list of values of  $z$  given as third argument.

Input :

```
plotcontour(x^2+y^2, [x=-3..3, y=-3..3], [1, 2, 3],
            display=[green, red, black]+[filled$3])
```

Output :

the graph of the three ellipses  $x^2-y^2=n$  for  $n=1, 2, 3$ ; the zones between these ellipses are filled with the color green, red or black

Input :

```
plotcontour(x^2-y^2, [x, y])
```

Output :

the graph of 11 hyperbolae  $x^2-y^2=n$  for  $n=-10, -8, \dots, 10$

If you want to draw the surface in 3-d representation, input `plotfunc(f(x,y), [x,y])`, see 7.4.2):

```
plotfunc( x^2-y^2, [x, y])
```

Output :

A 3D representation of  $z=x^2+y^2$

## 7.12 2-d graph of a 2-d function with colors : `plotdensity` `densityplot`

`plotdensity(f(x,y), [x,y])` or `densityplot(f(x,y), [x,y])` draws the graph of  $z = f(x,y)$  in the plane where the values of  $z$  are represented by the rainbow colors. The optional argument `z=zmin..zmax` specifies the range of  $z$  corresponding to the full rainbow, if it is not specified, it is deduced from the minimum and maximum value of  $f$  on the discretization. The discretization may be specified by optional `xstep=...` and `ystep=...` or `nstep=...` arguments.  
Input :

```
plotdensity(x^2-y^2, [x=-2..2, y=-2..2],  
           xstep=0.1, ystep=0.1)
```

Output :

A 2D graph where each hyperbola defined by  $x^2-y^2=z$   
has a color from the rainbow

**Remark :** A rectangle representing the scale of colors is displayed below the graph.

## 7.13 Implicit graph: `plotimplicit` `implicitplot`

`plotimplicit` or `implicitplot` draws curves or surfaces defined by an implicit expression or equation. If the option `unfactored` is given as last argument, the original expression is taken unmodified. Otherwise, the expression is normalized, then replaced by the factorization of the numerator of its normalization.

Each factor of the expression corresponds to a component of the implicit curve or surface. For each factor, Xcas tests if it is of total degree less or equal to 2, in that case `conic` or `quadric` is called. Otherwise the numeric implicit solver is called.

Optional step and ranges arguments may be passed to the numeric implicit solver, note that they are dismissed for each component that is a conic or a quadric.

### 7.13.1 2D implicit curve

- `plotimplicit(f(x,y), x, y)` draws the graphic representation of the curve defined by the implicit equation  $f(x,y) = 0$  when  $x$  (resp.  $y$ ) is in `WX-`, `WX+` (resp. in `WY-`, `WY+`) defined by `cfg`,
- `plotimplicit(f(x,y), x=0..1, y=-1..1)` draws the graphic representation of the curve defined by the implicit equation  $f(x,y) = 0$  when  $0 \leq x \leq 1$  and  $-1 \leq y \leq 1$

It is possible to add two arguments to specify the discretization steps for  $x$  and  $y$  with `xstep=...` and `ystep=....`

Input :

```
plotimplicit(x^2+y^2-1, x, y)
```

or :

```
plotimplicit(x^2+y^2-1,x,y,unfactored)
```

Output :

The unit circle

Input :

```
plotimplicit(x^2+y^2-1,x,y,xstep=0.2,ystep=0.3)
```

or :

```
plotimplicit(x^2+y^2-1,[x,y],xstep=0.2,ystep=0.3)
```

or :

```
plotimplicit(x^2+y^2-1,[x,y],  
xstep=0.2,ystep=0.3,unfactored)
```

Output :

The unit circle

Input :

```
plotimplicit(x^2+y^2-1,x=-2..2,y=-2..2,  
xstep=0.2,ystep=0.3)
```

Output :

The unit circle

### 7.13.2 3D implicit surface

- `plotimplicit(f(x,y,z),x,y,z)` draws the graphic representation of the surface defined by the implicit equation  $f(x,y,z) = 0$ ,
- `plotimplicit(f(x,y,z),x=0..1,y=-1..1,z=-1..1)` draws the surface defined by the implicit equation  $f(x,y,z) = 0$ , where  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ ,  $-1 \leq y \leq 1$  and  $-1 \leq z \leq 1$ .

It is possible to add three arguments to specify the discretization steps used for  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  with `xstep=...`, `ystep=...` and `zstep=...`

Input :

```
plotimplicit(x^2+y^2+z^2-1,x,y,z,  
xstep=0.2,ystep=0.1,zstep=0.3)
```

Input :

```
plotimplicit(x^2+y^2+z^2-1,x,y,z,  
xstep=0.2,ystep=0.1,zstep=0.3,unfactored)
```

Output :

The unit sphere

Input :

```
plotimplicit(x^2+y^2+z^2-1,x=-1..1,y=-1..1,z=-1..1)
```

Output :

The unit sphere

## 7.14 Parametric curves and surfaces : `plotparam` `paramplot` `DrawParm`

### 7.14.1 2D parametric curve

`plotparam([f(t), g(t)], t)` or `plotparam(f(t)+i*g(t), t)` (resp. `plotparam(f(t)+i*g(t), t=t1..t2)`) draws the parametric representation of the curve defined by  $x = f(t)$ ,  $y = g(t)$  with the default range of values of  $t$  (resp. for  $t_1 \leq t \leq t_2$ ).

The default range of values is taken as specified in the graphic configuration ( $t-$  and  $t+$ , cf. 3.5.8). `plotparam` accepts an optional argument to specify the discretization step for  $t$  with `tstep=`.

Input :

```
plotparam(cos(x)+i*sin(x), x)
```

or :

```
plotparam([cos(x), sin(x)], x)
```

Output :

The unit circle

If in the graphic configuration  $t$  goes from -4 to 1, input :

```
plotparam(sin(t)+i*cos(t))
```

or :

```
plotparam(sin(t)+i*cos(t), t=-4..1)
```

or :

```
plotparam(sin(x)+i*cos(x), x=-4..1)
```

Output :

the arc  $(\sin(-4)+i*\cos(-4), \sin(1)+i*\cos(1))$  of the  
unit circle

If in the graphic configuration  $t$  goes from -4 to 1, input :

```
plotparam(sin(t)+i*cos(t), t, tstep=0.5)
```

or :

```
plotparam(sin(t)+i*cos(t), t=-4..1, tstep=0.5)
```

Output :

A polygon approaching the arc  
 $(\sin(-4)+i*\cos(-4), \sin(1)+i*\cos(1))$  of the unit circle

### 7.14.2 3D parametric surface: plotparam paramplot DrawParm

plotparam takes two main arguments, a list of three expressions of two variables and the list of these variable names where each variable name may be replaced by variable=interval to specify the range of the parameters. It accepts an optional argument to specify the discretization steps of the parameters  $u$  and  $v$  with ustep=... and vstep=....

`plotparam([f(u,v),g(u,v),h(u,v)],[u,v])` draws the surface defined by the first argument :  $x = f(u,v), y = g(u,v), z = h(u,v)$ , where  $u$  and  $v$  ranges default to the graphic configuration.

Input :

```
plotparam([v*cos(u),v*sin(u),v],[u,v])
```

Output :

The cone  $x = v \cos(u), y = v \sin(u), z = v$

To specify the range of each parameters, replace each variable by an equation variable=range, like this:

```
plotparam([v*cos(u),v*sin(u),v],[u=0..pi,v=0..3])
```

Output :

A portion of the cone  $x = v \cos(u), y = v \sin(u), z = v$

Input :

```
plotparam([v*cos(u),v*sin(u),v],[u=0..pi,v=0..3],ustep=0.5,vstep=0.5)
```

Output :

A portion of the cone  $x = v \cos(u), y = v \sin(u), z = v$

## 7.15 Bezier curves: bezier

The `bezier` command takes as argument a sequence L of points.

`bezier(L,plot)` plots the Bezier curve with the given control points.

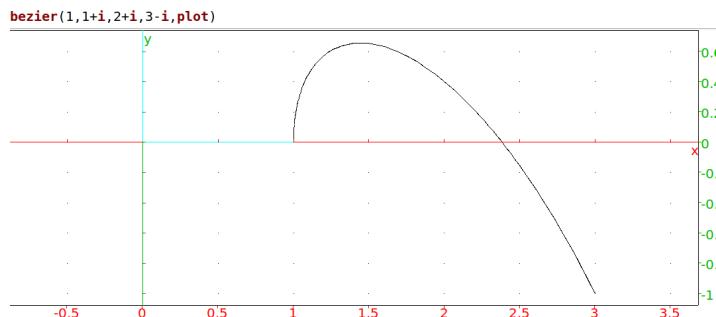
If the points are  $P_0, P_1, \dots, P_n$ , the Bezier curve is the curve parameterized by

$$\sum_{j=0}^n \binom{n}{t}^j (1-t)^{n-j} P_j.$$

Input:

```
bezier(1,1+i,2+i,3-i,plot)
```

Output:

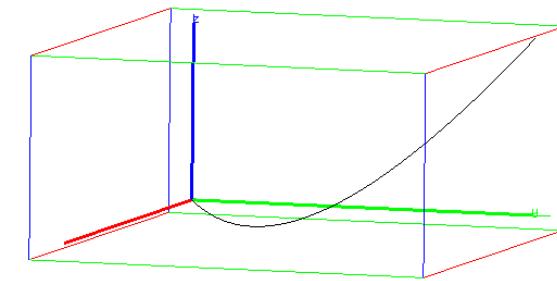


Input:

```
bezier(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,0),point(0,1,1),plot)
```

Output:

mouse plan 0.977x+0.172y+0.128z=0.373



To get the parameterization of the curve, you can use `parameq`.

Input:

```
parameq(bezier(1,1+i,2+i,3-i))
```

Output:

$$(1-t)^3 + 3*t*(1-t)^2*(1+i) + 3*t^2*(1-t)*(2+i) + t^3*(3-i)$$

Input:

```
parameq(bezier(point([0,0,0]),point([1,1,0]),point([0,1,1])))
```

Output:

$$\text{point}[2*t*(1-t), 2*t*(1-t)+t^2, t^2]$$

## 7.16 Curve defined in polar coordinates : `plotpolar` `polarplot` `DrawPol` `courbe_polaire`

Let  $E_t$  be an expression depending on the variable  $t$ .

`plotpolar( $E_t$ ,  $t$ )` draws the polar representation of the curve defined by  $\rho = E_t$  for  $\theta = t$ , that is in cartesian coordinates the curve  $(E_t \cos(t), E_t \sin(t))$ . The range of the parameter may be specified by replacing the second argument by  $t=tmin..tmax$ . The discretization parameter may be specified by an optional `tstep=...` argument.

Input

```
plotpolar(t,t)
```

Output :

The spiral  $\rho=t$  is plotted

Input

## 7.17. GRAPH OF A RECURRENT SEQUENCE : PLOTSEQ SEQPLOT GRAPHE\_SUITE541

```
plotpolar(t,t,tstep=1)
```

or :

```
plotpolar(t,t=0..10,tstep=1)
```

Output :

A polygon line approaching the spiral  $\rho=t$  is plotted

## 7.17 Graph of a recurrent sequence : plotseq seqplot graphe\_suite

Let  $f(x)$  be an expression depending on the variable  $x$  (resp.  $f(t)$  an expression depending on the variable  $t$ ).

`plotseq(f(x), a, n)` (resp. `plotseq(f(t), t=a, n)`) draws the line  $y = x$ , the graph of  $y = f(x)$  (resp.  $y = f(t)$ ) and the  $n$  first terms of the recurrent sequence defined by :  $u_0 = a$ ,  $u_n = f(u_{n-1})$ . The  $a$  value may be replaced by a list of 3 elements,  $[a, x_-, x_+]$  where  $x_-..x_+$  will be passed as  $x$  range for the graph computation.

Input :

```
plotseq(sqrt(1+x),x=[3,0,5],5)
```

Output :

the graph of  $y=\sqrt{1+x}$ , of  $y=x$  and of the 5 first terms of the sequence  $u_0=3$  and  $u_n=\sqrt{1+u_{n-1}}$

## 7.18 Tangent field : plotfield fieldplot

- Let  $f(t, y)$  be an expression depending on two variables  $t$  and  $y$ , then :

```
plotfield(f(t,y),[t,y])
```

draws the tangent field of the differential equation  $y' = f(t, y)$  where  $y$  is a real variable and where  $t$  is the abscissa,

- Let  $V$  be a vector of two expressions depending on 2 variables  $x, y$  but independent of the time  $t$ , then

```
plotfield(V,[x,y])
```

draws the vector field  $V$ ,

- The range of values of  $t, y$  or of  $x, y$  can be specified with  $t=t_{\min}..t_{\max}$ ,  $x=x_{\min}..x_{\max}$ ,  $y=y_{\min}..y_{\max}$  in place of the variable name.
- The discretization may be specified with optional arguments `xstep=...`, `ystep=...`

Input :

```
plotfield(4*sin(t*y), [t=0..2, y=-3..7])
```

Output :

Segments with slope  $4 \sin(t \cdot y)$ , representing tangents,  
are plotting in different points

With two variables  $x, y$ , input :

```
plotfield(5*[-y, x], [x=-1..1, y=-1..1])
```

## 7.19 Plotting a solution of a differential equation : `plotode` `odeplot`

Let  $f(t, y)$  be an expression depending on two variables  $t$  and  $y$ .

- `plotode(f(t, y), [t, y], [t0, y0])` draws the solution of the differential equation  $y' = f(t, y)$  crossing through the point  $(t_0, y_0)$  (i.e. such that  $y(t_0) = y_0$ )
- By default,  $t$  goes in both directions. The range of value of  $t$  may be specified by the optional argument `t=tmin..tmax`.
- We can also represent, in the space or in the plane, the solution of a differential equation  $y' = f(t, y)$  where  $y = (X, Y)$  is a vector of size 2. Just replace  $y$  by the variable names  $X, Y$  and the initial value  $y_0$  by the two initial values of the variables at time  $t_0$ .

Input :

```
plotode(sin(t*y), [t, y], [0, 1])
```

Output :

The graph of the solution of  $y'=\sin(t,y)$  crossing through the point  $(0,1)$

Input :

```
S:=odeplot([h-0.3*h*p, 0.3*h*p-p],  
[t,h,p],[0,0.3,0.7])
```

Output, the graph in the space of the solution of :

$$[h, p]' = [h - 0.3h * p, 0.3h * p - p] \quad [h, p](0) = [0.3, 0.7]$$

To have a 2-d graph (in the plane), use the option `plane`

```
S:=odeplot([h-0.3*h*p, 0.3*h*p-p],  
[t,h,p],[0,0.3,0.7],plane)
```

To compute the values of the solution, see the subsection [9.3.5](#).

## 7.20 Interactive plotting of solutions of a differential equation : `interactive_plotode` `interactive_odeplot`

Let  $f(t, y)$  be an expression depending on two variables  $t$  and  $y$ .

`interactive_plotode(f(t,y), [t,y])` draws the tangent field of the differential equation  $y' = f(t, y)$  in a new window. In this window, one can click on a point to get the plot of the solution of  $y' = f(t, y)$  crossing through this point.

You can further click to display several solutions. To stop press the `Esc` key.

Input :

```
interactive_plotode(sin(t*y), [t,y])
```

Output :

```
The tangent field is plotted with the solutions of
y'=sin(t,y) crossing through the points defined by
mouse clicks
```

## 7.21 Animated graphs (2D, 3D or "4D")

Xcas can display animated 2D, 3D or "4D" graphs. This is done first by computing a sequence of graphic objects, then after completion, by displaying the sequence in a loop.

- To stop or start again the animation, click on the button **▶|** (at the left of Menu).
- The display time of each graphic object is specified in `animate` of the graph configuration (`cfg` button). Put a small time, to have a fast animation.
- If `animate` is 0, the animation is frozen, you can move in the sequence of objects one by one by clicking on the mouse in the graphic scene.

### 7.21.1 Animation of a 2D graph : `animate`

`animate` can create a 2-d animation with graphs of functions depending on a parameter. The parameter is specified as the third argument of `animate`, the number of pictures as fourth argument with `frames=number`, the remaining arguments are the same as those of the `plot` command, see section 7.5, p. 528.

Input :

```
animate(sin(a*x), x=-pi..pi, a=-2..2, frames=10, color=red)
```

Output :

```
a sequence of graphic representations of y=sin(ax) for
11 values of a between -2 and 2
```

### 7.21.2 Animation of a 3D graph : `animate3d`

`animate3d` can create a 3-d animation with function graphs depending on a parameter. The parameter is specified as the third argument of `animate3d`, the number of pictures as fourth argument with `frames=number`, the remaining arguments are the same as those of the `plotfunc` command, see section 7.4.2, p. 526.

Input :

```
animate3d(x^2+a*y^2, [x=-2..2, y=-2..2], a=-2..2,
          frames=10, display=red+filled)
```

Output :

```
a sequence of graphic representations of z=x^2+a*y^2
for 11 values of a between -2 and 2
```

### 7.21.3 Animation of a sequence of graphic objects : `animation`

`animation` animates the representation of a sequence of graphic objects with a given display time. The sequence of objects depends most of the time on a parameter and is defined using the `seq` command but it is not mandatory.

`animation` takes as argument the sequence of graphic objects.

To define a sequence of graphic objects with `seq`, enter the definition of the graphic object (depending on the parameter), the parameter name, its minimum value, its maximum value maximum and optionally a step value.

Input :

```
animation(seq(plotfunc(cos(a*x), x), a, 0, 10))
```

Output :

```
The sequence of the curves defined by y = cos(ax), for
a = 0, 1, 2..10
```

Input :

```
animation(seq(plotfunc(cos(a*x), x), a, 0, 10, 0.5))
```

or :

```
animation(seq(plotfunc(cos(a*x), x), a=0..10, 0.5))
```

Output :

```
The sequence of the curves defined by y = cos(ax), for
a = 0, 0.5, 1, 1.5..10
```

Input :

```
animation(seq(plotfunc([cos(a*x), sin(a*x)], x=0..2*pi/a),
              a, 1, 10))
```

Output :

The sequence of two curves defined by  $y = \cos(ax)$  and  $y = \sin(ax)$ , for  $a = 1..10$  and for  $x = 0..2\pi/a$

**Input :**

```
animation(seq(plotparam([\cos(a*t),\sin(a*t)],  
t=0..2*pi),a,1,10))
```

**Output :**

The sequence of the parametric curves defined by  $x = \cos(at)$  and  $y = \sin(at)$ , for  $a = 1..10$  and for  $t = 0..2\pi$

**Input :**

```
animation(seq(plotparam([\sin(t),\sin(a*t)],  
t,0,2*pi,tstep=0.01),a,1,10))
```

**Output :**

The sequence of the parametric curves defined by  $x = \sin(t)$ ,  $y = \sin(at)$ , for  $a = 0..10$  and  $t = 0..2\pi$

**Input :**

```
animation(seq(plotpolar(1-a*0.01*t^2,  
t,0,5*pi,tstep=0.01),a,1,10))
```

**Output :**

The sequence of the polar curves defined by  $\rho = 1 - a * 0.01 * t^2$ , for  $a = 0..10$  and  $t = 0..5\pi$

**Input :**

```
plotfield(sin(x*y),[x,y]);  
animation(seq(plotode(sin(x*y),[x,y],[0,a]),a,-4,4,0.5))
```

**Output :**

The tangent field of  $y' = \sin(xy)$  and the sequence of the integral curves crossing through the point  $(0, a)$  for  $a = -4, -3.5 \dots 3.5, 4$

**Input :**

```
animation(seq(display(square(0,1+i*a),filled),a,-5,5))
```

**Output :**

The sequence of the squares defined by the points 0 and  $1 + i * a$  for  $a = -5..5$

**Input :**

```
animation(seq(droite([0,0,0],[1,1,a]),a,-5,5))
```

**Output :**

The sequence of the lines defined by the points  
 $[0, 0, 0]$  and  $[1, 1, a]$  for  $a = -5..5$

**Input :**

```
animation(seq(plotfunc(x^2-y^a, [x,y]), a=1..3))
```

**Output :**

The sequence of the "3D" surface defined by  $x^2 - y^a$ , for  
 $a = 1..3$  with rainbow colors

**Input :**

```
animation(seq(plotfunc((x+i*y)^a, [x,y],  

display=filled), a=1..10))
```

**Output :**

The sequence of the "4D" surfaces defined by  $(x + i * y)^a$ ,  
for  $a = 0..10$  with rainbow colors

**Remark** We may also define the sequence with a program, for example if we want to draw the segments of length  $1, \sqrt{2}... \sqrt{20}$  constructed with a right triangle of side 1 and the previous segment (note that there is a `c:=evalf(..)` statement to force approx. evaluation otherwise the computing time would be too long) :

```
seg(n):={  

local a,b,c,j,aa,bb,L;  

a:=1;  

b:=1;  

L:=[point(1)];  

for(j:=1; j<=n; j++) {  

L:=append(L, point(a+i*b));  

c:=evalf(sqrt(a^2+b^2));  

aa:=a;  

bb:=b;  

a:=aa-bb/c;  

b:=bb+aa/c;  

}  

L;  
}
```

Then input :

```
animation(seg(20))
```

We see, each point, one to one with a display time that depends of the `animate` value in `cfg`.

or :

```
L:=seg(20); s:=segment(0, L[k]) $(k=0..20)
```

We see 21 segments.

Then, input :

```
animation(s)
```

We see, each segment, one to one with a display time that depends of the `animate` value in `cfg`.



# Chapter 8

## Statistics

### 8.1 One variable statistics

Xcas has several functions to perform statistics; the data is typically given as a list of numbers, such as `A := [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11]`. We will use this particular list in several examples. Section 5.49.32 will discuss statistics on matrices.

#### 8.1.1 The mean: `mean`

Recall that the mean of a list  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  is simply their numeric average  $(x_1 + \dots + x_n)/n$ . Xcas can calculate the mean of a list of numbers with the `mean` command. If you enter

```
mean([1,2,3,4])
```

then you will get

5/2

since  $(1 + 2 + 3 + 4)/4 = 5/2$ . If you give `mean` a matrix as an argument, then it will return a list with the numeric average of each column;

```
mean([[1,2,3],[5,6,7]])
```

will return

[3, 4, 5]

since  $(1 + 5)/2 = 3$ ,  $(2 + 6)/2 = 4$  and  $(3 + 7)/2 = 5$ .

To get the weighted average of a list of numbers you can give `mean` a second argument, which should be a list of the weights. For example,

```
mean([2,4,6,8],[2,2,3,3])
```

will return

27/5

since  $(2 \cdot 2 + 4 \cdot 2 + 6 \cdot 3 + 8 \cdot 3)/(2 + 2 + 3 + 3) = 27/5$ . Similarly, you can find the weighted average of the columns of a matrix by giving `mean` a second argument of a matrix of weights. If you enter

```
mean([[1, 2], [3, 4]], [[1, 2], [2, 1]])
```

then you will get

```
[7/3, 8/3]
```

since  $(1 \cdot 1 + 3 \cdot 2)/(1 + 2) = 7/3$  and  $(2 \cdot 2 + 4 \cdot 1)/(2 + 1) = 8/3$ .

### 8.1.2 Variance and standard deviation: `variance stddev`

The variance of a list of numbers measures how close the numbers are to their mean by finding the average of the squares of the differences between the numbers and the mean; specifically, given a list of numbers  $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$  with mean  $\mu = (x_1 + \dots + x_n)/n$ , the variance is

$$\frac{(x_1 - \mu)^2 + \dots + (x_n - \mu)^2}{n}.$$

The squares help ensure that the numbers above the mean and those below the mean don't cancel out. The variance can be computed with the command `variance`,

A potentially better way to measure how close numbers are to their mean is the standard deviation, which is the square root of the variance;. Note that if the list of numbers have units, then the standard deviation will have the same unit. The `stddev` function will compute the standard deviation of a list of numbers. For example, the list  $[1, 2, 3, 4]$  has mean  $5/2$ , and so `stddev([1, 2, 3, 4])` will return

```
2*sqrt(5)/4
```

since

$$\sqrt{\frac{(1 - 5/2)^2 + (2 - 5/2)^2 + (3 - 5/2)^2 + (4 - 5/2)^2}{4}} = \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{4}$$

Like the mean, given a matrix, `stddev` will compute the standard deviation of each column separately;

```
stddev([[1, 2], [3, 6]])
```

will compute

```
[1, 2]
```

Also, a second list (or matrix) as an argument will provide weights when finding the standard deviation;

```
stddev([1, 2, 3], [2, 1, 1])
```

will return

```
4*sqrt(11)/16
```

### 8.1.3 The population standard deviation: `stddevp stdDev`

Given a large population, rather than collecting all of the numbers it might be more feasible to get a smaller collection of numbers and try to extrapolate from that. For example, to get information about the ages of a large population, you might get the ages of a sample of 100 of the people and work with that.

If a list of numbers is a sample of data from a larger population, then the `mean` function will find the mean of the sample, which can be used to estimate the mean of the population. The standard deviation uses the mean to find the standard deviation of the sample, but since the mean of the sample is only an approximation to the mean of the entire population, the standard deviation of the sample doesn't provide an optimal estimate of the standard deviation of the population. An unbiased estimate of the standard deviation of the entire population is given by the population standard deviation `stddevp` function; given a list  $L = [x_1, \dots, x_n]$  with mean  $\mu$ , the population standard deviation is

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{(x_1 - \mu)^2 + \dots + (x_n - \mu)^2}{n - 1}}.$$

Note that

$$\text{stddevp}(L)^2 = \frac{n}{n - 1} \text{stddev}(L)^2.$$

For example,

```
stddev([1, 2, 3, 4])
```

will return

```
sqrt(5)/2
```

while

```
stddevp([1, 2, 3, 4])
```

will return

```
sqrt(15)/3
```

Like `stddev`, the `stddevp` command can take a second argument for weights. If you enter

```
A := [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11]
      stddevp(A, A)
```

then you will get

```
sqrt(66)/3
```

The `stdDev` function is equivalent to `stddevp`, for TI compatibility. There is no population variance function; if needed, it can be computed by squaring the `stddevp` function.

### 8.1.4 The median: `median`

Although the average of a list of numbers typically means the mean, there are other notions of “average”. Another one is the median; the median of a list of numbers is the middle number when they are listed in numeric order. For example, the median of the list [1, 2, 5, 7, 20] is simply 5. If the length of a list of numbers is even, so there isn’t a middle number, the median is then the mean of the two middle numbers; for example, the median of [1, 2, 5, 7, 20, 21] is  $(5 + 7)/2 = 6$ .

The `median` function finds the median of a list. The command

```
median([1, 2, 5, 7, 20])
```

will return

5

The `median` function can take weights with a second argument, where the weight of number represents how many times it is counted in a list. For example,

```
median([1, 2, 5, 7, 20], [5, 3, 2, 1, 2])
```

will return

2

since the median of 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 5, 5, 7, 20, 20 is 2.

### 8.1.5 Quartiles: `quartiles` `quartile1` `quartile3`

Recall that the quartiles of a list of numbers divide it into four equal parts; the first quartile is the number  $q_1$  such that one-fourth of the list numbers fall below  $q_1$ ; i.e., the median of that part of the list which fall at or below the list median. The second quartiles is the number  $q_2$  such that half of the list numbers fall at or below  $q_2$ ; more specifically, the median of the list. And of course the third quartile is the number  $q_3$  such that three-fourths of the list numbers fall at or below  $q_3$ .

The function `quartiles` takes a list and returns a column vector consisting of the minimum of the list, the first quartile, the second quartile, the third quartile and the maximum. If you enter

```
A := [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11];
quartiles(A)
```

you will get

```
[[0.0], [2.0], [5.0], [8.0], [11.0]]
```

You can get the individual entries of this vector with the commands `min`, `quartile1`, `median`, `quartile2` and `max`.

Just as with `median`, the `quartiles` function can take a second argument consisting of weights for the first argument; for example,

```
quartiles(A, A)
```

would return

```
[0, 6, 8, 10, 11]
```

### 8.1.6 Quantiles: `quantile`

Similar to quartiles, a quantile of a list is the number  $q$  such that a given fraction of the list numbers fall at or below  $q$ . The first quartile, for example, is the quantile with the fraction 0.25.

The command `quantile` takes a list of numbers and a value  $p$  between 0 and 1 as arguments and returns the  $p$ th quantile. For example,

```
A := [0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11]
      quantile(A, 0.1)
```

returns the quantile with  $p = 0.1$  (the first decile):

```
1.0
```

Like `quartile`, the `quantile` command can take an argument representing weights of the list; the weights can be given as a second argument and then the value  $p$  will be the third. The command

```
quantile(A, A, 0.25)
```

will return

```
6
```

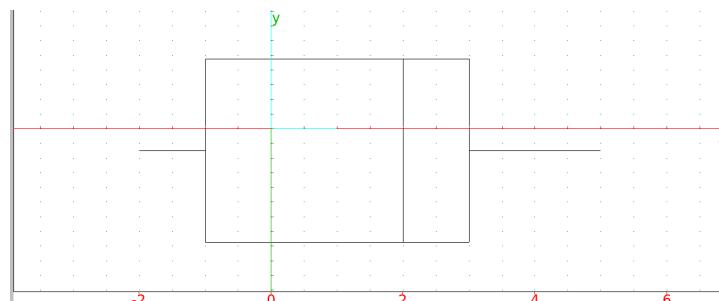
### 8.1.7 The boxwhisker: `boxwhisker` `mustache`

A boxwhisker is a graphical view of the quartiles of a list of numbers. The boxwhisker consists of a line segment from the minimum of the list to the first quartile, leading to a rectangle from the first quartile to the third quartile, followed by a line segment from the third quartile to the maximum of the list. The rectangle will contain a vertical segment indicating the median, and the two line segments will contain vertical lines indicating the first and ninth decile.

The `boxwhisker` (or `mustache`) command will create a boxwhisker for a list. For example, if you enter

```
boxwhisker([-1,1,2,2.2,3,4,-2,5])
```

a graphic window will appear showing the boxwhisker,



### 8.1.8 Classes: `classes`

The `classes` command can be used to group a collection of numbers into intervals; the result will be a list where each element is an interval  $a \dots b$  followed by how many of the numbers are in the interval  $[a, b)$ . The collection of numbers can be given as a list or matrix.

If  $L$  is a collection of numbers,  $a$  and  $b$  are numbers, then `classes` ( $L, a, b$ ) will return the list  $\{ [a \dots a + b, n_1], [a + b \dots a + 2b, n_2], \dots \}$  where each number in  $L$  is in one of the intervals  $[a + kb, a + (k + 1)b)$  and  $n_k$  is how many numbers from  $L$  are in the corresponding interval. For example,

```
classes([0,0.5,1,1.5,2,2.5,3,3.5,4],0,2)
```

will return

```
[[0.0 .. 2.0, 4], [2.0 .. 4.0, 4], [4.0 .. 6.0, 1]]
```

while

```
classes([0,0.5,1,1.5,2,2.5,3,3.5,4],-1,2)
```

will return

```
[[(-1.0) .. 1.0, 2], [1.0 .. 3.0, 4], [3.0 .. 5.0, 3]]
```

If the numbers  $a$  and  $b$  are omitted, they will default to the configurable values of `class_min` and `class_size`, which default to 0 and 1.

Another way to split the list  $L$  into intervals is by making the third argument the midpoints of the desired intervals. For example, if you enter

```
classes([0,0.5,1,1.5,2,2.5,3,3.5,4],1,[1,3,5])
```

you will get

```
[[0.0..2.0,4], [2.0..4.0,4], [4.0..6.0,1]]
```

Finally, you can simply state the intervals that you want to use by giving them as a list for the second argument. In this case, not every number in the list is necessarily in one of the intervals. If you enter

```
classes([0,0.5,1,1.5,2,2.5,3,3.5,4],[1..3,3..6])
```

you will get

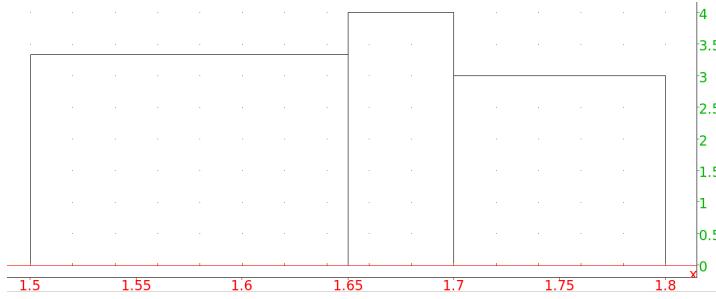
```
[[1 .. 3,4], [3 .. 6,3]]
```

### 8.1.9 Histograms: `histogram` `histogramme`

Given a list of intervals and a number of points in each interval, such as is given by the output of the `classes` command, the `histogram` (or `histogramme`) command will draw a box over each interval so that the height of each box is proportional to the number of points and the total area of the boxes is 1. For example, if you enter

```
histogram([[1.5..1.65,50],[1.65..1.7,20],[1.7..1.8,30]])
```

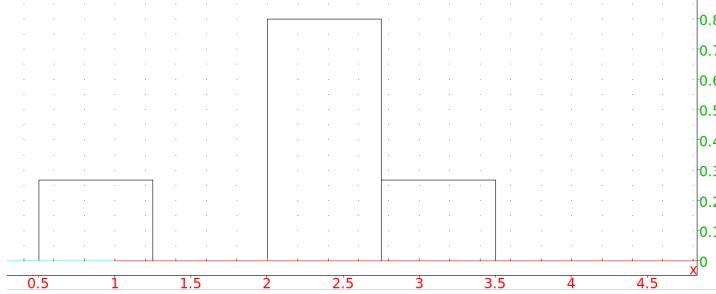
you will get



If you just give the `histogram` a list of numbers, or a list with values  $a$  and  $b$ , then you will get the histogram of the result of applying `classes` to the list. For example, if you enter

```
histogram([1,2,2.5,2.5,3],0.5,0.75)
```

you will get



### 8.1.10 Accumulating terms: `accumulate_head_tail`

The first terms and last terms of a list can be accumulated by replacing them with their sum using the `accumulate_head_tail` command. This command takes the list, the number of initial terms to sum, and the number of end terms to add, and returns the list with the initial terms and end terms replaced by their sums. For example, the command

```
accumulate_head_tail([1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10],3,4)
```

will return

```
[6,4,5,6,34]
```

### 8.1.11 Frequencies: `frequencies frequencies`

Given a list of numbers, the `frequencies` (or `frequncies`) command will return the numbers in the list with their frequencies; i.e., the fraction of list items equal to the number. For example,

```
frequencies([1,2,1,1,2,1,2,4,3,3])
```

will return

```
[[1, 0.4], [2, 0.3], [3, 0.2], [4, 0.1]]
```

You can use this, for example, to simulate flipping a fair coin and seeing how many times each side appears; to flip a coin 1000 times, for example, you can enter

```
frequencies([rand(2) $ (k=1..1000)])
```

and you might get

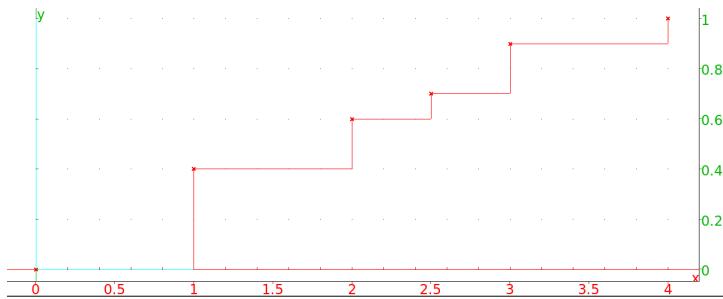
```
[[0, 0.513], [1, 0.487]]
```

### 8.1.12 Cumulative frequencies: `cumulated_frequencies` `frequencies_cumulees`

Given a list, the `cumulated_frequencies` command will plot the cumulated frequency of the numbers in the list; i.e., the area under the resulting graph at a value  $x$  will be the fraction of numbers less than  $x$ . For example, if you enter

```
cumulated_frequencies([1, 2, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 4, 3, 3])
```

then you will get



The `cumulated_frequencies` command can also take a matrix with two columns as an argument. In this case, the first column will represent values while the second column will represent the number of times the values occur. For example, the above graph can be drawn with the command

```
cumulated_frequencies([[1, 4], [2, 3], [3, 2], [4, 1]])
```

If the first column of the input matrix contains intervals  $a \dots b$  instead of numbers, then the second column values will be normalized to add up to one, and will represent the frequencies of the intervals. If the matrix has the form

$$[[a_0 \dots a_1, f_1], \dots, [a_{n-1} \dots a_n, f_n]]$$

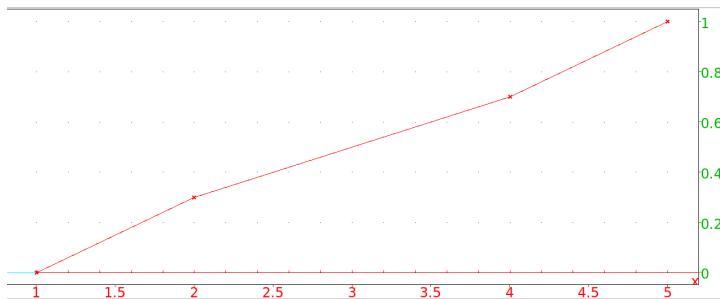
then the plot will consist of the polygonal path starting at  $(a_0, 0)$  and moving to  $(a_1, f_1)$  to  $(a_2, f_1 + f_2)$  and so on until  $(a_n, f_1 + \dots + f_n)$ . For example, both

```
cumulated_frequencies([[1..2, 30], [2..4, 40], [4..5, 30]])
```

and

```
cumulated_frequencies([[1..2, 0.3], [2..4, 0.4], [4..5, 0.3]])
```

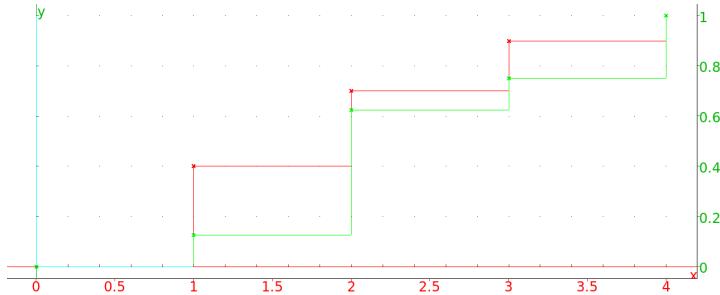
will give you



If the matrix given to `cumulated_frequencies` has more than two columns, then each additional column will represent a different distribution of the numbers in the first column, and each distribution will be graphed. For example, if you enter

```
cumulated_frequencies([[1, 4, 1], [2, 3, 4], [3, 2, 1],
[4, 1, 2]])
```

then both the distributions given by `[[1, 4], [2, 3], [3, 2], [4, 1]]` and `[[1, 1], [2, 4], [3, 1], [4, 2]]` will be drawn on the same axes; the result will be

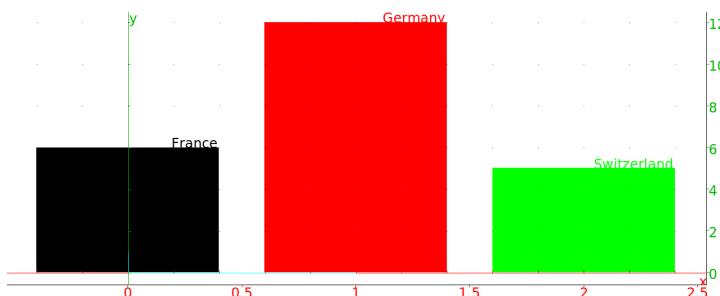


### 8.1.13 Bar graphs: `bar_plot`

You can draw bar graphs with the `bar_plot` command. You give it a list, whose elements are pairs of labels and values, and the result will be a bar graph with a bar for each label, whose height is given by the corresponding value. For example, if you enter

```
bar_plot([["France", 6], ["Germany", 12],
["Switzerland", 5]])
```

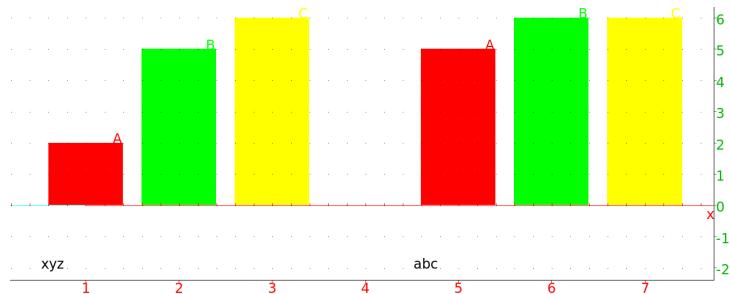
you will get



If you have more than one set of values for each label, you can use `bar_plot` to draw several bar graphs at the same time by including all values for each label, with a list of identifiers for the bar graphs given by the first argument. If you enter

```
bar_plot([[2, "xyz", "abc"], ["A", 2, 5], ["B", 5, 6], ["C", 6, 6]])
```

you will get

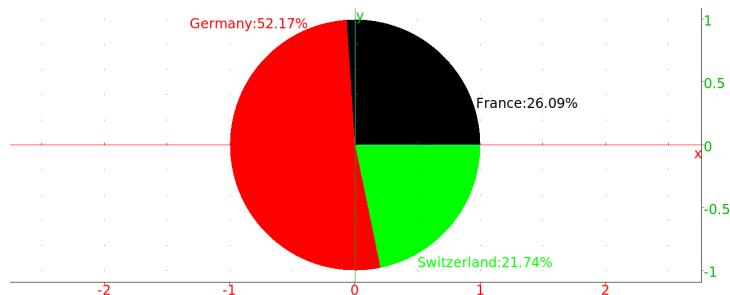


### 8.1.14 Pie charts: `camembert`

You can draw pie charts using the same structure as bar graphs, but with the command `camembert`. If you enter

```
camembert([["France", 6], ["Germany", 12], ["Switzerland", 5]])
```

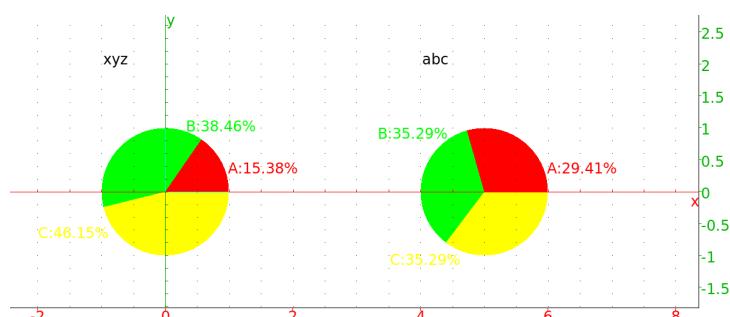
you will get



and if you enter

```
camembert([[2, "xyz", "abc"], ["A", 2, 5], ["B", 5, 6], ["C", 6, 6]])
```

you will get



## 8.2 Two variable statistics

### 8.2.1 Covariance and correlation: `covariance` `correlation` `covariance_correlation`

The covariance of two random variables measures their connectedness; i.e., whether they tend to change with each other. If  $X$  and  $Y$  are two random variables, then the covariance is the expected value of  $(X - \bar{X})(Y - \bar{Y})$ , where  $\bar{X}$  and  $\bar{Y}$  are the means of  $X$  and  $Y$ , respectively. You can calculate covariances with the `covariance` command.

If  $X$  and  $Y$  are given by lists of the same size, then `covariance`( $X, Y$ ) will return their covariance. For example, if you enter

```
covariance([1, 2, 3, 4], [1, 4, 9, 16])
```

then you will get

$25/4$

Alternatively, you could use a matrix with two columns instead of two lists to enter  $X$  and  $Y$ ; the command

```
covariance([[1, 1], [2, 4], [3, 9], [4, 16]])
```

is another way to enter the above calculation.

If the entries in the lists  $X = [a_0, \dots, a_{n-1}]$  and  $Y = [b_0, \dots, b_{n-1}]$  have different weights, say  $a_j$  and  $b_j$  have weight  $w_j$ , then `covariance` can be given a third list  $W = [w_0, \dots, w_{n-1}]$  (or alternatively, you could use a matrix with three columns). For example, if you enter

```
covariance([1, 2, 3, 4], [1, 4, 9, 16], [3, 1, 5, 2])
```

then you will get

$662/121$

If each pair of entries in the lists  $X = [a_0, \dots, a_{m-1}]$  and  $Y = [b_0, \dots, b_0]$  have different weights, say  $a_j$  and  $b_k$  have weight  $w_{jk}$ , then `covariance` can be given a third argument of an  $m \times n$  matrix  $W = (w_{jk})$ . (Note that in this case the lists  $X$  and  $Y$  don't have to be the same length.) For example, the covariance computed above could also have been computed by entering

```
covariance([1, 2, 3, 4], [1, 4, 9, 16],
           [[3, 0, 0, 0], [0, 1, 0, 0], [0, 0, 5, 0], [0, 0, 0, 2]]))
```

which would of course return

$662/121$

In this case, to make it simpler to enter the data in a spreadsheet, the lists  $X$  and  $Y$  and the matrix  $W$  can be combined into a single matrix, by augmenting  $W$  with the list  $Y$  on the top and the transpose of the list  $X$  on the left, with a filler in the upper left hand corner;

$$\begin{pmatrix} "XY" & Y \\ X^T & W \end{pmatrix}$$

When you use this method, you need to give `covariance` a second argument of -1. The above covariance can then be computed with the command

```
covariance([["XY",
1, 4, 9, 16], [1, 3, 0, 5, 0], [2, 0, 1, 0, 0], [3, 0, 0, 5, 0], [4, 0, 0, 0, 2]], -1)
```

The linear correlation coefficient of two random variables is another way to measure their connectedness. Given random variables  $X$  and  $Y$ , their correlation is defined as  $\text{cov}(X, Y)/(\sigma(X)\sigma(Y))$ , where  $\sigma(X)$  and  $\sigma(Y)$  are the standard deviations of  $X$  and  $Y$ , respectively. The correlation can be computed with the `correlation` command, which takes the same types of arguments as the `covariance` command. If you enter

```
correlation([1, 2, 3, 4], [1, 4, 9, 16])
```

you will get

```
100/(4*sqrt(645))
```

The `covariance_correlation` command will compute both the covariance and correlation simultaneously, and return a list with both values. This command takes the same type of arguments as the `covariance` and `correlation` commands. For example, if you enter

```
covariance_correlation([1, 2, 3, 4], [1, 4, 9, 16])
```

you will get

```
[25/4, 100/(4*sqrt(645))]
```

### 8.2.2 Scatterplots: `scatterplot` `nuage_points` `batons`

A scatter plot is simply a set of points plotted on axes. You can draw a scatter plot with the `scatterplot` or `nuage_points` command.

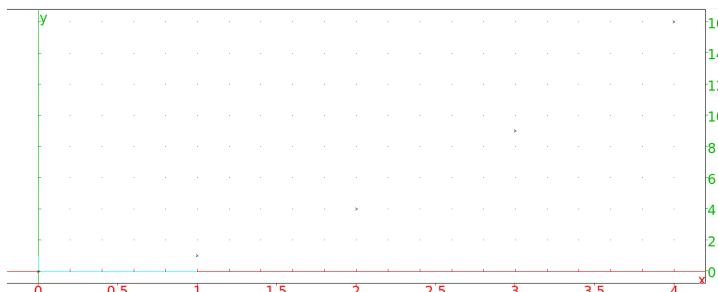
You can call `scatterplot` with a matrix with two columns (essentially, a list of points) or a list of  $x$ -coordinates followed by a list of  $y$ -coordinates. If you enter

```
scatterplot([[0, 0], [1, 1], [2, 4], [3, 9], [4, 16]])
```

or

```
scatterplot([0, 1, 2, 3, 4], [0, 1, 4, 9, 16])
```

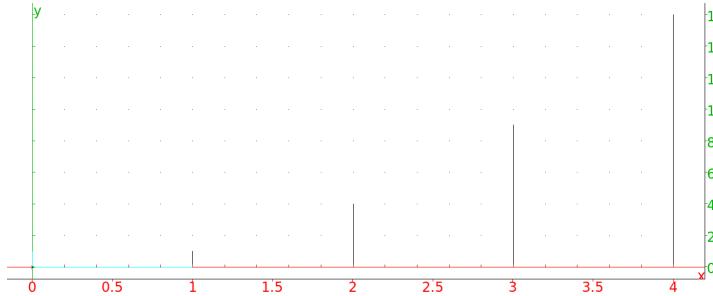
you will get



If you want the points connected to the  $x$ -axis, the `batons` command will take the same arguments at `scatterplot` and plot the points with a vertical line segment connecting them to the  $x$ -axis. If you enter

```
batons([[0,0],[1,1],[2,4],[3,9],[4,16]])
```

you will get



### 8.2.3 Polygonal paths: `polygonplot` `ligne_polygonale` `linear_interpolate` `listplot` `plotlist`

You can draw a polygonal path with either `polygonplot` or `listplot`.

Given a list of points (a two-column matrix) or two lists (the  $x$  coordinates and the  $y$ -coordinates), the `polygonplot` (or `polygons`) command will draw the polygonal path through the points, from left to right (so the points are automatically ordered by increasing  $x$ -coordinates). If you enter

```
polygonplot([0,1,2,3,4],[0,1,4,9,16])
```

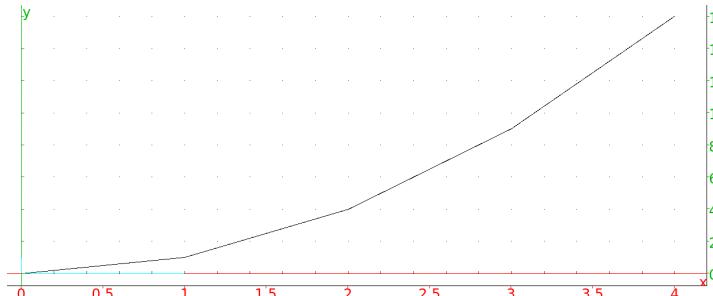
or

```
polygonplot([[0,0],[1,1],[2,4],[3,9],[4,16]])
```

or even

```
polygonplot([[2,4],[0,0],[3,9],[1,1],[4,16]])
```

you will get



If you give `polygonplot` a single list of numbers, then they will be taken to be the  $y$ -coordinates and the  $x$ -coordinates will be assumed to be integers starting at 0. If you enter

```
polygonplot([0,1,4,9,16])
```

If you want to get coordinates on the polygonal path, you can use the `linear_interpolate` command. This command takes four arguments; a two-row matrix consisting of the  $x$ -coordinates and the  $y$ -coordinates,  $x_{min}$ , the minimum value of  $x$  that you are interested in,  $x_{max}$ , the maximum value of  $x$ , and  $x_{step}$ , the step size you want. (The values of  $x_{min}$  and  $x_{max}$  must be between the smallest and largest  $x$ -coordinates of the points.) You will get a matrix with two rows, the first row will be  $[x_{min}, x_{min} + x_{step}, x_{min} + 2x_{step}, \dots, x_{max}]$  and the second row will be the corresponding  $y$ -coordinates of the points on the polygonal path. For example, if you enter

```
linear_interpolate([[1,2,6,9],[3,4,6,12]],2,7,1)
```

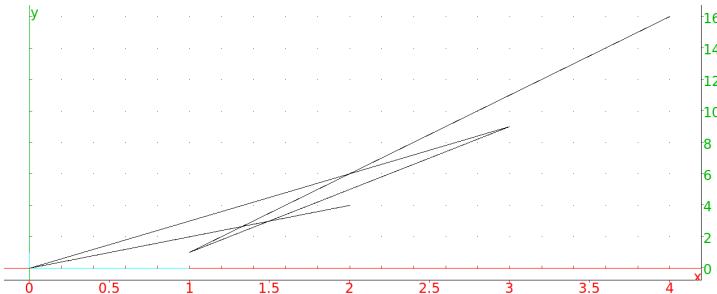
you will get

```
[[2.0,3.0,4.0,5.0,6.0,7.0],[4.0,4.5,5.0,5.5,6.0,8.0]]
```

If you want to draw a polygonal path through points in an order determined by you, you can use the `listplot` (or `plotlist`) command. If you give `listplot` a list of points, then you will get a polygonal path through the points in the order given by the list. If you enter

```
listplot([[2,4],[0,0],[3,9],[1,1],[4,16]])
```

you will get



As with `polygonplot`, if you give `listplot` a single list of numbers, then they will be taken to be the  $y$ -coordinates and the  $x$ -coordinates will be assumed to be integers starting at 0. If you enter

```
listplot([0,1,4,9,16])
```

you will get the same graph that you got with `polygonplot`. However, unlike `polygonplot`, the `listplot` command can't be given two lists of numbers as arguments.

### 8.2.4 Linear regression: `linear_regression` `linear_regression_plot`

Given a set of points  $(x_0, y_0), \dots, (x_{n-1}, y_{n-1})$ , linear regression finds the line  $y = mx + b$  that comes closest to passing through all of the points; i.e., that makes  $\sqrt{(y_0 - (mx_0 + b))^2 + \dots + (y_{n-1} - (mx_{n-1} + b))^2}$  as small as possible. Given a set of points (a two-column matrix) or two lists of numbers (the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates), the `linear_regression` command will find the values of  $m$  and  $b$  which determine the line. For example, if you enter

```
linear_regression([[0,0],[1,1],[2,4],[3,9],[4,16]])
```

or

```
linear_regression([0,1,2,3,4],[0,1,4,9,16])
```

you will get

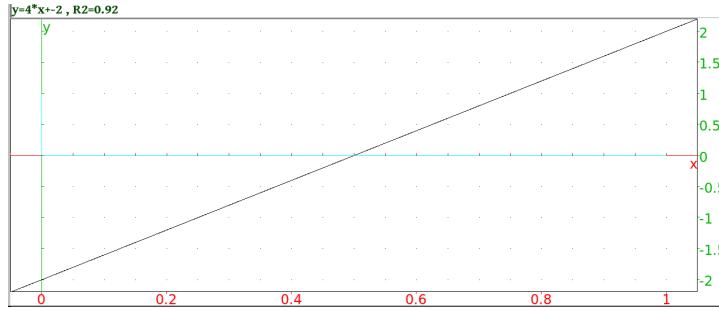
4, -2

which means that the line  $y = 4x - 2$  is the best fit line.

The best fit line can be drawn with the `linear_regression_plot` command; if you enter

```
linear_regression_plot([0,1,2,3,4],[0,1,4,9,16])
```

you will get



This will draw the line (in this case  $y = 4x - 2$ ) and give you the equation at the top, as well as the  $R^2$  value, which is

$$R^2 = \frac{\sum_{j=0}^{n-1} (mx_j + b - \bar{y})^2}{\sum_{j=0}^{n-1} (y_j - \bar{y})^2}$$

(The  $R^2$  value will be between 0 and 1 and is one measure of how good the line fits the data; a value close to 1 indicates a good fit, a value close to 0 indicates a bad fit.)

### 8.2.5 Exponential regression: `exponential_regression` `exponential_regression_plot`

A set of points might be expected to lie on an exponential curve  $y = ba^x$ . Given a set of points, either as a list of  $x$ -coordinates followed by a list of  $y$ -coordinates, or simply by a list of points, the `exponential_regression` command will find the values of  $a$  and  $b$  which give the best fit exponential. For example, if you enter

```
evalf(exponential_regression([[1,1],[2,4],[3,9],[4,16]]))
```

or

```
evalf(exponential_regression([1,2,3,4],[1,4,9,16]))
```

(where the `evalf` is used to get a numeric approximation to an exact expression) you will get

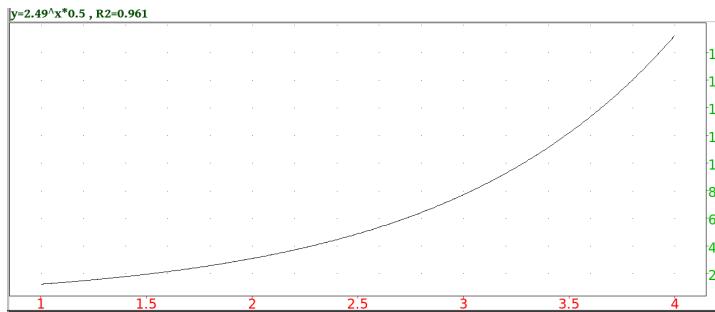
```
2.49146187923, 0.5
```

so the best fit exponential curve will be  $y = 0.5 * (2.49146187923)^x$ .

To plot the curve, you can use the command `exponential_regression_plot`; if you enter

```
exponential_regression_plot([1,2,3,4],[1,4,9,16])
```

you will get



which plots the graph, and has the equation and  $R^2$  value above the graph.

### 8.2.6 Logarithmic regression: `logarithmic_regression`

A set of points might be expected to lie on a logarithmic curve  $y = m \ln(x) + b$ . Given a set of points, either as a list of  $x$ -coordinates followed by a list of  $y$ -coordinates, or simply by a list of points, the `logarithmic_regression` command will find the values of  $m$  and  $b$  which give the best fit exponential. For example, if you enter

```
evalf(logarithmic_regression([[1,1],[2,4],[3,9],[4,16]]))
```

or

```
evalf(logarithmic_regression([1,2,3,4],[1,4,9,16]))
```

(where the `evalf` is used to get a numeric approximation to an exact expression) you will get

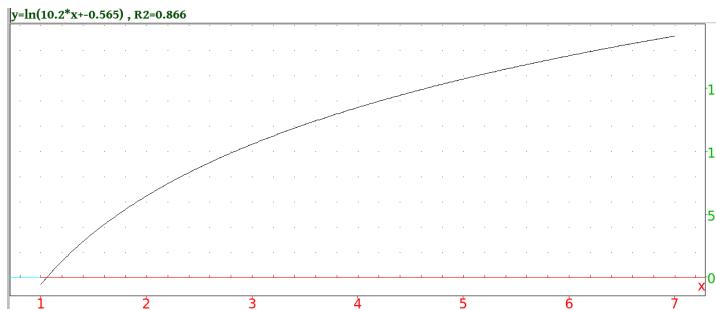
```
10.1506450002, -0.564824055818
```

so the best fit exponential curve will be  $y = 10.1506450002 \ln(x) - 0.564824055818$ .

To plot the curve, you can use the command `exponential_regression_plot`; if you enter

```
logarithmic_regression_plot([1,2,3,4],[1,4,9,16])
```

you will get



which plots the graph, and has the equation and  $R^2$  value above the graph.

### 8.2.7 Power regression: `power_regression` `power_regression_plot`

To find the graph  $y = bx^m$  which best fits a set of data points, you can use the `power_regression` command. Given a set of points, either as a list of  $x$ -coordinates followed by a list of  $y$ -coordinates, or simply by a list of points, the `power_regression` command will find the values of  $m$  and  $b$  which give the best fit curve. For example, if you enter

```
power_regression([[1,1], [2,4], [3,9], [4,16]])
```

or

```
power_regression([1,2,3,4], [1,4,9,16])
```

you will get

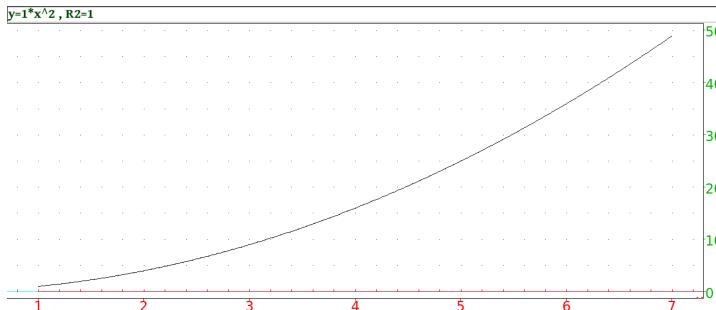
2.0, 1.0

so the best fit (in this case, exact fit) power curve will be  $y = 1.0x^2$ .

To plot the curve, you can use the command `power_regression_plot`; if you enter

```
power_regression_plot([1,2,3,4], [1,4,9,16])
```

you will get



which plots the graph, and has the equation and  $R^2$  value above the graph. Note that in this case the  $R^2$  value is 1, indicating that the data points fall directly on the curve.

### 8.2.8 Polynomial regression: `polynomial_regression`

If you want to find a more general polynomial  $y = a_0x^n + \dots + a_n$  which best fits a set of data points, you can use the `polynomial_regression` command. Given a set of points, either as a list of  $x$ -coordinates followed by a list of  $y$ -coordinates, or simply by a list of points, as well as a power  $n$ , the `polynomial_regression` command will return the list  $[a_n, \dots, a_0]$  of coefficients of the polynomial. For example, if you enter

```
polynomial_regression([[1,1],[2,2],[3,10],[4,20]],3)
```

or

```
polynomial_regression([1,2,3,4],[1,2,10,20],3)
```

you will get

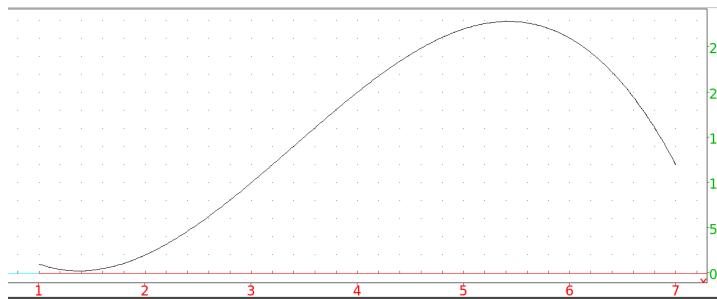
```
[-5/6, 17/2, -56/3, 12]
```

so the best fit polynomial will be  $y = (-5/6)x^3 + (17/2)x^2 - (56/3)x + 12$ .

To plot the curve, you can use the command `polynomial_regression_plot`; if you enter

```
polynomial_regression_plot([1,2,3,4],[1,2,10,20],3)
```

you will get



### 8.2.9 Logistic regression: `logistic_regression`

Differential equations of the form  $y' = y(a * y + b)$  come up often, particularly when studying bounded population growth. With the initial condition  $y(x_0) = y_0$ , the solution is the logistic equation

$$y = \frac{-b * y_0}{a * y_0 - (a * y_0 + b) \exp(b(x_0 - x))}$$

However, you often don't know the values of  $a$  and  $b$ . You can still get a "best fit" logistic equation with the following information: The initial value of  $x$ , the initial value of  $y$ , and several values of  $y'$ ; namely,  $y'(x_0), y'(x_0+1), \dots, y'(x_0+n-1)$  where  $x_0$  is the initial value of  $x$ . Xcas will then take the initial value  $y(x_0) = y_0$  and the approximation  $y(t+1) \approx y(t) + y'(t)$  to get the approximations  $y(x_0+1) \approx y_0 + y'(x_0)$ ,  $y(x_0+2) \approx y_0 + y'(x_0) + y'(x_0+1)$ , ...  $y(x_0+n) \approx y_0 + y'(x_0) + \dots + y'(x_0+n-1)$ , ... Since  $y'/y = a + by$ , Xcas will take the

approximate values of  $y'(x_0 + j)/y(x_0 + j)$  and use linear interpolation to get the best fit values of  $a$  and  $b$ , and then solve the differential equation.

The `logistic_regression` command will take as input a list and two numbers; the list will be  $[y_{10}, y_{11}, \dots, y_{1(n-1)}]$ , where  $y_{1j}$  represents the value of  $y'(x_0 + j)$ , the first number is  $x_0$  and the last number is  $y_0 = y(x_0)$ . The command will return the function  $y(x)$ , the derivative  $y'(x)$ , the number  $C = -b/a$ ,  $y'(x_M)$  which is the maximum value of  $y'$ ,  $x_M$  which is where  $y'$  has its maximum, and the linear correlation coefficient  $R$  of  $Y = y'/y$  as a function of  $y$  with  $Y = a * y + b$ . For example, if you enter

```
logistic_regression([0.0,1.0,2.5],0,1)
```

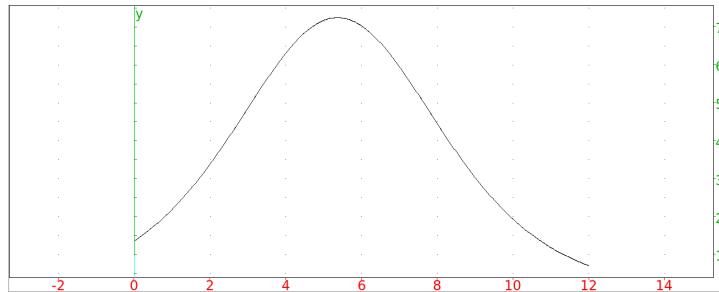
you will get

```
Pinstant=0.132478632479*Pcumul+0.0206552706553
Correlation 0.780548607383, Estimated total P=-0.155913978495
Returning estimated Pcumul, Pinstant, Pttotal, Pinstantmax, tmax, R
[-0.155913978495/(1+exp(-0.0554152581707*x+0.140088513344+3.14159265359*i))
-0.00161022271237/(1+cos((-i)*(-0.0554152581707*x+0.140088513344+3.14159265359*i))
-0.155913978495,-0.000805111356186,2.52797727501+56.6918346552*i,0.780548632479]
```

You can plot the logistic equation with the command `logistic_regression_plot`; if you enter

```
logistic_regression_plot([1,2,4,6,8,7,5],0,2.0)
```

you will get



## 8.3 Random numbers

### 8.3.1 Producing uniformly distributed random numbers: `rand` `random` `alea` `hasard`

The `rand` (or `random`) command will produce a number in  $[0, 1)$  randomly and with equal probability. If you enter

```
rand()
```

you might get, for example,

```
0.93233498279
```

If you want a random number in a different interval, you can give `rand` two real arguments; `rand(a, b)` will return a random number from the interval  $[a, b]$ . If you enter

```
rand(1, 1.5)
```

for example, you might get

```
1.27419309644
```

If you give `rand` an interval, then you will get function which will generate a random number in the interval. If you enter

```
r:=rand(1.0..2.5)
```

you will get

```
// Success (NULL)->rand(1.0,2.5)
```

and you can get a random number in the interval by calling the function;

```
r()
```

might return

```
1.76314622024
```

If you want to generate a random integer, then `rand(n)` (for integer  $n$ ) will return a random integer in  $[0, n]$  (or  $(n, 0]$  if  $n$  is negative). If you enter

```
rand(5)
```

for example, you might get

```
2
```

You can then use `rand` to find a random integer in a specified interval; if you want an random integer between 6 and 10, inclusive, for example, you can enter

```
6 + rand(11-6)
```

You might get

```
7
```

Alternatively, the `randint` will give you a random integer in a given interval; `randint(n1, n2)` will return a random integer between  $n_1$  and  $n_2$ , inclusive; to get a random integer from 6 to 10, you could enter

```
randint(6,10)
```

The `rand` command can also choose elements without replacement. If you give `rand` three integer arguments, `rand(p, n1, n2)` then it will return  $p$  distinct random integers from  $n_1$  to  $n_2$ . If you enter

```
rand(2,1,10)
```

for example, you will get 2 distinct random numbers from 1 to 10; perhaps

```
[2, 9]
```

You can also choose (without replacement) random elements of a given list. For this, you give `rand`, a positive integer  $n$  and a list  $L$ ; `rand( $n$ ,  $L$ )` will then return  $n$  random elements from the list. If you enter

```
rand(3, ["a", "b", "c", "d", "e", "f", "g", "h"])
```

you might get

```
["c", "b", "e"]
```

The list can have repeated elements; if you enter

```
rand(4, ["r", "r", "r", "r", "v", "v", "v"])
```

you might get

```
["v", "v", "r", "v"]
```

The `sample` command will also randomly select items from a list without replacement. With the `sample` command, the list comes first and then the integer. If you enter

```
sample(["r", "r", "r", "r", "v", "v", "v"], 4)
```

you might get

```
["v", "r", "r", "r"]
```

### 8.3.2 Initializing the random number generator: `srand` `randseed` `RandSeed`

The `srand` (or `randseed`) and `RandSeed` commands will initialize (or re-initialize) the random numbers given by `rand`. The `RandSeed` requires an integer argument, and `srand` can either take an integer argument or no argument. If you don't give `srand` an argument, then it will use the system clock to initialize the random numbers.

### 8.3.3 Producing random numbers with the binomial distribution: `randbinomial`

The command `randbinomial` will take parameters an integer  $n$  and a number  $p$  between 0 and 1, and return an integer from 0 to  $n$  chosen according to the binomial distribution; i.e., the number of successes you might get if you did an experiment  $n$  times, where the probability of success each time is  $p$ . If you enter

```
randbinomial(100, 0.4)
```

for example, you might get

### 8.3.4 Producing random numbers with a multinomial distribution: `randmultinomial`

Given a list  $P = [p_0, \dots, p_{n-1}]$  of  $n$  probabilities which add to 1 (representing the probability that one of several mutually exclusive events occurs), the `randmultinomial` command will return an index whose probability is determined by the corresponding multinomial distribution. If you enter

```
randmultinomial([1/2, 1/3, 1/6])
```

you might get

0

If  $K$  is a list of length  $n$ , then `randmultinomial(P, K)` will return an element of the list, whose index is chosen according to the multinomial distribution. If you enter

```
randmultinomial([1/2, 1/3, 1/6], ["R", "V", "B"])
```

you might get

"R"

### 8.3.5 Producing random numbers with a Poisson distribution: `randpoisson`

Recall that given a number  $\lambda$ , the corresponding Poisson distribution  $P(\lambda)$  satisfies

$$\text{Prob}(X \leq k) = \exp(-\lambda)\lambda^k/k!$$

It will have mean  $\lambda$  and standard deviation  $\sqrt{\lambda}$ .

The `randpoisson` command will take a parameter  $\lambda$  and return an integer chosen at random using the Poisson distribution. If you enter

```
randpoisson(10.6)
```

you might get

16

### 8.3.6 Producing random numbers with a normal distribution: `randnorm` `randNorm`

The `randnorm` (or `randNorm`) command will choose a random number according to a normal distribution. Given the mean  $\mu$  and standard deviation  $\sigma$ , `randnorm( $\mu$ ,  $\sigma$ )` will return a number chosen according the normal distribution. If you enter

```
randnorm(2, 1)
```

you might get

2.45598713143

### 8.3.7 Producing random numbers with an exponential distribution: `randexp`

Recall that given a positive number  $a$ , the corresponding exponential distribution satisfies

$$\text{Prob}(X \leq t) = a \int_0^t \exp(-a * u) du$$

Given a parameter  $a$ , the command `randexp(a)` will return a number chosen randomly according to the corresponding exponential distribution. For example, if you enter

```
randexp(1)
```

you might get

```
0.193354391918
```

### 8.3.8 Producing random matrices: `randmatrix` `ranm` `randMat`

You can produce a random vector or matrix with the `randmatrix` (or `ranm` or `randMat`) command. (See also sections 5.29.28 and 5.47.3.) The `randmatrix` command has the following possible arguments.

**An integer  $n$**  With an integer  $n$ , `randmatrix(n)` will return a vector of length  $n$  whose elements are integers chosen randomly from  $[-99, -98, \dots, 98, 99]$  with equal probability. If you enter

```
randmatrix(5)
```

you might get

```
[86, -97, -82, 7, -27]
```

**Two integers  $n$  and  $p$**  Given two integers  $n$  and  $p$ , `randmatrix(n, p)` will return an  $n \times p$  matrix whose elements are integers chosen randomly from  $[-99, 99]$  with equal probability. If you enter

```
randmatrix(2, 3)
```

you might get

```
[[26, -89, 63], [-49, -86, -64]]
```

**Three integers  $n$ ,  $p$  and  $a$**  Given three integers  $n$ ,  $p$  and  $a$ , `randmatrix(n, p, a)` will return an  $n \times p$  matrix whose elements are integers chosen randomly from  $[0, a]$  (or  $(a, 0]$  if  $a$  is negative) with equal probability. If you enter

```
randmatrix(2, 3, 10)
```

you might get

```
[ [ 4, 7, 6 ], [ 7, 4, 5 ] ]
```

**Two integers  $n$  and  $p$ , and an interval  $a..b$ .** Given two integers  $n, p$  and an  $a..b$ , `randmatrix(n, p, a..b)` will return an  $n \times p$  matrix whose elements are real numbers chosen randomly from  $[a, b]$  with equal probability. If you enter

```
randmatrix(2, 3, 0..1)
```

you might get

```
[ [ 0.90923402831, 0.594602484722, 0.250897713937 ], [ 0.332611694932, 0. . . ] ]
```

### Two integers $n$ and $p$ and a function (which must be quoted) to produce random numbers

In this case, the third argument must be one of '`rand(n)`', '`binomial(n, p)`', '`binomial, n, p`', '`randbinomial(n, p)`', '`multinomial(P, K)`', '`multinomial, P, K`', '`randmultinomial(P, K)`', '`poisson(λ)`', '`poisson, λ`', '`randpoisson(λ)`', '`normald(μ, σ)`', '`normald, μ, σ`', '`randnorm(μ, σ)`', '`exp(a)`', '`exp, a`', '`randexp(a)`', '`fisher(n, m)`', '`fisher, n, m`', or '`randfisher(n, m)`'.

Given such an  $R$ , the command `randmatrix(n, p, R)` will return an  $n \times p$  matrix whose elements are numbers chosen randomly according to the rule determined by  $R$ . If you enter

```
randmatrix(2, 3, 'randnorm(2, 1)')
```

you might get

```
[ [ 2.6324726358, 0.539273367446, 0.793750476229 ], [ 2.24729803442, 1.2818922 . . . ] ]
```

### 8.3.9 Random variables : `random_variable` `randvar`

`randvar` (alias: `random_variable`) takes a probability distribution specification as its argument and returns an object representing a random variable. Its value(s) can be generated subsequently by calling `sample`, `rand`, `randvector` or `randmatrix`.

The probability distribution is specified as a sequence of arguments. The supported types are : uniform, normal, binomial, multinomial, negbinomial, Poisson, Student, Fisher-Snedecor, Cauchy, Weibull, beta, gamma, chi-square, geometric, exponential and discrete.

**Continuous distributions.** The usual way to specify a continuous distribution is to pass the probability density function as the first argument, followed by one or more (numeric) parameters. However, it can also be defined by specifying its type and first and/or second moment (the mean and/or the standard deviation/variance); the supported types are : normal, uniform, binomial, Poisson, geometric, exponential, gamma, beta and Weibull. Additionally, a uniform distribution can be defined by specifying its range as an interval. The arguments are entered in form:

- `mean=μ`
- `stddev=σ`
- `variance=σ²`
- `[range=] a..b` or `range=[a,b]`

**Discrete distributions.** To create a discrete random variable one can pass either

- a list  $W = [w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n]$  of nonnegative weights as the first argument, optionally followed by a list of values  $V = [v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n]$ ,
- a list of object-weight pairs :  $[[v_1, w_1], [v_2, w_2], \dots, [v_n, w_n]]$ , or
- a nonnegative function  $f$  followed by a range specification `[range=] a..b` and optionally either a positive integer  $N$  (with  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ ) or a list of values  $V = [v_0, v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n]$  where  $n = b - a$ ,  $a < b$  and  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

The weights are automatically scaled by the inverse of their sum to obtain the values of the probability mass function. If a function  $f$  is given instead of a list of weights, then  $w_k = f(a + k)$  for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, b - a$  unless  $N$  is given, in which case  $w_k = f(x_k)$  where  $x_k = a + (k - 1) \frac{b-a}{N}$  and  $k = 1, 2, \dots, N$ . The resulting random variable  $X$  has values in  $\{0, 1, \dots, n - 1\}$  for 0-based modes (e.g. Xcas) resp. in  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  for 1-based modes (e.g. Maple). If the list  $V$  of custom objects is given, then  $V[X]$  is returned instead of  $X$ . If  $N$  is given, then  $v_k = x_k$  for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, N$ .

**Examples.** To define a random variable with a Fisher-Snedecor distribution (two degrees of freedom), input :

```
X:=random_variable(fisher,2,3)
```

Output :

```
fisherd(2,3)
```

To generate some values of  $X$ , input :

```
rand(X) // alternative : sample(X)
```

Output :

```
2.0457
```

Input :

```
randvector(5,X) // alternative : sample(X,5)
```

Output :

```
[3.9823,0.50771,0.44836,0.79225,0.088813]
```

To define a random variable with multinomial distribution, input :

```
M:=randvar(multinomial,[1/2,1/3,1/6],[a,b,c])
```

Output :

```
'multinomial',[1/2,1/3,1/6],[a,b,c]
```

Input :

```
randvector(10,M)
```

Output :

```
[a,c,b,a,b,b,a,b,b,b]
```

Some continuous distributions can be defined by specifying its first and/or second moment. Input :

```
randvector(10,randvar(poisson,mean=5))
```

Output :

```
[5,4,4,8,3,8,3,3,5,9]
```

Input :

```
randvector(5,randvar(weibull,mean=5.0,stddev=1.5))
```

Output :

```
[3.6483,3.4194,6.8166,4.3778,2.4178]
```

Input :

```
X:=randvar(binomial,mean=18,stddev=4)
```

Output :

```
binomial(162,1/9)
```

Input :

```
X:=randvar(weibull,mean=12.5,variance=1)
```

Output :

```
weibulld(3.0857,13.98)
```

Input :

```
mean(randvector(1000,X))
```

Output :

```
12.582
```

Input :

```
G:=randvar(geometric,stddev=2.5)
```

**Output :**

```
geometric(0.32792)
```

**Input :**

```
evalf(stddev(randvector(1000,G)))
```

**Output :**

```
2.4245
```

**Input :**

```
randvar(gammad, mean=12, variance=4)
```

**Output :**

```
gammad(36,3)
```

Uniformly distributed random variables can be defined by specifying the support as an interval. Input :

```
randvector(5, randvar(uniform, range=15..81))
```

**Output :**

```
[61.97, 76.427, 37.939, 69.639, 40.325]
```

**Input :**

```
rand(randvar(uniform,e..pi))
```

**Output :**

```
3.0434
```

The following examples demonstrate various ways to define a discrete random variable. Input :

```
X:=randvar([["apple",1/3], ["orange",1/4],
            ["pear",1/5], ["plum",13/60]]):;
randvector(5,X)
```

**Output :**

```
["apple", "plum", "pear", "orange", "apple", "pear"]
```

**Input :**

```
W:=[1,4,5,3,1,1,1,2]:; X:=randvar(W):;
approx(W/sum(W))
```

**Output :**

```
[0.055556, 0.22222, 0.27778, 0.16667,
 0.055556, 0.055556, 0.055556, 0.11111]
```

Input :

```
 frequencies(randvector(10000,X))
```

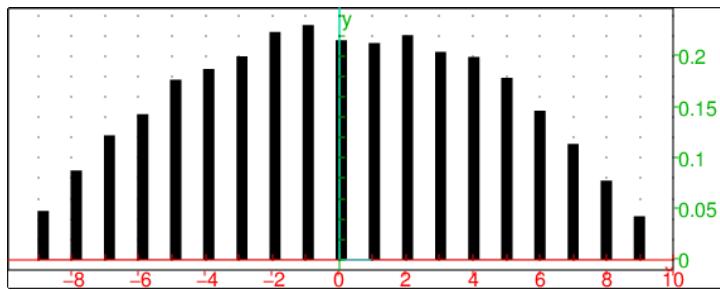
Output :

```
[ [0,0.0566], [1,0.2152], [2,0.2798], [3,0.1683],  
[4,0.0594], [5,0.0564], [6,0.0568], [7,0.1075] ]
```

Input :

```
X:=randvar(k->1-(k/10)^2,range=-10..10)::;  
histogram(randvector(10000,X),-10,0.33,display=filled)
```

Output :



Input :

```
X:=randvar([3,1,2,5],[alpha,beta,gamma,delta]):;  
randmatrix(5,4,X)
```

Output :

$$\begin{vmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \delta & \delta \\ \delta & \alpha & \alpha & \alpha \\ \delta & \gamma & \alpha & \delta \\ \delta & \alpha & \delta & \alpha \\ \alpha & \beta & \delta & \delta \end{vmatrix}$$

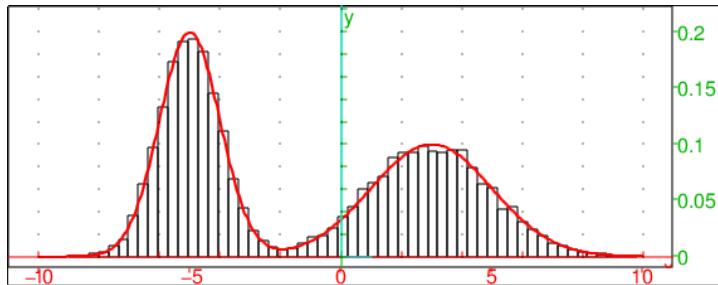
Discrete random variables can be used to approximate custom continuous random variables. For example, consider a probability density function  $f$  as a mixture of two normal distributions on the support  $S = [-10, 10]$ . We sample  $f$  in  $N = 10000$  points in  $S$ . Input :

```
F:=normald(3,2,x)+normald(-5,1,x);  
c:=integrate(F,x=-10..10);  
f:=unapply(1/c*F,x);  
X:=randvar(f,range=-10..10,10000);
```

Now we generate 25000 values of  $X$  and plot a histogram :

```
R:=sample(X,25000);  
hist:=histogram(R,-10,0.1);  
PDF:=plot(f(x),display=red+line_width_2); hist,PDF
```

Output :



Sampling from discrete distributions is fast : generating 25 million samples from the distribution of  $X$  which has about 10000 outcomes takes only couple of seconds. In fact, the sampling complexity is constant. Also observe that the process isn't slowed down by spreading it across 1000 calls of `randvector`. Input :

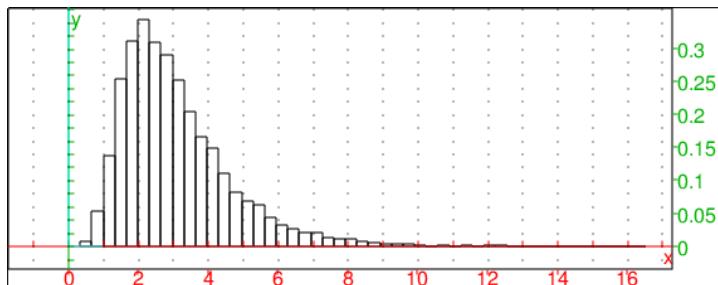
```
for k from 1 to 1000 do randvector(25000,X); od;;
```

Evaluation time: 2.12

Independent random variables can be combined in an expression, yielding a new random variable. In the example below, we define a log-normally distributed variable  $Y$  from a variable  $X$  with standard normal distribution. Input :

```
X:=randvar(normal)::; mu,sigma:=1.0,0.5::;
Y:=exp(mu+sigma*X)::;
L:=randvector(10000,Y)::; histogram(L,0,0.33)
```

Output :



It is known that  $E[Y] = e^{\mu+\sigma^2/2}$ . The mean of  $L$  should be close to that number.

Input :

```
mean(L); exp(mu+sigma^2/2)
```

Output:

3.0789, 3.0802

In case a compound random variable is defined as an expression containing several independent random variables  $X, Y, \dots$  of the same type, it is sometimes needed to prevent its evaluation when passing it to `randvector` or `randmatrix`. Input :

```
Y:=randvar(normal)::;
```

$X/Y$  is wrapped by `eval` because otherwise it would automatically reduce to 1 as  $X$  and  $Y$  are both `normald(0,1)`. Input :

```
randvector(5, eval(X/Y, 0))
```

Output :

```
[0.2608, -0.056913, -4.7966, -1.2622, -1.2997]
```

To save typing, one can define Z with eval(\*, 0) and pass eval(Z, 1) to randvector or randmatrix. Input :

```
Z:=eval(X/Y, 0); randvector(5, eval(Z, 1))
```

Output :

```
[0.19015, -2.4509, -1.4277, -1.1452, 1.2935]
```

Parameters of a distribution can be entered as symbols to allow (re)assigning them at any time. Input :

```
purge(lambda); X:=randvar(exp, lambda);
lambda:=1;
```

Now execute the following command line several times in a row. The parameter  $\lambda$  is updated in each iteration :

```
r:=rand(X); lambda:=sqrt(r)
```

Output (by executing the above command line three times) :

```
8.5682, 2.9272
1.5702, 1.2531
0.53244, 0.72968
```

## 8.4 Density and distribution functions

### 8.4.1 The binomial distribution

**The probability density function for the binomial distribution : binomial**

If you perform an experiment  $n$  times, where the probability of success each time is  $p$ , then the probability of exactly  $k$  successes is

$$\text{binomial}(n, k, p) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k}$$

This determines the binomial distribution, and so this is called the **binomial** command. If you enter

```
binomial(10, 2, 0.4)
```

you will get

```
0.120932352
```

If no third argument  $p$  is given, then **binomial** will just compute  $\binom{n}{k}$ , which recall is called the binomial coefficient and is also computed by **comb**. If you enter

```
binomial(10, 2)
```

or

```
comb(10, 2)
```

then you will get

**The cumulative distribution function for the binomial distribution: `binomial_cdf`**

Recall that the cumulative distribution function (cdf) for a distribution is  $cdf(x) = \text{Prob}(X \leq x)$ . For the binomial distribution, this is given by the `binomial_cdf` command; `binomial_cdf(n, p, x)`, which in this case will equal `binomial(n, 0, p) + ... + binomial(n, floor(x), p)`. If you enter

```
binomial_cdf(4, 0.5, 2)
```

you will get

0.6875

You can give `binomial_cdf` an additional argument; `binomial_cdf(n, p, x, y) = Prob(x \leq X \leq y)`, which in this case would be `binomial(n, ceil(x), p) + ... + binomial(n, floor(y), p)`. If you enter

```
binomial_cdf(2, 0.3, 1, 2)
```

you will get

0.51

**The inverse distribution function for the binomial distribution: `binomial_icdf`**

Given a value  $h$ , the inverse distribution function gives the value of  $x$  so that  $\text{Prob}(X \leq x) = h$ ; or for discrete distributions, the smallest  $x$  so that  $\text{Prob}(X \leq x) \geq h$ . For the binomial distribution with  $n$  and  $p$ , the `binomial_icdf` gives the inverse distribution function. If you enter

```
binomial_icdf(4, 0.5, 0.9)
```

you will get

3

Note that `binomial_cdf(4, 0.5, 3)` is 0.9375, bigger than 0.9, while `binomial_cdf(4, 0.5, 2)` is 0.6875, smaller than 0.9.

**8.4.2 The negative binomial distribution****The probability density function for the negative binomial distribution: `negbinomial`**

If you repeatedly perform an experiment with probability of success  $p$ , then, given an integer  $n$ , the probability of  $k$  failures that occur before you have  $n$  successes is given by the negative binomial distribution, and can be computed with `negbinomial(n, k, p)`. It is given by the formula  $\binom{n+k-1}{k} p^n (1-p)^k$ . If you enter

```
negbinomial(4, 2, 0.5)
```

you will get

0.15625

Note that

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} = \frac{n(n-1)\dots(n-k+1)}{k!}$$

The second formula makes sense even if  $n$  is negative, and you can write  $\text{negbinomial}(n, k, p) = \binom{-n}{k} p^n (p-1)^k$ , from which the name negative binomial distribution comes from.

This also makes it simple to determine the mean  $(n(1-p)/p)$  and variance  $(n(1-p)/p^2)$ . The negative binomial is also called the Pascal distribution (after Blaise Pascal) or the Pólya distribution (after George Pólya).

**The cumulative distribution function for the negative binomial distribution: `negbinomial_cdf`**

The cumulative distribution function for the negative binomial distribution is given by the `negbinomial_cdf` command. Given parameters  $n$  and  $p$ , as above, then  $\text{negbinomial\_cdf}(n, p, x) = \text{Prob}(X \leq x) = \text{negbinomial}(n, 0, p) + \dots + \text{negbinomial}(n, \text{floor}(x), p)$ , and  $\text{negbinomial\_cdf}(n, p, x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y) = \text{negbinomial}(n, \text{ceil}(x), p) + \dots + \text{negbinomial}(n, \text{floor}(y), p)$ . If you enter

```
negbinomial_cdf(4, 0.5, 2)
```

for example, you will get

```
0.34375
```

**The inverse distribution function for the negative binomial distribution: `negbinomial_icdf`**

Given a value  $h$ , the inverse distribution function gives the smallest value of  $x$  so that  $\text{Prob}(X \leq x) \geq h$ . The `negbinomial_icdf` gives the inverse distribution function for the negative binomial distribution. If you enter

```
negbinomial_icdf(4, 0.5, 0.9)
```

for example, you will get

8

**8.4.3 The multinomial probability function: `multinomial`**

If  $X$  follows a multinomial probability distribution with  $P = [p_0, p_1, \dots, p_j]$  (where  $p_0 + \dots + p_j = 1$ ), then for  $K = [k_0, \dots, k_j]$  with  $k_0 + \dots + k_j = n$ , the probability that  $X = K$  is given by the `multinomial` command;

$$\text{multinomial}(n, P, K) = \frac{n!}{k_0!k_1!\dots k_j!} (p_0^{k_0} p_1^{k_1} \dots p_j^{k_j}).$$

You will get an error if  $k_0 + \dots + k_j$  is not equal to  $n$ , although you won't get one if  $p_0 + \dots + p_j$  is not equal to 1.

For example, if you make 10 choices, where each choice is one of three items; the first has a 0.2 probability of being chosen, the second a 0.3 probability and the third a 0.5 probability, the probability that you end up with 3 of the first item, 2 of the second and 5 of the third will be

```
multinomial(10,[0.2,0.3,0.5],[3,2,5])
```

or

```
0.0567
```

#### 8.4.4 The Poisson distribution

##### The probability density function for the Poisson distribution: **poisson**

Recall that for the Poisson distribution with parameter  $\mu$ , the probability of a non-negative integer  $k$  is  $e^{-\mu}\mu^k/k!$ . It will mean  $\mu$  and variance  $\mu$ . The **poisson** command will find this value, given  $\mu$  and  $k$ . For example,

```
poisson(10.0,9)
```

is

```
0.125110035721
```

##### The cumulative distribution function for the Poisson distribution: **poisson\_cdf**

The cumulative distribution function for the Poisson distribution is given by the **poisson\_cdf** command with arguments  $\mu$  and  $x$ ;  $\text{poisson\_cdf}(\mu, x) = \text{Prob}(X \leq x)$ . If you enter

```
poisson_cdf(10.0,3)
```

you will get

```
0.0103360506759
```

With another argument, **poisson\_cdf** will find the probability of falling between two values;  $\text{poisson\_cdf}(\mu, x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y)$ . If you enter

```
poisson_cdf(10.0,3,10)
```

you will get

```
0.580270354477
```

##### The inverse distribution function for the Poisson distribution: **poisson\_icdf**

Given a value  $h$ , the inverse distribution function gives the smallest value of  $x$  so that  $\text{Prob}(X \leq x) \geq h$ . Given arguments of a parameter  $\mu$  and a value  $x$ , the **poisson\_icdf** gives the inverse distribution function for the poisson distribution. If you enter

```
poisson_icdf(10.0,0.975)
```

you will get

### 8.4.5 Normal distributions

**The probability density function for a normal distribution: `normald loi_normal`**

The `normald` (or `loi_normal`) command returns the value of the normal probability density function. You can give it arguments of the mean  $\mu$ , standard deviation  $\sigma$  and a value  $x$  then

$$\text{normald}(\mu, \sigma, x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} e^{-(x-\mu)^2/2}$$

If you enter

```
normald(2, 1, 3)
```

you will get

```
exp(-1/2)/sqrt(2*pi)
```

If you don't give the command values for  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$ , then `normald` will use the values  $\mu = 0$  and  $\sigma = 1$ , and so compute the standard normal density function. If you enter

```
normald(2)
```

you will get

```
1/(sqrt(2*pi)*exp(2))
```

**The cumulative distribution function for normal distributions: `normal_cdf`  
`normald_cdf`**

The command `normal_cdf` (or `normald_cdf`) computes the cumulative distribution function for the normal distribution. Like `normald`, you can give it the mean and standard deviation of the distribution; if you enter

```
normal_cdf(1, 2, 1.96)
```

you will get

```
0.684386303484
```

You can also leave off the mean and standard deviation, in which case `normal_cdf` will compute the cumulative distribution function for the standard normal distribution;

```
normal_cdf(1, 2.1, 1.2)
```

you will get

```
0.537937144066
```

If you give `normal_cdf` an extra argument (with or without the mean and standard deviation), you will get the probability that the random variable lies between two values;  $\text{normal\_cdf}(x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y)$ . If you enter

```
normal_cdf(1, 2.1, 1.2, 9)
```

you will get

```
0.461993238584
```

**The inverse distribution function for normal distributions: `normal_icdf`  
`normald_icdf`**

Given a value  $h$ , the inverse distribution function gives the value of  $x$  with  $\text{Prob}(X \leq x) \leq h$ . The `normal_icdf` (or `normald_icdf`) will compute the inverse distribution for the normal distribution. If no mean or standard deviation are given, the standard normal distribution will be used. If you enter

```
normal_icdf(0.975)
```

you will get

```
1.95996398454
```

You can, of course, also give the mean and standard deviation. If you enter

```
normal_icdf(1, 2, 0.495)
```

you will get

```
0.974933060984
```

**The upper tail cumulative function for normal distributions: `UTPN`**

The `UTPN` (the Upper Tail Probability - Normal distribution) will compute  $\text{Prob}(X > x)$ . If you don't give it a mean and variance, then it will compute the probability for the standard normal distribution. If you enter

```
UTPN(1.96)
```

you will get

```
0.0249978951482
```

You can also specify a mean and a variance, but note that unlike `normald` and `normal_cdf`, the `UTPN` requires the variance and not the standard deviation. If you enter

```
UTPN(1, 4, 1.96)
```

you will get

```
0.315613696516
```

### 8.4.6 Student's distribution

**The probability density function for Student's distribution: `student` `studentd`**

Student's distribution (also called Student's  $t$ -distribution or just the  $t$ -distribution) with  $n$  degrees of freedom has density function given by

$$\text{student}(n, x) = \frac{\Gamma((n+1)/2)}{\Gamma(n/2)\sqrt{n\pi}} \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{n}\right)^{-n-1/2}$$

where recall the Gamma function is defined for  $x > 0$  by  $\Gamma(x) = \int_0^\infty e^{-t} t^{x-1} dx$ . If you enter

`student(2,3)`

you will get

`sqrt(pi)/(11*sqrt(2*pi)*sqrt(11/2))`

which can be numerically approximated by

`evalf(student(2,3))`

which is

`0.0274101222343`

### The cumulative distribution function for Student's distribution: `student_cdf`

The cumulative distribution function for Student's distribution with  $n$  degrees of freedom at a value  $x$  is  $\text{student\_cdf}(n, x) = \text{Prob}(X \leq x)$ ; if you enter

`student_cdf(5,2)`

you will get

`0.949030260585`

If you give `student_cdf` an extra argument, you will get the probability that the random variable lies between two values;  $\text{student\_cdf}(n, x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y)$ . If you enter

`student_cdf(5,-2,2)`

you will get

`0.89806052117`

### The inverse distribution function for Student's distribution: `student_icdf`

The inverse distribution function for Student's distribution with  $n$  degrees of freedom is computed with `student_icdf(n, h)`; recall that this will return the value  $x$  with  $\text{student_cdf}(n, x) = h$ . If you enter

`student_icdf(5,0.95)`

you will get

`2.01504837333`

### The upper tail cumulative function for Student's distribution: `UTPT`

The `UTPT` (the Upper Tail Probability - T distribution) will compute  $\text{Prob}(X > x)$ . If you enter

`UTPT(5,2)`

you will get

`0.0509697394149`

### 8.4.7 The $\chi^2$ distribution

**The probability density function for the  $\chi^2$  distribution: `chisquare`**

The  $\chi^2$  distribution with  $n$  degrees of freedom has density function given by

$$\text{chisquare}(n, x) = \frac{x^{n/2-1} e^{-x/2}}{2^{n/2} \Gamma(n/2)}$$

If you enter

```
chisquare(5, 2)
```

you will get

```
2*sqrt(2) / (exp(1)*sqrt(2)*3*sqrt(pi))
```

which can be numerically approximated by

```
evalf(chisquare(5, 2))
```

which is

```
0.138369165807
```

**The cumulative distribution function for the  $\chi^2$  distribution: `chisquare_cdf`**

The cumulative distribution function for the  $\chi^2$  distribution with  $n$  degrees of freedom at a value  $x$  is  $\text{chisquare\_cdf}(n, x) = \text{Prob}(X \leq x)$ ; if you enter

```
chisquare_cdf(5, 11)
```

you will get

```
0.948620016517
```

If you give `chisquare_cdf` an extra argument, you will get the probability that the random variable lies between two values;  $\text{chisquare\_cdf}(n, x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y)$ . If you enter

```
chisquare_cdf(3, 1, 2)
```

you will get

```
0.22884525243
```

**The inverse distribution function for the  $\chi^2$  distribution: `chisquare_icdf`**

The inverse distribution function for the  $\chi^2$  distribution with  $n$  degrees of freedom is computed with `chisquare_icdf(n, h)`; recall that this will return the value  $x$  with  $\text{chisquare_cdf}(n, x) = h$ . If you enter

```
chisquare_icdf(5, 0.95)
```

you will get

```
11.0704976935
```

### The upper tail cumulative function for the $\chi^2$ distribution: **UTPC**

The UTPC (the Upper Tail Probability - Chi-square distribution) will compute  $\text{Prob}(X > x)$ . If you enter

```
UTPC(5, 11)
```

you will get

```
0.0513799834831
```

#### 8.4.8 The Fisher-Snedecor distribution

##### The probability density function for the Fisher-Snedecor distribution: **fisher fisherd snedecor snedecord**

The Fisher-Snedecor distribution (also called the F-distribution) with  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  degrees of freedom has density function given by for  $x \geq 0$ ,

$$\text{fisher}(n_1, n_2, x) = \frac{(n_1/n_2)^{n_1/2} \Gamma((n_1 + n_2)/2)}{\Gamma(n_1/2) \Gamma(n_2/2)} \frac{x^{(n_1-2)/2}}{(1 + (n_1/n_2)x)^{(n_1+n_2)/2}}$$

(The `snedecor` command is the same as the `fisher` command.) If you enter

```
fisher(5, 3, 2.5)
```

you will get

```
0.10131184472
```

##### The cumulative distribution function for the Fisher-Snedecor distribution: **fisher\_cdf snedecor\_cdf**

The cumulative distribution function for the Fisher-Snedecor distribution with  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  degrees of freedom at a value  $x$  is  $\text{fisher\_cdf}(n_1, n_2, x) = \text{snedecor}(n_1, n_2, x) = \text{Prob}(X \leq x)$ ; if you enter

```
fisher_cdf(5, 3, 9)
```

you will get

```
Beta(5/2, 3/2, 15/16, 1)
```

which can be numerically approximated with

```
evalf(fisher_cdf(5, 3, 9, 10))
```

which is

```
0.949898927032
```

**The inverse distribution function for the Fisher-Snedecor distribution: `fisher_icdf`**

The inverse distribution function for the Fisher-Snedecor distribution with  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  degrees of freedom is computed with `fisher_icdf(n1, n2, h)`; recall that this will return the value  $x$  with `fisher_cdf(n1, n2, x) = h`. If you enter

```
fisher_icdf(5, 3, 0.95)
```

you will get

```
9.01345516752
```

**The upper tail cumulative function for the Fisher-Snedecor distribution: `UTPF`**

The UTPF (the Upper Tail Probability - Fisher-Snedecor distribution) will compute  $\text{Prob}(X > x)$ . If you enter

```
UTPF(5, 3, 9)
```

you will get

```
0.050101072968
```

### 8.4.9 The gamma distribution

**The probability density function for the gamma distribution: `gammad`**

The gamma distribution depends on two parameters,  $a > 0$  and  $b > 0$ ; the value of the density function at  $x \geq 0$  is  $\text{gammad}(a, b, x) = x^{a-1}e^{-bx}b^a/\Gamma(a)$ . If you enter

```
gammad(2, 1, 3)
```

for example, you will get

```
3/exp(3)
```

**The cumulative distribution function for the gamma distribution: `gammad_cdf`**

The cumulative distribution function for the gamma distribution with parameters  $a$  and  $b$  at a value  $x$  is `gammad_cdf(n, x) = Prob(X ≤ x)`. It turns out that `gammad_cdf(n, x) = igamma(a, bx, 1)` where `igamma` is the incomplete gamma function;  $\text{igamma}(a, x, 1) = \int_0^x e^{-t}t^{a-1}dt/\Gamma(a)$ . If you enter

```
gammad_cdf(2, 1, 0.5)
```

you will get

```
0.090204010431
```

If you give `gammad_cdf` an extra argument, you will get the probability that the random variable lies between two values; `gammad_cdf(a, b, x, y) = Prob(x ≤ X ≤ y)`. If you enter

```
gammad_cdf(2, 1, 0.5, 1.5)
```

you will get

```
0.351970589198
```

**The inverse distribution function for the gamma distribution: `gammad_icdf`**

The inverse distribution function for the gamma distribution with parameters  $a$  and  $b$  is computed with `gammad_icdf(a, b, h)`; recall that this will return the value  $x$  with  $\text{gammad_cdf}(a, b, x) = h$ . If you enter

```
gammad_icdf(2, 1, 0.5)
```

you will get

```
1.67834699002
```

**8.4.10 The beta distribution****The probability density function for the beta distribution: `betad`**

The beta distribution depends on two parameters,  $a > 0$  and  $b > 0$ ; the value of the density function at  $x$  in  $[0, 1]$  is  $\text{betad}(a, b, x) = \Gamma(a + b)x^{a-1}(1 - x)^{b-1}/(\Gamma(a)\Gamma(b))$ . If you enter

```
betad(2, 1, 0.3)
```

for example, you will get

```
0.6
```

**The cumulative distribution function for the beta distribution: `betad_cdf`**

The cumulative distribution function for the beta distribution with parameters  $a$  and  $b$  at a value  $x$  in  $[0, 1]$  is  $\text{betad_cdf}(a, b, x) = \text{Prob}(X \leq x)$ . It turns out that  $\text{betad_cdf}(a, b, x) = \beta(a, b, x)\Gamma(a + b)/(\Gamma(a)\Gamma(b))$  where  $\beta(a, b, x) = \int_0^x t^{a-1}(1 - t)^{b-1}dt$ . If you enter

```
betad_cdf(2, 3, 0.2)
```

for example, you will get

```
0.1808
```

If you give `betad_cdf` an extra argument  $y$ , also in  $[0, 1]$ , you will get the probability that the random variable lies between the two values;  $\text{betad_cdf}(a, b, x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y)$ . If you enter

```
betad_cdf(2, 3, 0.25, .5)
```

you will get

```
0.42578125
```

**The inverse distribution function for the beta distribution: `betad_icdf`**

The inverse distribution function for the beta distribution with parameters  $a$  and  $b$  is computed with `betad_icdf(a, b, h)`; recall that this will return the value  $x$  with  $\text{betad_cdf}(a, b, x) = h$ . If you enter

```
betad_icdf(2, 3, 0.2)
```

you will get

```
0.212317128278
```

### 8.4.11 The geometric distribution

#### The probability density function for the geometric distribution: `geometric`

If an experiment with probability of success  $p$  is iterated, the probability that the first success occurs on the  $k$ th trial is  $(1 - p)^{k-1}p$ . This gives the geometric distribution (with parameter  $p$ ) on the natural numbers. Given such a  $p$ , the geometric density function at  $n$  is given by  $\text{geometric}(p, n) = (1 - p)^{n-1}p$ . If you enter

```
geometric(0.2, 3)
```

for example, you will get

0.128

#### The cumulative distribution function of the geometric distribution: `geometric_cdf`

The cumulative distribution function for the geometric distribution with parameter  $p$  at a natural number  $n$  is  $\text{geometric\_cdf}(p, n) = \text{Prob}(X \leq n)$ , which in this case turns out to be  $\text{geometric\_cdf}(p, n) = 1 - (1 - p)^n$ . If you enter

```
geometric_cdf(0.2, 3)
```

for example, you will get

0.488

If you give `geometric_cdf` an extra argument  $k$ , also a natural number, you will get the probability that the random variable lies between the two values;  $\text{geometric\_cdf}(p, n, k) = \text{Prob}(n \leq X \leq k)$ . If you enter

```
geometric_cdf(0.2, 3, 5)
```

you will get

0.31232

#### The inverse distribution function for the geometric distribution: `geometric_icdf`

The inverse distribution function for the geometric distribution with parameter  $p$  is computed with `geometric_icdf(p, h)`; recall that this will return the smallest natural number  $n$  with  $\text{geometric_cdf}(p, n) \geq h$ . If you enter

```
geometric_icdf(0.2, 0.5)
```

you will get

### 8.4.12 The Cauchy distribution

**The probability density function for the Cauchy distribution: `cauchy cauchyd`**

The probability density function of the Cauchy distribution (sometimes called the Lorentz distribution) is given by the `cauchy` (or `cauchyd`) command. The Cauchy distribution depends on two parameters  $a$  and  $b$ , and the value of the density function at  $x$  is  $\text{cauchy}(a, b, x) = b/(\pi((x - a)^2 + b^2))$ . If you enter

```
cauchy(2.2, 1.5, 0.8)
```

you will get

```
0.113412073462
```

If you leave out the parameters  $a$  and  $b$ , they will default to 0 and 1, respectively;  $\text{cauchy}(x) = 1/(\pi(x^2 + 1))$ . If you enter

```
cauchy(0.3)
```

you will get

```
0.292027418517
```

**The cumulative distribution function for the Cauchy distribution: `cauchy_cdf cauchyd_cdf`**

The command `cauchy_cdf` (or `cauchyd_cdf`) computes the cumulative distribution function for the Cauchy distribution. Like `cauchy`, you can give it the parameters  $a$  and  $b$ , or let them default to 0 and 1. The Cauchy cumulative distribution function is given by the formula  $\text{cauchy\_cdf}(a, b, x) = 1/2 + \arctan((x - a)/b)/\pi$ . If you enter

```
cauchy_cdf(2, 3, 1.4)
```

you will get

```
0.437167041811
```

and if you enter

```
cauchy_cdf(1.4)
```

you will get

```
0.802568456711
```

If you give `cauchy_cdf` an extra argument (with or without the parameters), you will get the probability that the random variable lies between two values;  $\text{cauchy\_cdf}(a, b, x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y)$ . If you enter

```
cauchy_cdf(2, 3, -1.9, 1.4)
```

you will get

```
0.228452641651
```

**The inverse distribution function for the Cauchy distribution: `cauchy_icdf`**  
**`cauchyd_icdf`**

Given a value  $h$ , the inverse distribution function gives the value of  $x$  with  $\text{Prob}(X \leq x) = h$ . The `cauchy_icdf` will compute the inverse distribution for the Cauchy distribution. (If no parameters are given, they will be assumed to be 0 and 1.) If you enter

```
cauchy_icdf(2, 3, 0.23)
```

you will get

```
-1.40283204777
```

### 8.4.13 The uniform distribution

**The probability density function for the uniform distribution: `uniform`  
`uniformd`**

Given two values  $a$  and  $b$  with  $a < b$ , the uniform distribution on  $[a, b]$  has density function  $1/(b - a)$  for  $x$  in  $[a, b]$ . The `uniform` (or `uniformd`) command will compute this;  $\text{uniform}(a, b, x) = 1/(b - a)$ . If you enter

```
uniform(2.2, 3.5, 2.8)
```

you will get

```
0.769230769231
```

**The cumulative distribution function for the uniform distribution: `uniform_cdf`**  
**`uniformd_cdf`**

Given two values  $a$  and  $b$  with  $a < b$ , the cumulative distribution function for the uniform distribution on  $[a, b]$  is (for  $x$  in  $[a, b]$ )  $\text{uniform\_cdf}(a, b, x) = \text{Prob}(X \leq x) = (x - a)/(b - a)$ . If you enter

```
uniform_cdf(2, 4, 3.2)
```

you will get

```
0.6
```

With an extra argument  $y$  in  $[a, b]$ , `uniform_cdf` will compute  $\text{uniform\_cdf}(a, b, x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y) = (y - x)/(b - a)$ . If you enter

```
uniform_cdf(2, 4, 3, 3.2)
```

you will get

```
0.1
```

**The inverse distribution function for the uniform distribution: `uniform_icdf`  
`uniformd_icdf`**

Given a value  $h$ , the inverse distribution function for a uniform distribution is the value of  $x$  with  $\text{Prob}(X \leq x) = \text{uniform_cdf}(a, b, x) = h$ . This value is computed with the `uniform_icdf` command. If you enter

```
uniform_icdf(2, 3, .6)
```

you will get

2.6

#### 8.4.14 The exponential distribution

**The probability density function for the exponential distribution: `exponential`  
`exponentiald`**

The exponential distribution depends on one parameters,  $\lambda > 0$ ; the value of the density function at  $x \geq 0$  is  $\text{exponential}(\lambda, x) = \lambda e^{-\lambda x}$ . If you enter

```
exponential(2.1, 3.5)
```

for example, you will get

0.00134944395675

**The cumulative distribution function for the exponential distribution: `exponential_cdf`  
`exponentiald_cdf`**

The cumulative distribution function for the exponential distribution with parameter  $\lambda > 0$  at a value  $x \geq 0$  is  $\text{exponential_cdf}(\lambda, x) = \text{Prob}(X \leq x)$ . If you enter

```
exponential_cdf(2.3, 3.2)
```

for example, you will get

0.99936380154

If you give `exponential_cdf` an extra argument  $y > x$ , you will get the probability that the random variable lies between the two values;  $\text{exponential_cdf}(\lambda, x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y)$ . If you enter

```
exponential_cdf(2.3, 0.9, 3.2)
```

you will get

0.125549583246

**The inverse distribution function for the exponential distribution: `exponential_icdf`**

The inverse distribution function for the exponential distribution with parameter  $\lambda > 0$  is computed with `exponential_icdf( $\lambda$ ,  $h$ )`; recall that this will return the value  $x$  with `exponential_cdf( $\lambda$ ,  $x$ ) =  $h$` . If you enter

```
exponential_icdf(2.3, 0.87)
```

you will get

```
0.887052534142
```

#### 8.4.15 The Weibull distribution

**The probability density function for the Weibull distribution: `weibull weibulld`**

The Weibull distribution depends on three parameters;  $k > 0$ ,  $\lambda > 0$  and a real number  $\theta$ . The probability density at  $x$  is given by  $\frac{k}{\lambda} \left(\frac{x-\theta}{\lambda}\right)^2 e^{-((x-\theta)/\lambda)^2}$ . The `weibull` (or `weibulld`) command computes this, where it can take arguments  $k, \lambda, \theta$  and  $x$ , where the  $\theta$  can be left out and will default to 0. If you enter

```
weibull(2, 1, 3)
```

or

```
weibull(2, 1, 0, 3)
```

you will get

```
6/exp(9)
```

**The cumulative distribution function for the Weibull distribution: `weibull_cdf`**

**`weibulld_cdf`**

The command `weibull_cdf` computes the cumulative distribution function for the Weibull distribution. Like `weibull`, it takes parameters  $k$ ,  $\lambda$  and  $\theta$ , where  $\theta$  will default to 1 if it is omitted. The Weibull cumulative distribution function is given by the formula `weibull_cdf( $k, \lambda, \theta, x$ ) = 1 - e^{-((x-\theta)/\lambda)^2}`. If you enter

```
weibull_cdf(2, 3, 5)
```

or

```
weibull_cdf(2, 3, 0, 5)
```

you will get

```
1-exp(-25/9)
```

and if you enter

```
weibull_cdf(2.2, 1.5, 0.4, 1.9)
```

you will get

```
0.632120558829
```

If you give `weibull_cdf` an extra argument (which will require that  $\theta$  be explicitly included), you will get the probability that the random variable lies between two values;  $\text{weibull\_cdf}(k, \lambda, \theta, x, y) = \text{Prob}(x \leq X \leq y)$ . If you enter

```
weibull_cdf(2.2, 1.5, 0.4, 1.2, 1.9)
```

for example you will get

```
0.410267239944
```

### The inverse distribution function for the Weibull distribution: `weibull_icdf` `weibullid_icdf`

Given a value  $h$ , the inverse distribution function gives the value of  $x$  with  $\text{Prob}(X \leq x) = h$ . The `weibull_icdf` command will compute the inverse distribution for the Weibull distribution. This uses the arguments  $k$ ,  $\lambda$  and  $\theta$  as well as  $h$ , although  $\theta$  can be omitted and will default to 0. If you enter

```
weibull_icdf(2.2, 1.5, 0.4, 0.632)
```

you will get

```
1.89977657604
```

### 8.4.16 The Kolmogorov-Smirnov distribution: `kolmogorovd`

For real  $x$ , the `kolmogorovd` command computes the density function for the Kolmogorov-Smirnov distribution.

$$\text{kolmogorovd}(x) = 1 - 2 \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k-1} e^{-k^2 x^2}$$

If you enter

```
kolmogorovd(1.36)
```

for example, you will get

```
0.950514123245
```

### 8.4.17 The Wilcoxon or Mann-Whitney distribution

### 8.4.18 The Wilcoxon test polynomial: `wilcoxonp`

The `wilcoxonp` command will compute the polynomial for the Wilcoxon or Mann-Whitney test; it can take one or two parameters. If you enter

```
wilcoxonp(4)
```

you will get

```
poly1[1/16,1/16,1/16,1/8,1/8,1/8,1/8,1/8,1/16,1/16,1/16]
```

and if you enter

```
wilcoxonp(4,3)
```

you will get

```
poly1[1/35,1/35,2/35,3/35,4/35,4/35,1/7,4/35,4/35,3/35,2/35,1/35,1/35]
```

### The Wilcoxon/Mann-Whitney statistic: **wilcoxons**

Given two lists, or one list and a real number (a median), the **wilcoxons** command will return the Wilcoxon or Mann-Whitney statistic. If you enter

```
wilcoxons([1,3,4,5,7,8,8,12,15,17],10)
```

you will get

```
18
```

and if you enter

```
wilcoxons([1,3,4,5,7,8,8,12,15,17],[2,6,10,11,13,14,15,18,19,20])
```

you will get

```
128.5
```

### The Wilcoxon or Mann-Whitney test: **wilcoxont**

The **wilcoxont** command will perform the Wilcoxon or Mann-Whitney test, given two samples or one sample and a number (a median). It can additionally take an optional third argument of a function and an optional fourth argument of a real number. If you enter

```
wilcoxont([1,2,3,4,5,7,8,8,12,15,17],[2,6,10,11,13,14,15,18,19,20])
```

you will get

```
Mann-Whitney 2-sample test, H0 same Median, H1 <>
ranksum 93.0, shifted ranksum 27.0
u1=83 ,u2=27, u=min(u1,u2)=27
Limit value to reject H0 26
P-value 9055/176358 (0.0513444244094), alpha=0.05 H0 not rejected
1
\end{center}
If you enter
\begin{center}
\tt
```

```
wilcoxont([1,3,4,5,7,8,8,12,15,17],[2,6,10,11,13,14,15,18,19,20],0)
\end{center}
you will get
\begin{verbatim}
Mann-Whitney 2-sample test, H0 same Median, H1 <>
ranksum 81.5, shifted ranksum 26.5
u1=73.5 ,u2=26.5, u=min(u1,u2)=26.5
Limit value to reject H0 35
P-value 316/4199 (0.0752560133365), alpha=0.3 H0 rejected
0

```

and if you enter

```
wilcoxont([1,3,4,5,7,8,8,12,15,17] ,10, '>', 0.05)
```

you will get

```
Wilcoxon 1-sample test, H0 Median=10, H1 M<>10
Wilcoxon statistic: 18, p-value: 0.375, confidence level: 0.05
1
```

#### 8.4.19 Moment generating functions for probability distributions: **mgf**

The **mgf** command will compute the moment generating function for a probability distribution (such as normal, binomial, poisson, beta, gamma). It takes as arguments the name of the distribution and any necessary parameters. To find the moment generating function for the standard normal distribution, you can enter

```
mgf(normald,1,0)
```

and get

```
exp(t)
```

If you enter

```
mgf(binomial,n,p)
```

you will get

```
(1-p+p*exp(t))^n
```

#### 8.4.20 Cumulative distribution functions: **cdf**

The **cdf** command will take as arguments the name of a probability distribution, along with any needed parameters, and return an expression for the cumulative distribution function. If you enter

```
cdf(normald,0,1)
```

you will get

```
(erf(x*sqrt(2)/2)+1)/2
```

You can evaluate the cumulative distribution function at a value by adding the value as an argument; if you enter

```
cdf(binomial, 10, 0.5, 4)
```

you will get

```
0.376953125
```

#### 8.4.21 Inverse distribution functions: `icdf`

The `icdf` command will take as arguments the name of a probability distribution, along with any needed parameters, and return an expression for the inverse cumulative distribution function. This is typically most useful if you evaluate the inverse cumulative function at a specific value by adding it as an argument. If you enter

```
icdf(normald, 0, 0.5, 0.975)
```

you will get

```
0.97998199227
```

#### 8.4.22 Kernel density estimation : `kernel_density`, `kde`

`kernel_density` (alias : `kde`) accepts a list of samples  $L = [X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n]$  and optionally a sequence of options. It performs kernel density estimation<sup>1</sup> (KDE), optionally restricted to an interval  $[a, b]$ , to obtain an estimate  $\hat{f}$  of the (unknown) probability density function  $f$  from which the samples are drawn, defined by :

$$\hat{f}(x) = \frac{1}{n h} \sum_{i=1}^n K\left(\frac{x - X_i}{h}\right), \quad (8.1)$$

where  $K$  is the Gaussian kernel  $K(u) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-\frac{1}{2} u^2)$  and  $h$  is the positive real parameter called the *bandwidth*.

The supported options are listed below.

- `output=<type>` or `Output=<type>` : specifies the form of the return value  $\hat{f}$ , where `<type>` may be
  - `exact` :  $\hat{f}$  is returned as the sum of Gaussian kernels, i.e. as the right side of (8.1), which is usable only when the number of samples is relatively small (up to few hundreds),
  - `piecewise` :  $\hat{f}$  is returned as a piecewise expression obtained by the spline interpolation of the specified degree (by default, the interpolation is linear) on the interval  $[a, b]$  segmented to the specified number of bins,
  - `list` (the default) :  $\hat{f}$  is returned in discrete form, as a list of values  $\hat{f}\left(a + k \frac{b-a}{M-1}\right)$  for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, M$ , where  $M$  is the number of bins.

---

<sup>1</sup>For the details on kernel density estimation and its implementation see : Artur Gramacki, *Non-parametric Kernel Density Estimation and Its Computational Aspects*, Springer, 2018.

- `bandwidth=<value>` : specifies the bandwidth. `<value>` may be
  - a positive real number  $h$ ,
  - `select` (the default) : bandwidth is selected using a direct plug-in method,
  - `gauss` or `normal` or `normald` : the Silverman's rule of thumb is used for selecting bandwidth (this method is fast but the results are close to optimal ones only when  $f$  is approximately normal).
- `bins=<posint>` (by default 100) : the number of bins for simplifying the input data. Only the number of samples in each bin is stored. Bins represent the elements of an equidistant segmentation of the interval  $S$  on which KDE is performed. This allows evaluating kernel summations using convolution when `output` is set to `piecewise` or `list`, which significantly lowers the computational burden for large values of  $n$  (say, few hundreds or more). If `output` is set to `exact`, this option is ignored.
- `[range]=[a..b]` or `range=[a,b]` or `x=a..b` : the interval  $[a, b]$  on which KDE is performed. If an identifier  $x$  is specified, it is used as the variable of the output. If the range endpoints are not specified, they are set to  $a = \min_{1 \leq i \leq n} X_i - 3h$  and  $b = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} X_i + 3h$  (unless `output` is set to `exact`, in which case this option is ignored).
- `interp=<posint>` (by default 1) : the degree of the spline interpolation, ignored unless `output` is set to `piecewise`.
- `spline=<posint>` : sets `option` to `piecewise` and `interp` to `<posint>`.
- `eval=x0` : only the value  $\hat{f}(x_0)$  is returned (this cannot be used with `output` set to `list`).
- an unassigned identifier `x` (by default  $x$ ) : the variable of the output.
- `exact` : the same as `output=exact`.
- `piecewise` : the same as `output=piecewise`.

**Examples.** Input :

```
kernel_density([1,2,3,2],bandwidth=1/4,exact)
```

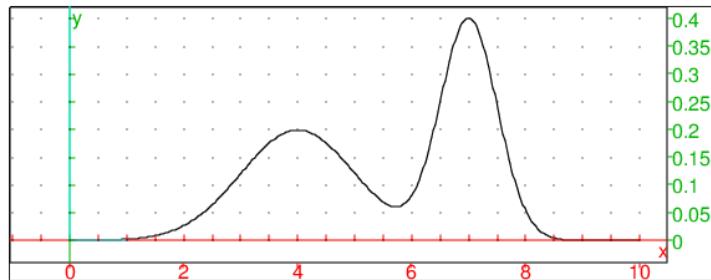
Output :

```
0.4*(exp(-8*(x-3)^2)+2*exp(-8*(x-2)^2)+exp(-8*(x-1)^2))
```

Input :

```
f:=unapply(normald(4,1,x)/2+normald(7,1/2,x)/2,x);
plot(f(x),x=0..10)
```

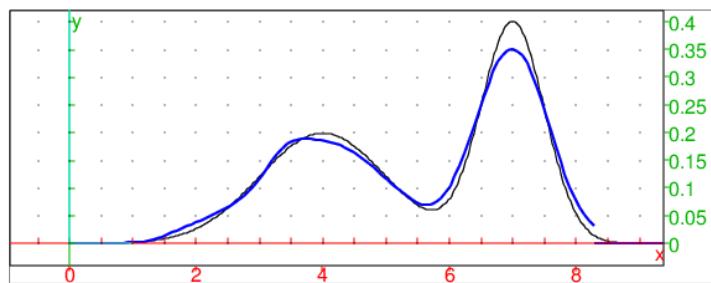
Output :



**Input :**

```
X:=randvar(f,range=0..10,1000);; S:=sample(X,1000);;
F:=kernel_density(S,piecewise);
plot([F,f(x)],x=0..10,
display=[line_width_2+blue,line_width_1+black])
```

**Output :**



**Input :**

```
kernel_density(S,bins=50,spline=3,eval=4.75)
```

**Output :**

0.14655478136

**Input :**

```
time(kernel_density(sample(X,1e5),piecewise))
```

**Output :**

"Done", [0.17, 0.1653323]

**Input :**

```
S:=sample(X,5000);
sqrt(int((f(x)-kde(S,piecewise))^2,x=0..10))
```

**Output :**

0.0269841239243

**Input :**

```
S:=sample(X,25000);
sqrt(int((f(x)-kde(S,bins=150,piecewise))^2,x=0..10))
```

**Output :**

0.0144212781377

### 8.4.23 Distribution fitting by maximum likelihood : fitdistr

`fitdistr` takes two arguments, a list  $L$  of presumably independent and identically distributed samples and a distribution type, which may be normal, exponential, Poisson, geometric, gamma, beta, Cauchy or Weibull. The type is specified as `normal` (`normald`), `exp` (`exponential` or `exponentiald`), `poisson`, `geometric`, `gammad`, `betad`, `cauchy` (`cauchyd`) or `weibull` (`weibulld`), respectively. The command returns the distribution of the specified type with parameters that fit the given samples most closely according to the method of maximum likelihood.

For example, input :

```
S:=:;  
fitdistr(randvector(1000,weibulld,1/2,1),weibull)
```

Output :

```
weibulld(0.498920254339, 0.971148738409)
```

Input :

```
X:=randvar(normal,stddev=9.5):;  
Y:=randvar(normal,stddev=1.5):;  
S:=sample(eval(X/Y,0),1000):; Z:=fitdistr(S,cauchy)
```

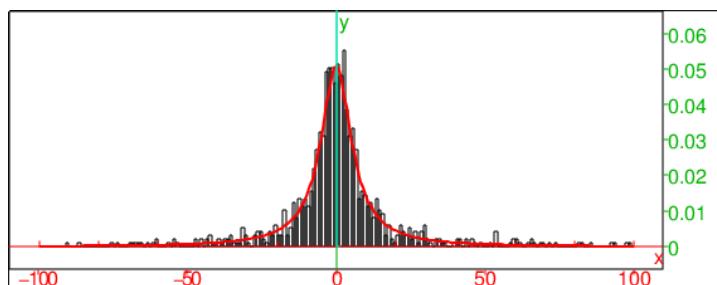
Output :

```
cauchyd(-0.13160176167, 6.2569300393)
```

Input :

```
histogram(select(x->(x>-100 and x<100),S));  
plot(Z(x),x=-100..100,display=red+line_width_2)
```

Output :



Input :

```
kolmogorovt(S,Z)
```

Output :

```
[ "D=", 0.0125864995943, "K=", 0.398020064869,  
"1-kolmogorovd(K)=", 0.997387219452]
```

The Kolmogorov-Smirnov test indicates that the samples from  $S$  are drawn from  $Z$  with high probability.

Fitting a lognormal distribution to samples  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  can be done by fitting a normal distribution to the sample logarithms  $\log x_1, \log x_2, \dots, \log x_n$  because log-likelihood functions are the same. For example, generate some samples according to the lognormal rule with parameters  $\mu = 5$  and  $\sigma^2 = 2$ :

```
X:=randvar(normal,mean=5,variance=2):;
S:=sample(exp(X),1000):;
```

Now fit normal distribution to  $\log S$ :

```
Y:=fitdistr(log(S),normal)
```

Output:

```
normald(5.04754808715,1.42751619912)
```

The mean of  $Y$  is about 5.05 and the variance is about 2.04. Now the variable  $Z = \exp(Y)$  has the sought lognormal distribution.

#### 8.4.24 Markov chains: **markov**

Given the transition matrix of a Markov chain, the **markov** command will compute characteristic features of the chain. If  $M$  is a transition matrix, then **markov**( $M$ ) will return the list of the positive recurrent states, the list of corresponding invariant probabilities, the list of other strong connected components, the list of probabilities of ending up in the sequence of recurrent states. For example, if you enter

```
markov([[0,0,1/2,0,1/2],[0,0,1,0,0],[1/4,1/4,0,1/4,1/4],[0,0,1/2,0,1/2],[0,0,
```

you will get

```
[[4]],[[0,0,0,0,1]],[[3,1,2,0]],[[1],[1],[1],[1]]
```

#### 8.4.25 Generating a random walks: **randmarkov**

Given the transition matrix  $M$  for a Markov chain and an initial state  $i_0$ , the command **randmarkov**( $M, i_0, n$ ) will generate a random walk (given as a vector) starting at  $i_0$  and taking  $n$  random steps, where each step is a transition with probabilities given by  $M$ . For example, if you enter

```
randmarkov([[0,1/2,0,1/2],[0,1,0,0],[1/4,1/4,1/4,1/4],[0,0,1/2,1/2]],2,10)
```

you might get

```
[2,3,2,0,3,2,2,0,3,2,0]
```

Alternatively, given a vector  $v = [n_1, \dots, n_p]$ , the command **randmatrix**( $v, i_0$ ) will create a stochastic matrix with  $p$  recurrent loops (given by  $v$ ) and  $i_0$  transient states. If you enter

```
randmarkov([1,2],2)
```

you might get

```
[[1.0,0.0,0.0,0.0,0.0],
 [0.0,0.289031975209,0.710968024791,0.0,0.0],
 [0.0,0.46230383289,0.53769616711,0.0,0.0],
 [0.259262238137,0.149948861946,0.143448150524,0.242132758802,0.205207],
 [0.231568633749,0.145429586345,0.155664673778,0.282556511895,0.184780]
```

## 8.5 Hypothesis testing

### 8.5.1 General

Given a random variable  $X$ , you may want to know whether some effective parameter  $p$  is the same as some expected value  $p_0$ . You will then want to test the hypothesis  $p = p_0$ , which will be the null hypothesis  $H_0$ . The alternative hypothesis will be  $H_1$ . The tests are:

**Two-tailed test** This test will reject the hypothesis  $H_0$  if the relevant statistic is outside of a determined interval. This can be denoted ' $!=$ '.

**Left-tailed test** This test will reject the hypothesis  $H_0$  if the relevant statistic is less than a specific value. This can be denoted ' $<$ '.

**Right-tailed test** This test will reject the hypothesis  $H_0$  if the relevant statistic is greater than a specific value. This can be denoted ' $>$ '.

### 8.5.2 Testing the mean with the Z test: `normalt`

The `normalt` command will use the Z test to test the mean of data. You need to provide the command with the following arguments:

1. The sample data information can be given as a list  $[n_s, n_e]$  consisting of the number of successes  $n_s$  and the number of trials  $n_e$ , or a list  $[m, t]$  consisting of the mean  $m$  and the sample size  $t$ , or a data list of the sample.
2. The mean of the population to or a data list from a control sample.
3. The standard deviation of the population. If the data list from a control sample is provided, then this item is unnecessary.
4. The type of test; " $!=$ ", " $<$ " or " $>$ ".
5. The confidence level. This is optional; the default value is 0.05.

The `normalt` command will return the result of a Z test. It will return 0 if the test fails, 1 if the test succeeds, and it will display a summary of the test.

If you enter

```
normalt([10,30], 0.5, 0.02, '!=', 0.1)
```

you will get

```
*** TEST RESULT 0 ***
Summary Z-Test null hypothesis H0 mu1=mu2, alt. hyp. H1 mu1!=mu2.
Test returns 0 if probability to observe data is less than 0.1
(null hyp. mu1=mu2 rejected with less than alpha probability error)
Test returns 1 otherwise (can not reject null hypothesis)
Data mean mu1=10, population mean mu2=0.5
alpha level 0.1, multiplier*stddev/sqrt(sample size)= 1.64485*0.02/5.47723
0
```

If you enter

```
normalt([0.48,50],0.5,0.1,'<')
```

you will get

```
*** TEST RESULT 1 ***
Summary Z-Test null hypothesis H0 mu1=mu2, alt. hyp. H1 mu1<mu2.
Test returns 0 if probability to observe data is less than 0.05
(null hyp. mu1=mu2 rejected with less than alpha probability error)
Test returns 1 otherwise (can not reject null hypothesis)
Data mean mu1=0.48, population mean mu2=0.5
alpha level 0.05, multiplier*stddev/sqrt(sample size)= 1.64485*0.1/7.07107
1
```

### 8.5.3 Testing the mean with the T test: **studentt**

The **studentt** command will examine whether data conforms to Student's distribution. For small sample sizes, the **studentt** test is preferable to **normalt**. You need to provide the **studentt** command with the following arguments:

1. The sample data information can be given as a list  $[n_s, n_e]$  consisting of the number of successes  $n_s$  and the number of trials  $n_e$ , or a list  $[m, t]$  consisting of the mean  $m$  and the sample size  $t$ , or a data list of the sample.
2. The mean of the population to or a data list from a control sample.
3. The standard deviation of the population. If the data list from a control sample is provided, then this item is unnecessary.
4. The type of test; " $!=$ ", " $<$ " or " $>$ ".
5. The confidence level. This is optional; the default value is 0.05.

The **studentt** command will return the result of a T test. It will return 0 if the test fails, 1 if the test succeeds, and it will display a summary of the test.

If you enter

```
studentt([10,20], 0.5, 0.02, '!=', 0.1)
```

you will get

```
*** TEST RESULT 0 ***
Summary T-Test null hypothesis H0 mu1=mu2, alt. hyp. H1 mu1!=mu2.
Test returns 0 if probability to observe data is less than 0.1
(null hyp. mu1=mu2 rejected with less than alpha probability error)
Test returns 1 otherwise (can not reject null hypothesis)
Data mean mu1=10, population mean mu2=0.5, degrees of freedom 20
alpha level 0.1, multiplier*stddev/sqrt(sample size)= 1.32534*0.02,
0
```

If you enter

```
studentt([0.48,20],0.5,0.1,'<')
```

you will get

```
*** TEST RESULT 1 ***
Summary T-Test null hypothesis H0 mu1=mu2, alt. hyp. H1 mu1<mu2.
Test returns 0 if probability to observe data is less than 0.05
(null hyp. mu1=mu2 rejected with less than alpha probability error)
Test returns 1 otherwise (can not reject null hypothesis)
Data mean mu1=0.48, population mean mu2=0.5, degrees of freedom 20
alpha level 0.05, multiplier*stddev/sqrt(sample size)= 1.72472*0.1,
1
```

#### 8.5.4 Testing a distribution with the $\chi^2$ distribution: **chisquaret**

The **chisquaret** command will use the  $\chi^2$  test to compare sample data to a specified distribution. You need to provide **chisquaret** with the following arguments:

1. A list of sample data.
2. The name of a distribution, or another list of sample data. If this is omitted, a uniform distribution will be used.
3. The parameters of the distribution, if a name is given as the previous argument, or the parameter `class` followed by `class_min` and `class_dim` (or the default values will be used).

The **chisquaret** command will return the result of the  $\chi^2$  test between the sample data and the named distribution or the two sample data.

For example, if you enter

```
chisquaret([57,54])
```

you will get

```
Guessing data is the list of number of elements in each class,
adequation to uniform distribution
Sample adequation to a finite discrete probability distribution
Chi2 test result 0.0810810810811,
reject adequation if superior to chisquare_icdf(1,0.95)=3.841458820
0.0810810810811
```

If you enter

```
chisquaret([1,1,1,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,1],[.4,.6])
```

you will get

```
Sample adequation to a finite discrete probability distribution
Chi2 test result 0.742424242424,
reject adequation if superior to chisquare_icdf(1,0.95)=3.84145882069
or chisquare_icdf(1,1-alpha) if alpha!=5%
0.742424242424
```

If you enter

```
chisquaret(ranv(1000,binomial,10,.5),binomial)
```

you will get

```
Binomial: estimating n and p from data 10 0.5055
Sample adequation to binomial(10,0.5055,.),
Chi2 test result 7.77825189838
reject adequation if superior to chisquare_icdf(7,0.95)=14.0671404493
or chisquare_icdf(7,1-alpha) if alpha!=5%
7.77825189838
```

and if you enter

```
chisquaret(ranv(1000,binomial,10,.5),binomial,11,.5)
```

you will get

```
Sample adequation to binomial(11,0.5,.),
Chi2 test result 125.617374161,
reject adequation if superior to chisquare_icdf(10,0.95)=18.3070380533
or chisquare_icdf(10,1-alpha) if alpha!=5%
125.617374161
```

For an example using `class_min` and `class_dim`, let

```
L := ranv(1000,normald,0,.2)
```

If you then enter

```
chisquaret(L,normald,classes,-2,.25)
```

or equivalently set `class_min` to `-2` and `class_dim` to `-0.25` in the graphical configuration and enter

```
chisquaret(L,normald,classes)
```

you will get

```
Normal density,
estimating mean and stddev from data -0.00345919752912 0.201708100832
Sample adequation to normald_cdf(-0.00345919752912,0.201708100832,.),
Chi2 test result 2.11405080381,
reject adequation if superior to chisquare_icdf(4,0.95)=9.48772903678
or chisquare_icdf(4,1-alpha) if alpha!=5%
2.11405080381
```

In this last case, you are given the value of  $d^2$  of the statistic  $D^2 = \sum_{j=1}^k (n_j - e_j)/e_j$ , where  $k$  is the number of sample classes for classes ( $\mathbb{L}, -2, 0.25$ ) (or classes ( $\mathbb{L}$ )),  $n_j$  is the size of the  $j$ th class, and  $e_j = np_j$  where  $n$  is the size of  $\mathbb{L}$  and  $p_j$  is the probability of the  $j$ th class interval assuming a normal distribution with the mean and population standard deviation of  $\mathbb{L}$ .

### 8.5.5 Testing a distribution with the Kolmogorov-Smirnov distribution: `kolmogorovt`

The `kolmogorovt` command will use the Kolmogorov test to compare sample data to a specified continuous distribution. You need to provide `kolmogorovt` with either two lists of data or a list of data followed by the name of a distribution with the parameters. The `kolmogorovt` command will return three values:

- The  $D$  statistic, which is the maximum distance between the cumulative distribution functions of the samples or the sample and the given distribution.
- The  $K$  value, where  $K = D\sqrt{n}$  (for a single data set, where  $n$  is the size of the data set) or  $K = D\sqrt{n_1 n_2 / (n_1 + n_2)}$  (when there are two data sets, with sizes  $n_1$  and  $n_2$ ). The  $K$  value will tend towards the Kolmogorov-Smirnov distribution as the size of the data set goes to infinity.
- $1 - \text{kolmogorovd}(K)$ , which will be close to 1 when the distributions look like they match.

For example, if you enter

```
kolmogorovt(randvector(100, normald, 0, 1), normald(0, 1))
```

you might get

```
["D=", 0.112592987625, "K=", 1.12592987625, "1-kolmogorovd(K)=" , 0.1583755]
```

and if you enter

```
kolmogorovt(randvector(100, normald, 0, 1), student(2))
```

you might get

```
["D=", 0.0996114067923, "K=", 0.996114067923, "1-kolmogorovd(K)=" , 0.27418]
```

# Chapter 9

## Numerical computations

Real numbers may have an exact representation (e.g. rationals, symbolic expressions involving square roots or constants like  $\pi$ , ...) or approximate representation, which means that the real is represented by a rational (with a denominator that is a power of the basis of the representation) close to the real. Inside Xcas, the standard scientific notation is used for approximate representation, that is a mantissa (with a point as decimal separator) optionally followed by the letter  $e$  and an integer exponent.

Note that the real number  $10^{-4}$  is an exact number but  $1e-4$  is an approximate representation of this number.

### 9.1 Floating point representation.

In this section, we explain how real numbers are represented.

#### 9.1.1 Digits

The `Digits` variable is used to control how real numbers are represented and also how they are displayed. When the specified number of digits is less or equal to 14 (for example `Digits:=14`), then hardware floating point numbers are used and they are displayed using the specified number of digits. When `Digits` is larger than 14, Xcas uses the MPFR library, the representation is similar to hardware floats (cf. infra) but the number of bits of the mantissa is not fixed and the range of exponents is much larger. More precisely, the number of bits of the mantissa of a created MPFR float is `ceil(Digits*log(10)/log(2))`.

Note that if you change the value of `Digits`, this will affect the creation of new real numbers compiled from command lines or programs or by instructions like `approx`, but it will not affect existing real numbers. Hence hardware floats may coexist with MPFR floats, and even in MPFR floats, some may have 100 bits of mantissa and some may have 150 bits of mantissa. If operations mix different kinds of floats, the most precise kind of floats are coerced to the less precise kind of floats.

### 9.1.2 Representation by hardware floats

A real is represented by a floating number  $d$ , that is

$$d = 2^\alpha * (1 + m), \quad 0 < m < 1, -2^{10} < \alpha < 2^{10}$$

If  $\alpha > 1 - 2^{10}$ , then  $m \geq 1/2$ , and  $d$  is a normalized floating point number, otherwise  $d$  is denormalized ( $\alpha = 1 - 2^{10}$ ). The special exponent  $2^{10}$  is used to represent plus or minus infinity and NaN (Not a Number). A hardware float is made of 64 bits:

- the first bit is for the sign of  $d$  (0 for '+' and 1 for '-')
- the 11 following bits represents the exponent, more precisely if  $\alpha$  denotes the integer from the 11 bits, the exponent is  $\alpha + 2^{10} - 1$ ,
- the 52 last bits codes the mantissa  $m$ , more precisely if  $M$  denotes the integer from the 52 bits, then  $m = 1/2 + M/2^{53}$  for normalized floats and  $m = M/2^{53}$  for denormalized floats.

Examples of representations of the exponent:

- $\alpha = 0$  is coded by 011 1111 1111
- $\alpha = 1$  is coded by 100 0000 0000
- $\alpha = 4$  is coded by 100 0000 0011
- $\alpha = 5$  is coded by 100 0000 0100
- $\alpha = -1$  is coded by 011 1111 1110
- $\alpha = -4$  is coded by 011 1111 1011
- $\alpha = -5$  is coded by 011 1111 1010
- $\alpha = 2^{10}$  is coded by 111 1111 1111
- $\alpha = 2^{-10} - 1$  is coded by 000 0000 000

**Remark:**  $2^{-52} = 0.2220446049250313e - 15$

### 9.1.3 Examples of representations of normalized floats

- 3.1 :

We have :

$$\begin{aligned} 3.1 &= 2 * (1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2^5} + \frac{1}{2^6} + \frac{1}{2^9} + \frac{1}{2^{10}} + \dots) \\ &= 2 * (1 + \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\frac{1}{2^{4k+1}} + \frac{1}{2^{4k+2}})) \end{aligned}$$

hence  $\alpha = 1$  and  $m = \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\frac{1}{2^{4k+1}} + \frac{1}{2^{4k+2}})$ . Hence the hexadecimal and binary representation of 3.1 is:

40 (01000000), 8 (00001000), cc (11001100), cc (11001100),  
 cc (11001100), cc (11001100), cc (11001100), cd (11001101),

the last octet is 1101, the last bit is 1, because the following digit is 1 (upper rounding).

- 3. :

We have  $3 = 2*(1+1/2)$ . Hence the hexadecimal and binary representation of 3 is:

40 (01000000), 8 (00001000), 0 (00000000), 0 (00000000),  
 0 (00000000), 0 (00000000), 0 (00000000), 0 (00000000)

#### 9.1.4 Difference between the representation of (3.1-3) and of 0.1

- representation of 0.1 :

We have :

$$0.1 = 2^{-4} * \left(1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2^4} + \frac{1}{2^5} + \frac{1}{2^8} + \frac{1}{2^9} + \dots\right) = 2^{-4} * \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2^{4*k}} + \frac{1}{2^{4*k+1}}\right)$$

hence  $\alpha = 1$  and  $m = \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2^{4*k}} + \frac{1}{2^{4*k+1}}\right)$ , therefore the representation of 0.1 is

3f (00111111), b9 (10111001), 99 (10011001), 99 (10011001),  
 99 (10011001), 99 (10011001), 99 (10011001), 9a (10011010),

the last octet is 1010, indeed the 2 last bits 01 became 10 because the following digit is 1 (upper rounding).

- representation of a:=3.1-3 :

Computing a is done by adjusting exponents (here nothing to do), then subtract the mantissa, and adjust the exponent of the result to have a normalized float. The exponent is  $\alpha = -4$  (that corresponds at  $2 * 2^{-5}$ ) and the bits corresponding to the mantissa begin at  $1/2 = 2 * 2^{-6}$  : the bits of the mantissa are shifted to the left of 5 positions and we have :

3f (00111111), b9 (10111001), 99 (10011001), 99 (10011001),  
 99 (10011001), 99 (10011001), 99 (10011001), 9a (10100000),

Therefore  $a > 0.1$  and  $a - 0.1 = 1/2^{50} + 1/2^{51}$  (since  $100000-11010=110$ )

#### Remark

This is the reason why

```
floor(1/(3.1-3))
```

returns 9 and not 10 when Digits := 14.

## 9.2 Approx. evaluation : evalf approx and Digits

`evalf` or `approx` evaluates to a numeric approximation (if possible).

Input :

```
evalf(sqrt(2))
```

Output, if in the `Cfg` configuration (`Cfg` menu) `Digits=7` (that is hardware floats are used, and 7 digits are displayed) :

```
1.414214
```

You can change the number of digits in a command line by assigning the variable `DIGITS` or `Digits`. Input :

```
DIGITS:=20
```

```
evalf(sqrt(2))
```

Output :

```
1.4142135623730950488
```

Input :

```
evalf(10^-5)
```

Output :

```
1e-05
```

Input :

```
evalf(10^15)
```

Output :

```
1e+15
```

Input :

```
evalf(sqrt(2))*10^-5
```

Output :

```
1.41421356237e-05
```

## 9.3 Numerical algorithms

### 9.3.1 Approximate solution of an equation : newton

`newton` takes as arguments : an expression `ex`, the variable name of this expression (by default `x`), and three values `a` (by default `a=0`), `eps` (by default `eps=1e-8`) and `nbiter` (by default `nbiter=12`).

`newton(ex,x,a,eps,nbiter)` computes an approximate solution `x` of the equation `ex=0` using the Newton algorithm with starting point `x=a`. The maximum number of iterations is `nbiter` and the precision is `eps`.

Input :

```
newton(x^2-2,x,1)
```

Output :

```
1.41421356237
```

Input :

```
newton(x^2-2,x,-1)
```

Output :

```
-1.41421356237
```

Input :

```
newton(cos(x)-x,x,0)
```

Output :

```
0.739085133215
```

### 9.3.2 Approximate computation of the derivative number : nDeriv

`nDeriv` takes as arguments : an expression `ex`, the variable name of this expression (by default `x`), and `h` (by default `h=0.001`).

`nDeriv(ex,x,h)` computes an approximated value of the derivative of the expression `ex` at the point `x` and returns :

$$(f(x+h) - f(x-h)) / 2 * h$$

Input :

```
nDeriv(x^2,x)
```

Output :

```
((x+0.001)^2 - (x-0.001)^2) * 500.0
```

Input :

```
subst(nDeriv(x^2,x),x=1)
```

Output :

2

Input :

```
nDeriv(exp(x^ 2),x,0.00001)
```

Output :

```
(exp((x+1e-05)^2)-exp((x+-1e-05)^2))*50000
```

Input :

```
subst(exp(nDeriv(x^ 2),x,0.00001),x=1)
```

Output :

```
5.43656365783
```

which is an approximate value of  $2e=5.43656365692$ .

### 9.3.3 Approximate computation of integrals : `romberg nInt`

`romberg` or `nInt` takes as arguments : an expression `ex`, the variable name of this expression (by default `x`), and two real values `a, b`.

`romberg(ex,x,a,b)` or `nInt(ex,x,a,b)` computes an approximated value of the integral  $\int_a^b ex dx$  using the Romberg method. The integrand must be sufficiently regular for the approximation to be accurate. Otherwise, `romberg` returns a list of real values, that comes from the application of the Romberg algorithm (the first list element is the trapezoid rule approximation, the next ones come from the application of the Euler-MacLaurin formula to remove successive even powers of the step of the trapezoid rule).

Input :

```
romberg(exp(x^2),x,0,1)
```

Output :

```
1.46265174591
```

### 9.3.4 Approximate integral with an adaptive Gaussian quadrature at 15 points: `gaussquad`

The `gaussquad` command takes four arguments; an expression, the variable used by the expression, and two numbers.

`gaussquad` returns an approximation to the definite integral of the expression over the limits given by the two numbers. The approximation is calculated by an adaptive method by Ernst Hairer which uses a 15-point Gaussian quadrature.

Input:

```
gaussquad(exp(x^2),x,0,1)
```

Output:

```
1.46265174591
```

Input:

```
gaussquad(exp(-x^2),x,-1,1)
```

Output:

```
1.49364826562
```

### 9.3.5 Approximate solution of $y' = f(t, y)$ : odesolve

- Let  $f$  be a function from  $\mathbb{R}^2$  to  $\mathbb{R}$ .

`odesolve(f(t,y), [t,y], [t0,y0], t1)` or  
`odesolve(f(t,y), t=t0..t1, y, y0)` or  
`odesolve(t0..t1, f, y0)` or  
`odesolve(t0..t1, (t,y) -> f(t,y), y0)`  
 returns an approximate value of  $y(t1)$  where  $y(t)$  is the solution of:

$$y'(t) = f(t, y(t)), \quad y(t0) = y0$$

- `odesolve` accepts an optional argument for the discretization of  $t$  (`tstep=value`). This value is passed as initial `tstep` value to the numeric solver from the GSL (Gnu Scientific Library), it may be modified by the solver. It is also used to control the number of iterations of the solver by  $2 * (t1 - t0) / tstep$  (if the number of iterations exceeds this value, the solver will stop at a time  $t < t1$ ).
- `odesolve` accepts `curve` as an optional argument. In that case, `odesolve` returns the list of all the  $[t, [y(t)]]$  values that were computed.

Input :

```
odesolve(sin(t*y), [t,y], [0,1], 2)
```

or :

```
odesolve(sin(t*y), t=0..2, y, 1)
```

or :

```
odesolve(0..2, (t,y) -> sin(t*y), 1)
```

or define the function :

```
f(t,y) := sin(t*y)
```

and input :

```
odesolve(0..2, f, 1)
```

Output :

```
[1.82241255675]
```

Input :

```
odesolve(0..2, f, 1, tstep=0.3)
```

Output :

```
[1.82241255675]
```

Input :

```
odesolve(sin(t*y), t=0..2, y, 1, tstep=0.5)
```

Output :

```
[1.82241255675]
```

Input :

```
odesolve(sin(t*y),t=0..2,y,1,tstep=0.5,curve)
```

Output :

```
[[0.760963063136,[1.30972370515]],[1.39334557388,[1.86417104853]]]
```

### 9.3.6 Approximate solution of the system $v' = f(t, v)$ : odesolve

- If  $v$  is a vector of variables  $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$  and if  $f$  is given by a vector of expressions  $[e_1, \dots, e_n]$  depending on  $t$  and of  $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ , if the initial value of  $v$  at  $t_0$  is the vector  $[x_{10}, \dots, x_{n0}]$  then the instruction

```
odesolve([e1, ..., en], t=t0..t1, [x1, ..., xn],
         [x10, ..., xn0])
```

returns an approximated value of  $v$  at  $t = t_1$ . With the optional argument `curve`, `odesolve` returns the list of the intermediate values of  $[t, v(t)]$  computed by the solver.

Example, to solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x'(t) &= -y(t) \\ y'(t) &= x(t) \end{aligned}$$

Input :

```
odesolve([-y,x],t=0..pi,[x,y],[0,1])
```

Output :

```
[-1.79045146764e-15,-1]
```

- If  $f$  is a function from  $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^n$  to  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

`odesolve(t0..t1, (t, v) -> f(t, v), v0)` or  
`odesolve(t0..t1, f, v0)`

computes an approximate value of  $v(t_1)$  where the vector  $v(t)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is the solution of

$$v'(t) = f(t, v(t)), v(t_0) = v_0$$

With the optional argument `curve`, `odesolve` returns the list of the intermediate value  $[t, v(t)]$  computed by the solver.

Example, to solve the system :

$$\begin{aligned} x'(t) &= -y(t) \\ y'(t) &= x(t) \end{aligned}$$

Input :

```
odesolve(0..pi, (t,v)->[-v[1],v[0]], [0,1])
```

Or define the function:

```
f(t,v):=[-v[1],v[0]]
```

then input :

```
odesolve(0..pi,f,[0,1])
```

Output :

```
[-1.79045146764e-15,-1]
```

Alternative input :

```
odesolve(0..pi/4,f,[0,1],curve)
```

Output :

```
[[0.1781, [-0.177159948386, 0.984182072936]],
 [0.3781, [-0.369155338156, 0.929367707805]],
 [0.5781, [-0.54643366953, 0.837502384954]],
 [0.7781, [-0.701927414872, 0.712248484906]]]
```

### 9.3.7 Approximate solution of a nonlinear second-order boundary value problem : bvpssolve

`bvpssolve` finds an approximate solution of a boundary value problem

$$y'' = f(x, y, y'), \quad y(a) = \alpha, \quad y(b) = \beta$$

on the interval  $[a, b]$ . It takes the following mandatory arguments :

- expression  $f(x, y, y')$ ,
- list `[x=a..b, y]`, specifying the independent variable  $x$ , its range  $[a, b]$  and the sought function  $y$ ,
- list containing  $\alpha, \beta$  and optionally an initial guess for  $y'(a)$  as the third element.

One or more of the additional arguments below can optionally follow (in no particular order) :

- integer  $N \geq 2$  (by default 100),
- `output=<type>` or `Output=<type>` : the type of the output, which can be `list` (the default), `diff`, `piecewise` or `spline`,
- `limit=M` : the procedure will be stopped if the number of iterations exceeds  $M$ , which must be a positive integer (by default there is no limit).

The procedure uses the method of nonlinear shooting which is based on Newton and Runge-Kutta methods. Values of  $y$  and its first derivative  $y'$  are approximated at points  $x_k = a + k \delta$ , where  $\delta = \frac{b-a}{N}$  and  $k = 0, 1, \dots, N$ . For the numeric tolerance (precision) threshold, the algorithm uses `epsilon` specified in the session settings in Xcas. If the output type is

- `list`, a list of pairs  $[x_k, y_k]$  is returned where  $y_k \approx y(x_k)$ ,
- `diff`, a list of lists  $[x_k, y_k, y'_k]$  is returned, where  $y'_k \approx y'(x_k)$ ,
- `piecewise`, a piecewise linear interpolation of the points  $(x_k, y_k)$  is returned,
- `spline`, a piecewise spline interpolation of the points  $(x_k, y_k)$  is returned, based on the values  $y'_k$  computed in the process.

Note that the shooting method is sensitive to roundoff errors and may fail to converge in some cases, especially when  $y$  is a rapidly increasing function. In the absence of convergence or if the maximum number of iterations is exceeded, `bvpssolve` returns `undef`. However, if output type is `list` or `piecewise` and if  $N > 2$ , a slower but more stable finite-difference method (which approximates only the function  $y$ ) is tried first.

Sometimes setting an initial guess for  $y'(a)$  to a suitable value may help the shooting algorithm to converge or to converge faster. The default initial guess  $y'_0$  for the value  $y'(a)$  is

$$y'_0 = \frac{\beta - \alpha}{b - a}.$$

**Examples.** In the first example we solve the problem

$$y'' = \frac{1}{8} (32 + 2x^3 - y y'), \quad 1 \leq x \leq 3$$

with boundary conditions  $y(1) = 17$  and  $y(3) = \frac{43}{3}$ . We use  $N = 20$ , which gives  $x$ -step of 0.01. Input :

```
bvpssolve( (32+2x^3-y*y')/8, [x=1..3,y], [17,43/3], 20)
```

The output is shown in Table 9.1 (the middle two columns) alongside with the values  $y(x_k)$  of the exact solution  $y = x^2 + 16/x$  (the fourth column).

In the next example we solve the problem

$$y'' = \frac{x^2 (y')^2 - 9 y^2 + 4 x^6}{x^5}, \quad 1 \leq x \leq 2,$$

with the boundary conditions  $y(1) = 0$  and  $y(2) = \ln 256$ . We obtain the solution as a piecewise spline interpolation for  $N = 10$  and estimate the absolute error `err` of the approximation using the exact solution  $y = x^3 \ln x$  and `romberg` command for numerical integration. We also need to explicitly set an initial guess  $y'_0$  for the value  $y'(1)$  because the algorithm fails to converge with the default guess  $y'_0 = \ln 256 \approx 5.545$ . Therefore let  $y'_0 = 1$  instead. Input :

| $k$ | $x_k$ | $y_k$         | $y(x_k)$      |
|-----|-------|---------------|---------------|
| 0   | 1.0   | 17.0          | 17.0          |
| 1   | 1.1   | 15.7554961579 | 15.7554545455 |
| 2   | 1.2   | 14.7733911821 | 14.7733333333 |
| 3   | 1.3   | 13.9977543159 | 13.9976923077 |
| 4   | 1.4   | 13.388631813  | 13.3885714286 |
| 5   | 1.5   | 12.9167227424 | 12.9166666667 |
| 6   | 1.6   | 12.5600506483 | 12.56         |
| 7   | 1.7   | 12.3018096101 | 12.3017647059 |
| 8   | 1.8   | 12.1289281414 | 12.1288888889 |
| 9   | 1.9   | 12.0310865274 | 12.0310526316 |
| 10  | 2.0   | 12.0000289268 | 12.0          |
| 11  | 2.1   | 12.0290719981 | 12.029047619  |
| 12  | 2.2   | 12.1127475278 | 12.1127272727 |
| 13  | 2.3   | 12.2465382803 | 12.2465217391 |
| 14  | 2.4   | 12.4266798825 | 12.4266666667 |
| 15  | 2.5   | 12.650010254  | 12.65         |
| 16  | 2.6   | 12.9138537834 | 12.9138461538 |
| 17  | 2.7   | 13.2159312426 | 13.2159259259 |
| 18  | 2.8   | 13.5542890043 | 13.5542857143 |
| 19  | 2.9   | 13.9272429048 | 13.9272413793 |
| 20  | 3.0   | 14.3333333333 | 14.3333333333 |

Table 9.1: approximate and true values of the function  $y = x^2 + 16/x$  on  $[1, 3]$ 

```
f:=(x^2*diff(y(x),x)^2-9*y(x)^2+4*x^6)/x^5;;
vars:=[x=1..2,y];; yinit:=[0,ln(256),1];
p:=bvpsolve(f,vars,yinit,10,output=spline);
err:=sqrt(romberg((p-x^3*ln(x))^2,x=1..2))
```

Output :

3.27720911686e-06

Note that, if the output type was set to `list` or `piecewise`, the solution would have been found even without specifying an initial guess for  $y'(1)$  because the algorithm would automatically apply the alternative finite-difference method, which converges.

## 9.4 Solve equations with fsolve nSolve

`fsolve` or `nSolve` solves numeric equations (unlike `solve` or `pRoot`, it is not limited to polynomial equations) of the form:

$$f(x) = 0, \quad x \in ]a, b[$$

`fsolve` or `nSolve` accepts a last optional argument, the name of an iterative algorithm to be used by the GSL solver. The different methods are explained in the following section.

#### 9.4.1 fsolve or nSolve with the option bisection\_solver

This algorithm of dichotomy is the simplest but also generically the slowest. It encloses the zero of a function on an interval. Each iteration, cuts the interval into two parts. We compute the middle point value. The function sign at this point, gives us the half-interval on which the next iteration will be performed.

Input :

```
fsolve((cos(x))=x,x,-1..1,bisection_solver)
```

Output :

```
[0.739085078239, 0.739085137844]
```

#### 9.4.2 fsolve or nSolve with the option brent\_solver

The Brent method interpolates of  $f$  at three points, finds the intersection of the interpolation with the  $x$  axis, computes the sign of  $f$  at this point and chooses the interval where the sign changes. It is generically faster than bisection.

Input :

```
fsolve((cos(x))=x,x,-1..1,brent_solver)
```

Output :

```
[0.739085133215, 0.739085133215]
```

#### 9.4.3 fsolve or nSolve with the option falsepos\_solver

The "false position" algorithm is an iterative algorithm based on linear interpolation : we compute the value of  $f$  at the intersection of the line  $(a, f(a)), (b, f(b))$  with the  $x$  axis. This value gives us the part of the interval containing the root, and on which a new iteration is performed.

The convergence is linear but generically faster than bisection.

Input :

```
fsolve((cos(x))=x,x,-1..1,falsepos_solver)
```

Output :

```
[0.739085133215, 0.739085133215]
```

#### 9.4.4 fsolve or nSolve with the option newton\_solver

`newton_solver` is the standard Newton method. The algorithm starts at an initial value  $x_0$ , then we search the intersection  $x_1$  of the tangent at  $x_0$  to the graph of  $f$ , with the  $x$  axis, the next iteration is done with  $x_1$  instead of  $x_0$ . The  $x_i$  sequence is defined by

$$x_0 = x_0, \quad x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)}$$

If the Newton method converges, it is a quadratic convergence for roots of multiplicity 1.

Input :

```
fsolve((cos(x))=x,x,0,newton_solver)
```

Output :

```
0.739085133215
```

#### 9.4.5 fsolve or nSolve with the option secant\_solver

The secant method is a simplified version of the Newton method. The computation of  $x_1$  is done using the Newton method. The computation of  $f'(x_n), n > 1$  is done approximately. This method is used when the computation of the derivative is expensive:

$$x_{i+1} = x_i - \frac{f(x_i)}{f'_{est}}, \quad f'_{est} = \frac{f(x_i) - f(x_{i-1})}{(x_i - x_{i-1})}$$

The convergence for roots of multiplicity 1 is of order  $(1 + \sqrt{5})/2 \approx 1.62\dots$

Input :

```
fsolve((cos(x))=x,x,-1..1,secant_solver)
```

Output :

```
[0.739085078239, 0.739085137844]
```

Input :

```
fsolve((cos(x))=x,x,0,secant_solver)
```

Output :

```
0.739085133215
```

#### 9.4.6 fsolve or nSolve with the option steffenson\_solver

The Steffenson method is generically the fastest method.

It combines the Newton method with a "delta-two" Aitken acceleration : with the Newton method, we obtain the sequence  $x_i$  and the convergence acceleration gives the Steffenson sequence

$$R_i = x_i - \frac{(x_{i+1} - x_i)^2}{(x_{i+2} - 2x_{i+1} + x_i)}$$

Input :

```
fsolve(cos(x)=x,x,0,steffenson_solver)
```

Output :

```
0.739085133215
```

## 9.5 Solve systems with `fsolve`

Xcas provides six methods (inherited from the GSL) to solve numeric systems of equations of the form  $f(x) = 0$ :

- Three methods use the jacobian matrix  $f'(x)$  and their names are terminated with `j_solver`.
- The three other methods use approximation for  $f'(x)$  and use only  $f$ .

All methods use an iteration of Newton kind

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - f'(x_n)^{-1} * f(x_n)$$

The four methods `hybrid*``_solver` use also a method of gradient descent when the Newton iteration would make a too large step. The length of the step is computed without scaling for `hybrid_solver` and `hybridj_solver` or with scaling (computed from  $f'(x_n)$ ) for `hybrids_solver` and `hybridsj_solver`.

### 9.5.1 `fsolve` with the option `dnewton_solver`

Input :

```
fsolve([x^2+y-2,x+y^2-2],[x,y],[2,2],dnewton_solver)
```

Output :

```
[1.0,1.0]
```

### 9.5.2 `fsolve` with the option `hybrid_solver`

Input :

```
fsolve([x^2+y-2,x+y^2-2],[x,y],[2,2],
cos(x)=x,x,0,hybrid_solver)
```

Output :

```
[1.0,1.0]
```

### 9.5.3 `fsolve` with the option `hybrids_solver`

Input :

```
fsolve([x^2+y-2,x+y^2-2],[x,y],[2,2],hybrids_solver)
```

Output :

```
[1.0,1.0]
```

**9.5.4** `fsolve` with the option `newtonj_solver`

Input :

```
fsolve([x^2+y-2, x+y^2-2], [x, y], [0, 0], newtonj_solver)
```

Output :

```
[1.0, 1.0]
```

**9.5.5** `fsolve` with the option `hybridj_solver`

Input :

```
fsolve([x^2+y-2, x+y^2-2], [x, y], [2, 2], hybridj_solver)
```

Output :

```
[1.0, 1.0]
```

**9.5.6** `fsolve` with the option `hybridsj_solver`

Input :

```
fsolve([x^2+y-2, x+y^2-2], [x, y], [2, 2], hybridsj_solver)
```

Output :

```
[1.0, 1.0]
```

**9.6 Solving equations or systems over  $\mathbb{C}$ : `cfsolve`**

The `cfsolve` command gives numeric solutions to an equation or system over the complex numbers, even if `Complex` is not checked in the configuration screen. (The `fsolve` command will return complex roots, but `Complex` needs to be checked in the configuration screen.)

Input:

```
cfsolve(sin(x)=2)
```

Output:

```
[1.57079632679-1.31695789692*i, 1.57079632679+1.31695789692*i]
```

Input:

```
cfsolve([x^2+y+2, x+y^2+2], [x, y])
```

Output:

```
[[0.5+1.65831239518*i, 0.5-1.65831239518*i], [0.5-1.65831239518*i, 0.5+1.65831239518*i], [-0.5+1.32287565553*i, -0.5+1.32287565553*i], [-0.5-1.32287565553*i, -0.5-1.32287565553*i]]
```

## 9.7 Numeric roots of a polynomial : proot

`proot` takes as argument a squarefree polynomial, either in symbolic form or as a list of polynomial coefficients (written by decreasing order).

`proot` returns a list of the numeric roots of this polynomial.

To find the numeric roots of  $P(x) = x^3 + 1$ , input :

```
proot([1, 0, 0, 1])
```

or :

```
proot(x^3+1)
```

Output :

```
[0.5+0.866025403784*i, 0.5-0.866025403784*i, -1.0]
```

To find the numeric roots of  $x^2 - 3$ , input :

```
proot([1, 0, -3])
```

or :

```
proot(x^2-3)
```

Output :

```
[1.73205080757, -1.73205080757]
```

## 9.8 Numeric factorization of a matrix : cholesky qr lu svd

Matrix numeric factorizations of

- Cholesky,
- QR,
- LU,
- svd,

are described in section 5.57.

# Chapter 10

## Unit objects and physical constants

The Phys menu contains:

- the physical constants (Constant sub-menu),
- the unit conversion functions (Unit\_convert sub-menu),
- the unit prefixes (Unit\_prefix sub-menu)
- the unit objects organized by subject

### 10.1 Unit objects

#### 10.1.1 Notation of unit objects

A unit object has two parts : a real number and a unit expression (a single unit or a multiplicative combination of units). The two parts are linked by the character \_ ("underscore"). For example 2\_m for 2 meters. For composite units, parenthesis must be used, e.g. 1\_(m\*s).

If a prefix is put before the unit then the unit is multiplied by a power of 10. For example k or K for kilo (indicate a multiplication by  $10^3$ ), D for deca (indicate a multiplication by 10), d for deci (indicate a multiplication by  $10^{-1}$ ) etc...

Input :

10.5\_m

Output :

a unit object of value 10.5 meters

Input :

10.5\_km

Output :

a unit object of value 10.5 kilometers

### 10.1.2 Computing with units

Xcas performs usual arithmetic operations (+, -, \*, /, ^) on unit objects. Different units may be used, but they must be compatible for + and -. The result is an unit object

- for the multiplication and the division of two unit objects  $_u1$  and  $_u2$  the unit of the result is written  $_(u1*u2)$  or  $_(u1/u2)$ .
- for an addition or a subtraction of compatible unit objects, the result is expressed with the same unit as the first term of the operation.

Input :

$1\_m+100\_cm$

Output :

$2\_m$

Input :

$100\_cm+1\_m$

Output :

$200\_cm$

Input :

$1\_m*100\_cm$

Output :

$1\_m^2$

### 10.1.3 Convert units into MKSA units : `mksa`

`mksa` converts a unit object into a unit object written with the compatible MKSA base unit.

Input :

$mksa(15\_C)$

Output :

$15\_(s*\AA)$

**10.1.4 Convert units : convert , =>**

`convert` convert units : the first argument is an unit object and the second argument is the new unit (which must be compatible). (The `=>` operator is the infix version of `convert`.)

Input :

```
convert (1_h,_s)
```

Output :

```
3600_s
```

Input :

```
convert (3600_s,_h)
```

Output :

```
1_h
```

**10.1.5 Convert between Celsius and Fahrenheit: Celsius2Fahrenheit , Fahrenheit2Celsius**

The `Celsius2Fahrenheit` command takes a number as an argument, representing a temperature in degrees Celsius.

`Celsius2Fahrenheit` returns the number representing the temperature in Fahrenheit.

Input:

```
Celsius2Fahrenheit (a)
```

Output:

```
a*9/5+32
```

Input:

```
Celsius2Fahrenheit (0)
```

Output:

```
32
```

The `Fahrenheit2Celsius` command converts Fahrenheit temperatures to Celsius.

Input:

```
Fahrenheit2Celsius (212)
```

Output:

```
100
```

### 10.1.6 Factorize a unit : `ufactor`

`ufactor` factorizes a unit in a unit object : the first argument is a unit object and the second argument is the unit to factorize.

The result is an unit object multiplied by the remaining MKSA units.

Input :

```
ufactor(3_J,_W)
```

Output :

```
3_(W*s)
```

Input :

```
ufactor(3_W,_J)
```

Output :

```
3_(J/s)
```

### 10.1.7 Simplify a unit : `usimplify`

`usimplify` simplifies a unit in an unit object.

Input :

```
usimplify(3_(W*s))
```

Output :

```
3_J
```

### 10.1.8 Unit prefixes

You can insert a unit prefix in front of a unit to indicate a power of ten.  
The following table gives the available prefixes:

| Prefix | Name  | ( $*10^n$ ) n | Prefix | Name  | ( $*10^n$ ) n |
|--------|-------|---------------|--------|-------|---------------|
| Y      | yota  | 24            | d      | deci  | -1            |
| Z      | zeta  | 21            | c      | cent  | -2            |
| E      | exa   | 18            | m      | mini  | -3            |
| P      | peta  | 15            | mu     | micro | -6            |
| T      | tera  | 12            | n      | nano  | -9            |
| G      | giga  | 9             | p      | pico  | -12           |
| M      | mega  | 6             | f      | femto | -15           |
| k or K | kilo  | 3             | a      | atto  | -18           |
| h or H | hecto | 2             | z      | zepto | -21           |
| D      | deca  | 1             | y      | yocto | -24           |

#### Remark

You cannot use a prefix with a built-in unit if the result gives another built-in unit.  
For example, `1_a` is one are, but `1_Pa` is one pascal and not `10^15_a`.

## 10.2 Constants

### 10.2.1 Notation of physical constants

If you want to use a physical constants inside Xcas, put its name between two characters `_` ("underscore"). Don't confuse physical constants with symbolic constants, for example,  $e$ ,  $\pi$  are symbolic constants as `_c_`, `_NA_` are physical constants.

Input :

`_c_`

Output speed of light in vacuum :

`299792458_m*s^-1`

Input :

`_NA_`

Output Avogadro's number :

`6.0221367e23_gmol^-1`

### 10.2.2 Constants Library

The physical constants are in the `Phys` menu, `Constant` sub-menu. The following table gives the Constants Library :

| Name          | Description                                |
|---------------|--|
| _NA_          | Avogadro's number                          |
| _k_           | Boltzmann constant                         |
| _Vm_          | Molar volume                               |
| _R_           | Universal gas constant                     |
| _StdT_        | Standard temperature                       |
| _StdP_        | Standard pressure                          |
| _sigma_       | Stefan-Boltzmann constant                  |
| _c_           | Speed of light in vacuum                   |
| _epsilon0_    | Permitivity of vacuum                      |
| _mu0_         | Permeability of vacuum                     |
| _g_           | Acceleration of gravity                    |
| _G_           | Gravitational constant                     |
| _h_           | Planck's constant                          |
| _hbar_        | Dirac's constant                           |
| _q_           | Electron charge                            |
| _me_          | Electron rest mass                         |
| _qme_         | q/me (Electron charge/mass)                |
| _mp_          | Proton rest mass                           |
| _mpme_        | mp/me (proton mass/electron mass)          |
| _alpha_       | Fine structure constant                    |
| _phi_         | Magnetic flux quantum                      |
| _F_           | Faraday constant                           |
| _Rinfinity_   | Rydberg constant                           |
| _a0_          | Bohr radius                                |
| _mub_         | Bohr magneton                              |
| _mun_         | Nuclear magneton                           |
| _lambda0_     | Photon wavelength (ch/e)                   |
| _f0_          | Photon frequency (e/h)                     |
| _lambdac_     | Compton wavelength                         |
| _rad_         | 1 radian                                   |
| _twopi_       | 2*pi radians                               |
| _angl_        | 180 degrees angle                          |
| _c3_          | Wien displacement constant                 |
| _kq_          | k/q (Boltzmann/electron charge)            |
| _epsilon0q_   | epsilon0/q (permitivity /electron charge)  |
| _qepsilon0_   | q*epsilon0 (electron charge *permittivity) |
| _epsilononsi_ | Silicium dielectric constant               |
| _epsilononox_ | Bioxyd of silicium dielectric constant     |
| _I0_          | Reference intensity                        |

To have the value of a constant, input the constant name in the command line of Xcas and evaluate with enter (don't forget to put \_ at the beginning and at the end of the constant name).

# Chapter 11

## Programming

### 11.1 Functions, programs and scripts

#### 11.1.1 The program editor

Xcas provides a program editor, which you can open with Alt+P. This can be useful for writing small programs, but for writing larger programs you may want to use your usual editor. (Note that this requires an editor, such as emacs, and not a word processor.) If you use your own editor, then you will need to save the program to a file, such as `myprog.cxx`, and then load it into Xcas with the command line command `load`, as in `load("myprog.cxx")`.

#### 11.1.2 Functions: `function`, `endfunction`, `{ }`, `local`, `return`

You have already seen functions defined with `:=`. For example, to define a function `sumprod` which takes two inputs and returns a list with the sum and the product of the inputs, you can enter

```
sumprod(a,b) := [a+b,a*b]
```

Afterwards, entering

```
sumprod(3,5)
```

will return

```
[8,15]
```

You can define functions that are computed with a sequence of instructions by putting the instructions between braces, where each command ends with a semi-colon. If any local variables will be used, they can be declared with the `local` keyword, followed by the variable names. The value returned by the function will be indicated with the `return` keyword. For example, the above function `sumprod` could also be defined by

```
sumprod(a,b) := {  
local s, p;  
s := a + b;  
p := a*b;  
return [s,p];  
}
```

Another way to use a sequence of instructions to define a function is with the `function ...endfunction` construction. With this approach, the function name and parameters follow the `function` keyword. This is otherwise like the previous approach. The `sumprod` function could be defined by

```
function sumprod(a,b)
local s, p;
s := a + b;
p := a*b;
return [s,p];
endfunction
```

### 11.1.3 Local variables

Local variables in a function definition can be given initial values in the line they are declared in if you put their initialization in parentheses; for example,

```
local a,b;
a := 1;
```

is the same as

```
local (a := 1), b;
```

Local variables should be given values within the function definition. If you want to use a local variable as a symbolic variable, then you can indicate that with the `assume` command. For example, if you define a function `myroots` by

```
myroots (a) := {
local x;
return solve(x^2=a, x);
}
```

then calling

```
myroots(4)
```

will simply return the empty list. You could leave `x` undeclared, but that would make `x` a global variable and could interact with other functions in unexpected ways. You can get the behavior you probably expected by explicitly assuming `x` to be a symbol;

```
myroots (a) := {
local x;
assume(x,symbol);
return solve(x^2=a, x);
}
```

(Alternatively, you could use `purge(x)` instead of `assume(x, symbol)`.) Now if you enter

```
myroots(4)
```

you will get

$[-2, 2]$

### 11.1.4 Default values of the parameters

You can give the parameters of a function default values by putting *parameter=value* in the parameter list of the function. For example, if you define a function

```
f(x,y=5,z) := {
    return x*y*z;
}
```

then

```
f(1,2,3)
```

will return the product  $1 * 2 * 3 = 6$ . If you give *f* only two values as input,

```
f(3,4)
```

then these values will be given to the parameters which don't have default values; in this case, *y* will get its default value 5 while 3 and 4 will be assigned to *x* and *z*, respectively. The result will be  $x * y * z = 3 * 5 * 4 = 60$ .

### 11.1.5 Programs

A program is similar to a function, and written like a function without a return value. Programs are used to display results or to create drawings. It is a good idea to turn a program into a function by putting `return 0` at the end; this way you will get a response of 0 when the program executes.

### 11.1.6 Scripts

A script is a file containing a sequence of instructions, each ending with a semi-colon.

### 11.1.7 Code blocks

A code block, such as used in defining functions, is a sequence of statements delimited by braces or by `begin` and `end`. Each statement must end with a semicolon. (If the block makes up a function, you can step through it one statement at a time by using the debugger; see section 11.5.)

## 11.2 Basic instructions

### 11.2.1 Comments: //

The characters // indicate that you are writing a comment; any text between // and the end of the line will be ignored by Xcas.

### 11.2.2 Input: `input`, `Input`, `InputStr`, `textInput`, `output`, `Output`

You can prompt the user to enter a value for a variable with the `input` (or `Input`) command. If you enter

```
input(a)
```

the user will be given a box where they can enter a value for the variable `a`. There will be a prompt indicating the name of the variable; if you want a more descriptive prompt, you can give `input` a string argument before the variable name.

```
input("Set a to the value: ", a)
```

will prompt the user with "Set `a` to the value: " before the input box.

If the value that you enter for `input` is a string, it should be between quotes. If you want the user to enter a string without having to use the quotes, you can use `InputStr` or `textInput`, which will assume the input will be a string and so the user won't need to use quotes.

The `output` (or `Output`) command can take strings (or variables representing strings) as arguments and can be used to add information to the input window. For example, if you enter

```
input(output("Calculate  
p(a)", "polynomial", p, "value", a))
```

then you will get a window with a box containing

```
Calculate p(a)
```

followed by the prompts for `p` and `a`.

### 11.2.3 Reading a single keystroke: `getKey`

If you want the user to enter a single key, you can use the `getKey` command, which doesn't take any arguments, to get the ASCII code of the next keystroke. For example, if you enter

```
asciicode := getKey()
```

and then hit the A key, then the variable `asciicode` will have the value 65, which is the ASCII code of capital A.

### 11.2.4 Checking conditions: `assert`

You can break out of a function with an error by using the `assert` command, which takes a boolean as an argument. If the boolean is false, then the function will return with an error. For example, if you define a function

```
sqofpos(x) := {assert(x > 0); return x^2;}
```

then if you enter

```
sqofpos(4)
```

you will get 16, but

```
sqofpos(-4)
```

will return an error, since  $-4 > 0$  is false.

### 11.2.5 Checking the type of the argument: `type`, `subtype`, `compare`, `getType`

You can check the type of the argument of a function (or anything else, for that matter) with the `type` command. For example, entering

```
type(4)
```

will return

```
integer
```

The output of a `type` command is actually an integer from 1 to 12. The output of `type(4)` is `integer`, which is a constant with the value 1. Another way to represent this type is with `DOM_INT`; entering

```
type(4) == DOM_INT
```

will return

```
true
```

Possible types (followed by the integer they represent) include:

- `real`, `double` or `DOM_FLOAT` (1).
- `integer` or `DOM_INT` (2).
- `complex` or `DOM_COMPLEX` (4).
- `identifier` or `DOM_IDENT` (6).
- `vector` or `DOM_LIST` (7).
- `func` or `DOM_FUNC` (13).
- `expression` or `DOM_SYMBOLIC` (8).
- `rational` or `DOM_RAT` (10).
- `string` or `DOM_STRING` (12).

If the item being tested is a list (in `DOM_LIST`), then the `subtype` command can determine what type of list it is. If the object is a sequence, then `subtype` returns 1;

```
subtype(1,2,3)
```

returns

1

If the object is a set, then `subtype` returns 2. If the object is a polynomial represented as a list (see section 5.29), then `subtype` will return 10. If the object isn't one of these types of list, then `subtype` returns 0.

The `compare` function will compare two objects taking their type into account; in other words, `compare(a, b)` returns 1 (true) if `a` and `b` have the same type with `a` less than `b`, or if `a` and `b` have different types and the integer `type(a)` is less than `type(b)`. For example,

```
compare("a", "b")
```

returns

1

since "`a`" and "`b`" have the same type (`string`) and "`a`" is less than "`b`" in the string ordering. Also, if `b` is a formal variable, then

```
compare("a", b)
```

returns

0

since the type of "`a`" is `string` (the integer 12) while the type of `b` is `identifier` (the integer 6) and 12 is not less than 6.

The `getType` command is similar to `type` in that it takes an object and returns the type, but it has different possible return values. It is included for compatibility reasons. For example,

```
getType(3.14)
```

returns

NUM

and

```
getType(x)
```

returns

VAR

Other possible return values include `STR`, `EXPR`, `NONE`, `PIC`, `MAT` and `FUNC`.

### 11.2.6 Printing: `print`, `Disp`, `ClrIO`

The `print` (or `Disp`) command will print its arguments in a special pane and return the number 1. For example,

```
print("Hello")
```

will result in

```
Hello
```

If you enter

```
a := 12
```

then

```
print("a =", a)
```

will print

```
"a =", 12
```

The ClrIO (no argument) will erase the printing that was done in the level it was typed. For example,

```
print("Hello"); ClrIO()
```

will simply return the result (1,1).

### 11.2.7 Displaying exponents: printpow

The printpow command determines how the print command will print exponents. By default,

```
print(x^3)
```

will print

```
x^3
```

If you use the command

```
printpow(1)
```

then

```
print(x^3)
```

will print as

```
pow(x, 3)
```

If you use the command

```
printpow(-1)
```

then

```
print(x^3)
```

will print as

```
x**3
```

Finally,

```
printpow(0)
```

will restore the default form.

### 11.2.8 Infixed assignments: =>, :=, =<

The infix operators `=>`, `:=`, and `=<` can all store a value in a variable, but their arguments are in different order. Also, `:=` and `=<` have different effects when the first argument is an element of a list stored in a variable, since `=<` modifies list elements by reference. (See section 11.2.10.)

- `=>` is the infix version of `sto`, it stores the value in the first argument in the variable in the second argument. Both

Input:

```
4 => a
```

and:

```
sto(4, a)
```

store the value 4 in the variable `a`.

- `:=` and `=<` both have a variable as the first argument and the value to store in the variable as the second argument. Both

Input:

```
a := 4
```

and:

```
a = < 4
```

store the value 4 in the variable `a`.

However, suppose

Input:

```
A := [0, 1, 2, 3, 4]
B := A
```

and you want to change `A[3]`.

Input:

```
A[3] = < 33
```

will change both `A` and `B`

Input:

```
A, B
```

Output:

```
[0, 1, 2, 33, 4], [0, 1, 2, 33, 4]
```

Here, A pointed to the list [0, 1, 2, 3, 4] and setting B to A, B also pointed to [0, 1, 2, 3, 4]. Changing an element of A by reference changes the list that A points to, which B points to.

Note that multiple assignments can be made using sequences or lists. Both  
Input:

```
[a, b, c] := [1, 2, 3]
```

and:

```
(a, b, c) := (1, 2, 3)
```

assign a the value 1, b the value 2, and c the value 3. If multiple assignments are made this way and variables are on the right hand side, they will be replaced by their values before the assignment. If a contains 5, then

Input:

```
(a, b) := (2, a)
```

then b will get the previous value of a, 5, and not the new value of a, 2.

### 11.2.9 Assignment by copying: copy

The copy command creates a copy of its argument, which is typically a list of some type. If B is a list and A := B, then A and B point to the same list, and so changing one will change the other. But if A := copy(B), then A and B will point to different lists with the same values, and so can be changed individually.

Input:

```
B := [[4,5],[2,6]]
A := B
C := copy(B)
```

Output:

```
A, B, C
```

Output:

```
[[4,5],[2,6]], [[4,5],[2,6]], [[4,5],[2,6]]
```

Input:

```
B[1] =< [0,0]
```

Input:

```
A, B, C
```

Output:

```
[[4,5],[0,0]], [[4,5],[0,0]], [[4,5],[2,6]]
```

### 11.2.10 The difference between := and =<

The := and =< assignment operators have different effects when they are used to modify an element of a list contained in a variable, since =< modifies the element by reference. Otherwise, they will have the same effect.

For example, if

Input:

```
A := [1, 2, 3]
```

then

Input:

```
A[1] := 5
```

and

Input:

```
A[1] = < 5
```

both change A[1] to 5, so A will be [1, 5, 3], but they do it in different ways. The command A[1] = < 5 changes the middle value in the list that A originally pointed to, and so any other variable pointing to the list will be changed, but A[1] := 5 will create a duplicate list with the middle element of 5, and so any other variable pointing to the original list won't be affected.

Input:

```
A := [0, 1, 2, 3, 4]
      B := A
      B[3] = < 33
      A, B
```

Output:

```
[0, 1, 2, 33, 4], [0, 1, 2, 33, 4]
```

Input:

```
A := [0, 1, 2, 3, 4]
      B := A
      B[3] := 33
      A, B
```

Output:

```
[0, 1, 2, 3, 4], [0, 1, 2, 33, 4]
```

If B is set equal to a copy of A instead of A, then changing B won't affect A.

Input:

```
A := [0, 1, 2, 3, 4]
      B := copy(A)
      B[3] = < 33
      A, B
```

Output:

```
[0, 1, 2, 3, 4], [0, 1, 2, 33, 4]
```

## 11.3 Control structures

### 11.3.1 if statements: if, then, else, end, elif

The Xcas language has different ways of writing if...then statements (see section 4.7.2). The standard version of the if...then statement consists of the `if` keyword, followed by a boolean expression (see section 5.2 in parentheses, followed by a statement block which will be executed if the boolean is true.

As an example, if the variables `a` and `b` have the values 3 and 2, respectively, and you enter

```
if (a > b) { a := a + 5; b := a - b; }
```

then since `a > b` will evaluate to true, the variable `a` will be reset to 8 and `b` will be reset to the value 6.

An `if` statement can include a block of statements to execute when the boolean is false by putting it at the end following the `else` keyword. For example, if the variable `val` has a real value, then the statement

```
if (val > 0) {abs := val;} else {abs := -1*val; }
```

will set `abs` to the same value as `val` if `val` is positive and it will set `abs` to negative the value of `val` otherwise.

An alternate way to write an `if` statement is to enclose the code block in `then` and `end` instead of braces; if the variable `a` is equal to 3, then

```
if (a > 1) then a := a + 5; end
```

will reset `a` to 8. An `else` block can be included by putting the `else` statements after `else` and before the `end`. For example, with `a` having the value 8 as above,

```
if (a > 10) then a := a + 10; else a := a - 5; end
```

will reset `a` to the value 3. This can also be written:

```
si (a > 10) alors a := a + 10; sinon a := a - 5; fsi
```

Several `if` statements can be nested; for example, the statement

```
if (a > 1) then a := 1; else if (a < 0) then a := 0;
else a := 0.5; end; end
```

A simpler way is to replace the `else if` by `elif`; the above statement can be written

```
if (a > 1) then a := 1; elif (a < 0) then a := 0; else
a := 0.5; end
```

In general, such a combination can be written

```
if (boolean 1) then
block 1;
elif (boolean 2) then
block 2;
```

```

...
elif (boolean n) then
block n;
else
last block;
end

```

(where the last `else` is optional.) For example, if you want to define a function  $f$  by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 8 & \text{if } x > 8 \\ 4 & \text{if } 4 < x \leq 8 \\ 2 & \text{if } 2 < x \leq 4 \\ 1 & \text{if } 0 < x \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{if } x \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

you can enter

```

f(x) := {
if (x > 8) then
    return 8;
elseif (x > 4) then
    return 4;
elseif (x > 2) then
    return 2;
elseif (x > 0) then
    return 1;
else
    return 0;
end;
}

```

### 11.3.2 The switch statement: `switch`, `case`, `default`

The `switch` statement can be used when you want the value of a block to depend on an integer. It takes one argument, an expression which evaluates to an integer. It should be followed by a sequence of `case` statements, which takes the form `case` followed by an integer and then a colon, which is followed by a code block to be executed if the expression equals the integer. At the end is an optional `default:` statement, which is followed by a code block to be executed if the expression doesn't equal any of the given integers. For example, if you wanted to define a function of three variables which performed an operation on the first two variables depending on the third, you could enter

```

oper(a,b,c) := {
switch (c) {
    case 1: {a := a + b; break;}
    case 2: {a := a - b; break;}
    case 3: {a := a * b; break;}
    default: {a := a ^ b;}
}

```

```

    }
return a;
}

```

Then

`oper(2,3,1)`

will return  $2 + 3 = 5$ , since the third argument is 1, and

`oper(2,3,2)`

will return  $2 - 3 = -1$ , since the third argument is 2.

### 11.3.3 The for loop: `for`, `from`, `to`, `step`, `do`, `end_for`

The `for` loop has three different forms, each of which uses an index variable. If the `for` loop is used in a program, the index variable should be declared as a local variable. (Recall that `i` represents the imaginary unit, and so cannot be used as the index.)

**The first form** For the first form, the `for` is followed by the starting value for the index, the end condition, and the increment step, separated by semicolons and in parentheses. Afterwards is a block of code to be executed for each iteration. For example, to add the even numbers less than 100, you can set the running total to 0,

`S := 0`

and the use an `for` loop to do the summing,

`for (j := 0; j < 100; j := j + 2) {S := S + j}`

**The second form** The second form of a `for` loop has a fixed increment for the index. It is written out with `for` followed by the index, followed by `from`, the initial value, `to`, the ending value, `step`, the size of the increment, and finally the statements to be executed between `do` and `end_for`. For example, having set the variable `S` equal to 0, you can again add the even numbers less than 100 with

`for j from 2 to 98 step 2 do S := S + j; end_for`

There is also a French version of this syntax;

`pour j de 2 jusque 98 pas 2 faire S := S + j; fpour`

**The third form** The third form of the `for` loop lets you iterate over the values in a list (or a set or a range). In this form, the `for` is followed by the index, then `in`, the list, and then the instructions between `do` and `end_for`. For example, to add all integers from 1 to 100, you can again set the running total `S` to 0, then

`for j in 1..100 do S := S + j; end_for`

or

`pour j in 1..100 faire S := S + j; fpour`

### 11.3.4 The repeat loop: `repeat`, `until`

The `repeat` loop allows you to repeat statements until a given condition is met. To use it, enter `repeat`, the statements, the keyword `until` followed by the condition, a boolean. For example, if you want the user to enter a value for a variable `x` which is greater than 4, you could have

```
repeat
    input("Enter a value for x (greater than 4)",x);
until (x > 4);
```

This can also be written

```
repeter
    input("Enter a value for x (greater than 4)",x);
jusqua (x > 4);
```

### 11.3.5 The while loop: `while`

The `while` loop is used to repeat a code block as long as a given condition holds. To use it, enter `while`, the condition, and then a code block. For example, to add the terms of the harmonic series  $1 + 1/2 + 1/3 + 1/4 + \dots$  until a term is less than 0.05, you could initialize the sum `S` to 0 and let `j` be the first term 1. Then

```
while (1/j >= 0.05) {S := S + 1/j; j := j+1;}
```

will find the sum. This line is the same as

```
tantque (1/j >= 0.05) faire S := S + 1/j; j := j+1;
ftantque
```

Note that a `while` loop can also be written as a `for` loop. For example, as long as `S` is set to 0 and `j` is set to 1, the above loop can be written as

```
for (;1/j >= 0.05;) {S := S + 1/j; j := j+1;}
```

or, with only `S` set to 0,

```
for (j := 1; 1/j >= 0.05; j++) {S := S + 1/j;}
```

### 11.3.6 Breaking out a loop: `break`

If your program is running a loop and you want it to exit the loop without finishing it, you can use the `break` command. For example, you can define a program

```
testbreak(a,b) := {
    local r;
    while (true) {
        if (b == 0) {break;}
        r := irem(a,b);
        a := b;
        b := r;
    }
    return a;
}
```

If you then enter

```
testbreak(4,0)
```

it will return

```
4
```

since the `while` loop is interrupted when `b` is 0 and `a` is 4.

### 11.3.7 Going to the next iteration of a loop: `continue`

The `continue` command will skip the rest of the current iteration of a loop and go to the next iteration. For example, if you enter

```
S := 0
for (j := 1, j <= 10; j++) {
    if (j == 5) {continue;}
    S := S + j;
}
```

then `S` will be 50, which is the sum of the integers from 1 to 10 except for 5, since the loop never gets to `S := S + j` when `j` is equal to 5.

### 11.3.8 Changing the order of execution: `goto`, `label`

The `goto` command will tell a program to jump to a different spot in a program, where the spot needs to have been marked with `label`. They both must have the same argument, which is simply a sequence of characters. For example, the following program will add the terms of the harmonic series until the term is less than some specified value `eps` and print the result.

```
harmsum(eps) := {
local S, j;
S := 0;
j := 0;
label(spot);
j := j + 1;
S := S + 1/j;
if (1/j >= eps) goto (spot);
print(S);
return 0;
}
```

## 11.4 Other useful instructions

### 11.4.1 Define a function with a variable number of arguments: `args`

The `args` (or `args (NULL)`) command returns the list of arguments of a function. The element at index 0 is the name of the function, the remaining are the arguments

passed to the function. This allows you to define functions with a variable number of arguments.

Note that `args()` will not work, the command must be called as `args` or `args(NULL)`. You can also use `(args)[0]` to get the name of the function and `(args)[1]` to get the first argument, etc., but the parentheses about `args` is mandatory.

Input:

```
testargs() := local y; y := args; return y[1];
```

then:

```
testargs(12,5)
```

Output:

```
12
```

Input:

```
total():=
  local s,a;
  a:=args;
  s:=0;
  for (k:=1;k<size(a);k++) {
    s:=s+a[k];
  }
  return s;
}
```

then:

```
total(1,2,3,4)
```

Output:

```
10
```

### 11.4.2 Assignments in a program

Recall that the `=<` operator will change the value of a single entry in a list or matrix by reference (see subsection 4.6.4). This make it efficient when changing many values, one at a time, in a list, as might be done by a program.

Care must be taken, since your intent might be changed when a program is compiled. For example, if a program contains

```
local a;
a := [0,1,2,3,4];
...
a[3] =< 33;
```

then in the compiled program, `a := [0,1,2,3,4]` will be replaced by `a := [0,1,2,33,4]`. To avoid this, you can assign a copy of the list to `a`; you could write

```
local a;
a := copy([0,1,2,3,4]);
...
a[3] =< 33;
```

Alternately, you could use a command which recreates a list every time the program is run, such as `makelist` or `$`, instead of copying a list; `a := makelist(n, n, 0, 4)` or `a := [n$ (n=0..4)]` can also be used in place of `a := [0,1,2,3,4]`.

### 11.4.3 Writing variable values to a file: `write`

You can save variable values to a file, to be read later, with the `write` command. This command takes a string for a file name and a list of variables to save. For example, if `a` has the value `3.14` and `b` has the value `7`, then

```
write("foo", a, b)
```

will create a file named “foo” with the contents

```
a:=(3.14);
b:=7;
```

If you wanted to store the first million digits of  $\pi$  to a file, you could set it equal to a variable

```
pidec := evalf(pi, 10^6);
```

and then store it in a file

```
write("p1million", pidec)
```

If you want to restore the values of variables saved this way, for example in a different session or if you have purged the variables, then you can use the `read` command, which simply takes a file name as a string. If, in a different session, you want to use the values of `a` and `b` above, the command

```
read("foo")
```

will give them the values `3.14` and `7` again. Note that this will silently overwrite any values that `a` and `b` might have had.

### 11.4.4 Writing output to a file: `fopen`, `fclose`, `fprint`

You can use the `fopen`, `fprint` and `fclose` commands to write output to a file instead of the screen.

To begin, you need to open the file and associate it with a variable. You use `fopen` for this, which takes a file name as argument. For example,

```
f := fopen("bar")
```

will create a file named “bar” (and so erase it if it already exists). You can use the `fprint` command to write to the file; it takes the variable representing the file as the first argument, followed by what you want to write to the file. For example, if `x` is equal to `9`, then

```
fprint(f, "x + 1 is ", x+1)
```

will put

```
"x + 1 is "10
```

in the file. Note that the quotation marks are inserted with the string. If you want to insert strings without quotes, then you can give `fprint` a second argument of `Unquoted`. If instead of the above `printf` you entered

```
fprint(f, Unquoted, "x + 1 is ", x+1)
```

then the file would contain

```
x + 1 is 10
```

Finally, after you have finished writing what you want into the file, you close the file with the `fclose` command,

```
fclose(f)
```

#### 11.4.5 Using strings as names: #

Variable and function names are symbols, namely sequences of characters, which are different from strings. For example, you can have a variable named `abc`, but not `"abc"`. The `#` operator will turn a string into a symbol; for example `(#"abc")` is the symbol `abc`.

If you enter

```
a := "abc"; (#a) := 3
```

or

```
(#"abc") := 3
```

then the variable `abc` will have the value 3. Entering `#a` will still give you `abc`; you can get 3 with `eval(#a)`.

Similarly for functions. If you enter

```
b := "sin"; (#b)(pi/4)
```

or

```
(#"sin")(pi/4)
```

you will get

```
1/sqrt(2)
```

which is `sin(pi/4)`.

### 11.4.6 Using strings as commands: `expr`

The `expr` command will let you use a string as a command. Given a string that expresses a valid command, `expr` will convert the string to the command and evaluate it. For example, if you enter

```
expr ("c := 1")
```

then the variable `c` will be set to 1. Similarly, if you enter

```
a := "ifactor(54)"
```

then

```
expr (a)
```

will return

```
2 * 3^3
```

which is the same thing as entering `ifactor(54)` directly.

You can also use `expr` to convert a string to a number. If a string is simply a number enclosed by quotation marks, then `expr` will return the number. For example,

```
expr ("123")
```

will return

```
123
```

In particular, the following strings will be converted to the appropriate number.

- A string consisting of the digits 0 through 9 which doesn't start with 0 will be converted to an integer. For example,

```
expr ("2133")
```

will return

```
2133
```

- A string consisting of the digits 0 through 9 which contains a single decimal point will be converted to a decimal. For example,

```
expr ("123.4")
```

will return

```
123.4
```

- A string consisting of the digits 0 through 9, possibly containing a single decimal point, followed by `e` and then more digits 0 through 9, will be read as a decimal in exponential notation. For example,

```
expr("1.23e4")
```

will return

12300.0

- A string consisting of the digits 0 through 7 which starts with 0 will be read as an integer base 8. For example,

```
expr("0176")
```

will return

126

since 176 base 8 equals 126 base 10.

- A string starting with 0x followed by digits 0 through 9 and letters a through f will be read as an integer base 16. For example,

```
expr("0x2a3f")
```

will return

10815

since 2a3f base 16 equals 10815 base 10.

- A string starting with 0b followed by digits 0 and 1 will be read as a binary integer. For example,

```
expr("0b1101")
```

will return

13

since 1101 base 2 equals 13 base 10.

#### 11.4.7 Converting an expression to a string: **string**

The **string** command can be used to convert an expression to a string. If you give it an expression as an argument, the expression will be evaluated and then converted to a string. For example, if you enter

```
string(ifactor(6))
```

the result will be the string

"2 \* 3"

This is the same thing as adding the empty string to the expression;

```
ifactor(6) + "
```

If you want to convert an unevaluated expression to a string, you can quote the expression. If you enter

```
string(quote(ifactor(6)))
```

then you will get the string

```
"ifactor(6)"
```

#### 11.4.8 Converting a real number into a string: **format**

The **format** command takes two arguments, a real number and a string used for formatting.

**format** returns the real number as a string with the requested formatting.

The formatting string can be one of the following:

- **f** (for *floating* format) followed by the number of digits to put after the decimal point.

Input:

```
format(sqrt(2)*10^10, "f13")
```

Output:

```
"14142135623.7308959960938"
```

- **s** (for *scientific* format) followed by the number of significant digits.

Input:

```
format(sqrt(2)*10^10, "s13")
```

Output:

```
"14142135623.73"
```

- **e** (for *engineering* format) followed by the number of digits to put after the decimal point, with one digit before the decimal points.

Input:

```
format(sqrt(2)*10^10, "e13")
```

Output:

```
"1.4142135623731e+10"
```

### 11.4.9 Working with the graphics screen: DispG, DispHome, ClrGraph, ClrDraw

Recall that the DispG screen contains the graphical output of Xcas. You can use the DispG command (without parentheses) to bring it up; entering

```
DispG;
```

will open the graphics screen.

To clear the graphics screen, you can use the ClrGraph command (equivalently, the ClrDraw command). If you enter

```
ClrGraph
```

or

```
ClrGraph()
```

then the DispG screen will be erased.

You can close the DispG screen with the DispHome command; entering

```
DispHome;
```

will make the graphics screen go away.

### 11.4.10 Pausing a program: Pause, WAIT

The Pause command (written without parentheses) will bring up a Pause informational window and pause Xcas until you click Close in the Pause window. If you enter Pause followed by a number, then Xcas will pause for that number of seconds; entering

```
Pause 10
```

will pause Xcas for 10 seconds.

The WAIT command will also pause Xcas; it requires an argument in parentheses. To pause Xcas for 10 seconds, you can enter

```
WAIT(10)
```

### 11.4.11 Dealing with errors: try, catch, throw, error, ERROR

Some commands produce errors, and if your program tries to run such a command it will halt with an error. To avoid this, you can use the try and catch commands. To use these, you put any potentially problematic statements in a block following try, and immediately after the block put catch with an argument of an unused symbol. If the try block doesn't produce an error, then catch and the block following catch will be ignored. If the try block does produce an error, then a string describing the error is assigned to the argument to catch, and the block following catch is evaluated. For example, the command

```
[[1,1]]*[[2,2]]
```

will produce an error saying *Error: Invalid dimension*. However,

```
try {[ [1,1] ] * [ [2,2] ] }
catch (err) {
    print("The error is " + err)
}
```

will not produce an error; instead it will print

```
The error is Error: Invalid dimension
```

With the following program

```
test(x) := {
    local y, str, err;
    try { y := [ [1,1] ] * x; str := "This produced a product."; }
    catch (err)
    {y := x;
     str := "This produced an error " + err + " The input is returned.";}
    print(str);
    return y;
}
```

if you enter

```
test([ [2], [2] ])
```

then

```
This produced a product.
```

will be printed and the result will be

```
[4]
```

. If you enter

```
test([ [2,2] ])
```

then

```
This produced an error Error: Invalid dimension The
input is returned.
```

will be printed and the result will be

```
[ [2,2] ]
```

You can use the `throw` command (or equivalently, the `error` or `ERROR` command) to generate an error and error string, possibly to be caught by `catch`. The `throw` command takes as argument a string, which will be used as the error message. For example, suppose you have the program

```
f(x) := {
    if (type(x) != DOM_INT)
        throw("Not an integer");
    else
        return x;
}
```

Then

$f(12)$

will simply return

12

since 12 is an integer, but

$f(1.2)$

will signal an error

Not an integer Error: Bad Argument Value

since 1.2 is not an integer. You can catch this error in other programs; the program

```
g(x) := {
  try(f(x)) catch(err) {x := 0;}
  return x;
}
```

will return  $x$  if  $x$  is an integer, but if  $x$  is not an integer,  $f(x)$  will give an error and so  $g(x)$  will return 0.

## 11.5 Debugging

### 11.5.1 Starting the debugger: `debug`, `sst`, `in`, `sst_in`, `cont`, `kill`, `break`, `breakpoint`, `halt`, `rmbrk`, `rmbreakpoint`, `watch`, `rmwtch`

To start the debugger, you give the `debug` command an argument of a function and its argument. That will bring up a debug window which contains a pane with the program with the current line highlighted, an `eval` entry box, a pane with the program including the breakpoints, a row of buttons, and a pane keeping track of the values of variables. By default, the value of all variables in the program are in this pane. The buttons are shortcuts for entering commands in the `eval` box, but you can enter other commands in the `eval` box to change the values of variables or to run a command in the context of the program.

**The `sst` button** This button will run the `sst` command, which takes no arguments and runs the highlighted line in the program before moving to the next line.

**The `in` button** This button will run the `sst_in` command, which takes no argument and runs one step in the program or a user defined function used in the program.

**The `cont` button** This button will run the `cont` command, which takes no arguments and runs the commands from the highlighted line to a breakpoint.

**The `kill` button** This button will run the `kill` command, which exits the debugger.

**The `break` button** This button will put the command `breakpoint` in the `eval` box, with default arguments of the current program and the current line. It sets a breakpoint at the given line of the given program. Alternatively, if you click on a line in the program in the top pane, you will get the `breakpoint` command with that program and the line you clicked on.

You can set a breakpoint when you write a program with the `halt()` command. When a program has a `halt` command, then running the program will bring up the debugger. If you want to debug the program, though, it is still better to use the `debug` command. Also, you should remove any `halt` commands when you are done debugging.

**The `rmbrk` button** This button will put the command `rmbreakpoint` in the `eval` box , with default arguments of the current program and the current line. It removes a breakpoint at the given line of the given program. Alternatively, you can click on the line in the program in the top pane with the bookmark you want to remove.

**The `watch` button** This button will put the command `watch` in the `eval` box, without the arguments filled in. It takes a list of variables as arguments, and will keep track of the values of these variables in the variable pane.

**The `rmwatch` button** This button will put the command `rmwatch` in the `eval` box without the arguments filled in. The arguments are the variables you want to remove from the watch list.



# Chapter 12

## Two-dimensional Graphics

### 12.1 Introduction

#### 12.1.1 Points, vectors and complex numbers

A point in the Cartesian plane is described with an ordered pair  $(a, b)$ . It has  $x$ -coordinate (abscissa)  $a$  and  $y$ -coordinate (ordinate)  $b$ .

A vector from one point  $(a_1, b_1)$  to another  $(a_2, b_2)$  has associated ordered pair  $(a_2 - a_1, b_2 - b_1)$ ; so the abscissa is  $a_2 - a_1$  and the ordinate is  $b_2 - b_1$ .

A complex number  $a + bi$  can be associated with the point  $(a, b)$  in the Cartesian plane. The complex number is called the *affix* of the point.

A point in Xcas is specified with the `point` command (see section 12.6.2), which takes as argument either two real numbers  $a, b$  or a complex number  $a + bi$ . In this chapter, when a command take a point as an argument, the point can either be the result of the `point` command or simply a complex number.

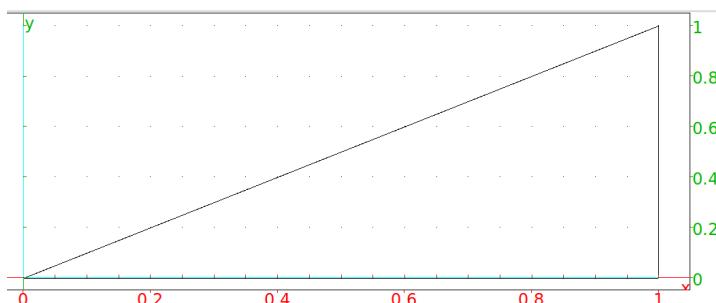
An interactive graphic screen opens whenever a geometric object is drawn, or with the command `Alt+G`. The objects on the screen can also be created and manipulated with the mouse.

As an example (to be explained in more detail later), the `triangle` command draws a triangle; the result will be a graphics screen containing axes, the triangle and a control panel on the right.

Input:

```
triangle(0,1,1+i)
```

Output:



## 12.2 Basic commands

### 12.2.1 Clear the DispG screen: `erase`

The DispG screen records all graphic commands since the beginning of the session or the screen was last erased. The Alt-D command (or the menu command Cfg ► Show ► DispG) brings up this screen.

The `erase` command clears the DispG screen without restarting the session.

Entering

Input:

```
erase
```

or:

```
erase()
```

clears the DispG screen. This can be useful for commands such as `graph2tex`, which only takes into account the objects on the DispG screen.

### 12.2.2 Toggle the axes: `switch_axes`

The `switch_axes` command shows, hides or toggles the coordinate axes on the graphics screen depending on whether the argument is 1, 0 or empty. (This can also be controlled by a `show axes` checkbox in the configuration panel brought up with the `cfg` button on the graphic screen control panel.)

Entering

Input:

```
switch_axes()
```

toggles whether or not the coordinate axes are shown in subsequent graphic screens.

Rather than toggling,

Input:

```
switch_axes(1)
```

causes all later graphic screens to have the axes, and

Input:

```
switch_axes(0)
```

causes all later graphic screens to omit the axes.

When the axes are visible, they have tick marks whose separation is determined by the X-tick and Y-tick values on the graphic configuration screen. Setting these values to 0 removes the axes.

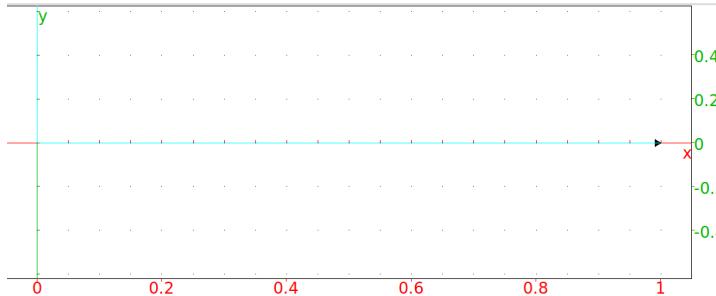
### 12.2.3 Draw unit vectors in the plane: `Ox_2d_unit_vector` `Oy_2d_unit_vector` `frame_2d`

The `Ox_2d_unit_vector` command draws the unit vector in the *x*-direction on a plane.

Input:

```
Ox_2d_unit_vector()
```

Output:



Similarly, the `Oy_2d_unit_vector` command draws the unit vector in the  $y$  direction. The `frame_2d` command simultaneously draws both unit vectors.

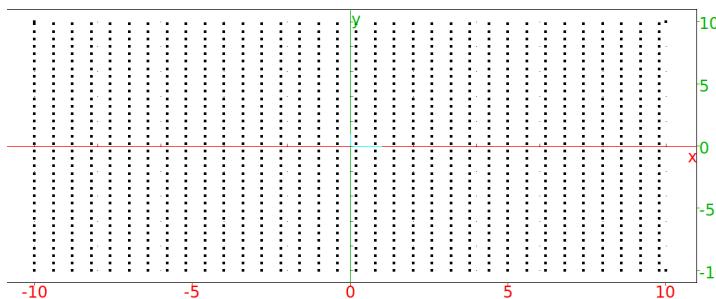
#### 12.2.4 Draw dotted paper: `dot_paper`

The `dot_paper` command draws dotted paper. This command takes three mandatory arguments and two optional arguments. The first argument is the spacing in the  $x$  direction, the second argument is the angle from the horizontal to draw the dots, and the third argument is the spacing in the  $y$  direction. By default, the dots extend in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions for the distances given in the graphic configuration page accessible from the main menu; the optional fourth and fifth arguments `x=xmin..xmax` and `y=ymin..ymax` change the size of the dotted paper.

Input:

```
dot_paper(0.6, pi/2, 0.6)
```

Output:



Unchecking `Show Axes` on the `cfg` screen removes the axes.

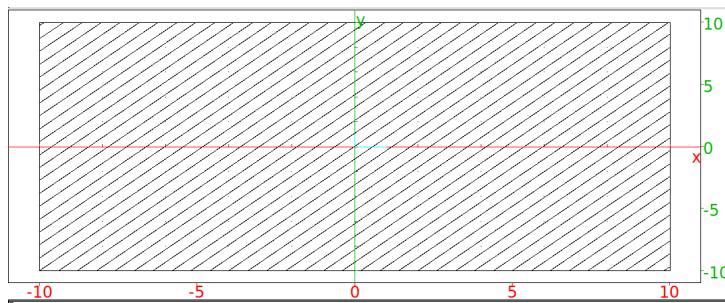
#### 12.2.5 Draw lined paper: `line_paper`

The `line_paper` command draws lined paper. This command takes two mandatory arguments and two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are the spacing in the  $x$  direction and the angle from the horizontal to draw the lines. The optional third and fourth arguments, `x=xmin..xmax` and `y=ymin..ymax`, determine the size of the lined paper.

Input:

```
line_paper(0.6,pi/3)
```

Output:



Unchecking Show Axes on the cfg screen removes the axes.

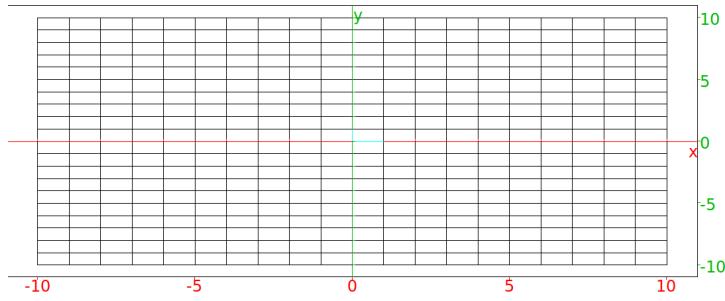
### 12.2.6 Draw grid paper: `grid_paper`

The `grid_paper` command draws grid paper. This command takes three mandatory arguments and two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are the spacing in the  $x$  direction, the the angle from the horizontal to draw the grid, and the spacing in the  $y$  direction. The optional fourth and fifth arguments,  $x=x_{\min}\dots x_{\max}$  and  $y=y_{\min}\dots y_{\max}$ , restrict the size of the grid.

Input:

```
grid_paper(1,pi/2,1)
```

Output:



Unchecking Show Axes on the cfg screen removes the axes.

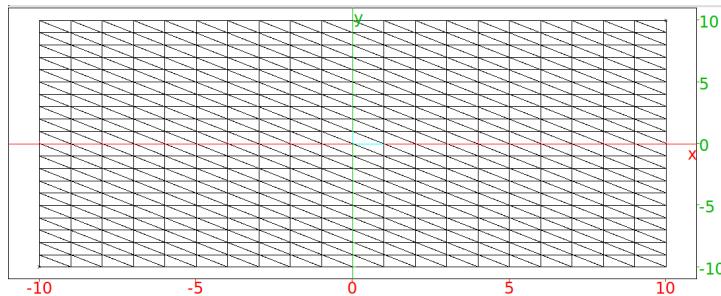
### 12.2.7 Draw triangular paper: `triangle_paper`

The `triangle_paper` command draws triangular paper. This command takes three mandatory and two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are the spacing in the  $x$  direction, the angle from the horizontal, and the spacing in the  $y$  direction. The optional fourth and fifth arguments,  $x=x_{\min}\dots x_{\max}$  and  $y=y_{\min}\dots y_{\max}$ , restrict the size of the grid.

Input:

```
triangle_paper(1,pi/2,1)
```

Output:



Unchecking `Show Axes` on the `cfg` screen removes the axes.

## 12.3 Display features of graphics

### 12.3.1 Graphic features

Graphic objects and graphic screens can have features, such as labels and colors, that are only included when requested, and other features, such as line width, which are configurable. Some features will be global, meaning that they will apply to the entire graphic screen, and some will be local, meaning that they will only apply to individual objects.

### 12.3.2 Parameters for changing features

Graphical features are changed by giving appropriate values to certain parameters. Several values can be given at once with an expression of the form `feature = value1 + value2 + ...`. Some values can be set using optional arguments to graphic commands, which will set the feature locally; namely, it will only apply to that particular graphic object. Some values can be specified at the beginning of a line, which will set the feature globally; it will apply to all the graphic objects created on that line. For some features, both options are available.

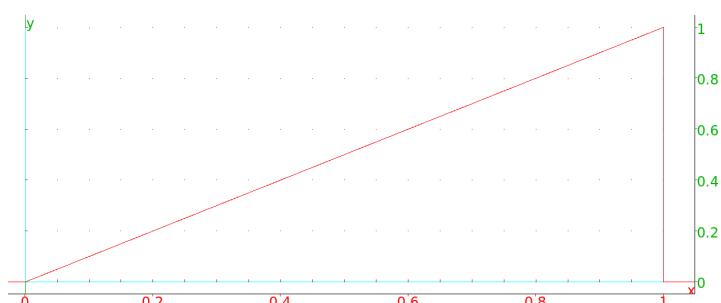
#### Parameters for local features

Commands which create graphic objects, such as `triangle`, can have optional arguments to change a features of the object. For example, the argument `color = red` will make an object red.

Input:

```
triangle(0,1,1+i,color=red)
```

Output:



The features and their possible values are:

**display or color** These two parameter names have the same effect. They control the following features.

**Color** The following values will change the color:

- An integer from 0 to 381.

Integers from 0 to 255 correspond to the color palette, integers from 256 to 381 will be the spectrum of colors.

The program

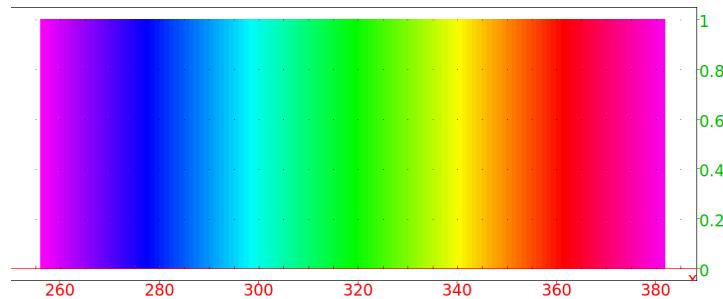
```
rainbow() := {
    local j, C;
    C := [];
    for (j := 256; j < 382; j++) {
        C := append(C, square(j, j+1, color=j+filled));
    }
}
```

will show the colors;

Input:

```
rainbow();
```

Output:



The number of a color is its  $x$ -coordinate. To see just one color, say the color corresponding to  $n$  for  $256 \leq n \leq 381$ , enter

Input:

```
rainbow() [n-256]
```

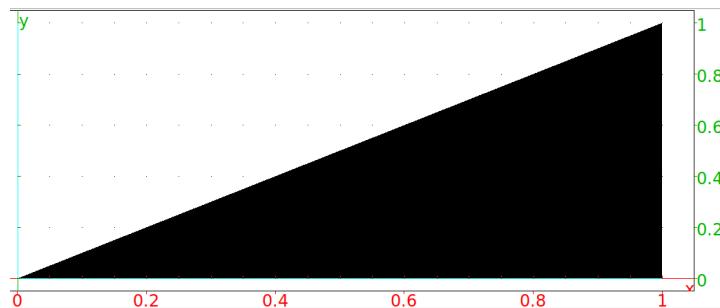
- The names black, white, red, blue, green, magenta, cyan or yellow.

**Fill** The `filled` value creates a solid object.

Input:

```
triangle(0, 1, 1+i, display=filled)
```

Output:



**Point markers** By default, points are drawn with a small cross. The following (self-explanatory) values change the marker.

```
rhombus_point
square_point
cross_point
star_point
plus_point
point_point
triangle_point
invisible_point
```

**Point width** The values `point_width_1`, ..., `point_width_8` change the thickness of the lines in the point markers.

**Line style** The following (self-explanatory) values change the style of lines.

```
solid_line
dash_line
dashdot_line
dashdotdot_line
cap_flat_line
cap_round_line
cap_square_line
```

**Line widths** The values `line_width_1`, ..., `line_width_8` change the thickness of the lines.

**thickness** This controls line thickness, it can be an integer from 1 to 7.

**nstep** This sets the number of sampling points for three-dimensional objects.

**tstep** This sets the step size of the parameter when drawing a one parameter parametric plot.

**ustep** This sets the step size of the first parameter when drawing a two-parameter parametric plot.

**vstep** This sets the step size of the second parameter when drawing a two-parameter parametric plot.

**xstep** This sets the step size of the  $x$  variable.

**ystep** This sets the step size of the  $y$  variable.

**zstep** This sets the step size of the  $z$  variable.

**frames** This sets the number of graphs computed when an animated graph is created with the `animate` or `animate3d` command.

**legend** This adds a legend to a graphic object and should be a string. It is probably most useful when that object is a point or a polygon. If the object is a polygon, the legend will be placed in the middle of the last side. Other parameters for the graphic object will specify the color or position of the legend.

**gl\_texture** This sets an image file to be put on the graphic object; it should be the name of the file.

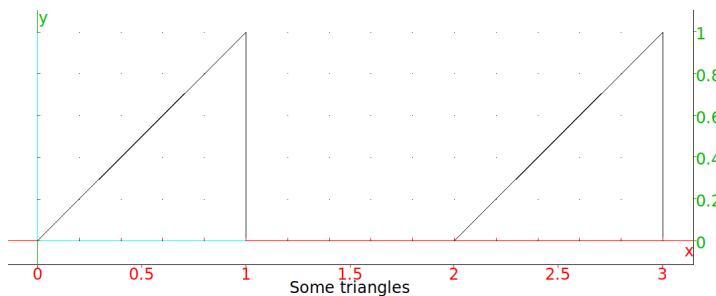
### Parameters for global features

Parameters set at the beginning of a line change features on the entire graphic screen. It only takes effect when the line ends with a graphic command. For example, starting the line with `title=title string` will give the graphic screen a title.

Input:

```
title = "Some triangles"; triangle(0,1,1+i);
          triangle(2,3,3+i);
```

Output:



The parameters for global features and their possible values are:

**axes** This determines whether axes are shown or hidden; a value of 0 or `false` hides the axes, a value of 1 or `true` shows the axes.

**labels** This sets labels for the axes; it should be a list of two strings `["x axis label", "y axis label"]`.

**label** This puts labels on the graphic screen in the following ways.

- To set the units on the axes, it can be a list of two or three strings, `["x units", "y units"]` or `["x units", "y units", "z units"]`.
- To place a string at a particular point, it can be a list of two integers followed by a string. The integers determine the point, starting from `[0, 0]` in the top left of the screen.

**title** This sets the title for the graphic window, it should be a string.

**gl\_texture** This sets the wallpaper of the graphic window to be an image file, it should be the name of the file.

**gl\_x\_axis\_name,gl\_x\_axis\_name,gl\_x\_axis\_name** These set the names of the axes.

**gl\_x\_axis\_unit,gl\_x\_axis\_unit,gl\_x\_axis\_unit** These set the units of the axes.

**gl\_x\_axis\_color,gl\_x\_axis\_color,gl\_x\_axis\_color** These set the colors of the axes labels; they take the same color options as the local parameter `color`.

**gl\_ortho** This ensures that the graph is orthonormal when it is set to 1.

**gl\_x,gl\_y,gl\_z** These define the framing of the graph; they should be intervals  $\text{min} \dots \text{max}$ . (They are not compatible with interactive graphs.)

**gl\_xtick,gl\_ytick,gl\_ztick** These determine the spacing of the ticks on the axes.

**gl\_shownames** This shows or hides object names, it can be `true` or `false`.

**gl\_rotation** This sets the axis of rotation for three-dimensional scene animations; it should be a direction vector  $[x, y, z]$ .

**gl\_quaternion** This sets the quaternion for viewing three-dimensional scenes; it should be a fourtuple  $[x, y, z, t]$ . (This is not compatible with interactive graphs.)

### 12.3.3 Commands for global display features

#### Add a legend: `legend`

The `legend` command takes two arguments and an optional third. The arguments are:

- A position to put the legend. This can either be a point or a list of two integers giving the number of pixels from the upper left hand corner.
- The legend itself, a string or a variable.
- An optional third parameter indicating where to put the legend relative to the point. By default, it will be to the upper right of the point (`quadrant1`), but you can specify `quadrant1`, `quadrant2`, `quadrant3` or `quadrant4`.

For example, to put "hello" to the upper left of the point (1, 1):

Input:

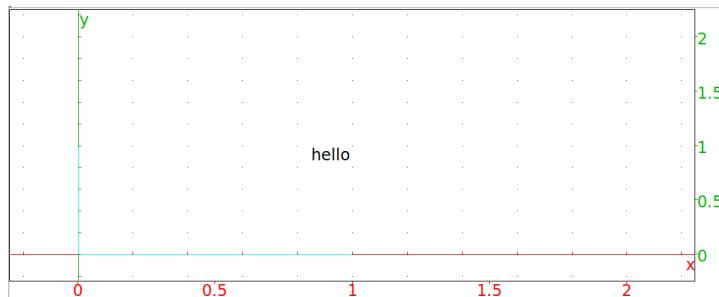
```
legend(1+i, "hello", quadrant3)
```

or

Input:

```
legend(1+i, quadrant3, "hello")
```

Output:



### Change various features:`display`, `color`

The `display` command changes the properties of graphics; the same properties that can also be changed with the `display` and `color` parameters. (See section 12.3.2.) The `color` command is the same as the `display` command.

The `display` command can draw objects with specified properties. In this case, the first argument will be a command to create the object and the second argument will be a value for the `display` or `color` parameter. Both

Input:

```
display(triangle(0,1,1+i), red)
```

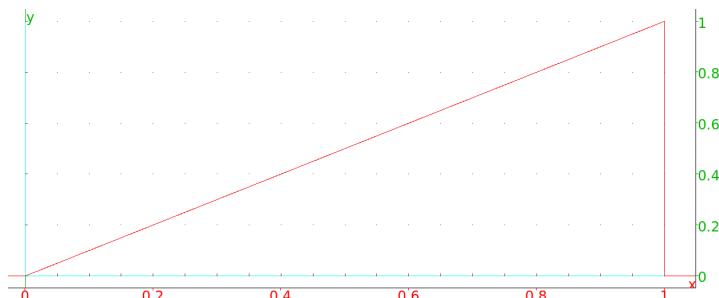
and

Input:

```
triangle(0,1,1+i, display=red)
```

draw

Output:



Similarly, both

Input:

```
triangle(0,1,1+i, display=filled)
```

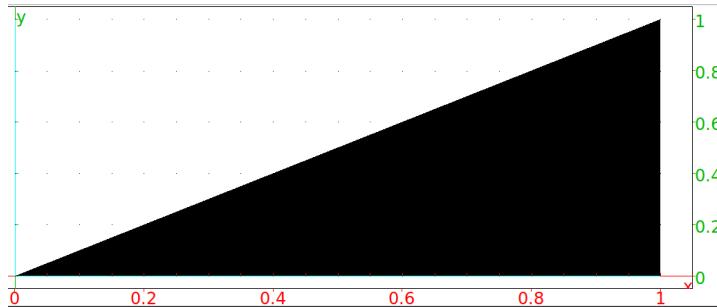
and

Input:

```
display(triangle(0,1,1+i), filled)
```

draw

Output:

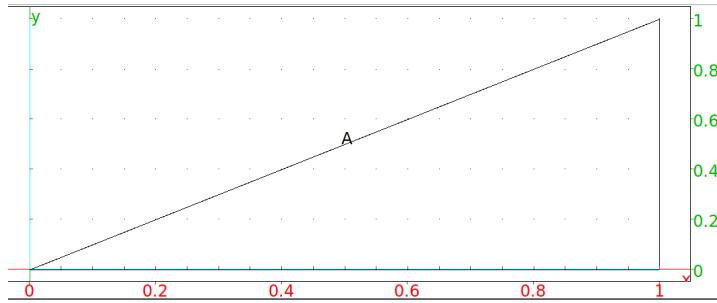


The `display` command can also take a second argument of `hidden_name`. By default, if a geometric object is named, the drawing is labeled.

Input:

```
A := triangle(0,1,1+i)
```

Output:

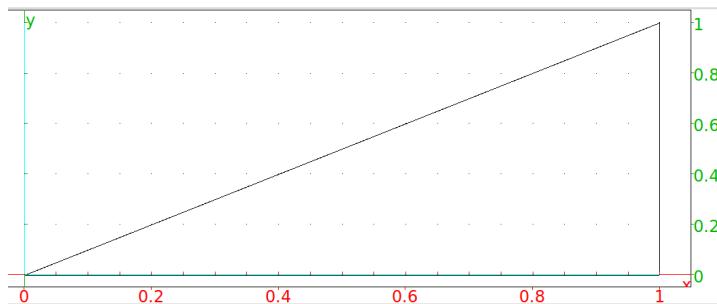


Creating the object with the `display` command and the `hidden_name` argument will draw it without the label.

Input:

```
display(A := triangle(0,1,1+i),hidden_name)
```

Output:



The `display` command can also be used without drawing an object, such as `display(hidden_name)` or `display(filled)`. In this case it will be a global command; the display effect will apply to all objects afterwards. Entering `display(0)` will reset the display parameters; afterwards, for example, the colors will be black, the figures won't be filled, and the objects will have labels.

## 12.4 Define geometric objects without drawing them: `nodisp`

The `nodisp` command will define an object without displaying it. Setting a variable to a graphic object draws the object.

Input:

```
C := point(1+i)
```

will define the point `C` as well as draw it. Setting a variable to a graphic object inside the `nodisp` command will not draw the object.

Input:

```
nodisp(C:= point(1+i))
```

will define the point `C` but not display it. This is equivalent to following the command with `:;`,

Input:

```
C := point(1+i);
```

To define a point as above and display it without the label, enter the point's name;

Input:

```
C
```

Alternatively, define the point within an `eval` statement;

Input:

```
eval(C := point(1+i))
```

defines `C` as the point, displays the point, but doesn't display the label. To later display the point with a label, use the `legend` command.

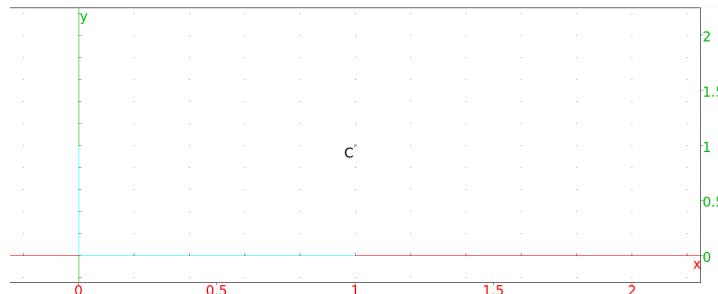
Input:

```
legend(C, "C")
```

or:

```
point(affix(C), legend="C")
```

Output:



In this case, the string "C" can be replaced with any other string as a label. Alternatively, redefine the variable as itself;

Input:

```
C := C
```

prints `C` with its label.

## 12.5 Geometric demonstrations: assume

Variables should be unspecified to demonstrate a general geometric result, but need to have specific values when drawing. There are a couple of different approaches to deal with this.

One approach is to use the `assume` command. If a variable is *assumed* to have a value, then that value will be used in graphics but the variable will still be unspecified for calculations. For example,

Input:

```
assume(a = 2.1)
```

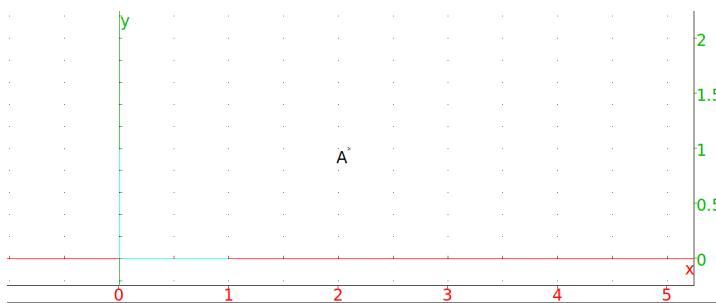
then

Input:

```
A := point(a + i)
```

will draw a point at the coordinate (2.1, 1),

Output:



but the variable *a* will still be treated as a variable in calculations;

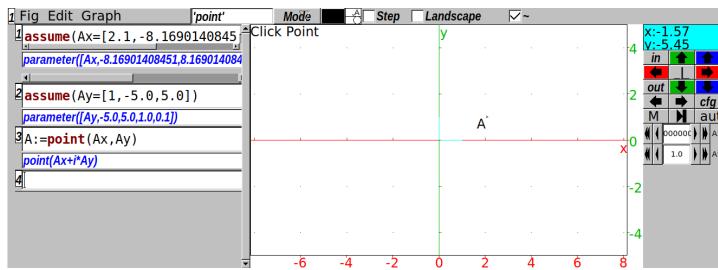
Input:

```
distance(0, A)
```

Output:

```
sqrt((-a)^2 + 1)
```

Another approach would be to use `point` or `pointer` mode in a geometry screen. If there isn't a geometry screen showing, the command `Alt-G` or the `Geo►New figure 2d` menu will open a screen. Clicking on the Mode button right above the graphic screen and choosing `pointer` or `point` will put the screen in `pointer` or `point` mode. If a point is defined and displayed, such as with `A := point(2.1 + i)`, then clicking on the name of the point (`A` in this case) with the right mouse button will bring up a configuration screen. As long as there is a point defined with non-symbolic values, there will be a `symb` box on the configuration screen. Selecting the `symb` box and choosing `OK` will be equivalent to the commands `assume(Ax=[2.1, -8.16901408451, 8.16901408451])` and `assume(Ay = [1, -5.0, 5.0])`, this will bring up two lines beneath the arrows to the right of the screen which can be used to change the assumed values of `Ax` and `Ay`. Also, the point `A` will be redefined as `point(Ax, Ay)`.



## 12.6 Points in the plane

### 12.6.1 Points and complex numbers

The *affix* of a point  $(a, b)$  in the plane is the complex number  $a + bi$ . In this section, when a command takes points as arguments, the points can be specified by a pair or by a complex number.

### 12.6.2 The point in the plane: `point`

See section 13.4.1 for points in space.

In the 2-d geometry screen in point mode, clicking on a point with the left mouse button will choose that point. Points chosen this way are automatically named, first with A, then B, etc.

Alternatively, the `point` command chooses a point, where the point  $(a, b)$  is specified by either the two coordinates  $a, b$ , a list  $[a, b]$  of the coordinates, or the affix  $a + b \cdot i$ .

Input:

```
A := point(2, 1)
```

or:

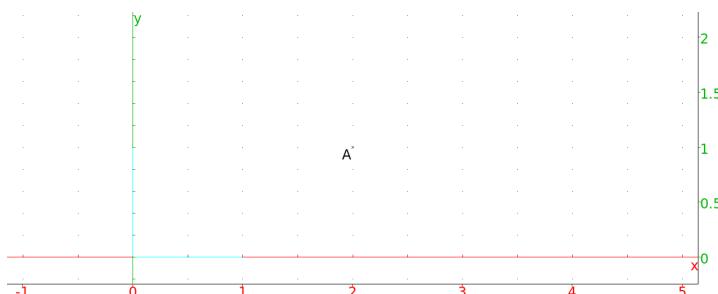
```
A := point([2, 1])
```

or

Input:

```
A := point(2 + i)
```

Output:



(The marker used to indicate the point can be changed; see section 12.3.2.)

If the point command has two numbers for arguments, at least one of which is complex but not real, then it will choose two points. Entering  
Input:

```
A := point(1, 2*i)
```

or:

```
A := point([1, 2*i])
```

will choose two points named A; one with affix 1 and one with affix 2i.

### 12.6.3 The difference and sum of two points in the plane:`+`, `-`

Let A and B be two points in the plane, with affixes  $a_1+ia_2$  and  $b_1+ib_2$  respectively.  
Input:

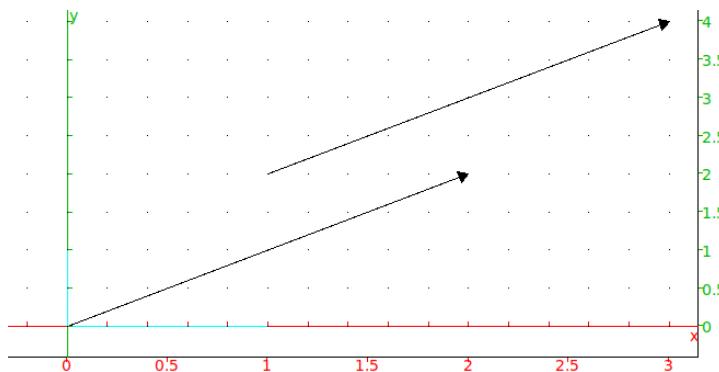
```
A := point(1 + 2*i); B := point(3+4*i)
```

- The difference B-A returns the affix  $(b_1 - a_1) + i(b_2 - a_2)$ , which represents the vector AB.

Input:

```
vector(A, B); vector(point(0), point(B-A))
```

Output:

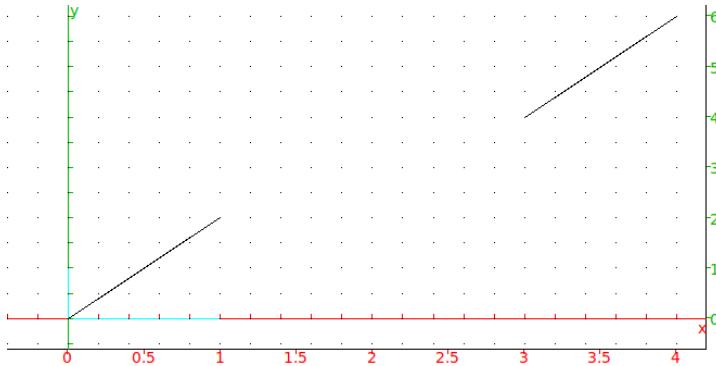


- The sum B+A returns the affix  $(b_1+a_1)+i(b_2+a_2)$ . If D := point(B+A), then BD = OA.

Input:

```
D := point(B + A);
segment(B, D); segment(point(0), A)
```

Output:



Note that  $-A$  is the point symmetric to  $A$  with respect to the origin.

The sum of three points  $A + B + C$  can be viewed as the translate of  $C$  by the vector  $A + B$ . So if  $A$  or  $B$  contains parameters, you should write this as  $C + (A + B)$  or `evalc(A + B) + C`.

#### 12.6.4 Define random points in the plane: `point2d`

The `point2d` command defines a random point whose coordinates are integers between -5 and 5. This command takes a name as an argument and assigns the point to the name. For example,

Input:

```
point2d(A)
```

assigns  $A$  to a random point. Once assigned, the point is fixed. The command can also take a sequence of names, and will assign separate random points to each name. For example, to generate a random triangle, first generate three random points

Input:

```
point2d(A, B, C)
```

and then use them for a triangle

Input:

```
triangle(A, B, C)
```

#### 12.6.5 Points in polar coordinates: `polar_point`, `point_polar`

To specify a point in polar coordinates, enter the polar representation of complex numbers. For example, the command

Input:

```
point(2*exp(i * pi/4))
```

draws the point with polar coordinates  $r = 2$ ,  $\theta = \pi/4$ . The `polar_point` command does this in an easier way, it takes  $r$  and  $\theta$  as arguments. The command

Input:

```
polar_point(2, pi/4)
```

creates the same point as before.

### 12.6.6 Find a point of intersection of two objects in the plane: `single_inter`

See section 13.4.3 for single points of intersection of objects in space.

The `single_inter` (or the `line_inter`) command takes two geometric objects as arguments and returns one of the points of intersection of the two objects.

The `single_inter` command optionally takes a third argument, which can be a point or a list of points. If the optional argument is a single point, then `single_inter` returns the point of intersection *closest* to the optional argument. If the optional argument is a list of points, then `single_inter` tries to return a point of intersection not in the list.

For example, the unit circle `circle(0,1)` and line `line(-1,i)` intersect at the points  $(-1, 0)$  and  $(0, 1)$ . Entering

Input:

```
single_inter(circle(0,1),line(-1,i))
```

draws the point  $(-1, 0)$ . To draw the other point, enter

Input:

```
single_inter(circle(0,1),line(-1,i),[-1])
```

and Xcas will draw  $(0, 1)$ . Similarly, since this second point of intersection is closest to  $(0, 1/2)$ , entering

Input:

```
single_inter(circle(0,1),line(-1,i),i/2)
```

also draws the second point.

### 12.6.7 Find the points of intersection of two geometric objects in the plane: `inter`

See section 13.4.4 for points of intersection of objects in space.

The `inter` command takes two geometric objects as arguments and returns a list of the points of intersection of the two objects.

The `inter` command optionally takes a point as a third argument. In this case, `inter` returns the point of intersection *closest* to this argument.

For example, entering

Input:

```
inter(circle(0,1),line(1,i))
```

draws the points at  $(1, 0)$  and  $(0, 1)$ . To get just one of the points, use the usual list indices.

Input:

```
inter(circle(0,1),line(1,i))[0]
```

draws just one of the points. To get the point closest to  $(0, 1/2)$ , enter

Input:

```
inter(circle(0,1),line(1,i),i/2)
```

### 12.6.8 Find the orthocenter of a triangle in the plane: `orthocenter`

The `orthocenter` command takes a triangle (or three points representing the vertices of a triangle) as argument and returns the orthocenter of the triangle. Entering Input:

```
orthocenter(triangle(0,1+i,-1+i))
```

or

Input:

```
orthocenter(0,1+i,-1+i)
```

draws the point  $(0, 0)$ , the orthocenter of the triangle.

### 12.6.9 Find the midpoint of a segment in the plane: `midpoint`

See section 13.4.5 for midpoints in space.

The `midpoint` command takes two points (or a list of two points) as arguments and draws the midpoint of the segment determined by these points.

### 12.6.10 The barycenter in the plane: `barycenter`

See section 13.4.7 for barycenters of objects in space.

The `barycenter` command draws the barycenter of a set of weighted points. The points and their weights (real numbers) can be given in three different ways.

1. A sequence of lists of length two.

The first element of each list is a point and the second element is the weight of the point.

2. A matrix with two columns.

The first column of the matrix contains the points and the second column contains the corresponding weights.

3. A matrix with two rows and more than two columns.

The first row contains the points and the second row the corresponding weights.

For example, the following commands will draw the barycenter of the points  $(1, 1)$  with weight 1,  $(1, -1)$  with weight 1 and  $(1, 4)$  with weight 2.

Input:

```
barycenter([1 + i,1],[1 - i,1],[1 + 4*i, 2])
```

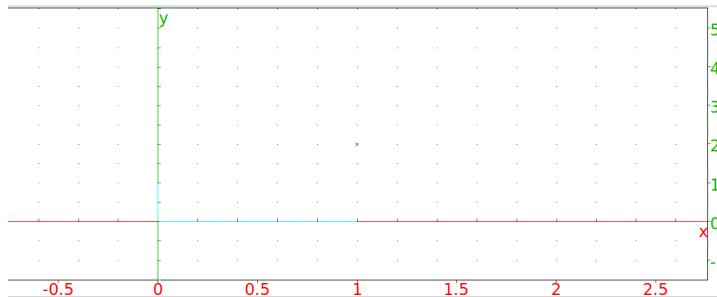
or:

```
barycenter([[1 + i,1],[1 - i,1],[1 + 4*i, 2]])
```

or:

```
barycenter([[1 + i, 1 - i, 1 + 4*i],[1,1,2]])
```

Output:



### 12.6.11 The isobarycenter of $n$ points in the plane: `isobarycenter`

See section 13.4.6 for isobarycenters of objects in space.

The `isobarycenter` command takes a list (or sequence) of points and draws the isobarycenter, which is the barycenter when all the points are equally weighted.

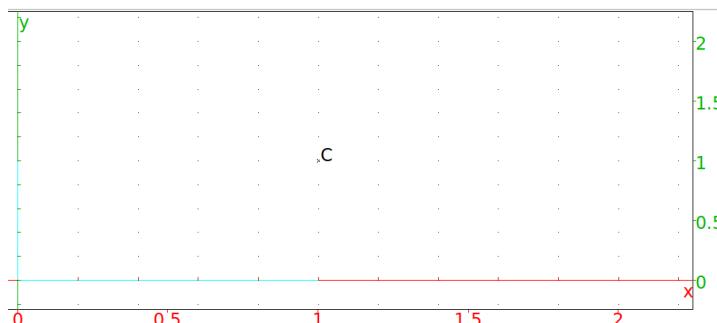
### 12.6.12 The center of a circle in the plane: `center`

The `center` command takes as argument a circle and returns and draws the center.

Input:

```
C := center(circle(point(1+i), 1))
```

Output:



### 12.6.13 The vertices of a polygon in the plane: `vertices`, `vertices_abc`

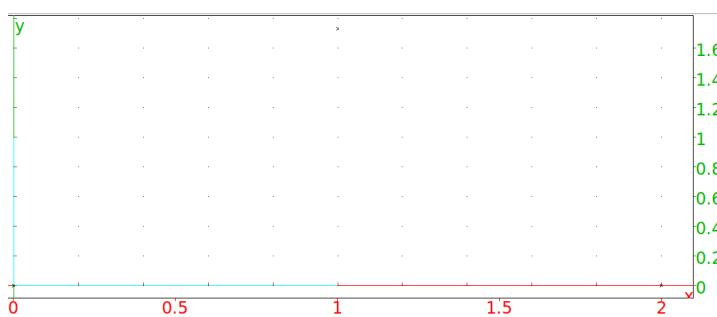
The `vertices` command (or `vertices_abc`) takes as argument a polygon.

`vertices` returns a list of the vertices of the polygon and draws them.

Input:

```
vertices(equilateral_triangle(0, 2))
```

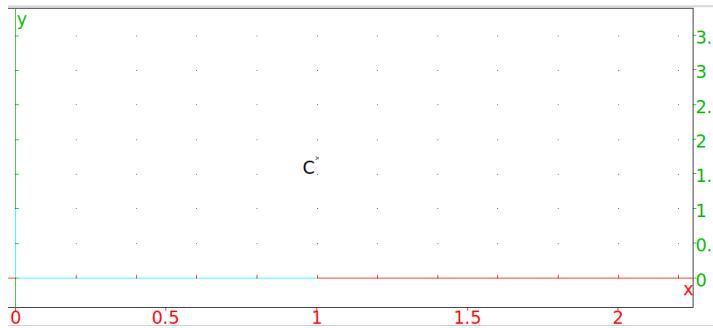
Output:



Input:

```
C := vertices(equilateral_triangle(0, 2)) [2]
```

Output:



#### 12.6.14 The vertices of a polygon in the plane, closed: `vertices_abca`

The `vertices_abca` command takes as argument a polygon.

`vertices_abca` returns the “closed” list of vertices (it repeats the beginning vertex) and draws them.

#### 12.6.15 A point on a geometric object in the plane: `element`

The `element` command is most useful in a two-dimensional geometry screen; it creates objects that are restricted to a geometric figure.

`element` takes different types of arguments:

- An interval  $a..b$  and an optional initial value (by default  $(a + b)/2$ ) and step size (by default  $(b - a)/100$ ).

This creates a parameter restricted to the interval, with the given initial value and whose value can be changed in the given step sizes.

For example, the command `t := element(0..pi)` creates a parameter `t` which can take on values between 0 and  $\pi$  and has initial value  $\pi/2$ . It also creates a slider labeled `t` which can be used to change the values. The values of any later formulas involving `t` will change with `t`.

- A curve and an optional initial value (by default 1/2).

This creates a point which will be restricted to the curve, the initial position of the point is determined by setting the parameter (in the default parameterization of the object) to the initial value. If the point can be moved by the mouse (as it can when the geometry screen is in `Pointer` mode), then the motion will be restricted to the geometric object.

For example, the command `A := element(circle(0, 2))` creates a point labeled `A` whose position is restricted to the circle of radius 2 centered at the origin. Since the circle has default parameterization  $2 \exp(it)$ , `A` starts out at  $2 \exp(i/2)$ .

- A polygon or polygonal line `PL` with  $n$  sides and `[floor(t), frac(t)]`, where  $t$  is a variable previously defined by `t = element(0..n)`.

This creates a point restricted to the polygonal line. With the sides numbered starting at 0, the value of `floor(t)` determines which side the point is on, and the value of `frac(t)` determines how far along the side the point is.

If a point  $A$  (corresponding to the complex number  $a$ ) is defined as an element of a curve  $C$  and  $B$  is a point (corresponding to the complex number  $b$ ), then  $A + B$  will be a point on  $C$ ; it will be the projection onto  $C$  of the point corresponding to  $a + b$ .

Note that in this case, if  $B'$  is another point, then  $A + (B - B')$  isn't the same as  $A + B - B'$ . The expression  $A + (B - B')$  is interpreted as adding the point  $A$ , defined as a point on  $C$ , to the point  $B - B'$ , and so the sum will be on  $C$ . The expression  $A + B - B'$  is interpreted as  $(A + B) - B'$ , and so the point  $B'$  is not being added to a point defined as an element of the curve  $C$ , and so this sum may not be on  $C$ .

## 12.7 Lines in plane geometry

### 12.7.1 Lines and directed lines in the plane: `line`

See section 13.5.1 for lines in space.

The `line` command returns and draws a directed line given one of the following types of arguments:

- Two points or a list of two points.  
The direction of the line is from the first point to the second point.
- A point and a slope given by `slope=value`.  
The direction of the line is determined by the slope.
- A point and direction vector (in the form `[u1, u2]`).  
The direction of the line is given by the direction vector.
- An equation of the form `a*x+b*y+c=0`.  
The direction of the line is given by `[b, -a]`.

Input:

```
line(0, 1+i)
```

or:

```
line(1+i, slope=1)
```

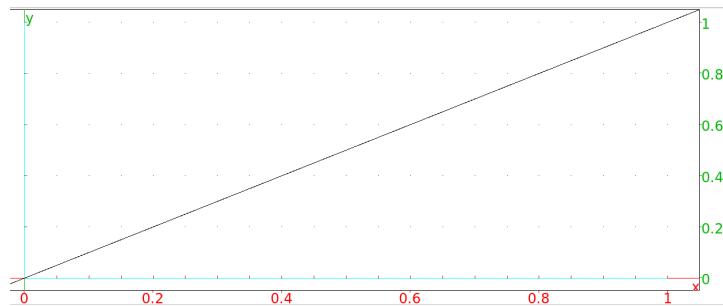
or:

```
line(1+i, [3, 3])
```

or:

```
line(y - x = 0)
```

Output:



**Warning:** To draw a line with an additional argument for color (such as `color = blue`), this argument must be the third argument. In particular, for a list of two points to specify a line in this command, the list must be turned into a sequence, such as with `op`. For example, given a list `L` of two points (possibly the result of a different command) which determines a line, to draw the line `blue` enter `line(op(L), color=blue)`; entering `line(L, color=blue)` results in an error.

### 12.7.2 Half-lines in the plane: `half_line`

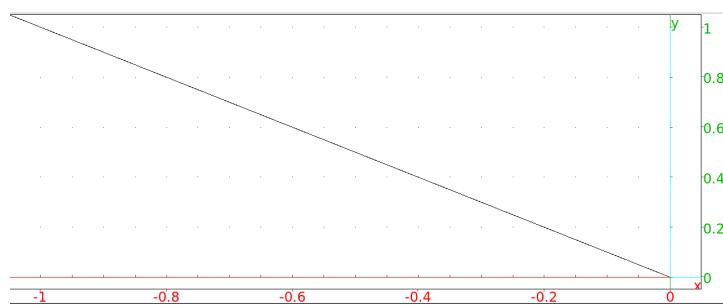
See section 13.5.2 for half-lines in space.

The `half_line` command takes as argument two points or a list of two points.

`half_line` returns and draws the ray from the first point through the second.  
Input:

```
half_line(0,-1+i)
```

Output:



### 12.7.3 Line segments in the plane: `segment` `Line`

See section 13.5.3 for segments in space.

The `segment` command and the `Line` command draw line segments. (The `segment` command can also draw vectors, see section 12.7.4.)

`segment` takes as argument two points or a list of two points.

`segment` returns the corresponding line segment and draws it.

`Line` takes as argument four real numbers, the first two represent the coordinates of the beginning of the segment and the last two represent the end.

`Line` returns the line segment and draws it.

**Example.**

Input:

```
segment (-1, 1+i)
```

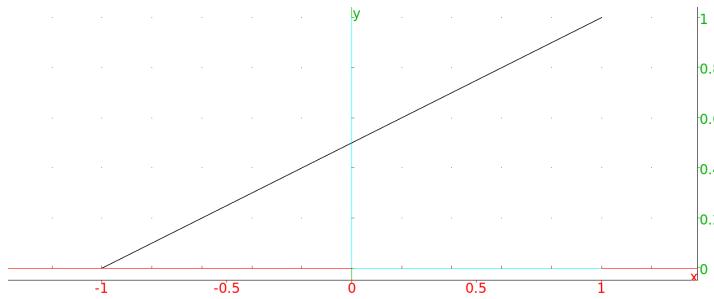
or:

```
segment (point (-1), point (1, 1))
```

or:

```
Line (-1, 0, 1, 1)
```

Output:

**12.7.4 Vectors in the plane: `segment` vector**

See section 13.5.4 for vectors in space.

The `segment` and `vector` commands return and draw vectors. (The `segment` command can also draw line segments, see section 12.7.3.)

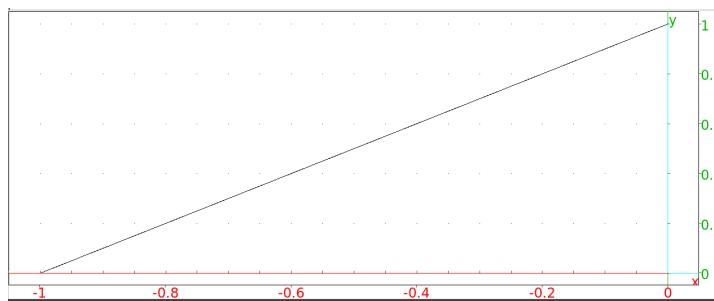
`segment` takes as arguments a point and a vector. The point indicates the beginning of the result and the vector (given as a list of coordinates) the direction.

`segment` returns and draws the corresponding vector as a line segment. If the arguments are `P` and `V`, then command draws the segment from `P` to `P+V`.

Input:

```
segment([-1, 0], [1, 1])
```

Output:



`vector` takes as arguments two points (or a list with two points) or a point and a vector.

`vector` returns and draws the corresponding vector. If the arguments are two points, the vector goes from the first to the second point; if the arguments are a point and a vector, then the vector starts at the given point.

Input:

```
vector([-1,0],[1,i])
```

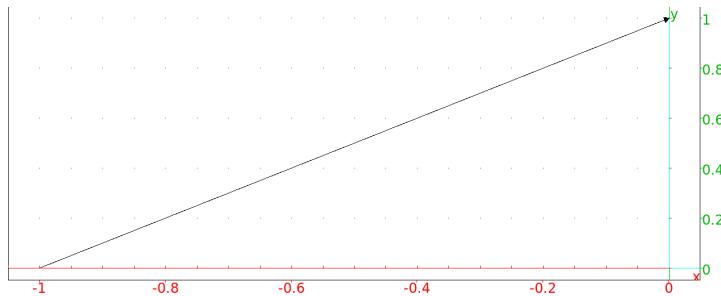
or:

```
vector(-1,i)
```

or:

```
V := vector(1,2+i); vector(-1,V)
```

Output:



### 12.7.5 Parallel lines in the plane: **parallel**

See section 13.5.5 for parallel lines in space.

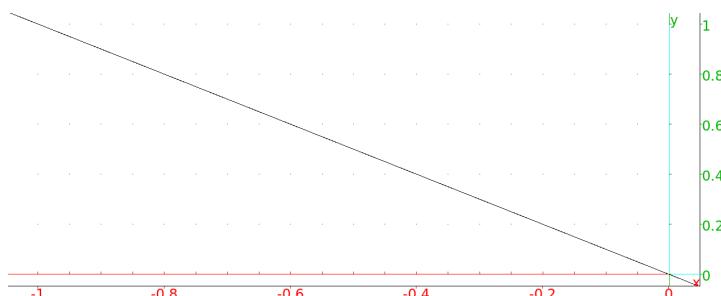
The **parallel** command takes as argument a point and a line.

**parallel** returns and draws the line parallel to the given line passing through the given point.

Input:

```
parallel(0,line(1,i))
```

Output:



### 12.7.6 Perpendicular lines in the plane: **perpendicular**

See section 13.5.6 for perpendicular lines in space.

The **perpendicular** command takes as arguments either a point and a line, or three points (the last two points determining a line).

**perpendicular** returns and draws the line perpendicular to the given line passing through the given point.

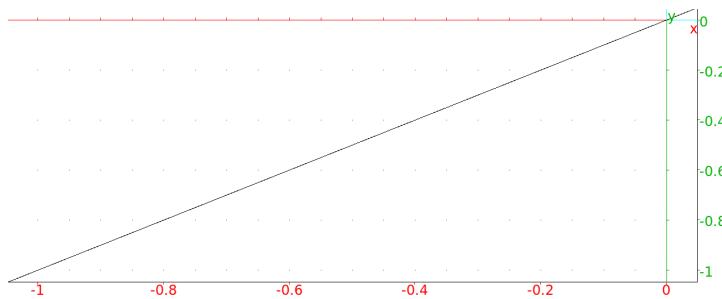
Input:

```
perpendicular(0,line(1,i))
```

or:

```
perpendicular(0,1,i)
```

Output:



### 12.7.7 Tangents to curves in the plane: `tangent`

See section 13.6.3 for tangents in space.

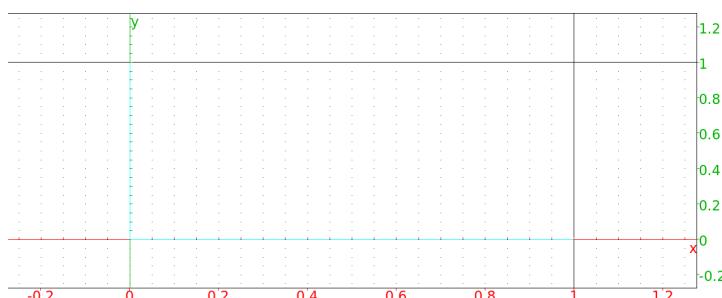
The `tangent` command takes as arguments either a curve and a point, or a point defined with `element` (see section 12.6.15) using a curve and parameter value.

`tangent` returns and draws the list of lines tangent to the curve passing through the given point.

Input:

```
tangent(circle(0,1),1+i)
```

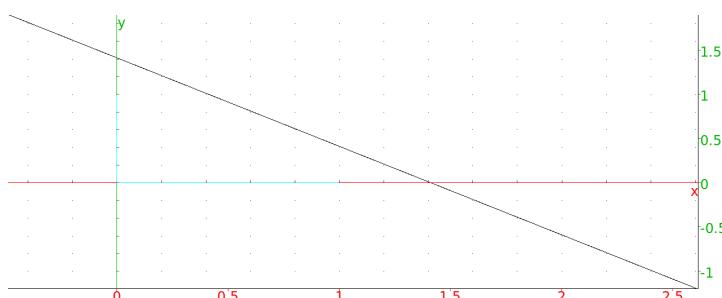
Output:



Input:

```
t := element(0..pi,pi/4)::; A :=  
element(circle(0,1),t)::; tangent(A)
```

Output:



When `tangent` is called with an element, the tangent will change along with the point on the element.

### 12.7.8 The median of a triangle in the plane: `median_line`

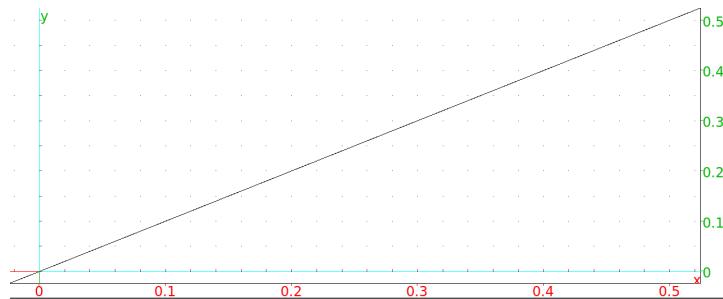
The `median_line` command takes as argument three points representing the vertices of a triangle.

`median_line` returns and draws the median line, through the point given by the first argument and bisecting the segment determined by the other two arguments.

Input:

```
median_line(0,1,i)
```

Output:



### 12.7.9 The altitude of a triangle: `altitude`

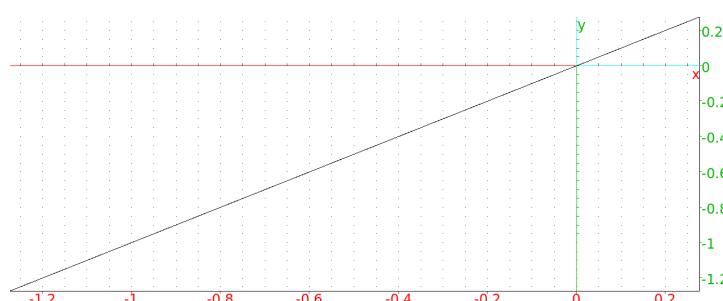
The `altitude` command takes as argument three points representing the vertices of a triangle.

`altitude` returns and draws the altitude line, through the point given by the first argument and perpendicular to the line determined by the other two arguments.

Input:

```
altitude(0,1,i)
```

Output:



### 12.7.10 The perpendicular bisector of a segment in the plane: `perpen_bisector`

See section 13.6.2 for perpendicular bisectors in space.

The `perpen_bisector` command takes as argument a line segment or two points representing the end points of a line segment.

`perpen_bisector` returns and draws the perpendicular bisector of the segment.

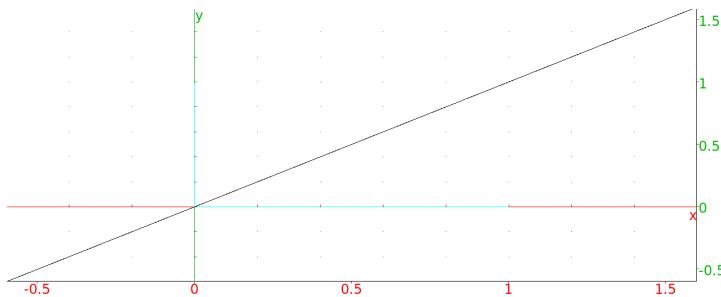
Input:

```
perpen_bisector(1,i)
```

or:

```
perpen_bisector(segment(1,i))
```

Output:



The `perpen_bisector` command can also take two lines as segments, in which case it returns and draws the perpendicular bisector of the segment from the first point defining the first line and the second point defining the second line.

### 12.7.11 The angle bisector: `bisector`

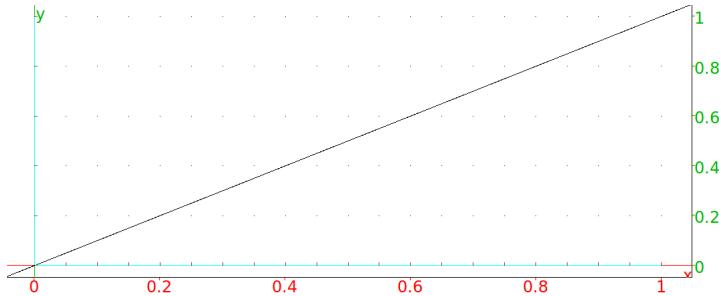
The `bisector` command takes as argument three points or a list of three points. The first point represents the vertex of an angle; the remaining two points will be on the two sides of the angle.

`bisector` returns and draws the angle bisector.

Input:

```
bisector(0,1,i)
```

Output:



### 12.7.12 The exterior angle bisector: `exbisector`

The `exbisector` command takes as argument three points or a list of three points.

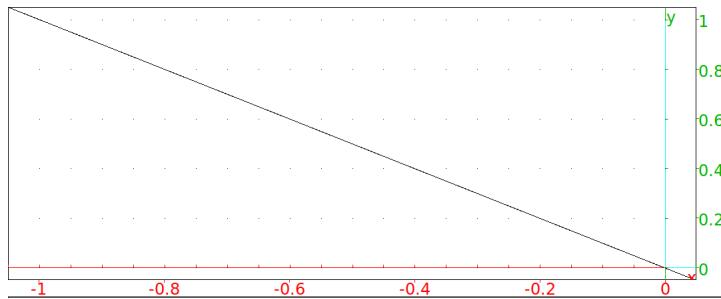
`exbisector` returns the bisector of the exterior angle of the triangle determined by the points; the first point is the vertex of the angle, the opposite of the first

and second points determine one side of the angle and the first and third determine the second side.

Input:

```
exbisector(0,1,i)
```

Output:



## 12.8 Triangles in the plane

See section 13.7 for triangles in space.

### 12.8.1 Arbitrary triangles in the plane: `triangle`

See section 13.7.1 for the `triangle` command in space.

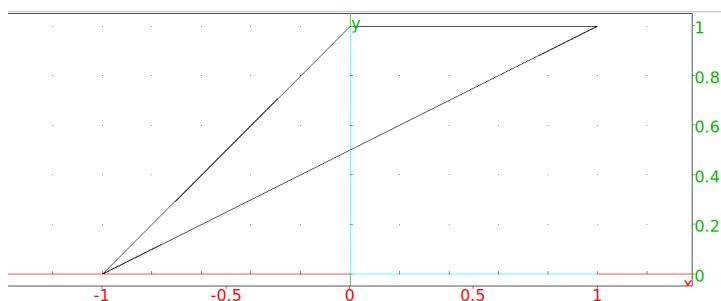
The `triangle` command takes as arguments three points or a list of three points.

`triangle` returns and draws the triangle with the given vertices.

Input:

```
triangle(-1,i,1+i)
```

Output:



### 12.8.2 Isosceles triangles in the plane: `isosceles_triangle`

See section 13.7.2 for isosceles triangles in space.

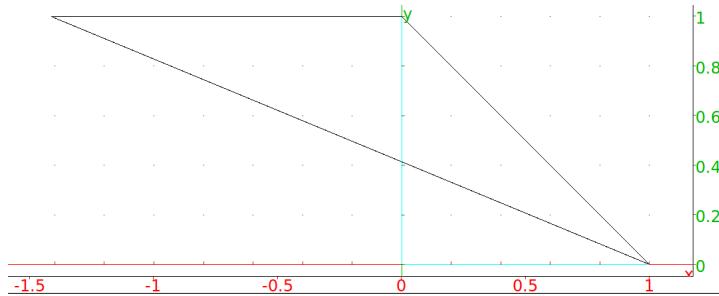
The `isosceles_triangle` command takes three arguments and an optional fourth. The three mandatory arguments are two points A and B and an angle  $\theta$ .

`isosceles_triangle` returns and draws the isosceles triangle ABC, where AB and AC are equal sides and  $\theta$  is the angle from AB to AC.

Input:

```
isosceles_triangle(i, 1, -3*pi/4)
```

Output:

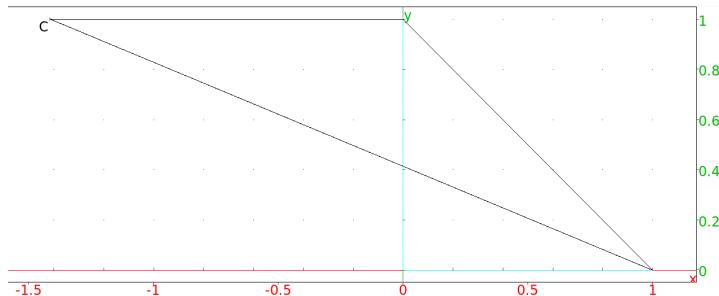


The optional argument needs to be a variable name, which is assigned to vertex C.

Input:

```
isosceles_triangle(i, 1, -3*pi/4, C)
```

Output:



Input:

```
normal(affix(C))
```

Output:

```
-sqrt(2) + i
```

### 12.8.3 Right triangles in the plane: **right\_triangle**

See section 13.7.3 for right triangles in space.

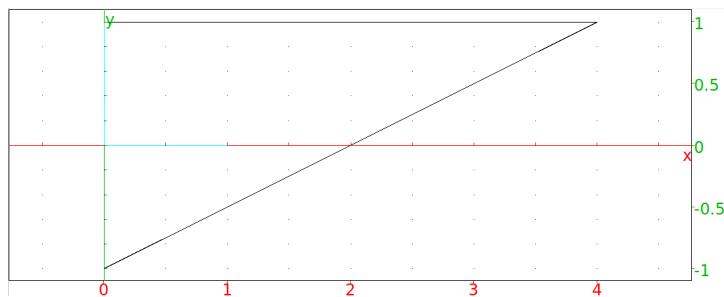
The **right\_triangle** command takes three arguments and an optional fourth. The three mandatory arguments are two points A and B and a real nonzero number k.

**right\_triangle** returns and draws the right triangle ABC, with the right angle at A and with  $AB = |k| \cdot AC$ . If  $k > 0$ , then AB to AC is counterclockwise; if  $k < 0$  then AB to AC is clockwise.

Input:

```
right_triangle(i, -i, 2)
```

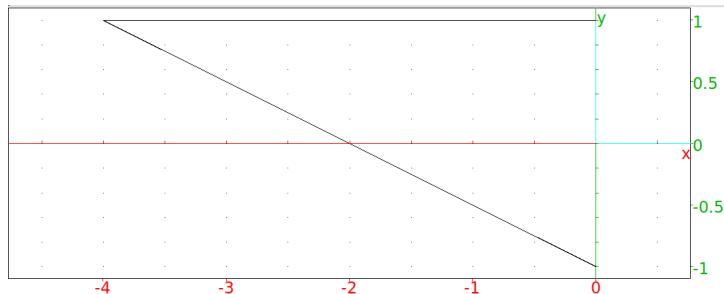
Output:



Input:

```
right_triangle(i,-i,-2)
```

Output:

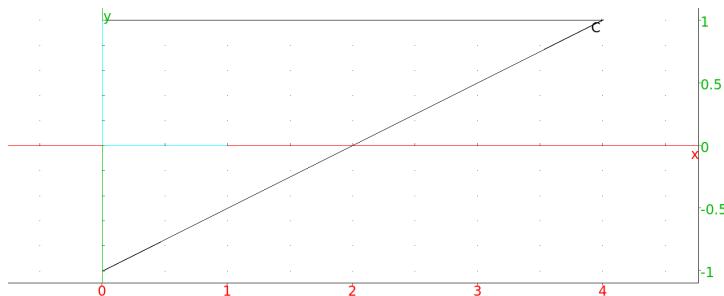


The optional argument needs to be a variable name which is assigned to vertex C.

Input:

```
right_triangle(i, -i, 2, C)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(C)
```

Output:

4 + i

### 12.8.4 Equilateral triangles in the plane: `equilateral_triangle`

See section 13.7.4 for equilateral triangles in space.

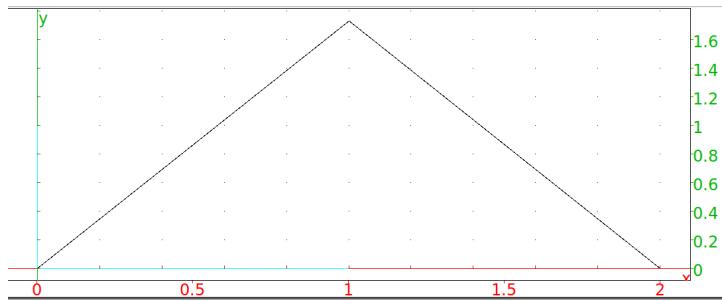
The `equilateral_triangle` command takes two arguments and an optional third. The two mandatory arguments are points A and B.

`equilateral_triangle` returns and draws the equilateral triangle ABC, where AB to AC is counterclockwise.

Input:

```
equilateral_triangle(0, 2)
```

Output:

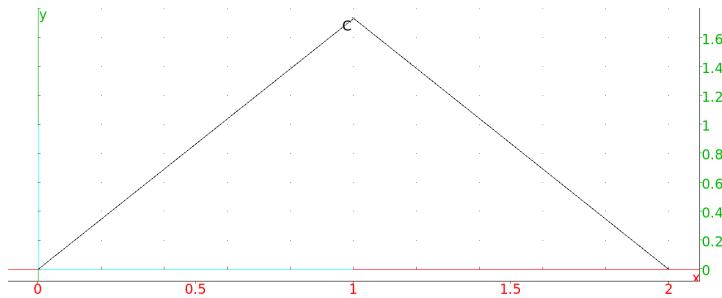


The optional argument needs to be a variable name which is assigned to vertex C.

Input:

```
equilateral_triangle(0, 2, C)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(C)
```

Output:

```
i*sqrt(3) + 1
```

## 12.9 Quadrilaterals in the plane

See section 13.8 for quadrilaterals in space.

### 12.9.1 Squares in the plane: **square**

See section 13.8.1 for squares in space.

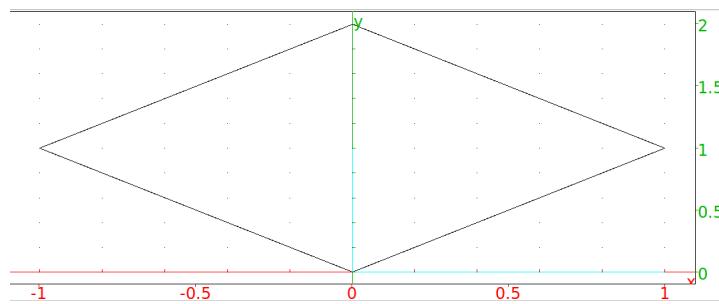
The **square** command takes two mandatory arguments and one or two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are points A and B.

**square** returns and draws the square ABCD, where the square is traversed counterclockwise.

Input:

```
square(0, 1+i)
```

Output:

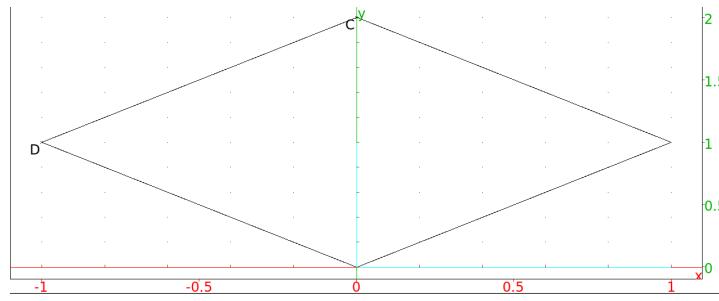


The optional third fourth arguments need to be variable names, which will be assigned to vertex C (and D).

Input:

```
square(0, 1+i, C, D)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(C), affix(D)
```

Output:

```
2*i, -1 + i
```

### 12.9.2 Rhombuses in the plane: **rhombus**

See section 13.8.2 for rhombuses in space.

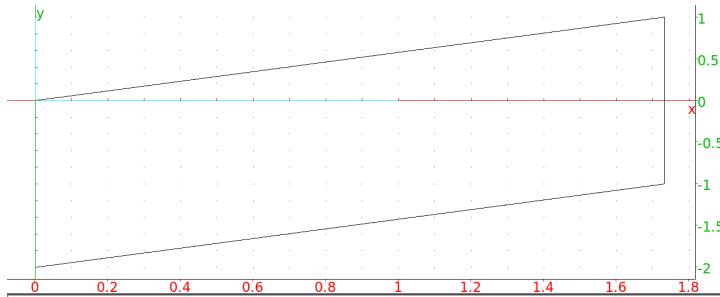
The **rhombus** command takes three mandatory arguments and one or two optional arguments. The three mandatory arguments are two points A and B and a real number a.

`rhombus` returns and draws the rhombus ABCD, where  $a$  is the counterclockwise angle from AB to AC.

Input:

```
rhombus(-2*i, sqrt(3) - i, pi/3)
```

Output:

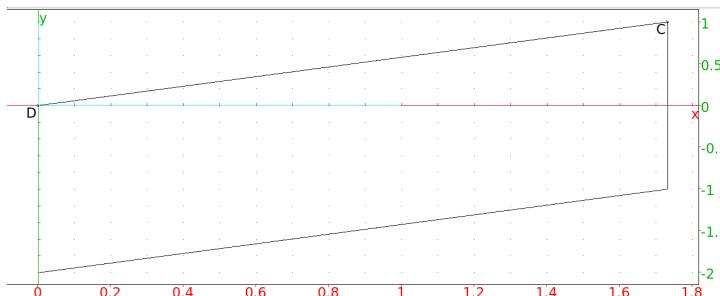


The optional fourth and fifth arguments need to be variable names which will be assigned to vertices C and D.

Input:

```
rhombus(-2*i, sqrt(3) - i, pi/3, C, D)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(C), affix(D)
```

Output:

```
sqrt(3) + i, 0
```

### 12.9.3 Rectangles in the plane: `rectangle`

See section 13.8.3 for rectangles in space.

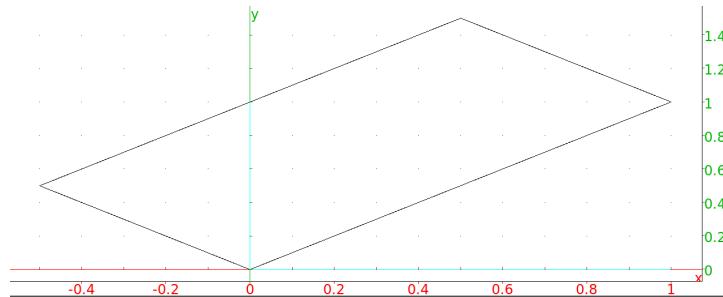
The `rectangle` command takes three mandatory arguments and one or two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are two points A and B and a nonzero real number k.

`rectangle` returns and draws the rectangle ABCD, where  $AD = |k| \cdot AB$  and the angle from AB to AD is counterclockwise if  $k > 0$ , clockwise if  $k < 0$ .

Input:

```
rectangle(0, 1+i, 1/2)
```

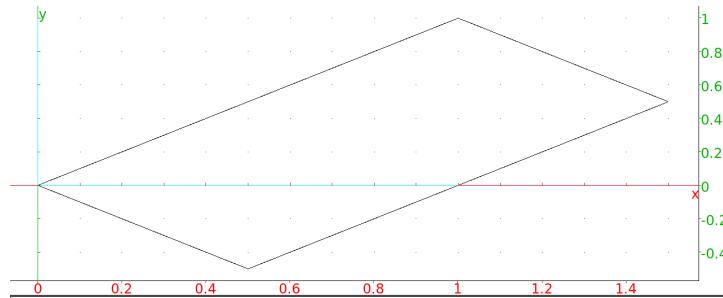
Output:



Input:

```
rectangle(0, 1+i, -1/2)
```

Output:

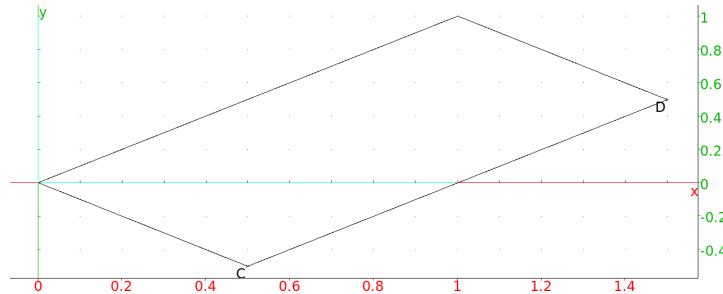


The optional fourth and fifth arguments need to be variable names which will be assigned to vertices C and D.

Input:

```
rectangle(0, 1+i, -1/2, C, D)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(C), affix(D)
```

Output:

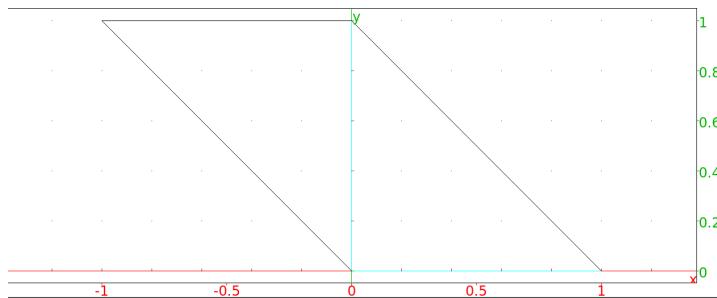
```
(3 + i)/2, (1 - i)/2
```

Given rectangle( $A, B, k$ ), Xcas computes  $D$  by  $\text{affix}(D) = \text{affix}(A) + k \exp(i\pi/2)(\text{affix}(B) - \text{affix}(A))$ . If  $k$  is complex, then rectangle draws a parallelogram.

Input:

```
rectangle(0,1,1+i)
```

Output:



#### 12.9.4 Parallelograms in the plane: parallelogram

See section 13.8.4 for parallelograms in space.

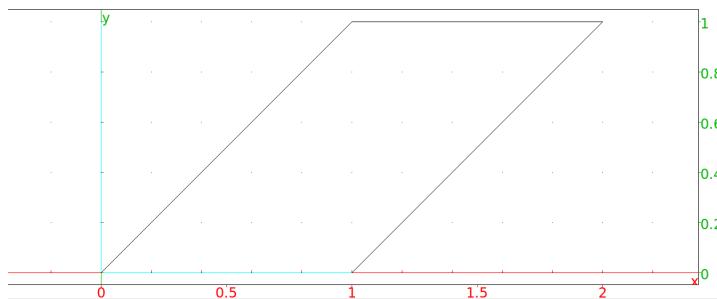
The parallelogram command takes three mandatory arguments and one optional argument. The mandatory arguments are three points A, B and C.

parallelogram returns and draws the parallelogram ABCD for the appropriate D.

Input:

```
parallelogram(0, 1, 2 + i)
```

Output:

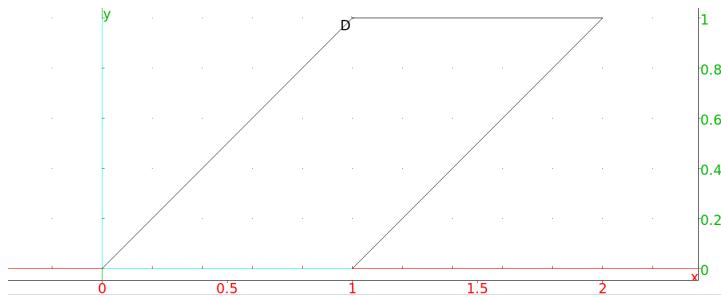


The fourth optional argument will need to be a variable name which will be assigned to vertex D.

Input:

```
parallelogram(0, 1, 2 + i, D)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(D)
```

Output:

```
1 + i
```

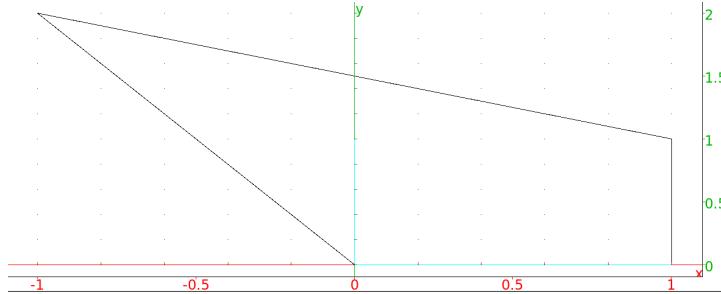
### 12.9.5 Arbitrary quadrilaterals in the plane: **quadrilateral**

The **quadrilateral** command takes four arguments, points A, B, C and D. **quadrilateral** returns and draws the quadrilateral ABCD.

Input:

```
quadrilateral(0, 1, 1 + i, -1 + 2*i)
```

Output:



## 12.10 Other polygons in the plane

See section 13.9 for polygons in space.

### 12.10.1 Regular hexagons in the plane: **hexagon**

See section 13.9.1 for hexagons in space.

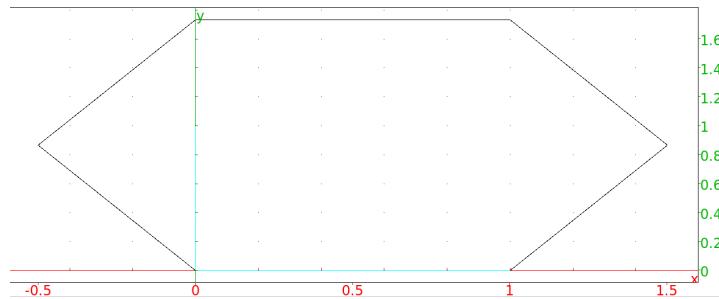
The **hexagon** command takes two mandatory arguments and up to four optional arguments. The two mandatory arguments points A and B.

**hexagon** returns and draws the regular hexagon ABCDEF, where the vertices are counterclockwise.

Input:

```
hexagon(0, 1)
```

Output:

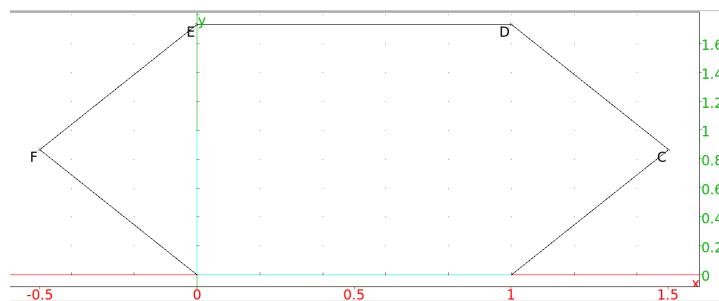


The optional arguments will need to be variable names, which will be assigned in order to vertices C through F.

Input:

```
hexagon(0, 1, C, D, E, F)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(C), affix(D), affix(E), affix(F)
```

Output:

```
3/2 + i*sqrt(3)/2, 1 + i*sqrt(3), i*sqrt(3), -1/2 +
i*sqrt(3)/2
```

## 12.10.2 Regular polygons in the plane: `isopolygon`

See section 13.9.2 for regular polygons in space.

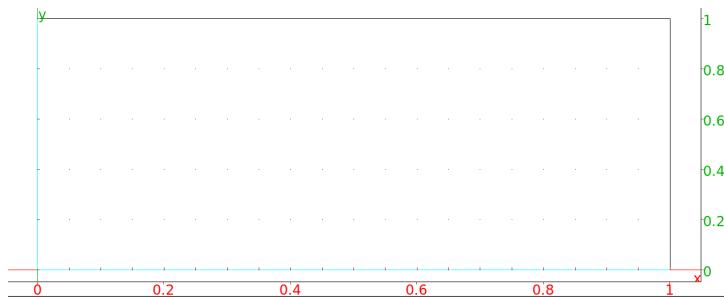
The `isopolygon` command takes three arguments; two points A and B and a non-zero integer k.

`isopolygon` returns and draws the regular  $|k|$ -sided polygon with one side AB. If  $k > 0$ , then the polygon will continue counterclockwise; if  $k < 0$ , then it will be clockwise.

Input:

```
isopolygon(0,1,4)
```

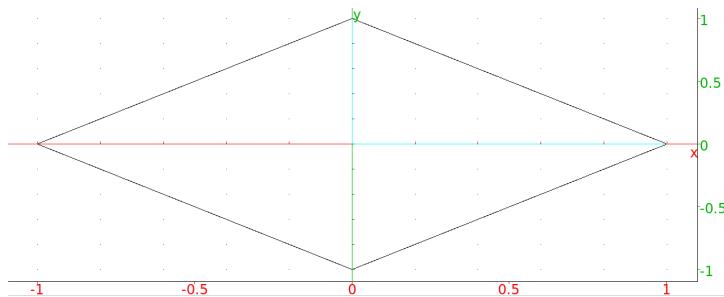
Output:



Input:

```
isopolygon(0,1,-4)
```

Output:



### 12.10.3 General polygons in the plane: **polygon**

See section 13.9.3 for general polygons in space.

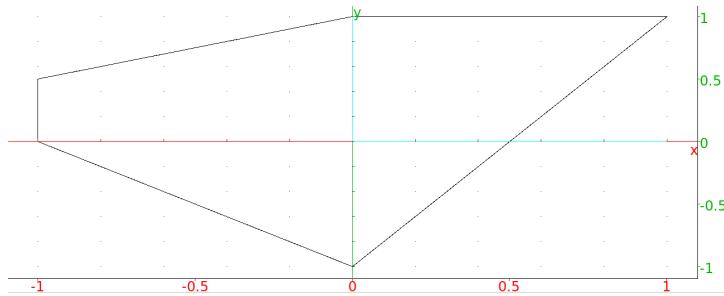
The **polygon** command takes as argument a sequence or list of points.

**polygon** returns and draws the polygon with the given vertices.

Input:

```
polygon(-1,-1+i/2,i,1+i,-i)
```

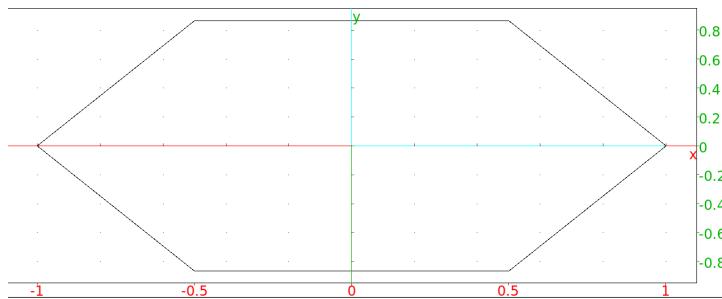
Output:



Input:

```
polygon(makelist(x->exp(i*pi*x/3),0,5,1))
```

Output:



#### 12.10.4 Polygonal lines in the plane: `open_polygon`

See section 13.9.4 for polygonal lines in space.

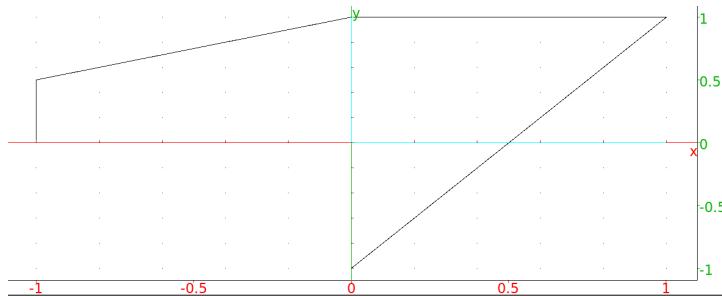
The `open_polygon` command takes as argument a sequence or list of points.

`open_polygon` returns and draws the polygon line with the given vertices.

Input:

```
open_polygon(-1,-1+i/2,i,1+i,-i)
```

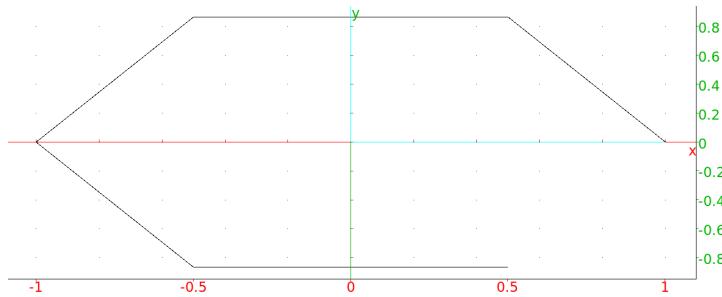
Output:



Input:

```
open_polygon(makelist(x->exp(i*pi*x/3), 0, 5, 1))
```

Output:



#### 12.10.5 Convex hulls: `convexhull`

The `convexhull` command uses the Graham scanning algorithm to find the convex hull of a set of points.

`convexhull` takes as argument a list of points.

`convexhull` returns the vertices of the convex hull of the points.

Input:

```
convexhull(0,1,1+i,1+2i,-1-i,1-3i,-2+i)
```

Output:

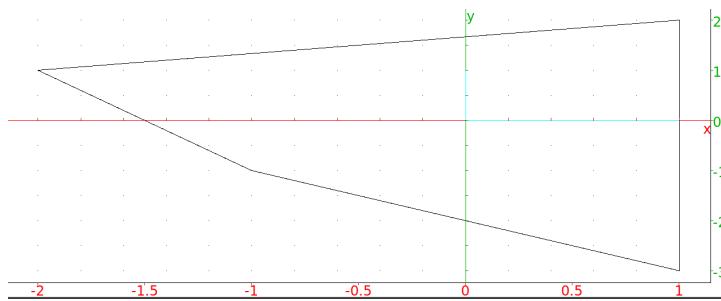
```
(1-3*i,1+2*i,-2+i,-1-i)
```

To draw the hull, use the `polygon` command with the output of `convexhull`.

Input:

```
polygon(convexhull(0,1,1+i,1+2i,-1-i,1-3i,-2+i))
```

Output:



## 12.11 Circles

### 12.11.1 Circles and arcs in the plane: `circle`

See also section [12.11.2](#).

See section [13.10](#) for circles in space.

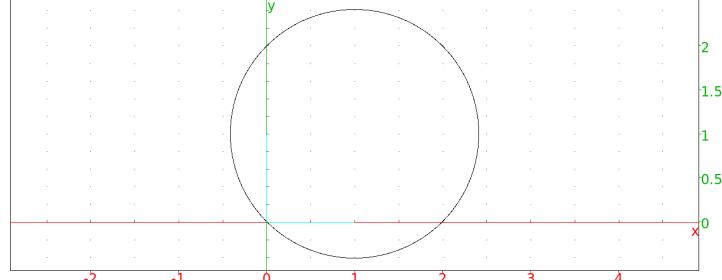
The `circle` command returns and draws a circle or arc of a circle, depending on the arguments. `circle` can take the following arguments:

- One argument, the equation of a circle with variables  $x$  and  $y$  (or an expression assumed to be set to 0).
- `circle` returns and draws the circle.

Input:

```
circle(x^2 + y^2 - 2*x - 2*y)
```

Output:



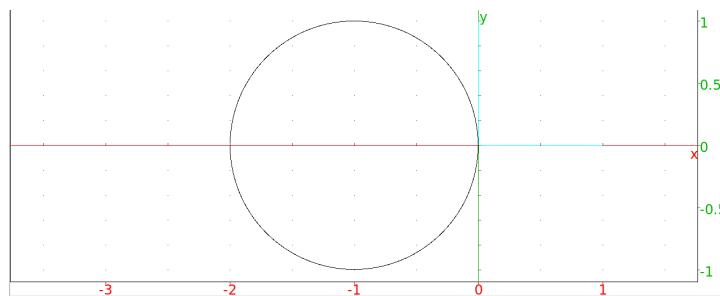
- Two arguments, a point and a complex number.

`circle` returns and draws the circle centered at the point and whose radius is the modulus of the complex number.

Input:

```
circle(-1, i)
```

Output:



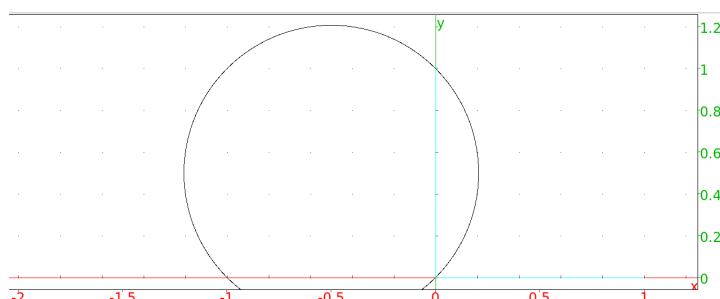
- Two arguments, both points (where the second is the value of `point` and not simply the affix).

`circle` returns and draws the circle with a diameter given by the two points.

Input:

```
circle(-1, point(i))
```

Output:



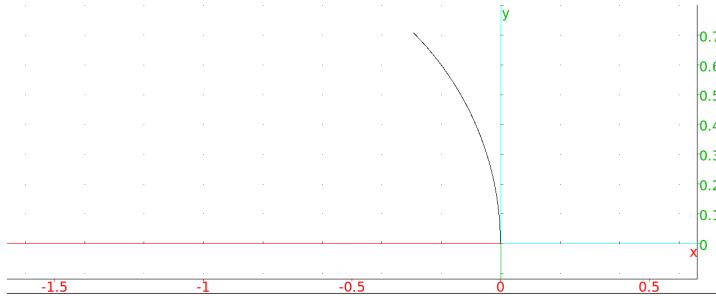
- Four mandatory arguments and two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are a point  $C$ , a complex number  $r$ , and two real numbers. The arguments  $C$  and  $r$  determine a circle, as above. The two real numbers specify the central angles that determine an arc, where the angles start on the axis defined by the points  $C$  and  $C + r$ .

`circle` returns and draws the arc.

Input:

```
circle(-1, 1, 0, pi/4)
```

Output:



The optional arguments need to be variable names which will be assigned to the ends of the arc.

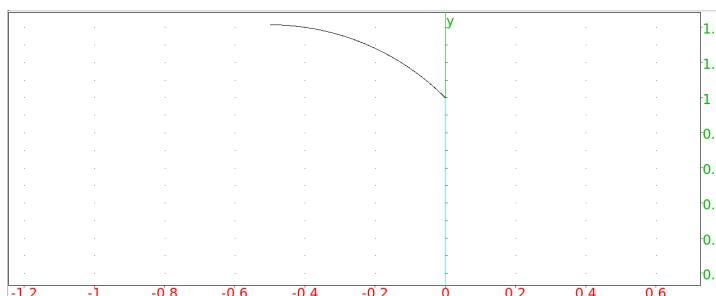
- Four mandatory arguments and two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are two points A and B and two real numbers. The points A and B determine a circle, as above. The two real numbers specify the central angles that determine an arc, where the angles start on the axis defined by the diameter AB.

`circle` returns and draws the arc.

Input:

```
circle(-1,point(i),0,pi/4)
```

Output:



The optional arguments need to be variable names which will be assigned to the ends of the arc.

### 12.11.2 Circular arcs: `arc`

See also section [12.11.1](#)

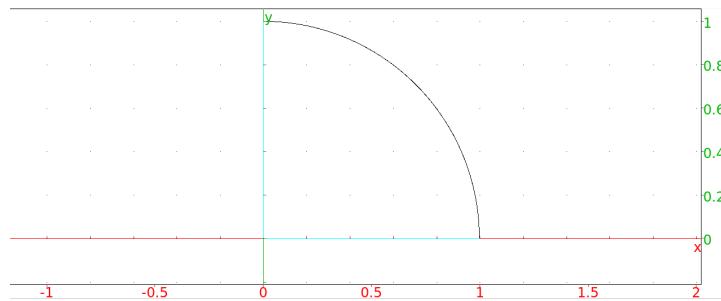
The `arc` command takes three mandatory arguments and one or two optional arguments. The mandatory arguments are two points A and B and a real number a between  $-2\pi$  and  $2\pi$ .

`arc` returns and draws the circular arc from A to B that represents an angle of a. (Note that the center of the circle will be  $(A + B)/2 + i*(B - A)/(2*tan(a/2))$ .)

Input:

```
arc(1,i,pi/2)
```

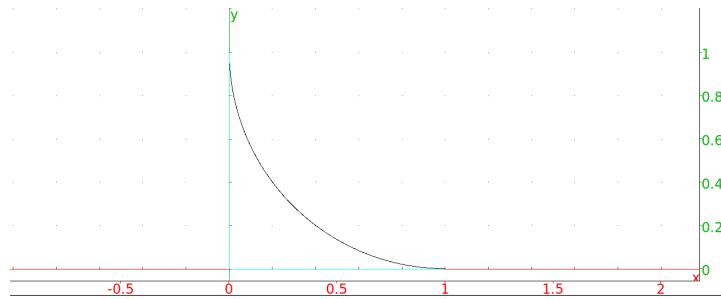
Output:



Input:

```
arc(1,i,-pi/2)
```

Output:



The optional arguments need to be variable names which will be assigned to the center and the radius of the circle.

### 12.11.3 Circles (TI compatibility): **Circle**

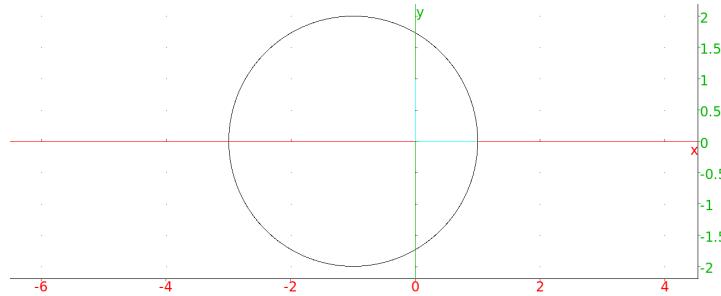
The **Circle** command takes three mandatory arguments and an optional argument. The first two arguments are the  $x$  and  $y$  coordinates of the center and the third is the radius.

**Circle** returns and draws the circle.

Input:

```
Circle(-1,0,2)
```

Output:



The optional fourth argument is either 0 or 1. If it is 1, then **Circle** will draw the circle; this is the default. If it is 0, then **Circle** will erase the circle.

### 12.11.4 Inscribed circles: `incircle`

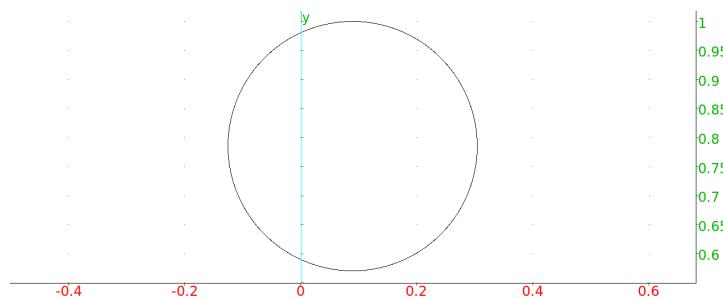
The `incircle` command takes three arguments. The arguments are three points, regarded as the vertices of a triangle.

`incircle` returns and draws the inscribed circle of the triangle.

Input:

```
incircle(-1,i,1+i)
```

Output:



### 12.11.5 Circumscribed circles: `circumcircle`

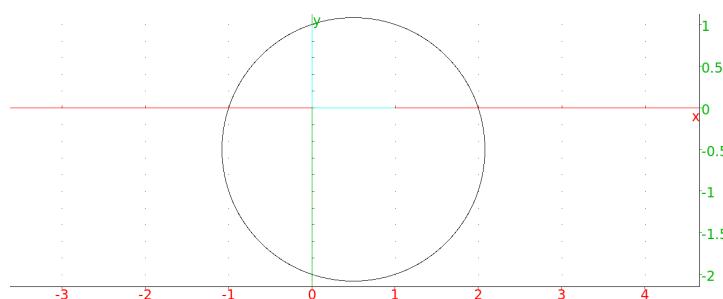
The `circumcircle` command takes three arguments. The arguments are three points, regarded as the vertices of a triangle.

`circumcircle` returns and draws the circumscribed circle of the triangle.

Input:

```
circumcircle(-1,i,1+i)
```

Output:



### 12.11.6 Excircles: `excircle`

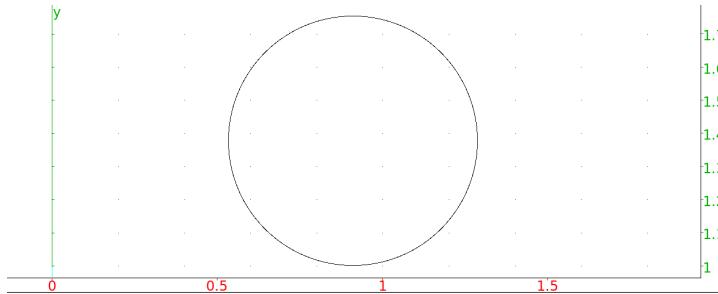
The `excircle` command takes three arguments. The arguments are three points, regarded as the vertices of a triangle.

`excircle` returns and draws the excircle of the triangle in the interior angle of the first vertex.

Input:

```
excircle(-1,i,1+i)
```

Output:



### 12.11.7 The power of a point relative to a circle: `powerpc`

Given a circle  $C$  of radius  $r$  and a point  $A$  at a distance of  $d$  from the center of  $C$ , the power of  $A$  relative to  $C$  is  $d^2 - r^2$ .

The `powerpc` command takes as arguments a circle and a point.

`powerpc` returns the power of the point relative to the circle.

Input:

```
powerpc(circle(0, 1+i), 3+i)
```

Output:

8

### 12.11.8 The radical axis of two circles: `radical_axis`

The radical axis of two circles is the set of points which have the same power with respect to each circle.

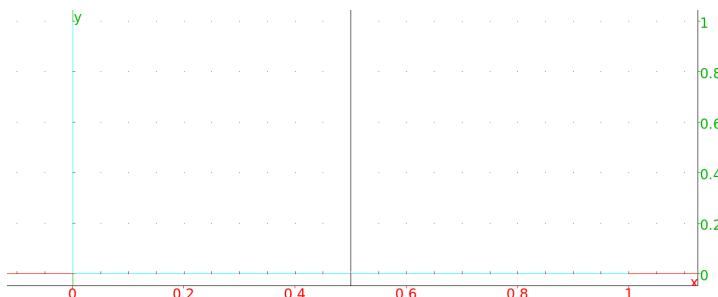
The `radical_axis` command takes as arguments two circles.

`radical_axis` returns and draws the radical axis.

Input:

```
radical_axis(circle(0, 1+i), circle(1, 1+i))
```

Output:



## 12.12 Other conic sections

### 12.12.1 The ellipse in the plane: `ellipse`

See section 13.11.1 for ellipses in space.

The `ellipse` command draws ellipses and other conic sections.

`ellipse` can take parameters in different forms.

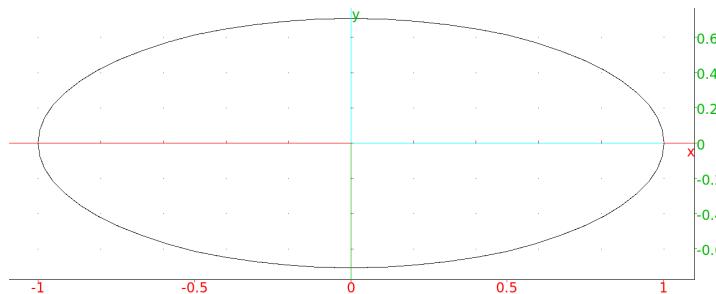
- `ellipse` can take one parameter, a second degree equation in the variables  $x$  and  $y$  (or an expression which will be set to zero).

`ellipse` returns and draws the conic section given by the equation.

Input:

```
ellipse(x^2 + 2*y^2 - 1)
```

Output:



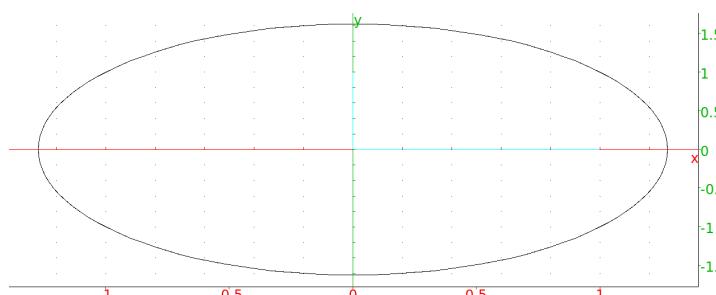
- `ellipse` can take three parameters; either three points or two points and a real number. The first two points will be the foci of the ellipse and the third argument will be either a point on the ellipse or the length of the semi-major axis.

`ellipse` returns and draws the ellipse.

Input:

```
ellipse(-i,i,i+1)
```

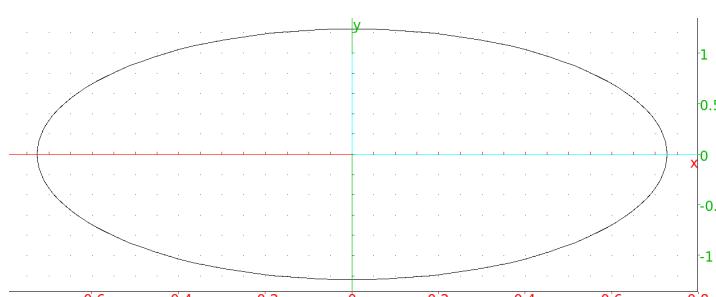
Output:



Input:

```
ellipse(-i,i,sqrt(5) - 1)
```

Output:



Note that if the third argument is a point on the real axis, the real affix of the point won't work, it needs to be specified with the `point` command.

### 12.12.2 The hyperbola in the plane: `hyperbola`

See section 13.11.2 for hyperbolas in space.

The `hyperbola` command draws hyperbolas and other conic sections. `hyperbola` can take parameters in different forms.

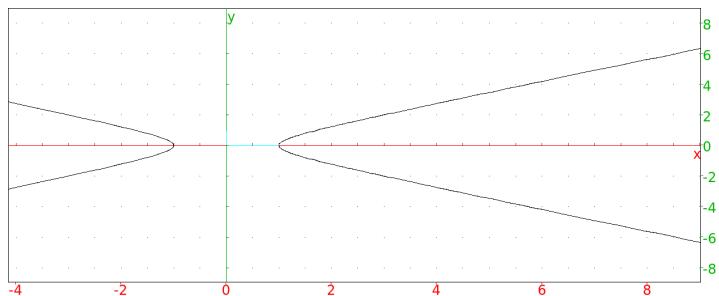
- `hyperbola` can take one parameter, a second degree equation in the variables  $x$  and  $y$  (or an expression which will be set to zero).

`hyperbola` returns and draws the conic section given by the equation.

Input:

```
hyperbola(x^2 - 2*y^2 - 1)
```

Output:



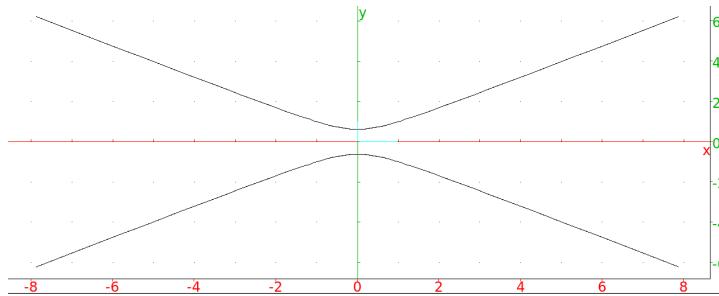
- `hyperbola` can take three parameters; either three points or two points and a real number. The first two points will be the foci of the hyperbola and the third argument will be either a point on the hyperbola or the length of the semi-major axis.

`hyperbola` returns and draws the hyperbola.

Input:

```
hyperbola(-i, i, i+1)
```

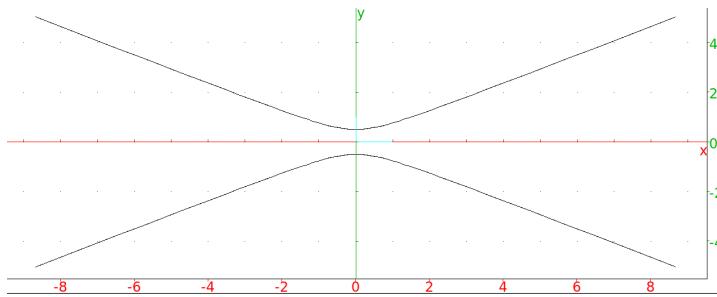
Output:



Input:

```
hyperbola(-i,i,1/2)
```

Output:



Note that if the third argument is a point on the real axis, the real affix of the point won't work, it needs to be specified with the `point` command.

### 12.12.3 The parabola in the plane: `parabola`

See section 13.11.3 for parabolas in space.

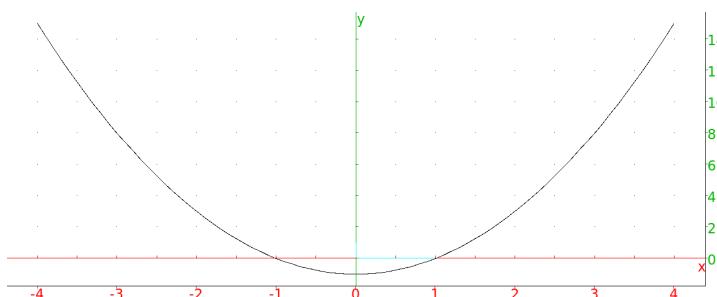
The `parabola` command draws parabolas and other conic sections.  
`parabola` can take parameters in different forms.

- `parabola` can take one parameter, a second degree equation in the variables  $x$  and  $y$  (or an expression which will be set to zero).

`parabola` returns and draws the conic section given by the equation.  
Input:

```
parabola(x^2 - y - 1)
```

Output:

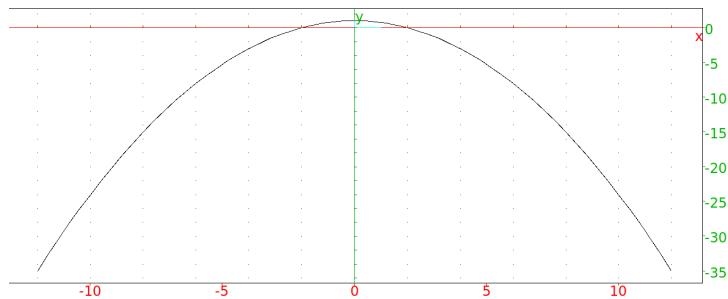


- `parabola` can take two parameters, both points. The points will be the focus and vertex of a parabola.

`parabola` returns and draws the parabola.  
Input:

```
parabola(0,i)
```

Output:



Note that if the second argument is a point on the real axis, the real affix of the point won't work, it needs to be specified with the `point` command.

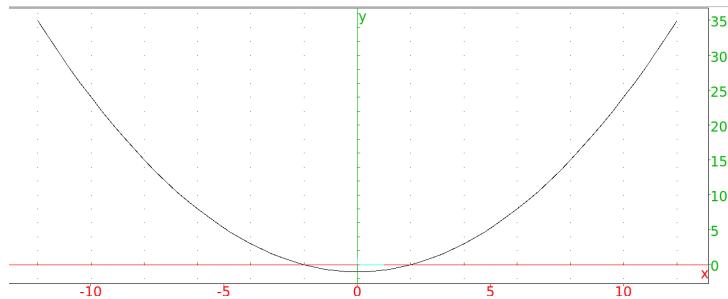
- `parabola` can take two parameters, a point  $(a, b)$  and a real number  $c$ .

`parabola` returns and draws the parabola  $y = b + c(x - a)^2$ .

Input:

```
parabola(-i, 1)
```

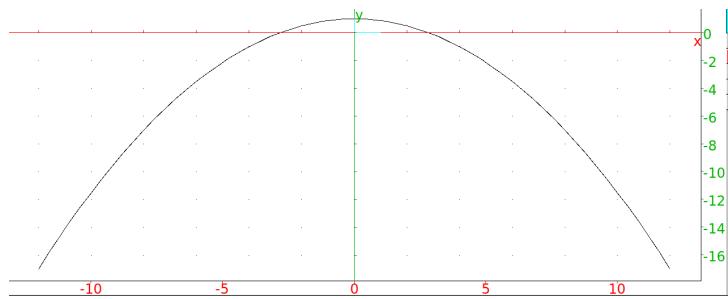
Output:



Input:

```
parabola(-i, i, 1/2)
```

Output:



Note that if the third argument is a point on the real axis, the real affix of the point won't work, it needs to be specified with the `point` command.

## 12.13 Coordinates in the plane

### 12.13.1 The affix of a point or vector: **affix**

The **affix** command takes a single argument, a point or a vector.

**affix** returns the affix, the complex number corresponding to the point or vector.

Input:

```
affix(point(2,3))
```

Output:

```
2 + 3*i
```

Input:

```
affix(vector(-1,i))
```

Output:

```
1+i
```

### 12.13.2 The abscissa of a point or vector in the plane: **abscissa**

See section 13.12.1 for abscissas in three-dimensional geometry.

The **abscissa** command takes a point as argument.

**abscissa** returns the abscissa ( $x$ -coordinate).

Input:

```
abscissa(point(1 + 2*i))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
abscissa(point(i) - point(1 + 2*i))
```

Output:

```
-1
```

Input:

```
abscissa(1 + 2*i)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
abscissa([1,2])
```

Output:

```
1
```

### 12.13.3 The ordinate of a point or vector in the plane: `ordinate`

See section 13.12.2 for ordinates in three-dimensional geometry.

The `ordinate` command takes a point as argument.

`ordinate` returns the ordinate ( $y$ -coordinate).

Input:

```
ordinate(point(1 + 2*i))
```

Output:

2

Input:

```
ordinate(point(i) - point(1 + 2*i))
```

Output:

-1

Input:

```
ordinate(1 + 2*i)
```

Output:

2

Input:

```
ordinate([1, 2])
```

Output:

2

### 12.13.4 The coordinates of a point, vector or line in the plane: `coordinates`

See section 13.12.4 for coordinates in three-dimensional geometry.

The `coordinates` command takes as argument a point or line.

If the argument is a point, `coordinates` returns a list consisting of the abscissa and ordinate.

If the argument is a line, `coordinates` returns a list of two points on the line, in the order determined by the direction of the line.

Input:

```
coordinates(1+2*i)
```

or:

```
coordinates(point(1+2*i))
```

or:

```
coordinates(vector(1+2*i))
```

Output:

[1, 2]

Input:

```
coordinates(point(1+2*i) - point(i))
```

or:

```
coordinates(vector(i, 1+2*i))
```

or:

```
coordinates(vector(point(i), point(1+2*i)))
```

or:

```
coordinates(vector([0, 1], [1, 2]))
```

Output:

[1, 1]

Input:

```
d := line(-1+i, 1+2*i)
```

or:

```
d := line(point(-1, 1), point(1, 2))
```

Input:

```
coordinates(d)
```

Output:

[-1+i, 1+2\*i]

Input:

```
coordinates(line(y = (1/2 * x + 3/2)))
```

Output:

[3\*i/2, 1+2\*i]

Input:

```
coordinates(line(x - 2*y + 3 = 0))
```

Output:

[3\*i/2, (-4 + i)/2]

`coordinates` can also take a sequence or list of points as an argument; it then returns a sequence or list of the coordinates of the points.

Input:

```
coordinates(i, 1+2*i)
```

or:

```
coordinates(point(i), point(1+2*i))
```

Output:

```
[0, 1], [1, 2]
```

Note that if the argument is a list of real numbers, it is interpreted as a list of points on the real axis.

Input:

```
coordinates([1, 2])
```

Output:

```
[[1, 0], [2, 0]]
```

### 12.13.5 The rectangular coordinates of a point: `rectangular_coordinates`

The `rectangular_coordinates` command takes as argument a point in polar coordinates.

`rectangular_coordinates` returns the the rectangular coordinates of the points.

Input:

```
rectangular_coordinates(2, pi/4)
```

or:

```
rectangular_coordinates(polar_point(2, pi/4))
```

Output:

```
[sqrt(2), sqrt(2)]
```

### 12.13.6 The polar coordinates of a point: `polar_coordinates`

The `polar_coordinates` command takes as argument a point.

`polar_coordinates` returns the the polar coordinates of the points.

Input:

```
polar_coordinates(1 + i)
```

or:

```
polar_coordinates(point(1 + i))
```

or:

```
polar_coordinates([1, 1])
```

Output:

```
[sqrt(2), pi/4]
```

### 12.13.7 The Cartesian equation of a geometric object in the plane: **equation**

See section 13.12.5 for Cartesian equations of three-dimensional objects.

The **equation** command takes as argument a geometric object.

**equation** returns the Cartesian equation for the object. (Note that **x** and **y** must be formal variables, they might need to be purged with **purge(x)** and **purge(y)**).

Input:

```
equation(line(-1,i))
```

Output:

```
y = x + 1
```

### 12.13.8 The parametric equation of a geometric object in the plane: **parameq**

See section 13.12.6 for parametric equations in three-dimensional geometry.

The **parameq** command takes as argument a geometric object.

**parameq** returns a parametric equation of the object, in the form  $x(t) + i \cdot y(t)$ . (Note that **t** must be a formal variable, it may be necessary to purge it with **purge(t)**.)

Input:

```
parameq(line(-1,i))
```

Output:

```
t + (1-t)*i
```

Input:

```
parameq(circle(-1,i))
```

Output:

```
-1 + exp(i*t)
```

Input:

```
normal(parameq(ellipse(-1,1,i)))
```

Output:

```
sqrt(2)*cos(t) + i*sin(t)
```

## 12.14 Measurements

### 12.14.1 Measurement and display: **distance**, **distanceat**, **distanceatraw**, **angle**, **angleat**, **angleatraw**, **area**, **areaat**, **areaatraw**, **perimeter**, **perimeterat**, **perimeteratraw**, **slope**, **slopeat**, **slopeatraw**, **extract\_measure**

Many commands to find measures have a version ending in **at** (or **atraw**) which are used to interactively find and display the appropriate measure in a two-dimensional geometry screen. To use them, open a geometry screen with Alt-G and then select the appropriate measure from the Mode ► Measure menu. Once the mode is selected, then clicking on the names of the appropriate objects (or, if a point is being selected, a name will be automatically generated if clicking on an open point) with the mouse and then clicking on another point will put the measurement at the point; if the mode is the version ending in **at**, then the measurement will have a label, if the mode is the version ending in **atraw**, then the measurement will appear without a label.

The commands with **at** and **atraw** versions are:

**distance**, **distanceat**, **distanceatraw** This finds the distance between two points or other geometric objects. (See section 12.14.2.)

**angle**, **angleat**, **angleatraw** This finds the measure of an angle  $BAC$  given points  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$ . (See section 12.14.4.)

**area**, **areaat**, **areaatraw** This finds the area of a circle or a polygon which is star-shaped with respect to its first vertex. (See section 12.14.6.)

**perimeter**, **perimeterat**, **perimeteratraw** This finds the perimeter of a circle, circular arc or a polygon. (See section 12.14.7.)

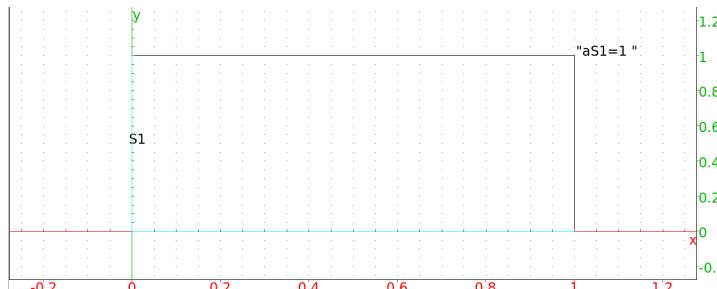
**slope**, **slopeat**, **slopeatraw** This finds the slope of a line, segment, or two points which determine a line. (See section 12.14.8.)

These commands can also be used from the command line. They are like the measurement command but take an extra argument, the point to display the measurement. When using the version ending in **at**, use names for the objects rather than create the objects within the measurement command.

Input:

```
S1 := square(0,1); areaat(S1,1+i)
```

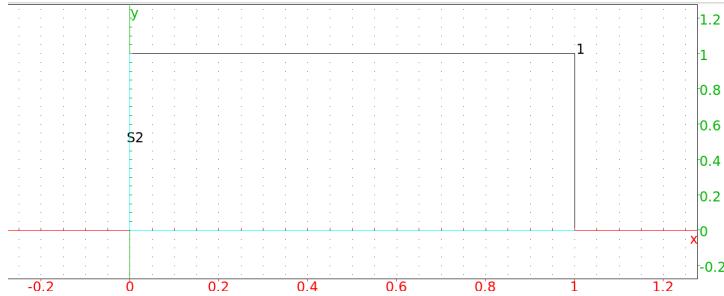
Output:



Input:

```
S2 := square(0,1); areaatraw(S2,1+i)
```

Output:



More sophisticated legends are created with the `legend` command.

Input:

```
S := square(0,1); a := area(S); legend(1+i, "Area(S) =  
" + string(a), blue)
```

Output:



The `extract_measure` command takes as argument a command which displays a measurement (one of the `at` or `atraw` commands) and returns the measurement.

Input:

```
A := point(-1); B := point(1+i); C := point(i);
```

and then:

```
extract_measure(angleat(A,B,C,0.2i))
```

Output:

```
atan(1/3)
```

### 12.14.2 The distance between objects in the plane: `distance`

See section 13.12.7 for distances in three-dimensional geometry.

The `distance` command takes two arguments; either two points or two geometric objects.

`distance` returns the distance between the two arguments.

Input:

```
distance(-1, 1+i)
```

Output:

```
sqrt(5)
```

Input:

```
distance(0, line(-1, 1+i))
```

Output:

```
sqrt(5)/5
```

Input:

```
distance(circle(0, 1), line(-2, 1+3*i))
```

Output:

```
sqrt(2) - 1
```

Note that when the distance calculation uses parameters, Xcas must be in real mode. In real mode:

Input:

```
assumes(a=[4, 0, 5, 0.1]); A := point(0); B := point(a);
```

and then:

```
simplify(distance(A, B)); simplify(distance(B, A))
```

Output:

```
|a|, |a|
```

In complex mode:

Input:

```
assumes(a=[4, 0, 5, 0.1]); A := point(0); B := point(a);
```

and then:

```
simplify(distance(A, B)); simplify(distance(B, A))
```

Output:

```
-a, a
```

The `distance` command has `distanceat` and `distanceatraw` versions (see section 12.14.1).

### 12.14.3 The length squared of a segment in the plane: `distance2`

See section 13.12.8 for squares of lengths in three-dimensional geometry.

The `distance2` command takes as arguments two points.

`distance2` returns the square of the distance between the points.

Input:

```
distance2(-1, 1+i)
```

Output:

```
5
```

### 12.14.4 The measure of an angle in the plane: `angle`

See section 13.12.9 for angle measures in three-dimensional geometry.

The `angle` command takes three mandatory arguments and one optional argument. The mandatory arguments are points A, B and C, which determine an angle  $BAC$ . The optional argument is a string.

`angle` returns the measure of the angle (in the units that Xcas is configured for). If there is an optional fourth argument, the angle will be drawn indicated by a small arc and labeled with the string. If the angle is a right angle, the indicator will be a corner rather than an arc.

Input:

```
angle(0, 1, 1+i)
```

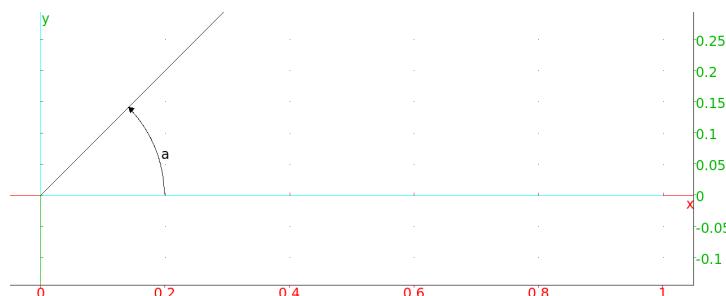
Output:

```
pi/4
```

Input:

```
angle(0, 1, 1+i, "a")
```

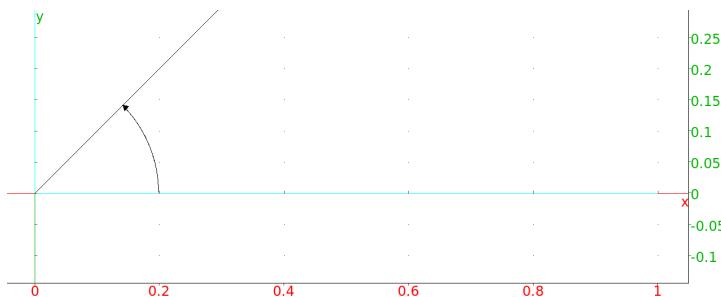
Output:



Input:

```
angle(0, 1, 1+i, "")
```

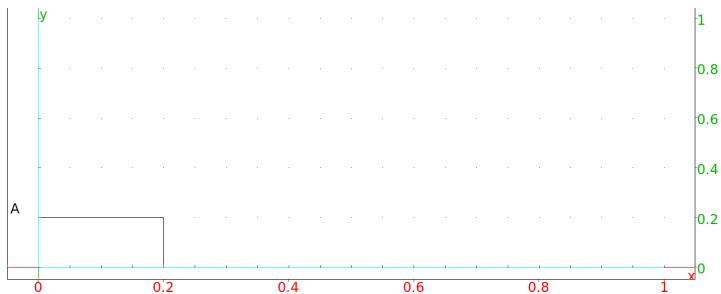
Output:



Input:

```
angle(0,1,i,"A")
```

Output:



Input:

```
angle(0,1,i,"A")[0]
```

Output:

```
pi/2
```

The `angle` command has `angleat` and `angleatraw` versions (see section 12.14.1). For the command line versions of these commands, the optional fourth argument for `angle` is replaced by a mandatory fourth argument for the point to put the measurement.

## 12.14.5 The graphical representation of the area of a polygon: `plotarea``areaplot`

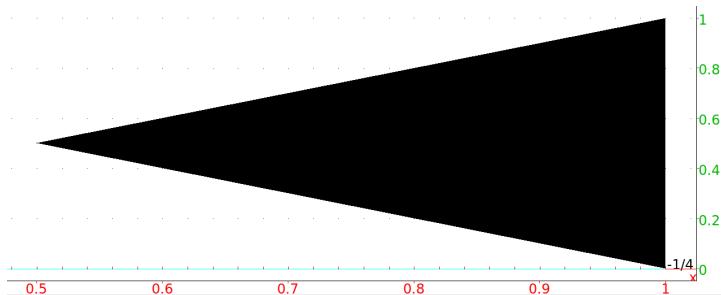
The `plotarea` (or `areaplot`) command takes as argument a polygon.

`plotarea` draws the filled polygon, with the signed area. (The area is positive if the polygon is counterclockwise, negative if it is clockwise.)

Input:

```
plotarea(polygon(1, (1+i)/2, 1+i))
```

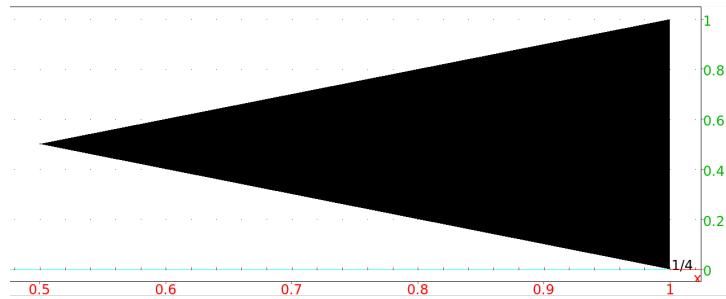
Output:



Input:

```
plotarea(polygon(1,1+i, (1+i)/2))
```

Output:

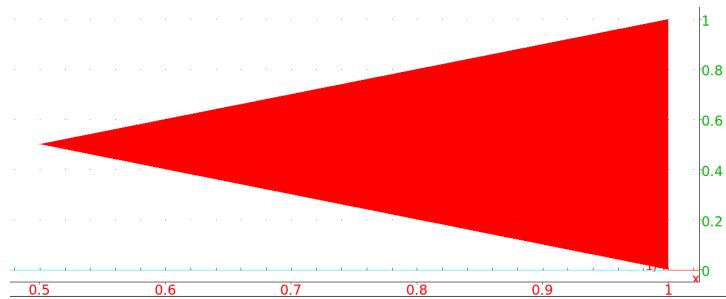


The fill color can be changed as a local feature (see 12.3.2) and the position of the legend can be changed (see 12.3.3).

Input:

```
plotarea(polygon(1,1+i, (1+i)/2), display=red+quadrant2)
```

Output:



### 12.14.6 The area of a polygon: `area`

The `area` command takes as argument a circle or polygon which is star-shaped with respect to its first vertex (i.e., the line segment from the first vertex to any point in the polygon lies within the polygon).

`area` returns the area of the object.

Input:

```
area(triangle(0,1,i))
```

Output:

```
1/2
```

Input:

```
area(square(0,2))
```

Output:

```
4
```

The `area` command has `areaat` and `areaatraw` versions (see section 12.14.1).

### 12.14.7 The perimeter of a polygon: `perimeter`

See also `arcLen`, section 5.19.2.

The `perimeter` command takes as argument a circle, circular arc or a polygon.

`perimeter` returns the perimeter of the object.

Input:

```
perimeter(circle(0,1))
```

Output:

```
2*pi
```

Input:

```
perimeter(circle(0,1,pi/4,pi))
```

Output:

```
3*pi/4
```

Input:

```
perimeter(arc(0,pi/4,pi))
```

Output:

```
pi^2/8
```

Input:

```
perimeter(triangle(0,1,i))
```

Output:

```
2+sqrt(2)
```

Input:

```
perimeter(square(0,2))
```

Output:

The `perimeter` command has `perimeterat` and `perimeteratraw` versions (see section 12.14.1).

### 12.14.8 The slope of a line: **slope**

The **slope** command takes as argument either a line, a line segment, or two points which determine a line.

**slope** returns the slope of the line.

Input:

```
slope(line(1,2i))
```

or:

```
slope(segment(1,2i))
```

or:

```
slope(1,2i)
```

Output:

-2

Input:

```
slope(line(x - 2y = 3))
```

Output:

1/2

Input:

```
slope(tangent(plotfunc(sin(x)),pi/4))
```

or:

```
slope(LineTan(sin(x),pi/4))
```

Output:

$\sqrt{2}/2$

The **slope** command has **slopeat** and **slopeatraw** versions (see section 12.14.1).

### 12.14.9 The radius of a circle: **radius**

The **radius** command takes one argument, a circle.

**radius** returns the radius of the circle.

Input:

```
radius(circle(-1,point(i)))
```

Output:

$\sqrt{2}/2$

### 12.14.10 The length of a vector: `abs`

The `abs` command takes as argument either a complex number or a vector defined by two points.

`abs` returns the absolute value of the complex number or the length of the vector.

Input:

```
abs (1+i)
```

or:

```
abs (point (1+2*i) - point (i))
```

Output:

```
sqrt (2)
```

### 12.14.11 The angle of a vector: `arg`

The `abs` command takes as argument a complex number or a vector defined by two points.

`abs` returns the argument of the complex number or the angle between the positive  $x$  direction and the vector.

Input:

```
arg (1+i)
```

Output:

```
pi/4
```

### 12.14.12 Normalize a complex number: `normalize`

The `normalize` command takes as argument a non-zero complex number.

`normalize` returns the normalized version of the complex number; the number divided by its absolute value.

Input:

```
normalize (3+4*i)
```

Output:

```
(3 + 4*i) / 5
```

## 12.15 Transformations

### 12.15.1 General remarks

The transformations in this section operate on any geometric object. As arguments, they can take the parameters which specify the transformation. With those arguments, they will return a new command which performs the transformation. If they are given a geometric object as the final argument, they will return the transformed object.

### 12.15.2 Translations in the plane: `translation`

See section 13.14.2 for translations in space.

The `translation` command can take one or two arguments.

If `translation` has a single argument, that argument is the translation vector. The translation vector can be given as a vector, list of coordinates, a difference of points or a complex number. `translation` returns a new command which performs the translation.

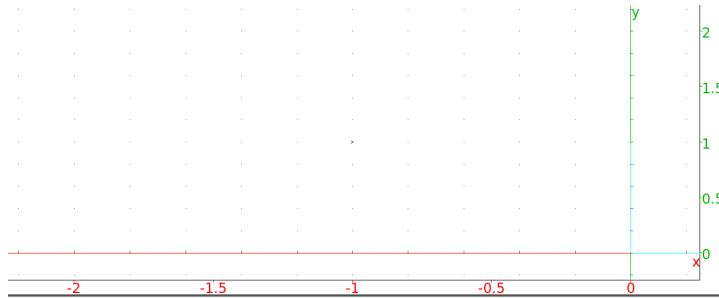
Input:

```
t := translation(1+i)
```

then:

```
t(-2)
```

Output:

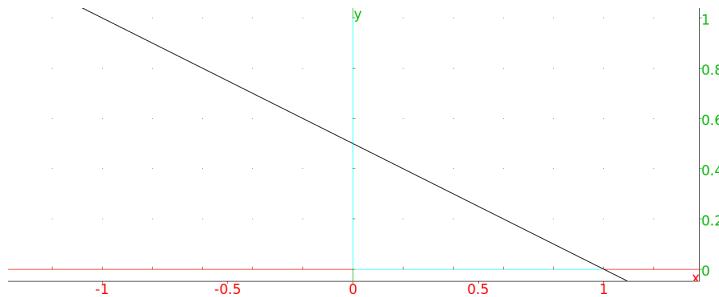


If `translation` has two arguments, the first argument is a translation vector as above, and the second argument is a geometric object. `translation` returns and draws the translated object.

Input:

```
translation([1,1], line(-2,-i))
```

Output:



### 12.15.3 Reflections in the plane: `reflection`

See section 13.14.3 for reflections in space.

The `reflection` command can take one or two arguments.

If `reflection` has a single argument, that argument is a point or line. `reflection` returns a new command which performs the reflection with respect to the point or line.

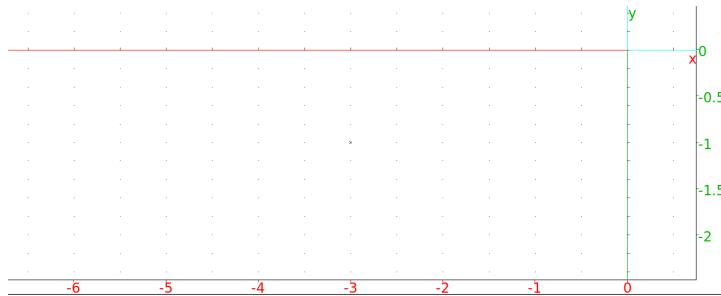
Input:

```
rf := reflection(-1)
```

then:

```
rf(1+i)
```

Output:

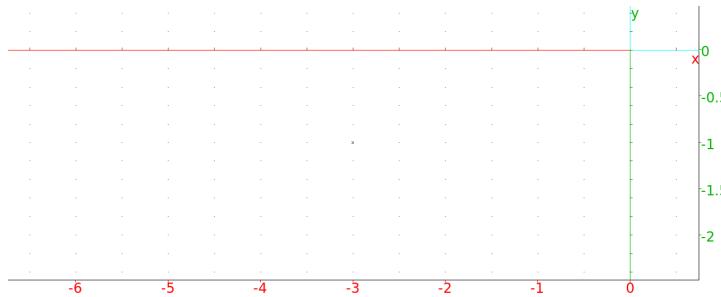


If `reflection` has two arguments, the first argument is a point or line as above, and the second argument is a geometric object. `reflection` returns and draws the reflection of the object.

Input:

```
reflection(-1, 1+i)
```

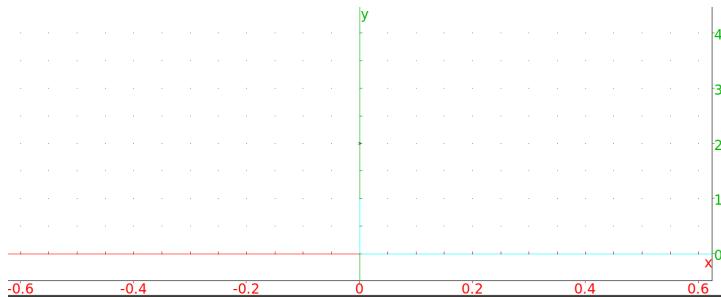
Output:



Input:

```
reflection(line(-1, i), 1+i)
```

Output:



### 12.15.4 Rotation in the plane: `rotation`

See section 13.14.4 for rotations in space.

The `rotation` command can take two or three arguments.

If `rotation` has two arguments, they are a point (the center of rotation) and a real number (the angle of rotation). `rotation` returns a new command which performs the rotation.

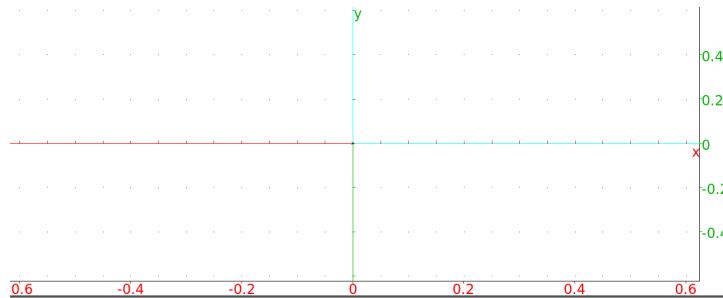
Input:

```
r := rotation(i, -pi/2)
```

then:

$$r(1+i)$$

Output:

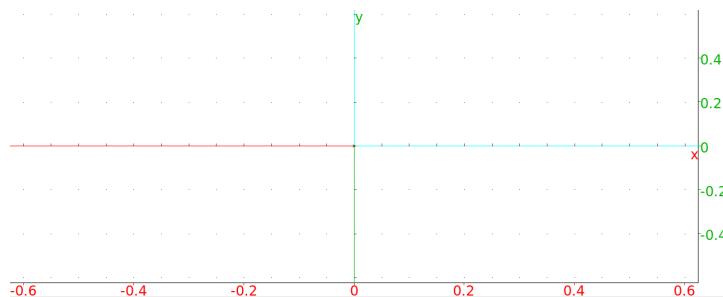


If `rotation` has three arguments, the first two arguments are a point and real number as above, and the third argument is a geometric object. `rotation` returns and draws the rotated object.

Input:

```
rotation(i, -pi/2, 1+i)
```

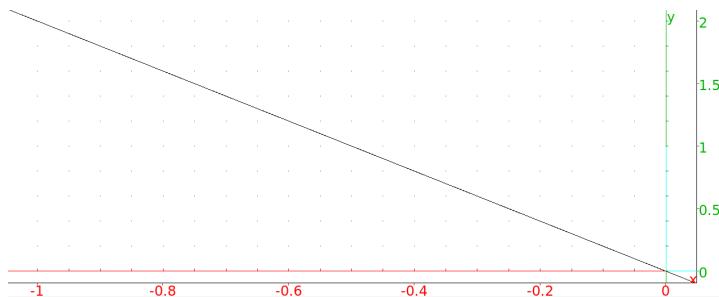
Output:



Input:

```
rotation(i, -pi/2, line(1+i, -1))
```

Output:



### 12.15.5 Homothety in the plane: homothety

See section 13.14.5 for homotheties in space.

A homothety is a dilation about a given point. The `homothety` command can take two or three arguments.

If `homothety` has two arguments, they are a point (the center of the homothety) and a real number (the scaling ratio). `homothety` returns a new command which performs the dilation.

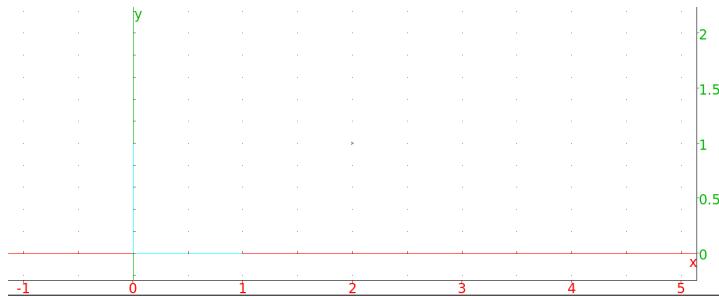
Input:

```
h := homothety(i, 2)
```

then:

```
h(1+i)
```

Output:

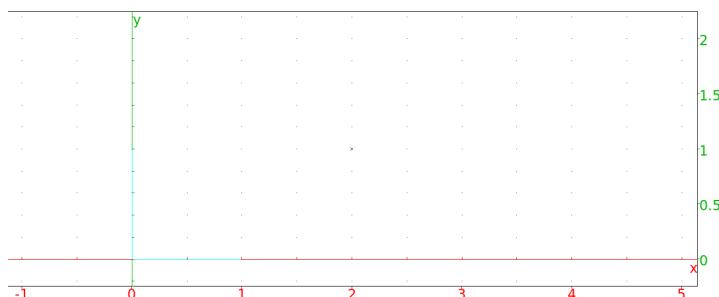


If `homothety` has three arguments, the first two arguments are a point and real number as above, and the third argument is a geometric object. `homothety` returns and draws the dilated object.

Input:

```
homothety(i, 2, 1+i)
```

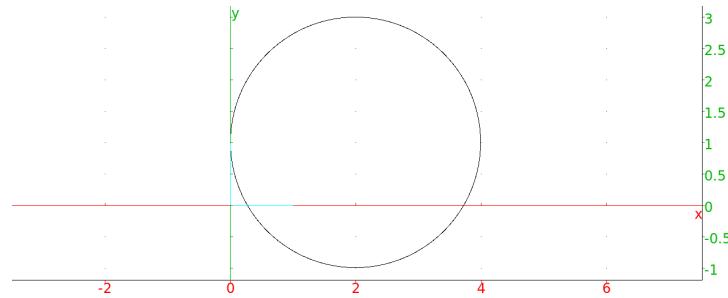
Output:



Input:

```
homothety(i, 2, circle(1+i, 1))
```

Output:



The `homothety` command can also take a complex number as the second argument. In that case, the result will be a rotation as well as a dilation.

### 12.15.6 Similarity in the plane: `similarity`

See section 13.14.6 for similarities in space.

The `similarity` command rotates and scales about a given point. It takes three or four arguments.

If `similarity` has three arguments, they are a point (the center of rotation), a real number (the scaling ratio) and a real number (the angle of rotation). `similarity` returns a new command which performs the transformation.

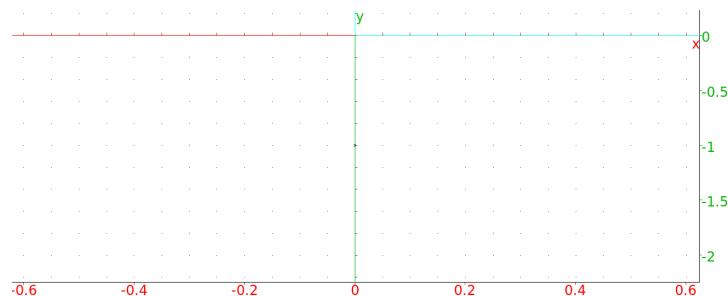
Input:

```
s := similarity(i, 2, -pi/2)
```

then:

```
s (1+i)
```

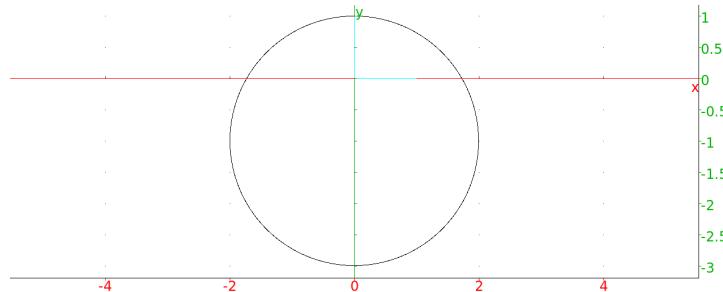
Output:



then:

```
s (circle(1+i, 1))
```

Output:

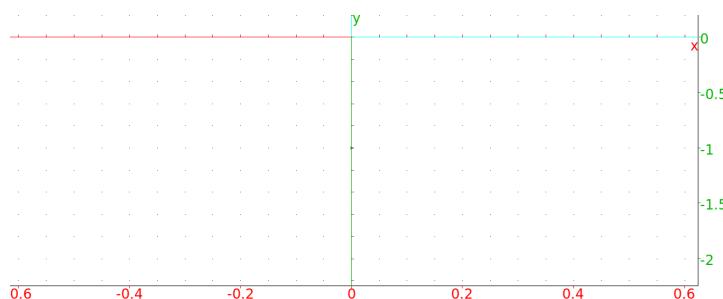


If `similarity` has four arguments, the first three arguments are a point and two numbers as above, and the fourth argument is a geometric object. `similarity` returns and draws the transformed object.

Input:

```
similarity(i, 2, -pi/2, 1 + i)
```

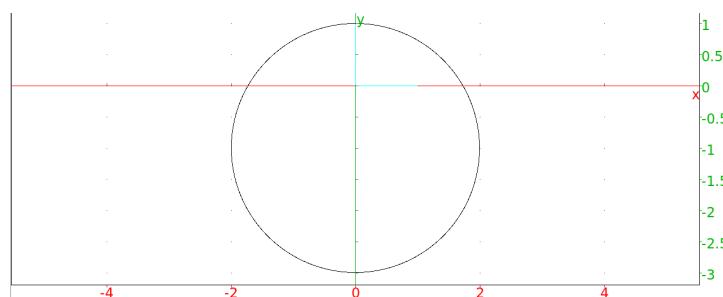
Output:



Input:

```
similarity(i, 2, -pi/2, circle(1+i, 1))
```

Output:



Note that for a point  $A$  and numbers  $k$  and  $a$ , the command `similarity(A, k, a)` is the same as `homothety(A, k*exp(i*a))`.

### 12.15.7 Inversion in the plane: `inversion`

See section 13.14.7 for inversions in space.

Given a circle  $C$  with center  $O$  and radius  $r$ , the *inversion* of a point  $A$  with respect to  $C$  is the point  $A'$  on the ray  $\overrightarrow{OA}$  satisfying  $\overline{OA} \cdot \overline{OA'} = r^2$ .

The `inversion` command takes two or three arguments.

If inversion has two arguments, they are a point (the center of inversion) and a real number (the radius). `inversion` returns a new command which performs the inversion.

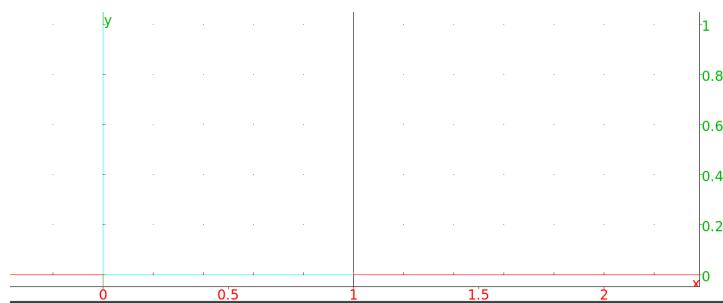
Input:

```
inver := inversion(i, 2)
```

then:

```
inver(circle(1+i, 1))
```

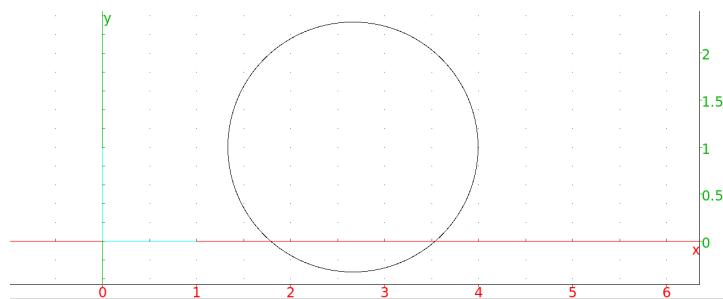
Output:



then:

```
inver(circle(1+i, 1/2))
```

Output:

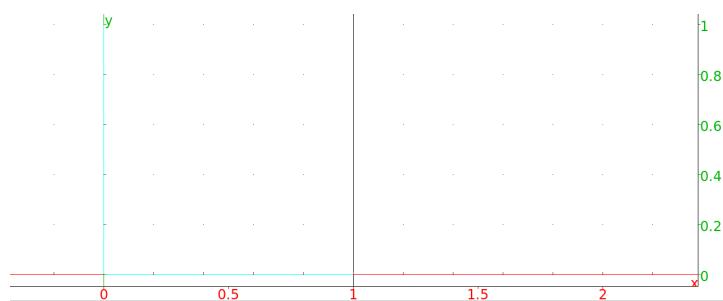


If inversion has three arguments, the first two arguments are a point and number as above, and the third argument is a geometric object. `inversion` returns and draws the inverted object.

Input:

```
inversion(i, 2, circle(1+i, 1))
```

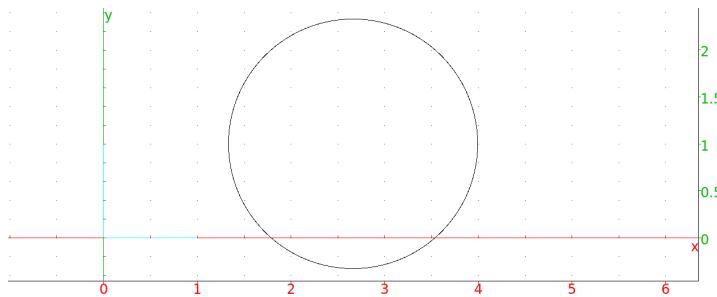
Output:



Input:

```
inversion(i, 2, circle(1+i,1/2))
```

Output:



### 12.15.8 Orthogonal projection in the plane: `projection`

See section 13.14.8 for projections in space.

The `projection` command takes one or two arguments.

If `projection` has one argument, it is a geometric object. `projection` returns a new command which projects points onto the object.

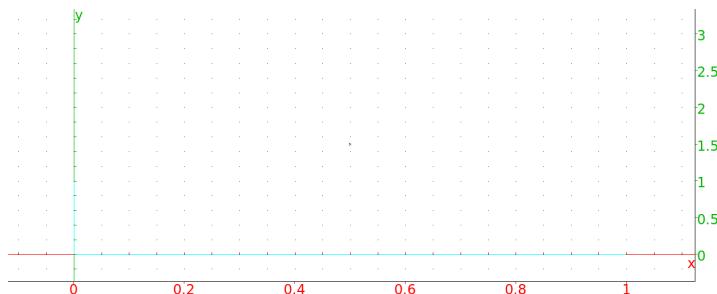
Input:

```
p1 := projection(line(-1,i))
```

then:

```
p1(i+1)
```

Output:



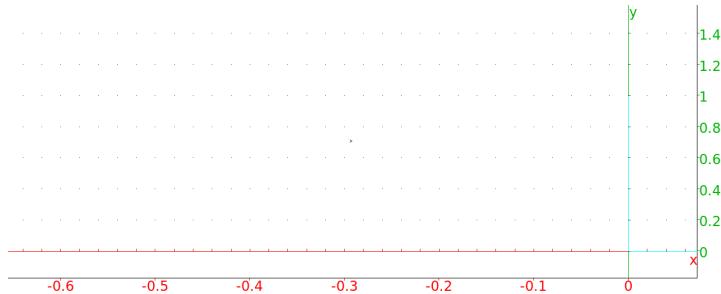
Input:

```
p2 := projection(circle(-1,1))
```

then:

```
p2(i)
```

Output:

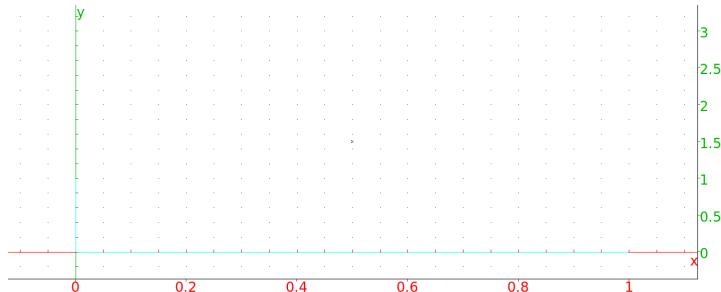


If projection has two arguments, the first argument is a geometric object as above, and the second argument is a point. projection returns and draws the projection of the point onto the object.

Input:

```
projection(line(-1, i), 1+i)
```

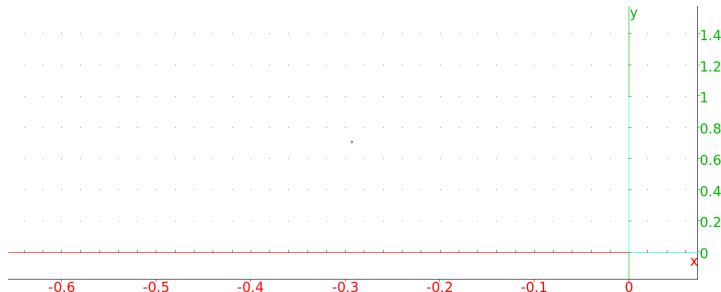
Output:



Input:

```
projection(circle(-1, 1), i)
```

Output:



## 12.16 Properties

### 12.16.1 Check if a point is on an object in the plane: `is_element`

See section 13.13.1 for checking elements in three-dimensional geometry.

The `is_element` command takes two arguments, a point and a geometric object.

`is_element` returns 1 if the point is an element of the object and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_element(-1-i, line(0,1+i))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_element(i, line(0,1+i))
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 12.16.2 Check if three points are collinear in the plane: **is\_collinear**

See section 13.13.6 for checking for collinearity in three-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_collinear** command is a Boolean function which takes as argument a list or sequence of points.

**is\_collinear** returns 1 if the points are collinear and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_collinear(0,1+i,-1-i)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_collinear(i/100, 1+i, -1-i)
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 12.16.3 Check if four points are concyclic in the plane: **is\_concyclic**

See section 13.13.7 for checking for concyclicity in three-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_concyclic** command is a Boolean function which takes as argument a list or sequence of points.

**is\_concyclic** returns 1 if the points are cyclic and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_concyclic(1+i, -1+i, -1-i, 1-i)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_concyclic(i, -1+i, -1-i, 1-i)
```

Output:

```
0
```

#### 12.16.4 Check if a point is in a polygon or circle: `is_inside`

The `is_inside` command is a Boolean function which takes two arguments, a point and a polygon or circle.

`is_inside` returns 1 if the point is inside the polygon or circle (including the boundary) and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_inside(0, circle(-1, 1))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_inside(2, polygon([1, 2-i, 3+i]))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_inside(1-i, triangle([1, 2-i, 3+i]))
```

Output:

```
0
```

#### 12.16.5 Check if an object is an equilateral triangle in the plane: `is_equilateral`

See section 13.13.9 for checking for equilateral triangles in three-dimensional geometry.

The `is_equilateral` command is a Boolean function which takes as argument a geometric object or three points.

`is_equilateral` returns 1 if the object (or the triangle formed by the three points) is an equilateral triangle and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_equilateral(0, 2, 1+i*sqrt(3))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
T := equilateral_triangle(0, 2, C)
```

then:

```
is_equilateral(T[0])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Note that  $T[0]$  is a triangle since  $T$  is a list made of a triangle and the vertex  $C$ .

Entering `affix(C)` returns  $1 + i\sqrt{3}$

Input:

```
is_equilateral(1+i, -1+i, -1-i)
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 12.16.6 Check if an object in the plane is an isosceles triangle: `is_isosceles`

See section 13.13.10 for checking for isosceles triangles in three-dimensional geometry.

The `is_isosceles` command takes as argument a geometric object or three points.

`is_isosceles` returns 1, 2, 3 or 4 if the object (or triangle formed by the three points) is an isosceles triangle (the number indicates which vertex is on two equal sides) or a value of 4 means the triangle is equilateral. The command returns 0 if the object is not an isosceles triangle.

Input:

```
is_isosceles(0, 1+i, i)
```

Output:

```
2
```

Input:

```
T := isosceles_triangle(0,1,pi/4)
```

then:

```
is_isosceles(T)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
T := isosceles_triangle(0,1,pi/4,C)
```

then:

```
is_isosceles(T[0])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Note that  $T[0]$  is a triangle since  $T$  is a list made of a triangle and the vertex  $C$ .

Entering `affix(C)` returns  $\sqrt{2}/2 + i\sqrt{2}/2$

Input:

```
is_isosceles(1+i, -1+i, -i)
```

Output:

```
3
```

Input:

```
is_isosceles(0, 2, 1+i*sqrt(3))
```

Output:

```
4
```

### 12.16.7 Check if an object in the plane is a right triangle or a rectangle: `is_rectangle`

See section 13.13.11 for checking for right triangles and rectangles in three-dimensional geometry.

The `is_rectangle` command takes as argument a geometric object or a sequence of three or four points.

When the argument is a triangle or three points, `is_rectangle` returns 1, 2 or 3 if the triangle is a right triangle; the number indicates which vertex has the right angle. When the argument is a quadrilateral or four points, `is_rectangle` returns 1 or 2 if the quadrilateral is a rectangle; 1 if it is a rectangle but not a square and 2 if it is a square. The command returns 0 if the object is not a right triangle or rectangle.

Input:

```
is_rectangle(1, 1+i, i)
```

Output:

```
2
```

Input:

```
is_rectangle(1+i, -2+i, -2-i, 1-i)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
R := rectangle(-2-i, 1-i, 3, C, D)
```

then:

```
is_rectangle(R[0])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Note that `R[0]` is a rectangle since `R` is a list made of a rectangle and vertices `C` and `D`. Entering `affix(C, D)` returns  $-2+8*i$ ,  $1+8*i$ .

### 12.16.8 Check if an object in the plane is a square: **is\_square**

See section 13.13.12 for checking for squares in three-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_square** command is a Boolean function which takes as argument a geometric object or four points.

**is\_square** returns 1 if the object (or quadrilateral determined by the four points) is a square and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_square(1+i, -1+i, -1-i, 1-i)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
K := square(1+i, -1+i)
```

then:

```
is_square(K)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
K := square(1+i, -1+i, C, D); is_square(K[0])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Note that  $K[0]$  is a square since  $K$  is a list made of a square and vertices  $C$  and  $D$ .

Entering **affix(C, D)** returns  $-1-i, 1-i$ .

Input:

```
is_square(i, -1+i, -1-i, 1-i)
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 12.16.9 Check if an object in the plane is a rhombus: **is\_rhombus**

See section 13.13.13 for checking for rhombuses in three-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_rhombus** command takes as argument a geometric object or four points.

**is\_rhombus** returns 1 or 2 if the object is a rhombus; it returns 1 if the object is a rhombus but not a square and 2 if the object is a square. The command returns 0 if the object is not a rhombus.

Input:

```
is_rhombus(1+i, -1+i, -1-i, 1-i)
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
K := rhombus(1+i, -1+i, pi/4)
```

then:

```
is_rhombus(K)
```

Input:

1

Input:

```
K := rhombus(1+i, -1+i, pi/4, C, D)
```

then:

```
is_rhombus(K[0])
```

Input:

1

Note that  $K[0]$  is a rhombus since  $K$  is a list made of a rhombus and vertices  $C$  and  $D$ . Entering `affix(C, D)` returns  $-\sqrt{2}-i, -\sqrt{2}+i$ .

Input:

```
is_rhombus(i, -1+i, -1-i, 1-i)
```

Output:

0

### 12.16.10 Check if an object in the plane is a parallelogram: `is_parallelgram`

See section 13.13.14 for checking for parallelograms in three-dimensional geometry.

The `is_parallelgram` command takes as argument a geometric object or four points.

`is_parallelgram` returns 1, 2, 3 or 4 if the object is a parallelogram. It returns 4 if the object is a square, 3 if the object is a rectangle but not a square, 2 if the object is a rhombus but not a rectangle, and returns 1 otherwise. The command returns 0 if the object is not a parallelogram.

Input:

```
is_parallelgram(i, -1+i, -1-i, 1-i)
```

Output:

0

Input:

```
is_parallel(1+i, -1+i, -1-i, 1-i)
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
Q := quadrilateral(1+i, -1+i, -1-i, 1-i)
```

then:

```
is_parallel(Q)
```

Output:

4

Input:

```
P := parallelogram(-1-i, 1-i, i, D)
```

then:

```
is_parallel(P[0])
```

Output:

1

Note that  $P[0]$  is a parallelogram since  $P$  is a list made of a parallelogram and vertex  $D$ . Entering  $\text{affix}(D)$  returns  $-2+i$ .

### 12.16.11 Check if two lines in the plane are parallel: **is\_parallel**

See section 13.13.3 for checking for parallels in three-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_parallel** command is a Boolean function which takes as argument two lines.

**is\_parallel** returns 1 if the lines are parallel and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_parallel(line(0,1+i),line(i,-1))
```

Output:

1

Output:

```
is_parallel(line(0,1+i),line(i,-1-i))
```

Output:

0

### 12.16.12 Check if two lines in the plane are perpendicular: **is\_perpendicular**

See section 13.13.4 for checking for perpendicularity in three-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_perpendicular** command is a Boolean function which takes as argument two lines.

**is\_perpendicular** returns 1 if the lines are perpendicular and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_perpendicular(line(0,1+i),line(i,1))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_parallel(line(0,1+i),line(1+i,1))
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 12.16.13 Check if two circles in the plane are orthogonal: **is\_orthogonal**

See section 13.13.5 for checking for orthogonality in three-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_orthogonal** command is a Boolean function which takes as argument two lines or two circles.

**is\_orthogonal** returns 1 if the objects are orthogonal and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_orthogonal(line(0,1+i),line(i,1))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_orthogonal(line(2,i),line(0,1+i))
```

Output:

```
0
```

Input:

```
is_orthogonal(circle(0,1+i),circle(2,1+i))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_orthogonal(circle(0,1),circle(2,1))
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 12.16.14 Check if elements are conjugates: `is_conjugate`

The `is_conjugate` is a Boolean function which takes as arguments one of the following:

- A circle followed by two more arguments, each of which is a point or a line.  
In this case, `is_conjugate` returns 1 if the last two arguments are conjugate with respect to the circle, it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_conjugate(circle(0,1+i),point(1-i), point(3+i))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_conjugate(circle(0,1),point((1+i)/2),
line(1+i,2))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_conjugate(circle(0,1), line(1+i,2),
line((1+i)/2,0))
```

Output:

```
1
```

- Two lines or two points, followed by two more arguments, each of which is a point or a line.

In this case, `is_conjugate` returns 1 if the last two arguments are conjugate with respect to the first two arguments, it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_conjugate(point(1+i),point(3+i),point(i),point(3/2+i))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_conjugate(line(0,1+i),line(2,3+i),line(3,4+i),line(3/2,5/2+i))
```

Output:

```
1
```

**12.16.15 Check if four points form a harmonic division: `is_harmonic`**

The `is_harmonic` command is a Boolean function which takes as arguments four points.

`is_harmonic` returns 1 if the four points form a harmonic range and returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_harmonic(0, 2, 3/2, 3)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_harmonic(0, 1+i, 1, i)
```

Output:

```
0
```

**12.16.16 Check if lines are in a bundle: `is_harmonic_line_bundle`**

The `is_harmonic_line_bundle` command takes as argument a list or sequence of lines.

`is_harmonic_line_bundle` returns

1. 1 if the lines pass through a common point
2. 2 if the lines are parallel
3. 3 if the lines are the same
4. 0 otherwise

Input:

```
is_harmonic_line_bundle([line(0, 1+i), line(0, 2+i), line(0, 3+i), line(0, 1+i)])
```

Output:

```
1
```

**12.16.17 Check if circles are in a bundle: `is_harmonic_circle_bundle`**

The `is_harmonic_circle_bundle` command takes as argument a list or sequence of circles.

`is_harmonic_circle_bundle` returns

1. 1 if the circles pass through a common point
2. 2 if the circles are concentric
3. 3 if the circles are the same

4. 0 otherwise

Input:

```
is_harmonic_circle_bundle([circle(0,i),circle(4,i),circle(0,1/2)])
```

Output:

1

## 12.17 Harmonic division

### 12.17.1 Find a point dividing a segment in the harmonic ratio $k$ : **division\_point**

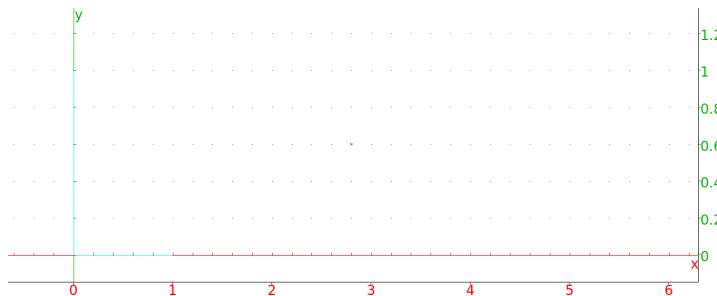
The **division\_point** command takes as argument two points  $a$  and  $b$  and a complex number  $k$ .

**division\_point** returns and draws  $z$  where  $(z - a)/(z - b) = k$ .

Input:

```
division_point(i,2+i,3+i)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(division_point(i,2+i,3))
```

Output:

3+i

### 12.17.2 The cross ratio of four collinear points: **cross\_ratio**

The **cross\_ratio** command takes as arguments four complex numbers  $a, b, c, d$ .

**cross\_ratio** returns the cross ratio  $[(c - a)/(c - b)]/[(d - a)/(d - b)]$ .

Input:

```
cross_ratio(0,1,2,3)
```

Output:

4/3

Input:

```
cross_ratio(i,2+i,3/2 + i, 3+i)
```

Output:

-1

### 12.17.3 Harmonic division: `harmonic_division`

Four collinear points  $A, B, C$  and  $D$  are in harmonic division if  $\overline{CA}/\overline{CB} = \overline{DA}/\overline{DB}$ . In this case,  $D$  is called the harmonic conjugate of  $A, B$  and  $C$ .

Four concurrent lines or four parallel lines are in harmonic division if the intersection of any fifth line with these four lines consists of four points in harmonic division. The lines are also said to form a harmonic pencil. The fourth line is called the harmonic conjugate of the first three.

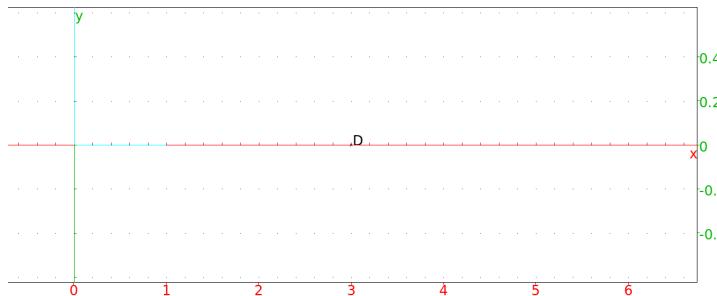
The `harmonic_division` command takes as argument three collinear points or three concurrent lines and a variable name.

`harmonic_division` returns and draws the three points or lines along with a fourth so the four objects are in harmonic division, and assigns the fourth point or line to the variable name.

Input:

```
harmonic_division(0, 2, 3/2, D)
```

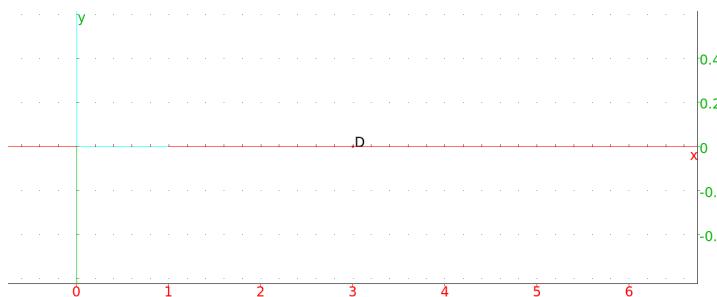
Output:



Input:

```
harmonic_division(point(0), point(2), point(3/2), D)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(D)
```

Output:

### 12.17.4 The harmonic conjugate: `harmonic_conjugate`

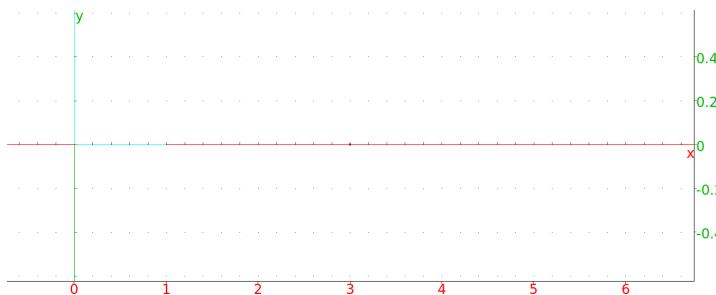
The `harmonic_conjugate` command takes as arguments three collinear points, three concurrent lines or three parallel lines.

`harmonic_conjugate` returns and draws the harmonic conjugate of the arguments.

Input:

```
harmonic_conjugate(0, 2, 3/2)
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(harmonic_conjugate(0, 2, 3/2))
```

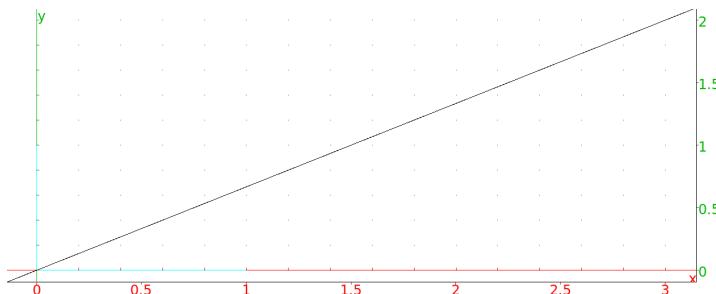
Output:

```
3
```

Input:

```
harmonic_conjugate(line(0, 1+i), line(0, 3+i), line(0, i))
```

Output:



### 12.17.5 Pole and polar: `pole` `polar`

Given a circle centered at  $O$ , a point  $A$  is a pole and a line  $L$  is the corresponding polar if  $L$  is the line passing through the inversion of  $A$  with respect to the circle (see section 12.15.7) passing through the line  $\overleftrightarrow{OA}$ .

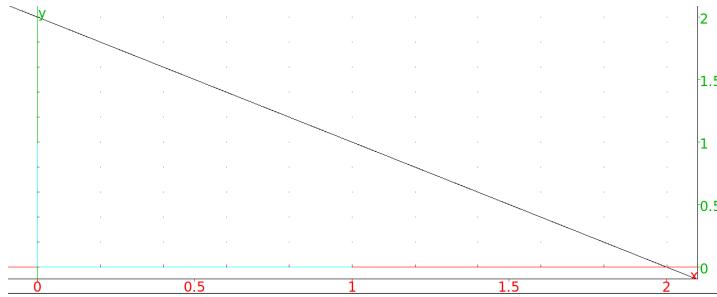
The `polar` command takes as argument a circle  $C$  and a point  $a$ .

`polar` returns and draws the polar of the point  $a$  with respect to  $C$ .

Input:

```
polar(circle(0,1), (i+1)/2)
```

Output:

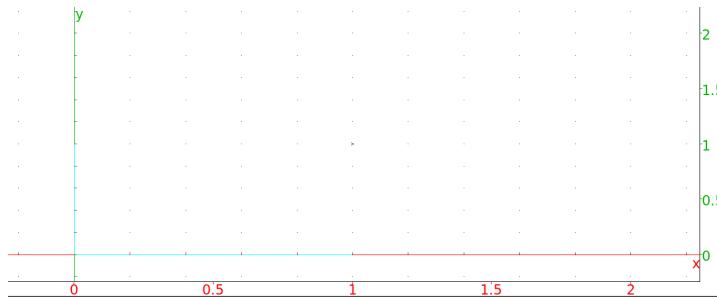


The `pole` command takes as argument a circle  $C$  and a line  $L$ .  
`pole` returns and draws the pole of the line  $L$  with respect to  $C$ .

Input:

```
pole(circle(0,1), line(i,1))
```

Output:



Input:

```
affix(pole(circle(0,1), line(i,1)))
```

Output:

$1+i$

### 12.17.6 The polar reciprocal: `reciprocation`

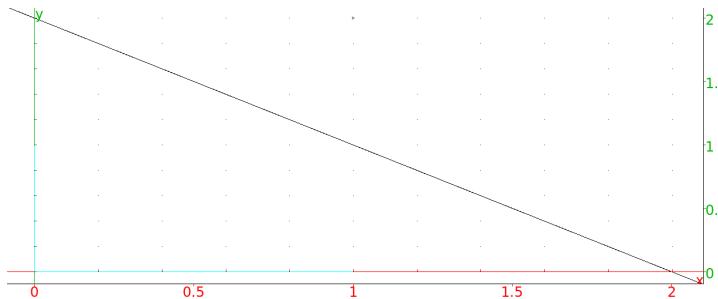
The `reciprocation` command takes as arguments a circle and list of points and lines.

`reciprocation` returns the list formed by replaced each point or line by its polar or pole with respect to the circle.

Input:

```
reciprocation(circle(0,1), [point((1+i)/2), line(1,-1+i)])
```

Output:



## 12.18 Loci and envelopes

### 12.18.1 Loci: locus

The `locus` command draws the locus of points determined by geometric objects moving in the plane, where the object depends on a point moving along a curve. It can draw a locus of points which depends on points on a curve, or the envelope of a family of lines depending on points on a curve.

#### The locus of points depending on points on a curve.

For this, the `locus` command takes two mandatory arguments and two optional arguments.

- The first mandatory argument is a variable name. This variable needs to already have been assigned to a point, and that point should be a function of a second point which moves along a curve. This second point is the second argument to `locus`.
- The second mandatory argument is another variable name. This variable needs to already have been assigned to a point, that point should be the result of the `element` command; for example, defined by `element(C)` for a curve `C`. (See section 12.6.15.)
- The optional third argument is used to set `t` to an interval, where `t` is the parameter for the curve `C`. (You can double check the name of the parameter for a curve `C` with the command `parametq(C)`.)
- The optional fourth argument is used to set the value of `tstep` for the parameter `t`.

`locus` will draw the locus of points formed by the first argument, as the second argument traces over the curve `C`.

Input:

```
P := element(line(i, i+1))
```

then:

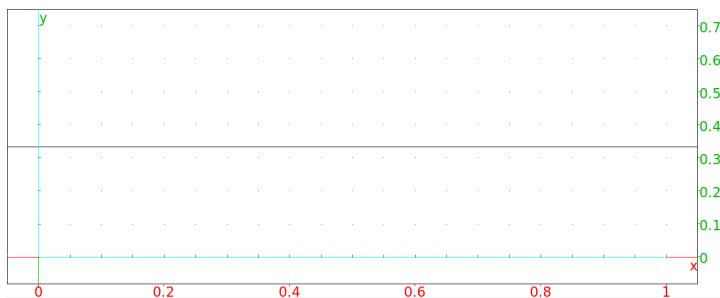
```
G := isobarycenter(-1, 1, P)
```

then:

```
locus(G, P)
```

This will draw the set of isobarycenters of the triangles with vertices  $-1, 1$  and  $P$ , where  $P$  ranges over the line through  $i$  and  $i+1$ .

Output:



Input:

```
parameq(C)
```

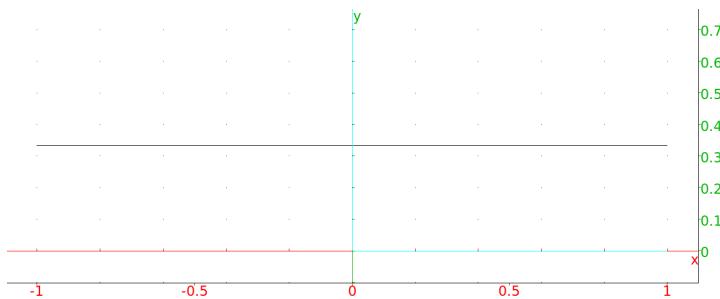
Output:

```
t + i
```

Input:

```
locus(G, P, t=-3..3, tstep=0.1)
```

Output:



### The envelope of a family of lines which depend on points on a curve.

For this, the `locus` command takes two mandatory arguments and two optional arguments.

- The first mandatory argument is a variable name. This variable needs to already have been assigned to a line, and that line should be a function of a point which moves along a curve. This point is the second argument to `locus`.
- The second mandatory argument is another variable name. This variable needs to already have been assigned to a point, that point should be the result of the `element` command; for example, defined by `element(C)` for a curve  $C$ . (See section 12.6.15.)

- The optional third argument is used to set  $t$  to an interval, where  $t$  is the parameter for the curve  $C$ . (You can double check the name of the parameter for a curve  $C$  with the command `parametq(C)`.)
- The optional fourth argument is used to set the value of `tstep` for the parameter  $t$ .

`locus` will draw the envelope of the lines formed by the first argument, as the second argument traces over the curve  $C$ .

Input:

```
F := point(1)
```

then:

```
H := element(line(x=0))
```

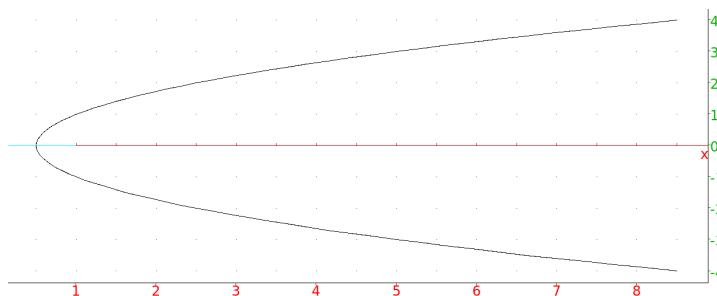
then:

```
d := perpen_bisector(F, H)
```

then:

```
locus(d, H)
```

This will draw the envelope of the family of perpendicular bisectors of the segments from the point 1 to the points on the line  $x=0$ . Output:



To draw the envelope of a family of lines which depend on a parameter, such as the lines given by the equations

$$y + x \tan(t) - 2 \sin(t) = 0$$

over the parameter  $t$ , the parameter can be regarded as the affixes of points on the line  $y = 0$ .

Input:

```
H := element(line(y=0))
```

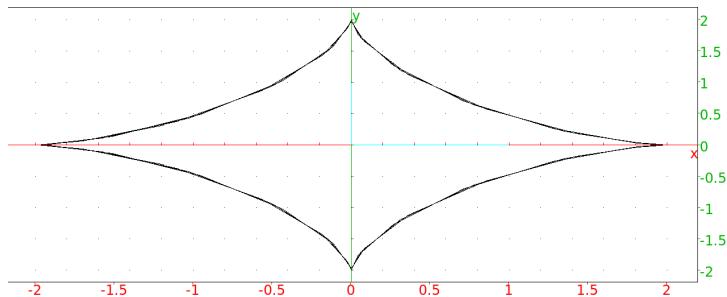
then:

```
D := line(y + x*tan(affix(H)) - 2*sin(affix(H)))
```

then:

```
locus(D, H)
```

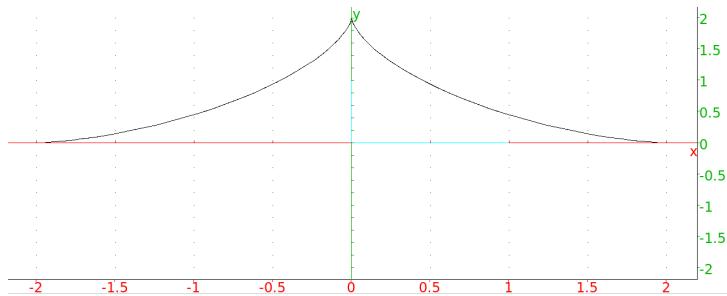
Output:



Input:

```
locus (D, H, t=0..pi)
```

Output:



### 12.18.2 Envelopes: `envelope`

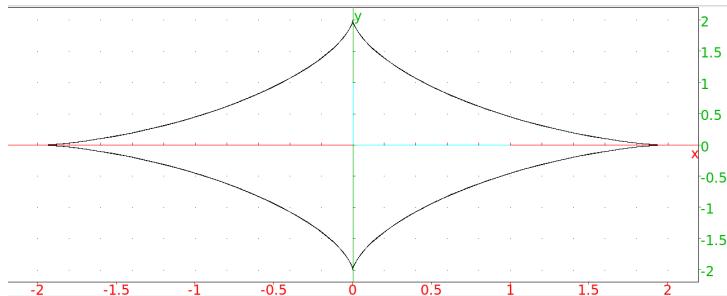
The `envelope` command takes two arguments, the first argument is expression `expr` in the variables `x`, `y` and a parameter such as `t`, and the second argument is the name of the parameter.

`envelope` draws the envelope of the family of curves given by `expr=0` over the parameter `t`.

Input:

```
envelope (y + x*tan(t) - 2*sin(t), t)
```

Output:

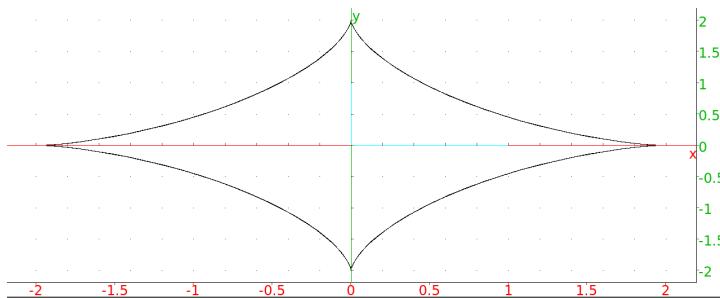


The `envelope` command can use variables besides `x` and `y`. In this case, the second argument needs to be a list of the two variables and the parameter.

Input:

```
envelope(v + u*tan(s) - 2*sin(s), [u,v,s])
```

Output:



### 12.18.3 The trace of a geometric object: `trace`

The `trace` command takes as argument a geometric object which depends on a parameter.

`trace` draws the trace of the object as the parameter is changed or the object is moved in **Pointer** mode.

For example, to find the locus of points equidistant from a line  $D$  and a point  $F$ , we can create a point  $H$  on the line  $D$ . Since the point To do this, open a graphic window (Alt-G) and type in the following commands, one per line.

First, create a line  $D$  (using sample points) and a sample point  $F$ .

Input

```
A := point(-3-i)
B := point(1/2 + 2*i)
D := line(A,B,color=0)
F := point(4/3,1/2,color=0)
```

The create a point  $H$  on the line  $D$  which we can move around.

Input:

```
assume(a=[0.7,-5,5,0.1])
H := element(D,a)
```

To find a point equidistant from  $D$  and  $F$ , find the point  $M$  where the perpendicular to  $D$  (at  $H$ ) intersects the perpendicular bisector to  $HF$ , and trace that point.

Input:

```
T := perpendicular(H,D)
M := single_inter(perpen_bisector(H,F),T)
trace(M)
```

Then as the point  $H$  on the line moves (by changing the value of  $a$  with the slider), we will get the trace of  $M$ .

To erase traces, add traces, activate or deactivate them, use the **Trace** menu of the **M** button located on the right side of the geometry screen.

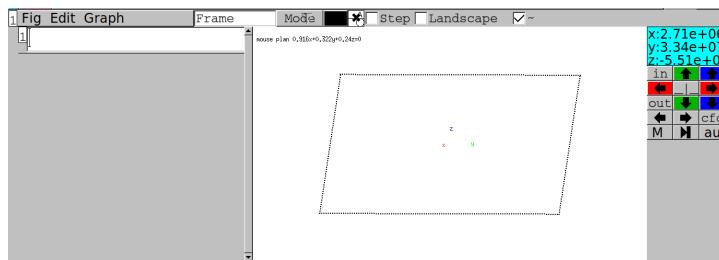


# Chapter 13

## Three-dimensional Graphics

### 13.1 Introduction

The Alt+H command brings up a display screen for three-dimensional graphics. This screen has its own menu and command lines.



This screen also automatically appears whenever there is a three-dimensional graphic command.

The plane of vision for a three-dimensional graphic screen is perpendicular to the observer's line of vision. The plane of vision is also indicated by dotted lines showing its intersection with the parallelepiped. The axis of vision for a three-dimensional graphic screen is

The three-dimensional graphic screen starts with the image of a parallelepiped bounding the graphics and vectors in the  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  directions. At the top of the screen is the equation of the plane of vision, which is a plane perpendicular to the observer's line of vision. The plane of vision is shown graphically with dotted lines indicating where it intersects the plane of vision.

Clicking in the graphic screen outside of the parallelepiped and dragging the mouse moves the  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  directions relative to the observer; these directions are also changed with the x, X, y, Y, z and Z keys. Scrolling the mouse wheel moves the plane of vision along the line of vision. The in and out buttons on the graphic screen menu zoom in and out of the picture.

The graphical features available for two-dimensional graphics (see section 12.3) are also available for three-dimensional graphics, but to see the points the markers must be squares with width (point\_width) at least 3.

The graphic screen menu has a cfg button which brings up a configuration screen. Among other things, this screen has

- An Ortho proj button, which determines whether the drawing uses orthogonal projection or perspective projection.

- A `Lights` button, which determines whether the objects are lit or not; the locations of eight points for lighting are set using the buttons `L1`, ..., `L7`, which specify the points with homogeneous coordinates.
- A `Show axis` button, which determines whether or not the outlining parallelepiped is visible.

## 13.2 Change the view

The depictions of three-dimensional objects are made with a coordinate system  $Oxyz$ , where the  $x$  axis is horizontal and directed right, the  $y$  axis is vertical and directed up, and the  $z$  axis is perpendicular to the screen and directed out of the screen. The depictions can be transformed by changing to a different coordinate system by setting a quaternion. (See section 12.3.2.)

## 13.3 The axes

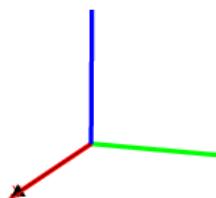
### 13.3.1 Draw unit vectors: `Ox_3d_unit_vector` `Oy_3d_unit_vector` `Oz_3d_unit_vector` `frame_3d`

The `Ox_3d_unit_vector` command draws the unit vector in the  $x$ -direction on a three-dimensional graphic screen.

Input:

```
Ox_3d_unit_vector()
```

Output:



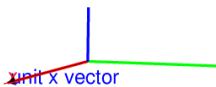
Similarly, the `Oy_3d_unit_vector` and `Oz_3d_unit_vector` commands draw the unit vector in the  $y$  and  $z$  directions, respectively.

These commands have no parameters, but can be decorated with the `legend` command.

Input:

```
Ox_3d_unit_vector(), legend(point([1,0,0]), "unit x
vector", blue)
```

Output:



The `frame_3d` command draws all three vectors simultaneously.

## 13.4 Points in space

### 13.4.1 Define a point in three-dimensions: `point`

See section 12.6.2 for points in the plane.

With the 3-d geometry screen in point mode, a click on a point with the left mouse button will choose that point. Points chosen this way are automatically named, first with A, then B, etc.

Alternatively, the `point` command chooses a point, where the point  $(a, b, c)$  is specified by either the three coordinates  $a, b, c$  or a list  $[a, b, c]$  of the coordinates. Many commands which takes points as arguments can either take them as `point(a, b, c)` or the list of coordinates `[a, b, c]`.

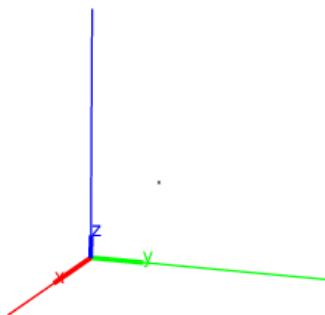
Input:

```
point(1,2,5)
```

or:

```
point([1,2,5])
```

Output:



(The marker used to indicate the point can be changed; see section 12.3.2.)

### 13.4.2 Define a random point in three-dimensions: `point3d`

The `point3d` command takes as argument a sequence of names for points and assigns random points to each name; the random points have coordinates which are integers between -5 and 5. For example,

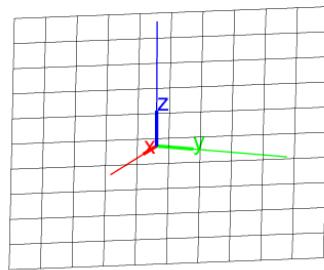
Input:

```
point3d(A,B,C)
```

then:

```
plane(A,B,C)
```

Output:



### 13.4.3 Find an intersection point of two objects in space: `single_inter` `line_inter`

See section 12.6.6 for single points of intersection of objects in the plane.

The `single_inter` (or the `line_inter`) command takes two geometric objects as arguments and returns one of the points of intersection of the two objects.

The `single_inter` command optionally takes a third argument, which can be a point or a list of points. If the optional argument is a single point, then `single_inter` returns the point of intersection *closest* to the optional argument. If the optional argument is a list of points, then `single_inter` tries to return a point of intersection not in the list.

Input:

```
A :=
single_inter(plane(point(0,1,1),point(1,0,1),point(1,1,0)),
             line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)))
```

then:

```
coordinates(A)
```

Output:

```
[2/3, 2/3, 2/3]
```

Input:

```
B := single_inter(sphere(point(0,0,0),1),
line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)))
```

then:

```
coordinates(B)
```

Output:

```
[1/sqrt(3), 1/sqrt(3), 1/sqrt(3)]
```

Input:

```
B1 := single_inter(sphere(point(0,0,0),1),
line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)), point(-1,0,0))
```

then:

```
coordinates(B1)
```

Output:

```
[-1/sqrt(3), -1/sqrt(3), -1/sqrt(3)]
```

Input:

```
C := single_inter(sphere(point(0,0,0),1),
line(point(1,0,0),point(1,1,1)))
```

then:

```
coordinates(C)
```

Output:

```
[1,0,0]
```

Input:

```
C1 := single_inter(sphere(point(0,0,0),1),
line(point(1,0,0),point(1,1,1)), [point(1,0,0)])
```

then:

```
coordinates(C1)
```

Output:

```
[1/3,2/3,2/3]
```

### 13.4.4 Find the intersection points of two objects in space: `inter`

See section 12.6.7 for points of intersection of objects in the plane.

The `inter` command takes two geometric objects as arguments and returns a list of the points of intersection or the curve of intersection of the two objects.

The `inter` command optionally takes a point as a third argument. In this case, `inter` returns the point of intersection *closest* to this argument.

Input:

```
LA:=inter(plane(point(0,1,1),point(1,0,1),point(1,1,0)),
           line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)))
```

then:

```
coordinates(LA)
```

Output:

```
[ [2/3, 2/3, 2/3] ]
```

Input:

```
LB:=inter(sphere(point(0,0,0),1),line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)))
```

then:

```
coordinates(LB)
```

Output:

```
[ [1/sqrt(3), 1/sqrt(3), 1/sqrt(3)], [-1/sqrt(3), -1/sqrt(3), -1/sqrt(3)] ]
```

To get just one of the points, use the usual list indices.

Input:

```
coordinates(LB[0])
```

Output:

```
[1/sqrt(3), 1/sqrt(3), 1/sqrt(3)]
```

To get the point closest to  $(1/2, 1/2, 1/2)$ , enter

Input:

```
LB1:=inter(sphere(point(0,0,0),1),
           line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)),point(1/2,1/2,1/2))
```

then:

```
coordinates(LB1)
```

Output:

```
[1/sqrt(3), 1/sqrt(3), 1/sqrt(3)]
```

### 13.4.5 Find the midpoint of a segment in space: **midpoint**

See section 12.6.9 for midpoints in the plane.

The **midpoint** command takes two points (or a list of two points) as arguments and returns and draws the midpoint of the segment determined by these points.

Input:

```
MP := midpoint(point(1,4,0),point(1,-2,0))
```

then:

```
coordinates(MP)
```

Output:

```
[1,1,0]
```

### 13.4.6 Find the isobarycenter of a set of points in space: **isobarycenter**

See section 12.6.11 for isobarycenters of objects in the plane.

The **isobarycenter** command takes a list (or sequence) of points and returns and draws the isobarycenter, which is the barycenter when all the points are equally weighted.

Input:

```
IB := isobarycenter(point(1,4,0),point(1,-2,0))
```

then:

```
coordinates (IB)
```

Output:

```
[1,1,0]
```

### 13.4.7 Find the barycenter of a set of points in space: **barycenter**

See section 12.6.10 for barycenters of objects in the plane.

The **barycenter** command returns and draws the barycenter of a set of weighted points. If the sum of the weights is zero, then this command returns an error.

The points and their weights (real numbers) can be given in two different ways.

1. A sequence of lists of length two.

The first element of each list is a point and the second element is the weight of the point.

2. A matrix with two columns.

The first column of the matrix contains the points and the second column contains the corresponding weights.

Input:

```
BC := barycenter([point(1,4,0),1],[point(1,-2,0),1])
```

or:

```
BC := barycenter([[point(1,4,0),1],[point(1,-2,0),1]])
```

then:

```
coordinates(BC)
```

Output:

```
[1,1,0]
```

## 13.5 Lines in space

### 13.5.1 Lines and directed lines in space: `line`

See section 12.7.1 for lines in the plane.

The `line` command returns and draws a directed line given one of the following types of arguments:

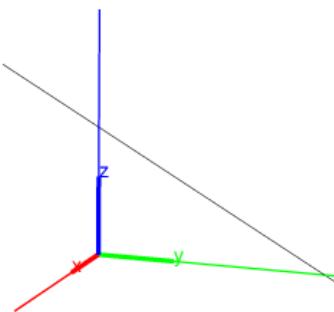
- Two points or a list of two points.

The direction of the line is from the first point to the second point.

Input:

```
line([0,3,0],point(3,0,3))
```

Output:



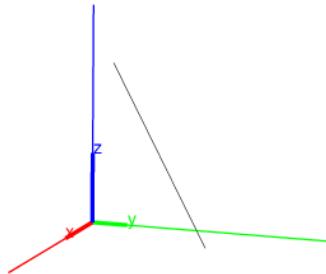
- A point and direction vector (in the form  $[u_1, u_2, u_3]$ ).

The direction of the line is given by the direction vector.

Input:

```
line([0,3,0],[3,0,3])
```

Output:



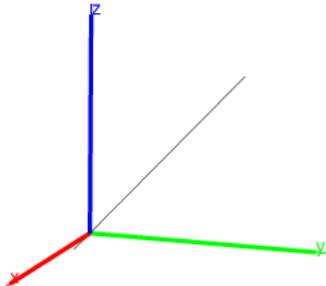
- Two equations for planes.

The direction of the line is given by the cross-product of the normals for the planes. For example, the intersection of the planes  $x = y$  (normal  $(1, -1, 0)$ ) and  $y = z$  (normal  $(0, 1, -1)$ ) will be  $(1, -1, 0) \times (0, 1, -1) = (1, 1, 1)$ .

Input:

```
line(x=y, y=z)
```

Output:



### 13.5.2 Half lines in space: `half_line`

See section 12.7.2 for half-lines in the plane.

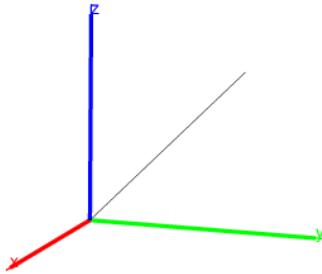
The `half_line` command takes as argument two points.

`half_line` returns and draws the ray from the first point through the second.

Input:

```
half_line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1))
```

Output:



### 13.5.3 Segments in space: **segment**

See section 12.7.3 for segments in the plane.

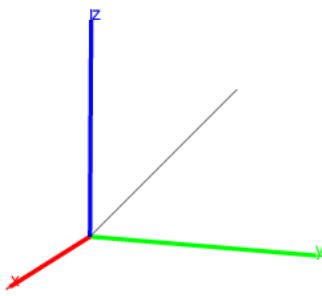
The **segment** command takes as arguments two points.

**segment** returns and draws the corresponding line segment.

Input:

```
segment(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1))
```

Output:



### 13.5.4 Vectors in space: **vector**

See section 12.7.4 for vectors in the plane.

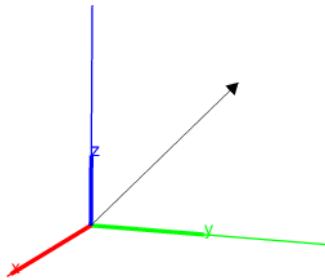
The **vector** command returns and draws vectors, given one of the following types of arguments:

- A list of the coordinates of a vector. The vector is drawn beginning at the origin.

Input:

```
vector([1,2,3])
```

Output:



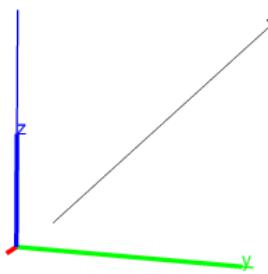
- Two points or two lists of coordinates for points.  
The vector is drawn from the first point to the second.  
Input:

```
vector(point(-1,0,0),point(0,1,2))
```

or:

```
vector([-1,0,0],[0,1,2])
```

Output:



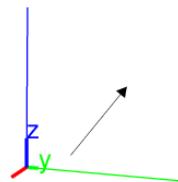
- A point and a vector.  
The vector is drawn beginning at the point.  
Input:

```
v := vector([-1,0,0],[0,1,2])
```

then:

```
vector(point(-1,2,0),v)
```

Output:



### 13.5.5 Parallel lines and planes in space: **parallel**

See section [12.7.5](#) for parallel lines in the plane.

The **parallel** command returns and draws a line or plane depending on the arguments. The possible arguments are:

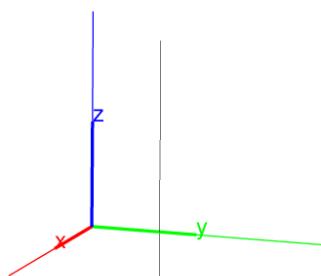
- A point  $A$  and a line  $L$ .

`parallel(A, L)` returns and draws the line through  $A$  parallel to  $L$ .

Input:

```
parallel(point(1,1,1), line(point(0,0,0),point(0,0,1)))
```

Output:



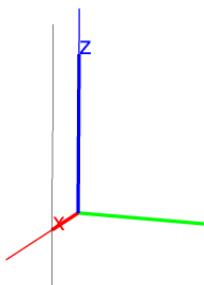
- Two non-parallel lines  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ .

`parallel(L1, L2)` returns and draws the plane containing  $L_2$  that is parallel to  $L_1$ .

Input:

```
parallel(line(point(1,0,0),point(0,1,0)),
line(point(0,0,0),point(0,0,1)))
```

Output:



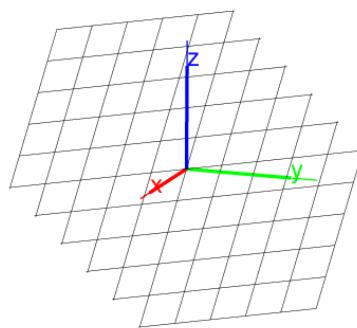
- A point A and a plane P.

`parallel(A,P)` returns and draws the plane through A that is parallel to A.

Input:

```
parallel(point(0,0,0),plane(point(1,0,0),point(0,1,0),point(0,0,1)))
```

Output:



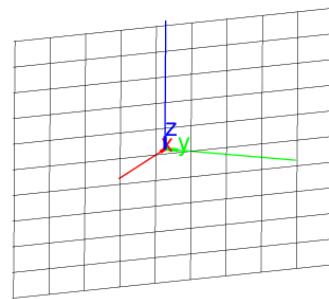
- A point A and two non-parallel lines L1 and L2.

`parallel(A,L1,L2)` returns and draws the plane through A that is parallel to L1 and L2.

Input:

```
parallel(point(1,1,1),line(point(0,0,0),point(0,0,1)),
         line(point(1,0,0),point(0,1,0)))
```

Output:



### 13.5.6 Perpendicular lines and planes in space: perpendicular

See section 12.7.6 for perpendicular lines in the plane.

The `perpendicular` command returns and draws a line or plane, depending on the arguments. The possible arguments are:

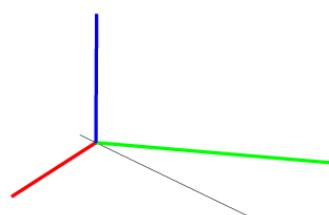
- A point  $A$  and a line  $L$ .

`perpendicular(A, L)` returns and draws the line through  $A$  that is perpendicular to  $L$ .

Input:

```
perpendicular(point(0,0,0),line(point(1,0,0),point(0,1,0)))
```

Output:



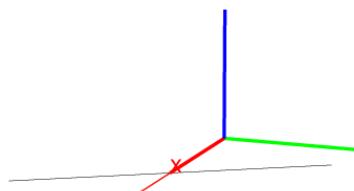
- A line  $L$  and a plane  $P$ .

`perpendicular(L, P)` returns and draws the plane containing  $L$  that is perpendicular to  $P$ .

Input:

```
perpendicular(line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,0)),
plane(point(1,0,0),point(0,1,0),point(0,0,1)))
```

Output:



### 13.5.7 Planes orthogonal to lines and lines orthogonal to planes in space: `orthogonal`

The `orthogonal` command returns and draws a line or plane, depending on the arguments. The possible arguments are:

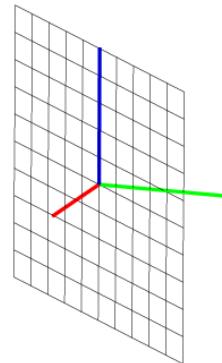
- A point  $A$  and a line  $L$ .

`orthogonal(A, L)` returns and draws the plane through  $A$  orthogonal to  $L$ .

Input:

```
orthogonal(point(0,0,0),line(point(1,0,0),point(0,1,0)))
```

Output:



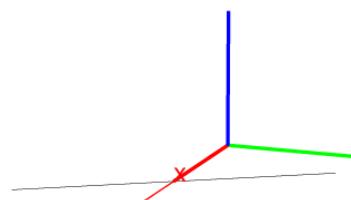
- A line  $L$  and a plane  $P$ .

`perpendicular(L, P)` returns and draws the plane containing  $L$  that is perpendicular to  $P$ .

Input:

```
perpendicular(line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,0)),
plane(point(1,0,0),point(0,1,0),point(0,0,1)))
```

Output:



### 13.5.8 Common perpendiculars to lines in space: `common_perpendicular`

The `common_perpendicular` command takes as arguments two lines.

`common_perpendicular` returns and draws the common perpendicular to the two lines.

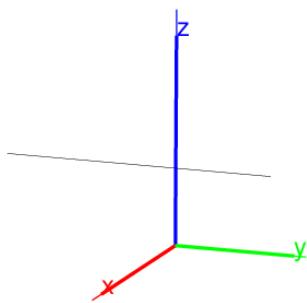
Input:

```
L1 := line(point(1,1,0),point(0,1,1));
L2 := line(point(0,-1,0),point(1,-1,1))
```

then:

```
common_perpendicular(L1,L2)
```

Output:



## 13.6 Planes in space

See also sections 13.5.6 and 13.5.7 for planes perpendicular and orthogonal to lines and planes.

### 13.6.1 Planes in space: **plane**

The **plane** command draws and returns a plane. It takes as argument one of the following:

- Three points.
- A point and a line.
- The equation of a plane.

Input:

```
plane(point(0,0,5),point(0,5,0),point(0,0,5))
```

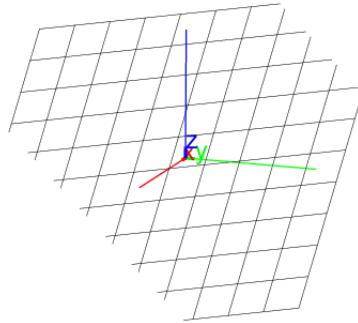
or:

```
plane(point(0,0,5),line(point(0,5,0),point(0,0,5)))
```

or:

```
plane(x + y + z = 5)
```

Output:



### 13.6.2 The bisector plane in space: `perpen_bisector`

See section 12.7.10 for perpendicular bisectors in the plane.

The `perpen_bisector` command takes as argument a segment or two points.

`perpen_bisector` returns and draws the perpendicular bisector plane of the segment.

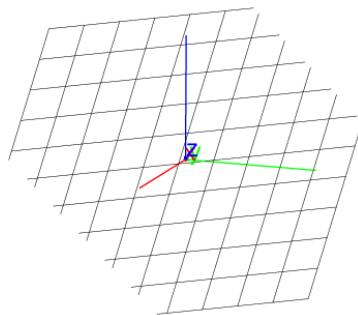
Input:

```
perpen_bisector(point(0,0,0),point(4,4,4))
```

or:

```
perpen_bisector(segment([0,0,0],[4,4,4]))
```

Output:



### 13.6.3 Tangent planes in space: `tangent`

See section 12.7.7 for tangents in the plane.

The `tangent` command takes as argument a geometric object and a point on the object.

`tangent` draws and returns the plane through the point tangent to the object.

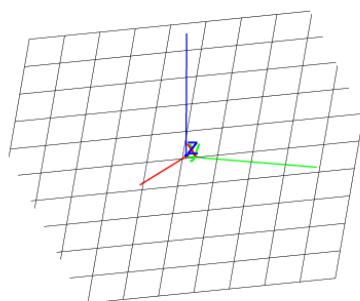
Input:

```
S:= sphere([0,0,0],3)
```

then:

```
tangent(S,[2,2,1])
```

Output:



If the geometric object is the graph of a function, then the second argument is a point in the domain of the function; the corresponding point on the graph will be used.

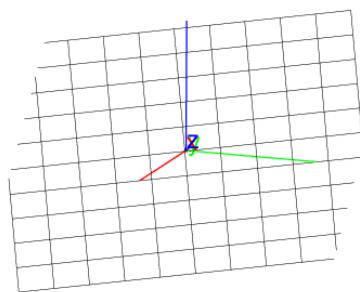
Input:

```
G:=plotfunc(x^2 + y^2, [x,y])
```

then:

```
tangent(G,[2,2])
```

Output:



## 13.7 Triangles in space

### 13.7.1 Draw a triangle in space: `triangle`

See section 12.8.1 for the `triangle` command in the plane.

The `triangle` takes as arguments three points.

`triangle` returns and draws the triangle determined by these points.

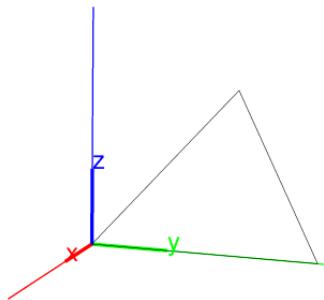
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3); C :=
point(0,3,0)
```

then:

```
triangle(A,B,C)
```

Output:



### 13.7.2 Isosceles triangles in space: `isosceles_triangle`

See section 12.8.2 for isosceles triangles in the plane.

The `isosceles_triangle` command returns and draws an isosceles triangle. It takes as arguments one of the following:

- Three points, A, B and P.

The first two points A and B are vertices of the triangle, the third point P determines the plane and orientation of the triangle. The orientation is so that angle BAP is positive, and the equal interior angles of the isosceles triangle are determined by angle ABP.

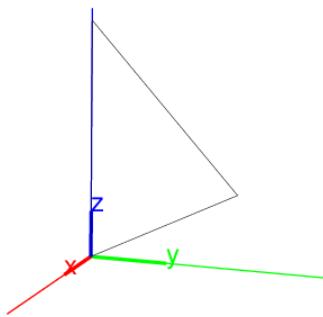
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3); P :=
point(0,0,3)
```

then:

```
isosceles_triangle(A,B,P);
```

Output:

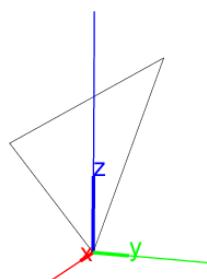


- Two points, A and B, and a list consisting of a point P and a real number c. The points A and B are vertices of the triangle and P determines the plane and orientation of the triangle as above. The number c is the measure of the equal interior angles.

Input:

```
isosceles_triangle(A, B, [P, 3*pi/4])
```

Output:



`isosceles_triangle` can take an optional fourth argument, which is a variable which will be assigned to the third vertex of the triangle.

Input:

```
isosceles_triangle(A, B, [P, 3*pi/4], C)
```

then:

```
coordinates(C)
```

Output:

```
[ (-3*sqrt(2) - 3)/2, (-3*sqrt(2) - 3)/2,
  (-3*sqrt(2) + 6)/2]
```

### 13.7.3 Right triangles in space: `right_triangle`

See section 12.8.3 for right triangles in the plane.

The `right_triangle` command returns and draws a right triangle. It takes as arguments one of the following:

- Three points, A, B and P.

`right_triangle(A, B, P)` returns and draws the right triangle BAC with the right angle at vertex A. The first two points A and B are vertices of the triangle, the third point P determines the plane and orientation of the triangle. The orientation is so that angle BAP is positive. The length of AC equals the length of AP.

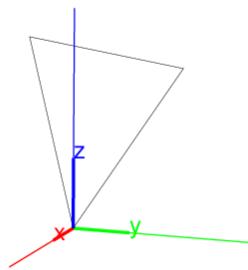
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3);
P := point(0,0,3)
```

then:

```
right_triangle(A,B,P);
```

Output:

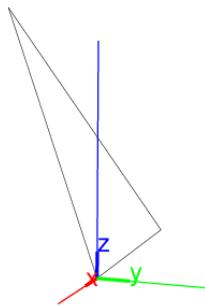


- Two points, A and B, and a list consisting of a point P and a real number k.  
`triangle_rectangle(A, B, [P, k])` returns and draws the right triangle BAC with the right angle at vertex A. The first two points A and B are vertices of the triangle, the third point P determines the plane and orientation of the triangle as above. The length of AC is |k| times the length of AP. Angle BAC has the same orientation as BAP if k is positive, angle BAC has opposite orientation as BAP if k is negative. So  $\tan(\beta) = k$  if  $\beta$  is the angle CAB.

Input:

```
right_triangle(A,B,[P,2])
```

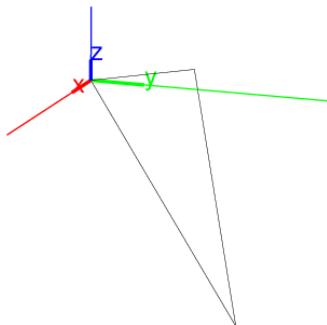
Output:



Input:

```
right_triangle(A,B,[P,-2])
```

Output:



`right_triangle` can take an optional fourth argument, which is a variable which will be assigned to the third vertex of the triangle.

Input:

```
right_triangle(A,B,[P,2],C)
```

then:

```
coordinates(C)
```

Output:

```
[-3*sqrt(2), -3*sqrt(2), 6*sqrt(2)]
```

### 13.7.4 Equilateral triangles in space: `equilateral_triangle`

See section 12.8.4 for equilateral triangles in the plane.

The `equilateral_triangle` command takes as arguments three points, A, B and P.

`equilateral_triangle` returns and draws the equilateral triangle ABC, where C is in the same half plane as P.

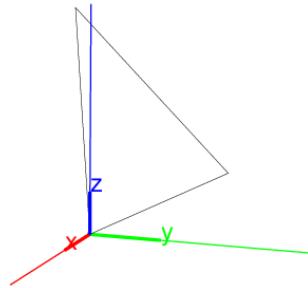
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3);
P := point(0,0,3)
```

then:

```
equilateral_triangle(A,B,P)
```

Output:



`triangle_rectangle` can take an optional fourth argument, which is a variable which will be assigned to the third vertex of the triangle.

Input:

```
triangle_rectangle(A,B,P,C)
```

then:

```
simplify(coordinates(C))
```

Output:

```
[ (-3*sqrt(6)+6)/4, (-3*sqrt(6)+6)/4, (3*sqrt(6)+3)/2 ]
```

## 13.8 Quadrilaterals in space

See section 12.9 for quadrilaterals in the plane.

### 13.8.1 Squares in space: **square**

See section 12.9.1 for squares in the plane.

The **square** command takes as arguments three points, A, B and P.

**square** returns and draws and returns the square with one side AB and the remaining sides in the same half-plane as P.

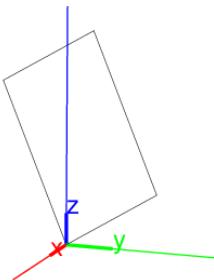
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3);
P := point(0,0,3);
```

then:

```
square(A,B,P)
```

Output:



The **square** command also optionally takes two more arguments, variable names to assign to the two new vertices.

Input:

```
square(A,B,P,C,D)
```

then:

```
coordinates(C); coordinates(D)
```

Output:

```
[-3*sqrt(2)/2+3, -3*sqrt(2)/2+3, 3*sqrt(2)+3],
[-3*sqrt(2)/2, -3*sqrt(2)/2, 3*sqrt(2)]
```

### 13.8.2 Rhombuses in space: **rhombus**

See section 12.9.2 for rhombuses in the plane.

The **rhombus** command returns and draws a rhombus. It takes as arguments one of the following:

- Three points, A, B and P.

The first two points A and B are vertices of the triangle, the third point P determines the plane and orientation of the rhombus. The orientation is so that angle BAP is positive. The command returns and draws rhombus ABCD, where D is on the ray AP (and the length of AD equals the length of AB).

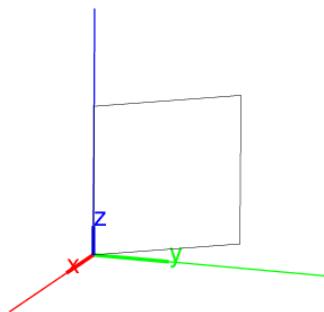
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3);
P := point(0,0,3)
```

then:

```
rhombus(A,B,P)
```

Output:

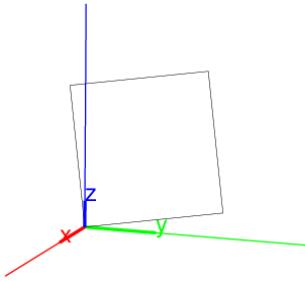


- Two points, A and B, and a list consisting of a point P and a real number  $\alpha$ . The points A and B are vertices of the rhombus and P determines the plane and orientation of the rhombus as above. The command returns and draws rhombus ABCD, where angle BAD equals  $\alpha$ .

Input:

```
rhombus(A,B,[P,pi/3])
```

Output:



`rhombus` can take optional fourth and fifth arguments, which are variable names assigned to vertices C and D.

Input:

```
rhombus(A,B,[P,pi/3],C,D)
```

then:

```
simplify(coordinates(C)); simplify(coordinates(D))
```

Output:

```
[(-3*sqrt(6)+18)/4, (-3*sqrt(6)+18)/4, (3*sqrt(6)+9)/2],
 [(-3*sqrt(6)+6)/4, (-3*sqrt(6)+6)/4, (3*sqrt(6)+3)/2]
```

### 13.8.3 Rectangles in space: `rectangle`

See section 12.9.3 for rectangles in the plane.

The `rectangle` command returns and draws a rectangle. It takes as arguments one of the following:

- Three points, A, B and P.

`rectangle(A,B,P)` returns and draws the rectangle ABCD. The first two points A and B are vertices of the rectangle, the third point P determines the plane and orientation of the rectangle. The orientation is so that angle BAP is positive. The length of side AD equals the length of AP.

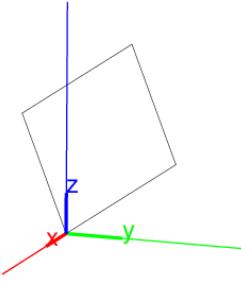
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3);
P := point(0,0,3)
```

then:

```
rectangle(A,B,P)
```

Output:

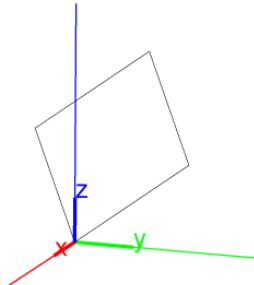


- Two points, A and B, and a list consisting of a point P and a real number k. `rectangle(A, B, [P, k])` returns and draws the rectangle ABCD. The first two points A and B are vertices of the rectangle, the third point P determines the plane and orientation of the rectangle as above. The length of AD is  $|k|$  times the length of AB. Angle BAD has the same orientation as BAP if k is positive, angle BAD has opposite orientation as BAP if k is negative.

Input:

```
rectangle(A, B, [P, 1/2])
```

Output:



`rectangle` takes optional fourth and fifth arguments, which are variables assigned to vertices C and D.

Input:

```
rectangle(A, B, P, C, D)
```

then:

```
simplify(coordinates(C)), simplify(coordinates(D))
```

Output:

```
[-(sqrt(6))/2, -(sqrt(6))/2, sqrt(6)],
[(-(sqrt(6))+6)/2, (-(sqrt(6))+6)/2, sqrt(6)+3]
```

### 13.8.4 Parallelograms in space: **parallelogram**

See section 12.9.4 for parallelograms in the plane.

The **parallelogram** command takes three points as arguments.

The **parallelogram** command returns and draws a parallelogram. If the arguments are A, B and C, then the parallelogram has the form ABCD.

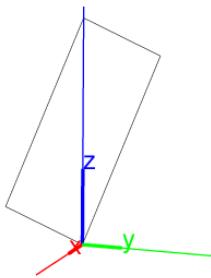
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3);
C := point(0,0,3)
```

then:

```
parallelogram(A,B,C)
```

Output:



The **parallelogram** command takes an optional fourth argument, which is a variable the fourth vertex is assigned to.

Input:

```
parallelogram(A,B,C,D)
```

then:

```
coordinates(D)
```

Output:

```
[-3, -3, 0]
```

### 13.8.5 Arbitrary quadrilaterals in space: **quadrilateral**

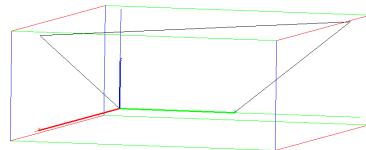
See section 12.9.5 for quadrilaterals in the plane.

The **quadrilateral** command takes as arguments four points. **quadrilateral** returns and draws the quadrilateral whose vertices are the given points.

Input:

```
quadrilateral(point(0,0,0),point(0,1,0),point(0,2,2),point(1,0,2))
```

Output:



## 13.9 Polygons in space

See section 12.10 for polygons in the plane.

### 13.9.1 Hexagons in space: hexagon

See section 12.10.1 for hexagons in the plane.

The hexagon command takes as arguments three points, A, B and P.

hexagon returns and draws a regular hexagon. The first two points A and B are vertices of the hexagon, the third point P determines the plane and orientation of the rectangle.

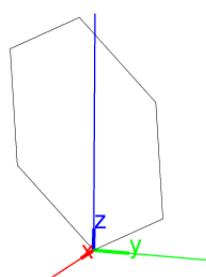
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3);
P := point(0,0,3)
```

then:

```
hexagon(A,B,P)
```

Output:



hexagon takes four optional arguments, which are variables assigned to the unnamed vertices.

Input:

```
hexagon(A,B,P,C,D,E,F)
```

then:

```
simplify(coordinates(C))
```

Output:

```
[(-3*sqrt(6)+18)/4, (-3*sqrt(6)+18)/4, (3*sqrt(6)+9)/2]
```

### 13.9.2 Regular polygons in space: **isopolygon**

See section 12.10.2 for regular polygons in the plane.

The **isopolygon** command takes as arguments three points and an integer.

**isopolygon** returns and draws a regular polygon. The first two points are adjacent vertices of the polygon, the third determines the plane and orientation of the polygon. The fourth argument, the integer, determines the number of sides of the polygon. If the fourth argument is positive, then it is the number of sides of the polygon, which is positively oriented. If the fourth argument is negative, then the polygon is negatively oriented and the absolute value of the argument is the number of sides.

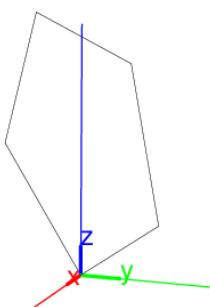
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3);
P := point(0,0,3)
```

then:

```
isopolygon(A,B,P,5)
```

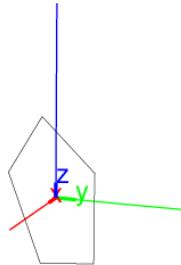
Output:



Input:

```
isopolygon(A,B,P,-5)
```

Output:



### 13.9.3 General polygons in space: **polygon**

See section 12.10.3 for general polygons in the plane.

The **polygon** command takes as arguments a sequence of points.

**polygon** returns and draws the polygon whose vertices are the given points.

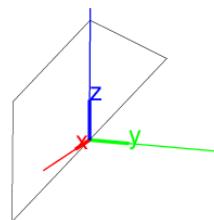
Input:

```
A := point(0,0,0); B := point(3,3,3);
C := point(0,0,3); D := point(-3,-3,0);
E := point(-3,-3,-3)
```

then:

```
polygon(A,B,C,D,E)
```

Output:



### 13.9.4 Polygonal lines in space: **open\_polygon**

See section 12.10.4 for polygonal lines in the plane.

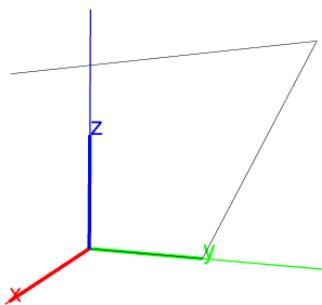
The **open\_polygon** command takes as arguments a sequence of points.

`open_polygon` returns and draws the polygon line whose vertices are the given points.

Input:

```
open_polygon(point(0,0,0),point(0,1,0),
            point(0,2,2),point(1,0,2))
```

Output:



## 13.10 Circles in space: *circle*

See section 12.11.1 for circles in the plane.

The `circle` command returns and draws a circle.

`circle` takes as arguments one of the following:

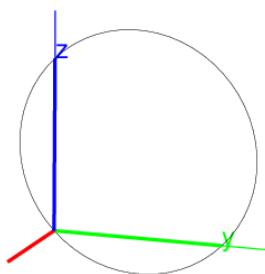
- Three points, A, B and C.

`circle` will return and draw the circle with a diameter AB, and the third point C determines the plane.

Input:

```
circle(point(0,0,1),point(0,1,0),point(0,2,2))
```

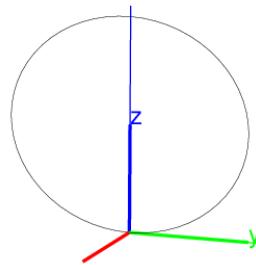
Output:



- A point A, a vector v and another point C.  
`circle` will return and draw the circle with center at A and with  $A+v$  on the circle. The point C determines the plane.
- Input:

```
circle(point(0,0,1),vector(0,1,0),point(0,2,2))
```

Output:



In both cases, the first and third arguments can be the coordinates of the point.

## 13.11 Conics in space

### 13.11.1 Ellipses in space: `ellipse`

See section 12.12.1 for ellipses in the plane.

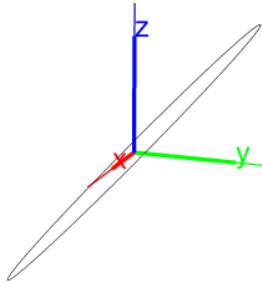
The `ellipse` command takes three non-collinear points as arguments; two points as the foci and a third point to determine the plane.

`ellipse` returns and draws the ellipse with the two given foci and passing through the third argument.

Input:

```
ellipse(point(-1,0,0),point(1,0,0),point(1,1,1))
```

Output:



### 13.11.2 Hyperbolas in space: **hyperbola**

See section 12.12.2 for hyperbolas in the plane.

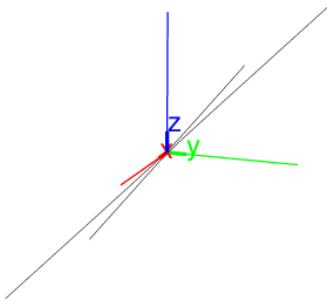
The **hyperbola** command takes three non-collinear points as arguments; two points as the foci and a third point to determine the plane.

**hyperbola** returns and draws the hyperbola with the two given foci and passing through the third argument.

Input:

```
hyperbola(point (-1, 0, 0), point (1, 0, 0), point (1, 1, 1))
```

Output:



### 13.11.3 Parabolas in space: **parabola**

See section 12.12.3 for parabolas in the plane.

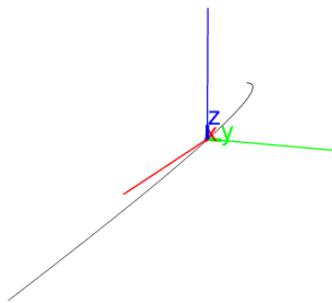
The **parabola** command takes three non-collinear points as arguments. The first point is the focus, the second point is the vertex, and the third point determines the plane.

`parabola` returns and draws the corresponding parabola.

Input:

```
parabola(point(0,0,0),point(-1,0,0),point(1,1,1))
```

Output:



## 13.12 Three-dimensional coordinates

### 13.12.1 The abscissa of a three-dimensional point: `abscissa`

See section 12.13.2 for abscissas in two-dimensional geometry.

The `abscissa` command takes as argument a point.

`abscissa` returns the abscissa ( $x$ -coordinate) of the point.

Input:

```
abscissa(point(1,2,3))
```

Output:

1

### 13.12.2 The ordinate of a three-dimensional point: `ordinate`

See section 12.13.3 for ordinates in two-dimensional geometry.

The `ordinate` command takes as argument a point.

`ordinate` returns the ordinate ( $y$ -coordinate) of the point.

Input:

```
ordinate(point(1,2,3))
```

Output:

2

### 13.12.3 The cote of a three-dimensional point: **cote**

The **cote** command takes as argument a point.

**cote** returns the cote ( $z$ -coordinate) of the point.

Input:

```
cote(point(1,2,3))
```

Output:

```
3
```

### 13.12.4 The coordinates of a point, vector or line in space: **coordinates**

See section 12.13.4 for coordinates in two-dimensional geometry.

The **coordinates** command takes as argument a point, vector or line.

If the argument is a point, **coordinates** returns a list consisting of the abscissa, ordinate and cote.

Input:

```
coordinates(point(1,2,3))
```

Output:

```
[1,2,3]
```

If the argument is a vector, for example from point A to point B, then **coordinates** returns a list of the coordinates of B–A.

Input:

```
coordinates(vector(point(1,2,3),point(2,4,7)))
```

Output:

```
[1,2,4]
```

If the argument is a line, **coordinates** returns a list of two points on the line, in the order determined by the direction of the line.

Input:

```
coordinates(line(point(-1,1,0),point(1,2,3)))
```

Output:

```
[[-1,1,0],[1,2,3]]
```

Input:

```
coordinates(line(x-2*y+3=0, 6*x + 3*y - 5*z + 3 = 0))
```

Output:

```
[[-1,1,0],[9,6,15]]
```

**coordinates** can also take a sequence or list of points as an argument; it then returns a sequence or list of the coordinates of the points.

Input:

```
coordinates(point(0,1,2),point(1,2,4))
```

Output:

```
[0,1,2], [1,2,4]
```

Note that if the argument is a list of real numbers, it is interpreted as a list of points on the real axis of the plane.

Input:

```
coordinates([1,2,4])
```

Output:

```
[[1,0],[2,0],[4,0]]
```

### 13.12.5 The Cartesian equation of an object in space: **equation**

See section 12.13.7 for Cartesian equations of two-dimensional objects.

The **equation** command takes as argument a geometric object.

**equation** returns Cartesian equations which specify the object. The equations will involve  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ , so these variables must be unassigned. If they have assignments, they can be unassigned with **purge(x,y,z)**.

Input:

```
equation(line(point(0,1,0),point(1,2,3)))
```

Output:

```
x-y+1=0, 3*x+3*y-2*z-3=0
```

Input:

```
equation(sphere(point(0,1,0),2))
```

Output:

```
x^2+y^2+z^2-2*y-3=0
```

### 13.12.6 The parametric equation of an object in space: **parameq**

See section 12.13.8 for parametric equations in two-dimensional geometry.

The **parameq** command takes as argument a geometric object.

**equation** returns a parameterization for the object. For a curve, the parameter is  $t$ , for a surface, the parameters are  $u$  and  $v$ . These variables must be unassigned. If they have assignments, they can be unassigned with **purge(t,u,v)**.

Input:

```
parameq(line(point(0,1,0),point(1,2,3)))
```

Output:

```
[t,t+1,3*t]
```

Input:

```
parameq(sphere(point(0,1,0),2))
```

Output:

```
[2*cos(u)*cos(v), 2*cos(u)*sin(v)+1, 2*sin(u)]
```

Input:

```
normal(parameq(ellipse(point(-1,1,1),point(1,1,1),point(0,1,2))))
```

Output:

```
[sqrt(2)*cos(t), 1, sin(t)+1]
```

### 13.12.7 The length of a segment in space: **distance**

See section 12.14.2 for distances in two-dimensional geometry.

The **distance** command takes as arguments two points or two lists with the coordinates of the points.

**distance** returns the distance between these two points.

Input:

```
distance(point(-1,1,1),point(1,1,1))
```

or:

```
distance([-1,1,1],[1,1,1])
```

Output:

```
2
```

### 13.12.8 The length squared of a segment in space: **distance2**

See section 12.14.3 for squares of lengths in two-dimensional geometry.

The **distance2** command takes as arguments two points or two lists with the coordinates of the points.

**distance2** returns the square of the distance between these two points.

Input:

```
distance2(point(-1,1,1),point(1,1,1))
```

or:

```
distance2([-1,1,1],[1,1,1])
```

Output:

### 13.12.9 The measure of an angle in space: `angle`

See section 12.14.4 for angle measures in two-dimensional geometry.

The `angle` command takes are arguments one of the following;

- Three points, A, B and C.

`angle` returns the measure of the undirected angle BAC.

Input:

```
angle(point(0,0,0),point(1,0,0),point(0,0,1))
```

Output:

```
pi/4
```

- Two intersecting lines.

`angle` returns the measure of the angle between the lines.

Input:

```
angle(line([0,0,0],[1,1,0]),line([0,0,0],[1,1,1]))
```

Output:

```
acos(sqrt(6))/3
```

- A line and a plane.

`angle` returns the measure of the angle between the line and the plane.

Input:

```
angle(line([0,0,0],[1,1,0]),plane(x+y+z=0))
```

Output:

```
acos(sqrt(6))/3
```

## 13.13 Properties

### 13.13.1 Check if an object in space is on another object: `is_element`

See section 12.16.1 for checking elements in two-dimensional geometry.

The `is_element` command takes as arguments two geometric objects.

`is_element` returns 1 if the first object is contained in the second, it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
P := plane([0,0,0],[1,2,-3],[1,1,-2])
```

then:

```
is_element(point(2,3,-5),P)
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
L := line([2,3,-2], [-1,-1,-1]);
P := plane([-1,-1,-1], [1,2,-3], [1,1,-2])
```

then:

```
is_element(L,P)
```

Output:

0

### 13.13.2 Check if points and/or lines in space are coplanar: **is\_coplanar**

The **is\_coplanar** command takes as arguments a list or sequence of points or lines.

**is\_coplanar** returns 1 if the objects are coplanar; it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_coplanar([0,0,0], [1,2,-3], [1,1,-2], [2,1,-3])
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
is_coplanar([-1,2,0], [1,2,-3], [1,1,-2], [2,1,-3])
```

Output:

0

Input:

```
is_coplanar([0,0,0], [1,2,-3], line([1,1,-2], [2,1,-3]))
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
is_coplanar(line([-1,2,0], [1,2,-3]), line([1,1,-2], [2,1,-3]))
```

Output:

0

### 13.13.3 Check if lines and/or planes in space are parallel: `is_parallel`

See section 12.16.11 for checking for parallels in two-dimensional geometry.

The `is_parallel` command takes as arguments two lines, two planes or a line and a plane.

`is_parallel` returns 1 if the objects are parallel; it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
L1 := line([0,0,0], [-1,-1,-1])
L2 := line([2,3,-2], [-1,-1,-1])
```

then:

```
is_parallel(L1,L2)
```

Output:

```
0
```

Input:

```
P := plane([-1,-1,-1], [1,2,-3], [0,0,0])
```

then:

```
is_parallel(P,L2)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
P1 := plane([0,0,0], [1,2,-3], [1,1,-2])
P2 := plane([1,1,0], [2,3,-3], [2,2,-2])
```

then:

```
is_parallel(P1,P2)
```

Output:

```
1
```

### 13.13.4 Check if lines and/or planes in space are perpendicular: `is_perpendicular`

See section 12.16.12 for checking for perpendicularity in two-dimensional geometry.

The `is_perpendicular` command takes as arguments two lines, two planes or a line and a plane.

`is_perpendicular` returns 1 if the objects are perpendicular; it returns 0 otherwise. (Note that two lines must be coplanar to be perpendicular.)

Input:

```
is_perpendicular(line([2,3,-2], [-1,-1,-1]), line([1,0,0], [1,2,8]))
```

Output:

0

Input:

```
P1 := plane([0,0,0], [1,2,-3], [1,1,-2])
P2 := plane([-1,-1,-1], 1,2,-3], [0,0,0])
```

then:

```
is_perpendicular(P1,P2)
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
L := plane([2,3,-2], [-1,-1,-1])
```

then:

```
is_perpendicular(L,P1)
```

Output:

0

### 13.13.5 Check if two lines or two spheres in space are orthogonal: **is\_orthogonal**

See section 12.16.13 for checking for orthogonality in two-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_orthogonal** command takes as arguments two lines, two spheres, two planes or a line and a plane.

**is\_orthogonal** returns 1 if the objects are orthogonal; it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_orthogonal(line([2,3,-2], [-1,-1,-1]), line([1,0,0], [1,2,8]))
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
is_orthogonal(line([2,3,-2], [-1,-1,-1]),
plane([-1,-1,-1], [-1,0,3], [-2,0,0]))
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
is_orthogonal(plane([0,0,0],[1,2,-3],[1,1,-2]),
    plane([-1,-1,-1],[1,2,-3],[0,0,0]))
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_orthogonal(sphere([0,0,0],sqrt(2)),sphere([2,0,0],sqrt(2)))
```

Output:

```
1
```

### 13.13.6 Check if three points in space are collinear: **is\_collinear**

See section 12.16.2 for checking for collinearity in two-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_collinear** command takes as argument a list or sequence of points.

**is\_collinear** returns 1 if the points are collinear, it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_collinear([2,0,0],[0,2,0],[1,1,0])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_collinear([2,0,0],[0,2,0],[0,1,1])
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 13.13.7 Check if four points in space are concyclic: **is\_concyclic**

See section 12.16.3 for checking for concyclicity in two-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_concyclic** command takes as argument a list or sequence of points.

**is\_concyclic** returns 1 if the points are concyclic, it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_concyclic([2,0,0],[0,2,0],[sqrt(2),sqrt(2),0],
    [0,0,2],[2/sqrt(3),2/sqrt(3),2/sqrt(3)])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_concyclic([2,0,0],[0,2,0],[1,1,0],[0,0,2],[1,1,1])
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 13.13.8 Check if five points in space are cospherical: **is\_cospherical**

The `is_cospherical` command takes as arguments a list or sequence of points.

`is_cospherical` returns 1 if the points are cospherical, it returns 0 if they are not.

Input:

```
is_cospherical([2,0,0],[0,2,0],[sqrt(2),sqrt(2),0],
[0,0,2],[2/sqrt(3),2/sqrt(3),2/sqrt(3)])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_cospherical([2,0,0],[0,2,0],[1,1,0],[0,0,2],[1,1,1])
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 13.13.9 Check if an object in space is an equilateral triangle: **is\_equilateral**

See section 12.16.5 for checking for equilateral triangles in two-dimensional geometry.

The `is_equilateral` command takes as argument either three points or a geometric object.

`is_equilateral` returns 1 if the points are the vertices of an equilateral triangle or if the object is an equilateral triangle.

Input:

```
is_equilateral([2,0,0],[0,0,0],[1,sqrt(3),0])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
T := triangle_equilateral([2,0,0],[0,0,0],[1,sqrt(3),0])
```

then:

```
is_equilateral(T)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_equilateral([2,0,0],[0,2,0],[1,1,0])
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 13.13.10 Check if an object in space is an isosceles triangle: **is\_isosceles**

See section 12.16.6 for checking for isosceles triangles in two-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_isosceles** command takes as argument either three points or a geometric object.

**is\_equilateral** returns 1, 2, 3 or 4 if the points are the vertices of an isosceles triangle or if the object is an isosceles triangle, and returns 0 otherwise. Specifically,

- It returns 4 if the object is an equilateral triangle or if the points are the vertices of an equilateral triangle.
- It returns 1, 2 or 3, respectively, if the object is an isosceles triangle or if the points are the vertices of an isosceles triangle and the first, second or third point is the vertex with equal sides.

Input:

```
is_isosceles([2,0,0], [0,0,0], [0,2,0])
```

Output:

```
2
```

Input:

```
T := triangle_isosceles([0,0,0],[2,2,0],[2,2,2])
```

then:

```
is_isosceles(T)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_isosceles([1,1,0], [-1,1,0], [-1,0,0])
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 13.13.11 Check if an object in space is a right triangle or a rectangle: **is\_rectangle**

See section 12.16.7 for checking for right triangles and rectangles in two-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_rectangle** command checks for both right triangles and rectangles. It takes as arguments either three points, four points, or a geometric object.

If the arguments are three points or a triangle, then **is\_rectangle** returns 1, 2 or 3 if the points form a right triangle which right angle at the first, second or third vertex. It returns 0 otherwise.

If the arguments are four points or a quadrilateral, then **is\_rectangle** returns 2 if the points form a square, 1 if they form a rectangle, and 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_rectangle([2,0,0],[2,2,0],[0,2,0])
```

Output:

2

Input:

```
is_rectangle([2,2,0],[-2,2,0],[-2,-1,0],[2,-1,0])
```

Output:

1

### 13.13.12 Check if an object in space is a square: **is\_square**

See section 12.16.8 for checking for squares in two-dimensional geometry.

The **is\_square** command as arguments either four points or a geometric object.

**is\_rectangle** returns 1 if the four points are the vertices of a square or if the geometric object is a square, it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_square([2,2,0],[-2,2,0],[-2,-2,0],[2,-2,0])
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
S := square([0,0,0],[2,0,0],[0,0,1])
```

then:

```
is_square(S)
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
is_square([2,2,0],[-2,2,0],[-2,-1,0],[2,-1,0])
```

Output:

0

### 13.13.13 Check if an object in space is a rhombus: `is_rhombus`

See section 12.16.9 for checking for rhombuses in two-dimensional geometry.

The `is_rhombus` command as arguments either four points or a geometric object.

`is_rhombus` returns 1 if the four points are the vertices of a rhombus or if the geometric object is a rhombus, it returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_rhombus([2,0,0],[0,1,0],[-2,0,0],[0,-1,0])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
R := rhombus([0,0,0],[2,0,0],[[0,0,1],pi/4])
```

then:

```
is_rhombus(S)
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_rhombus([2,2,0],[-2,2,0],[-2,-1,0],[2,-1,0])
```

Output:

```
0
```

### 13.13.14 Check if an object in space is a parallelogram: `is_parallelgram`

See section 12.16.10 for checking for parallelograms in two-dimensional geometry.

The `is_parallelgram` command as arguments either four points or a geometric object.

`is_parallelgram` returns 4, 3, 2 or 1 if the four points are the vertices of a square, rectangle, rhombus or parallelogram, respectively, or if the geometric object is a square, rectangle, rhombus or parallelogram. It returns 0 otherwise.

Input:

```
is_parallelgram([0,0,0],[2,0,0],[3,1,0],[1,1,0])
```

Output:

```
1
```

Input:

```
is_parallelgram([-1,0,0],[0,1,0],[2,0,0],[0,-1,0])
```

Output:

0

Input:

```
P := parallelogram([0,0,0],[2,0,0],[1,1,0])
```

then:

```
is_parallelgram(P)
```

Output:

1

Note that

Input:

```
P := parallelogram([0,0,0],[2,0,0],[1,1,0],D)
```

defines P to be a list consisting of the parallelogram and the point D; to test if the object is a parallelogram, the first component of P needs to be tested.

Input:

```
is_parallelgram(P[0])
```

Output:

1

Input:

```
is_parallelgram([-1,0,0],[0,1,0],[2,0,0],[0,-1,0])
```

Output:

0

## 13.14 Transformations in space

### 13.14.1 General remarks

The transformations in this section operate on any geometric object. They take as arguments parameters to specify the transformation. They can optionally take a geometric object as the last argument, in which case the transformed object is returned. Without the geometric object as an argument, these transformations will return a new command which performs the transformation. For example, to move an object P 3 units up, either

```
translation([0,0,3],P)
```

or

```
t := translation([0,0,3])
t(P)
```

works.

### 13.14.2 Translation in space: `translation`

See section 12.15.2 for translations in the plane.

The `translation` command takes one or two arguments. The first argument is the translation vector given by a list of coordinates, the optional second argument is a geometric object.

With one argument, `translation` returns a command which translates objects along the given vector.

Input:

```
t := translation([1,1,1])
```

then:

```
t(point(1,2,3))
```

returns and draws the point at  $(1, 2, 3) + (1, 1, 1) = (2, 3, 4)$ .

With two arguments, a vector and an object, `transformation` returns and draws the translated object.

Input:

```
translation([1,1,1], line([0,0,0], [1,2,3]))
```

returns and draws the line through  $(0, 0, 0) + (1, 1, 1) = (1, 1, 1)$  and  $(1, 2, 3) + (1, 1, 1) = (2, 3, 4)$ .

### 13.14.3 Reflection in space with respect to a plane, line or point: `reflection` `symmetry`

See section 12.15.3 for reflections in the plane.

The `reflection` command takes one or two arguments. The first argument is a point, line or plane. The second optional argument is a geometric object.

With one argument, `reflection` returns a command which reflects an object across the point, line or plane.

Input:

```
r := reflection([1,1,1])
```

then:

```
r(point(1,2,4))
```

returns and draws the reflection of the point  $(1, 2, 4)$  across the point  $(1, 1, 1)$ ; namely  $(1, 1, 1) - [(1, 2, 4) - (1, 1, 1)] = (1, 0, -2)$ .

Given a second argument of a geometric object, `reflection` returns and draws the reflected object.

Input:

```
reflection(line([1,1,0], [-1,-3,0]), point(-1,2,4))
```

returns and draws the reflection of the point  $(-1, 2, 4)$  across the line through  $(1, 1, 0)$  and  $(-1, -3, 0)$ ; namely  $(16/5, 3/5, -4)$ .

### 13.14.4 Rotation in space: **rotation**

See section 12.15.4 for rotations in the plane.

The **rotation** command takes two or three arguments. The first argument is a line which is the axis of rotation and the second argument is a real number representing the angle of rotation. The third optional argument is a geometric object.

With two arguments, **rotation** returns a command which rotates an object.

Input:

```
r := rotation(line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)), 2*pi/3)
```

then:

```
r(point(0,0,1))
```

returns and draws the result of rotating the point  $(0, 0, 1)$  about the line through  $(0, 0, 0)$  and  $(1, 1, 1)$  through an angle of  $2\pi/3$  radians; namely  $(1, 0, 0)$ .

Given a third argument of a geometric object, **rotation** returns and draws the rotated object.

Input:

```
rotation(line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)), 2*pi/3,
         point(0,0,1))
```

returns and draws the point  $(1, 0, 0)$ , as above.

Input:

```
rotation(line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)), 2*pi/3,
         line(point(1,0,0),point(0,1,0)))
```

returns and draws the result of rotating the line through  $(1, 0, 0)$  and  $(0, 1, 0)$  about the line through  $(0, 0, 0)$  and  $(1, 1, 1)$  through an angle of  $2\pi/3$  radians; namely the line through  $(0, 1, 0)$  and  $(0, 0, 1)$ .

### 13.14.5 Homothety in space: **homothety**

See section 12.15.5 for homotheties in the plane.

The **homothety** command takes two or three arguments. The first argument is a point, the center of the homothety. The second argument is a real number, which is the scaling ratio. The optional third argument is the object which is transformed.

With two arguments, **homothety** returns a new command which performs the dilation.

Input:

```
h := homothety(point(0,0,0), 2)
```

then:

```
h(point(0,0,1))
```

returns and draws the point  $(0, 0, 2)$ , which is the point  $(0, 0, 1)$  dilated by a factor of 2 away from  $(0, 0, 0)$ .

With a third argument of a geometric object, `homothety` returns and draws the dilated object.

Input:

```
homothety(point(0,0,0), 2, point(0,0,1))
```

returns and draws  $(0, 0, 2)$ , as above.

Input:

```
homothety(point(0,0,0), 2, sphere(point(0,0,0), 1))
```

returns and draws the sphere of radius 2 centered at  $(0, 0, 0)$ .

### 13.14.6 Similarity in space: `similarity`

See section 12.15.6 for similarities in the plane.

The `similarity` command takes three or four arguments. The first argument is a line, the axis of rotation; the second argument is a real number, which is the scaling ratio, and the third argument is another real number, the angle of rotation. If the scaling ratio is negative, then the direction of rotation is reversed. The optional fourth argument is the object which is transformed.

With three arguments, `similarity` returns a new command which scales and rotates about the given axis.

Input:

```
s := similarity(line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)), 2,
                2*pi/3)
```

then:

```
s(point(0,0,1))
```

returns and draws the point  $(2, 0, 0)$ , which is the point  $(0, 0, 1)$  rotated about the line through  $(0, 0, 0)$  and  $(1, 1, 1)$  through an angle of  $2\pi/3$  radians and scaled away from the line by a factor of 2.

With a fourth argument of a geometric object, `similarity` returns and draws the transformed object.

Input:

```
similarity(line(point(0,0,0),point(1,1,1)), 2, 2*pi/3,
            point(0,0,1))
```

returns and draws the point  $(2, 0, 0)$ , as above.

### 13.14.7 Inversion in space: `inversion`

See section 12.15.7 for inversions in the plane.

Given a point  $P$  and a real number  $k$ , the corresponding *inversion* of a point  $A$  is the point  $A'$  on the ray  $\overrightarrow{PA}$  satisfying  $\overline{PA} \cdot \overline{PA'} = k^2$ .

The `inversion` command takes two or three arguments. The first argument is a point, the center of inversion; the second argument is a real number, which is the inversion ratio. The optional third argument is the object which is transformed.

With two arguments, `inversion` returns a new command which does the inversion.

Input:

```
inver := inversion(point(0,0,0), 2)
```

then:

```
inver(point(1,2,-2))
```

returns and draws the point  $(2/9, 4/9, -4/9)$ , which is the inversion of  $(1, 2, -2)$ .

With a third argument of a geometric object, `inversion` returns and draws the transformed object.

Input:

```
inversion(point(0,0,0), 2, point(1,2,-2))
```

returns and draws  $(2/9, 4/9, -4/9)$ , as above.

### 13.14.8 Orthogonal projection in space: `projection`

See section 12.15.8 for projections in the plane.

The `projection` command takes one or two arguments. The first argument is a geometric object. The second optional argument is a point. The command will project the point onto the object.

With one argument, `projection` returns a new command which projects a point.

Input:

```
p1 := projection(line(point(0,0,0), point(1,1,1)))
```

then:

```
p1(point(1,0,0))
```

returns and draws the point  $(1/3, 1/3, 1/3)$ , which is the projection of  $(1, 0, 0)$  onto the line.

Input:

```
p2 :=
projection(plane(point(1,0,0), point(0,0,0), point(1,1,1)))
```

then:

```
p2(point(0,0,1))
```

returns and draws the point  $(0, 1/2, 1/2)$ , which is the projection of the point  $(0, 0, 1)$  onto the plane.

With a second argument of a point, `inversion` returns and draws the projection of the point.

Input:

```
projection(line(point(0,0,0), point(1,1,1)),
           point(1,0,0))
```

returns and draws the point  $(1/3, 1/3, 1/3)$ , as above.

## 13.15 Surfaces

### 13.15.1 Cones: **cone**

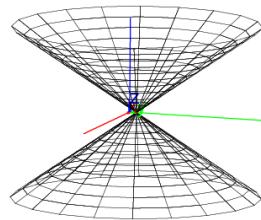
The **cone** command takes as arguments a point A, a direction vector v and a real number t.

**cone** returns and draws the cone with vertex A opening in the direction v with an aperture of  $2t$ .

Input:

```
cone([0,1,0], [0,0,1], pi/3)
```

Output:



### 13.15.2 Half-cones: **half\_cone**

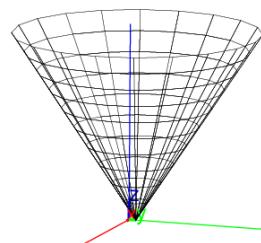
The **half\_cone** command takes as arguments a point A, a direction vector v and a real number t.

**half\_cone** returns and draws the half cone with vertex A opening in the direction v with an aperture of  $2t$ .

Input:

```
half_cone([0,1,0], [0,0,1], pi/3)
```

Output:



### 13.15.3 Cylinders: **cylinder**

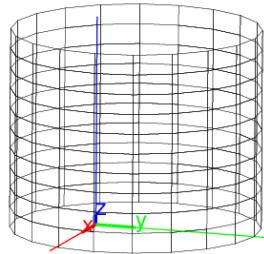
The `cylinder` command takes as arguments a point  $A$ , a direction vector  $v$  and a real number  $r$ .

`cylinder` returns and draws the cylinder with axis through  $A$  in the direction  $v$  with a radius of  $r$ .

Input:

```
cylinder([0,1,0], [0,0,1], 3)
```

Output:



### 13.15.4 Spheres: **sphere**

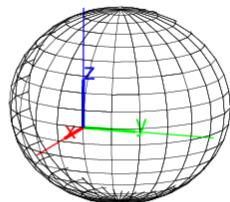
The `sphere` command takes two arguments; either two points or a point and a real number.

With two points as arguments, `sphere` returns and draws the sphere with a diameter specified by the points.

Input:

```
sphere([-2,0,0], [2,0,0])
```

Output:



With a point and a real number as arguments, `sphere` returns and draws the sphere centered at the point with radius given by the number.

Input:

```
sphere([0,0,0],2)
```

returns and draws the same sphere as above.

### 13.15.5 The graph of a function of two variables: **funcplot**

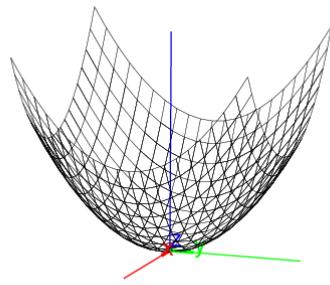
The **funcplot** command takes two arguments, an expression with two variables and a list of the two variables.

**funcplot** returns and draws the graph of the expression.

Input:

```
funcplot(x^2 + y^2, [x,y])
```

Output:



### 13.15.6 The graph of parametric equations in space: **paramplot**

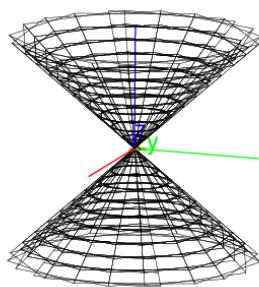
The **paramplot** command takes two arguments, a list of three expressions involving two parameters, and a list of the two parameters.

**paramplot** returns and draws the parameterized surface; the command **paramplot([f(u,v), g(u,v), h(u,v)], [u, v])** will return and draw the surface given by  $x=f(u,v)$ ,  $y=g(u,v)$ ,  $z=h(u,v)$ .

Input:

```
paramplot([u*cos(v), u*sin(v), u], [u,v])
```

Output:



## 13.16 Solids

### 13.16.1 Cubes: **cube**

The **cube** command takes as arguments three points, A, B and C.

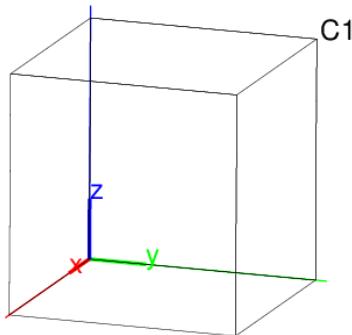
**cube** returns and draws the following cube:

- One edge is AB.
- One face is in the plane ABC, on the same side of line AB as is C.
- The cube is on the side of plane ABC that makes the points A, B and C counterclockwise.

Input:

```
C1 := cube([0,0,0], [0,4,0], [0,0,1])
```

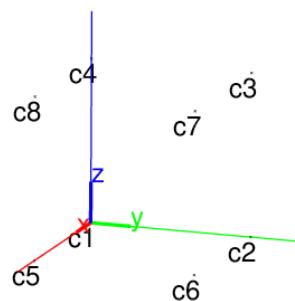
Output:



Input:

```
c1,c2,c3,c4,c5,c6,c7,c8 := vertices(C1)
```

Output:



Input:

```
faces(C1)
```

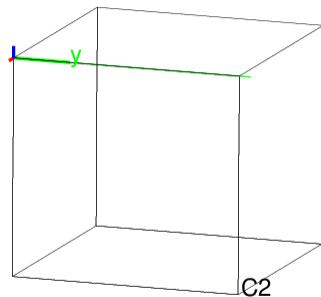
Output:

```
[[[0,0,0],[0,4,0],[0,4,4],[0,0,4]],
 [[4,0,0],[4,4,0],[4,4,4],[4,0,4]],
 [[0,0,0],[4,0,0],[4,0,4],[0,0,4]],
 [[0,0,0],[0,4,0],[4,4,0],[4,0,0]],
 [[0,4,0],[0,4,4],[4,4,4],[4,4,0]],
 [[0,0,4],[4,0,4],[4,4,4],[0,4,4]]]
```

Input:

```
C2 := cube([0,0,0],[0,4,0],[0,0,-1])
```

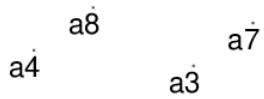
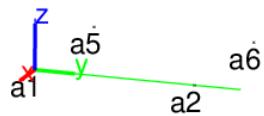
Output:



Input:

```
a1,a2,a3,a4,a5,a6,a7,a8 := vertices(C2)
```

Output:



### 13.16.2 Tetrahedrons: **tetrahedron** **pyramid**

The **tetrahedron** (or **pyramid**) command takes as arguments three or four points.

When given three points A, B and C as arguments, **tetrahedron** returns and draws the regular tetrahedron given by:

- One edge is AB.
- One face is in the plane ABC, on the same side of line AB as is C.
- The tetrahedron is on the side of plane ABC that makes the points A, B and C counterclockwise.

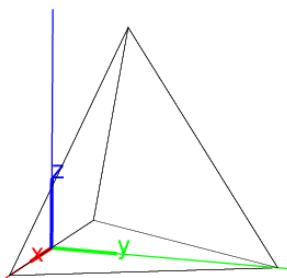
Input:

```
tetrahedron([-2,0,0], [2,0,0], [0,2,0])
```

or:

```
pyramid([-2,0,0], [2,0,0], [0,2,0])
```

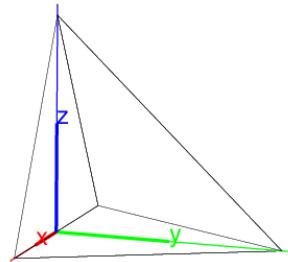
Output:



Input:

```
tetrahedron([-2,0,0], [2,0,0], [0,2,0], [0,0,2])
```

Output:



### 13.16.3 Parallelepipeds: parallelepiped

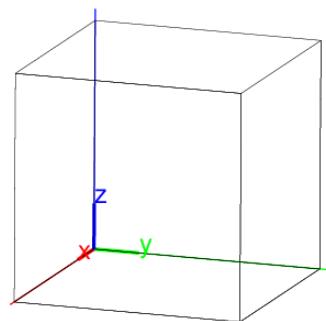
The `parallelepiped` command takes as arguments four points, A, B, C and D.

`parallelepiped` returns and draws the parallelepiped determined by the edges AB, AC and AD.

Input:

```
parallelepiped([0,0,0], [5,0,0], [0,5,0], [0,0,5])
```

Output:



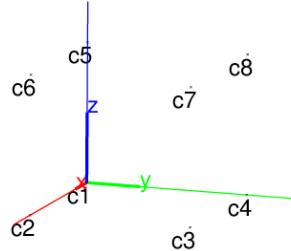
Input:

```
p := parallelepiped([0,0,0], [5,0,0], [0,3,0], [0,0,2]);
```

then:

```
c1, c2, c3, c4, c5, c6, c7, c8 := vertices(p);
```

Output:



#### 13.16.4 Prisms: **prism**

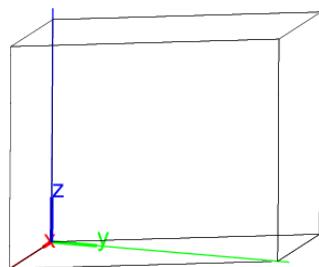
The **prism** command takes two arguments, a list of coplanar points  $[A, B, \dots]$  and an additional point  $A1$ .

**prism** returns and draws the prism whose base is the polygon determined by the points  $A, B, \dots$ , and with edges parallel to  $AA1$ .

Input:

```
prism([[0,0,0], [5,0,0], [0,5,0], [-5,5,0]], [0,0,5])
```

Output:



#### 13.16.5 Polyhedra: **polyhedron**

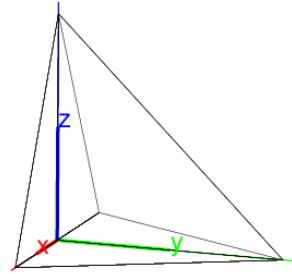
The **polyhedron** command takes as argument a sequence of points.

**polyhedron** returns and draws the convex polygon whose vertices are from the list of points such that the remaining points are inside or on the surface of the polyhedron.

Input:

```
polyhedron([0,0,0], [-2,0,0], [2,0,0], [0,2,0], [0,0,2])
```

Output:



### 13.16.6 Vertices: **vertices**

The **vertices** command takes as argument a polyhedron.

**vertices** returns and draws a list of the vertices of the polyhedron.

Input:

```
V :=  
vertices(polyhedron([0,0,0], [-2,0,0], [2,0,0], [0,2,0], [0,0,2]))
```

then:

```
coordinates (V)
```

Output:

```
[[0,0,0], [-2,0,0], [2,0,0], [0,2,0], [0,0,2]]
```

### 13.16.7 Faces: **faces**

The **faces** command takes as argument a polyhedron.

**faces** returns a list of the faces of the polyhedron.

Input:

```
faces(polyhedron([1,-1,0], [1,1,0], [0,0,2], [0,0,-2], [-1,1,0], [-1,-1,0]))
```

Output:

```
[[[1,-1,0], [1,1,0], [0,0,2]], [[1,-1,0], [1,1,0], [0,0,-2]],  
[[1,-1,0], [0,0,2], [-1,-1,0]], [[1,-1,0], [0,0,-2], [-1,-1,0]],  
[[1,1,0], [0,0,2], [-1,1,0]], [[1,1,0], [0,0,-2], [-1,1,0]],  
[[0,0,2], [-1,1,0], [-1,-1,0]], [[0,0,-2], [-1,1,0], [-1,-1,0]])
```

### 13.16.8 Edges: `line_segments`

The `line_segments` command takes as argument a polyhedron.

`line_segments` returns and draws a list of the edges of the polyhedron.

Input:

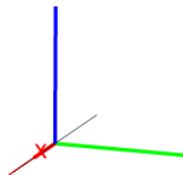
```
line_segments(polyhedron([0,0,0], [-2,0,0], [2,0,0], [0,2,0], [0,0,2]))
```

Output:

Input:

```
line_segments(polyhedron([0,0,0], [-2,0,0], [2,0,0], [0,2,0], [0,0,2]))[1]
```

Output:



## 13.17 Platonic solids

To specify a Platonic solid, Xcas works with the center, a vertex and a third point to specify a plane of symmetry. To speed up calculations, it may be useful to use approximate calculations, which can be ensured with the `evalf` command. For example, instead of:

Input:

```
centered_cube([0,0,0], [3,2,1], [1,1,0])
```

it would typically be better to use:

Input:

```
centered_cube(evalf([0,0,0], [3,2,1], [1,1,0]))
```

### 13.17.1 Centered tetrahedra: `centered_tetrahedron`

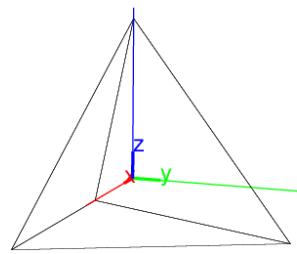
The `centered_tetrahedron` command takes as arguments three points, A, B and C.

`centered_tetrahedron` returns and draws the tetrahedron centered at A, with a vertex at B and another vertex on the plane ABC.

Input:

```
centered_tetrahedron([0,0,0],[0,0,6],[0,1,0])
```

Output:



### 13.17.2 Centered cubes: `centered_cube`

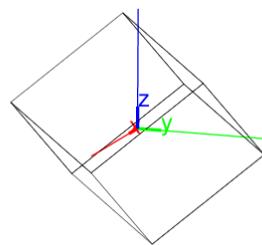
The `centered_cube` command takes as arguments three points, A, B and C.

`centered_cube` returns and draws the cube centered at A which has B as a vertex and ABC as a plane of symmetry. This plane of symmetry has an edge of the cube containing B, the other endpoint of this edge is on the same side of line AB as C is.

Input:

```
centered_cube([0,0,0],[3,3,3],[0,1,0])
```

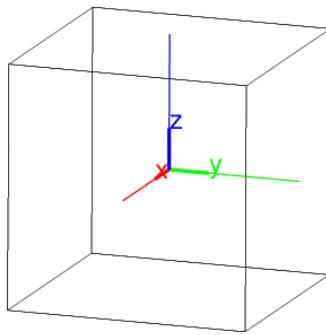
Output:



Input:

```
centered_cube([0,0,0],[3,3,3],[0,-1,0])
```

Output:



Note that there are two cubes centered at A, with a vertex at B and with a plane of symmetry ABC. Each cube has an edge containing B that's contained in plane of symmetry, these edges are on opposite sides of the line AB. The cube that cube returns is the cube whose edge is on the same side of AB as the point C.

### 13.17.3 Octahedra: octahedron

The octahedron command takes as arguments three points A, B and C.

octahedron returns and draws the octahedron centered at A which has a vertex at B and with four vertices in the plane ABC.

Input:

```
octahedron([0,0,0],[0,0,5],[0,1,0])
```

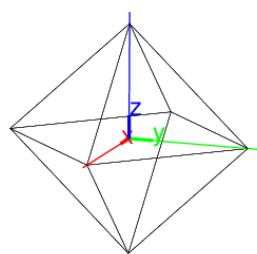
or:

```
octahedron([0,0,0],[0,5,0],[0,0,1])
```

or:

```
octahedron([0,0,0],[5,0,0],[0,0,1])
```

Output:



### 13.17.4 Dodecahedra: **dodecahedron**

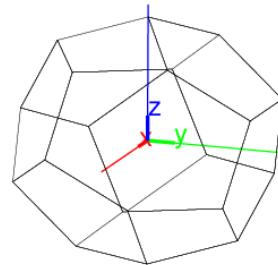
The **dodecahedron** command takes as arguments three points, A, B and C.

**dodecahedron** returns and draws the dodecahedron centered at A with a vertex at B and with an axis of symmetry in the plane ABC. (Note that each face is a pentagon, but will be drawn with one of its diagonals and so will show up as a trapezoid and a triangle.

Input:

```
dodecahedron([0,0,0], [0,0,5], [0,1,0])
```

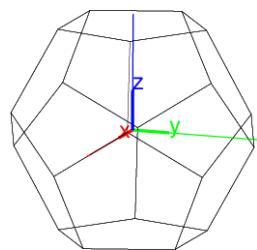
Output:



Input:

```
dodecahedron([0,0,0], [0,2,sqrt(5)/2 + 3/2], [0,0,1])
```

Output:



### 13.17.5 Icosahedra: **icosahedron**

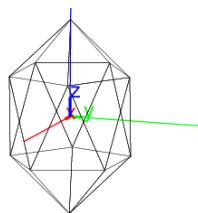
The **icosahedron** command takes as arguments three points, A, B and C.

**icosahedron** returns and draws the icosahedron centered at A with a vertex at B and such that the plane ABC contains one of the vertices closest to B.

Input:

```
icosahedron([0,0,0],[0,0,5],[0,1,0])
```

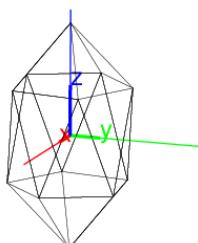
Output:



Input:

```
icosahedron([0,0,0],[0,0,sqrt(5)], [2,1,0])
```

Output:





# Chapter 14

## Multimedia

### 14.1 Sounds

#### 14.1.1 Reading a wav file: `readwav`

The `readwav` command takes as argument a sound file stored in WAV format (file extension: `.wav`), given as a string.

`readwav` returns a vector consisting of:

- A list consisting of:
  - The number of channels (generally 1 for mono and 2 for stereo).
  - The number of bits (generally 16).
  - The sampling frequency (44100 for a CD quality sound).
  - The number of bytes (excluding the header); i.e., the number of seconds times the sampling frequency times the number of bits/8 times the number of channels.
- A list of digital sound data for each channel.

The result of `readwav` is typically stored in a variable.

For example, if `sound.wav` is a sound file for a one-second sound in CD quality on a 16-bit channel:

Input:

```
s := readwav("sound.wav")
```

then:

```
s[0]
```

Output:

```
[1, 16, 44100, 88200]
```

Input:

```
size(s)
```

Output:

2

which is the number of channels plus 1.

Input:

```
size(s[1])
```

Output:

```
44100
```

### 14.1.2 Writing a wav file: **writewav**

The **writewav** command writes sound data to a WAV file.

The **writewav** command takes two arguments; the name of a file and the sound data. The sound data can either be in the same format as that returned by the **readwav** command or (for a mono sound) a list of the digital data of the sound which will us the default parameters (16 bits, 44100 Hz).

**writewav** writes the sound to the named file.

Input:

```
writewav("la.wav", 2^14*sin(2*pi*440*soundsec(1)))
```

The file **la.wav** will then contain a sound of frequency 440 Hz sampled 44100 times per second.

### 14.1.3 Listening to a digital sound: **playsnd**

The **playsnd** command takes as argument digitized sound data, which can be read with the **readwav** command or generated with the help of **soundsec**. The arguments are either in the format of the output of the **readwav** command or a list of sampled data for mono sound with the default settings of 1 channel, 16 bits and 44100 Hz.

**playsnd** plays the given sound.

### 14.1.4 Preparing digital sound data: **soundsec**

The **soundsec** prepares sound data in the form of a vector.

The **soundsec** command takes as argument a real number, and an optional second argument of another real number.

**soundsec** returns sound data with duration (in seconds) given by the argument. The optional second argument determines the sampling frequency. The sound data is returned as a vector, whose *i*th element is the time corresponding to index *i*.

Input:

```
soundsec(2.5)
```

returns sound data 2.5 seconds long sampled at the default frequency of 44100 Hz.  
Input:

```
soundsec(1, 22050)
```

returns sound data 1 second long sampled at the frequency of 22050 Hz.

Input:

```
sin(2*pi*440*soundssec(1.3))
```

returns a sinusoid with frequency 440 Hz sampled 44100 times per second for 1.3 seconds.

## 14.2 Images

### 14.2.1 Image structure in Xcas

An image in Xcas is a list with the following elements.

- The first element is itself a list of three integers; the number of channels (which will be 3 or 4), the number  $n$  of rows and the number  $p$  of columns used for the dimension of the image. Each channel will be an  $n \times p$  matrix of integers between 0 and 255.
- A red channel.
- A green channel.
- A transparency channel.
- A blue channel.

The color of the point at line  $i$  and column  $j$  is determined by the values of the  $i,j$ th entry of the matrices.

Note that the number of points in the structure isn't necessarily the same as the number of pixels on the screen when it is drawn. It is possible that a single point in the structure is represented by a small rectangle of pixels when it is displayed on the screen.

### 14.2.2 Reading images: `readrgb`

The `readrgb` command takes as argument the name of an image file (it can be `.jpg`, `.png` or `.gif`).

`readrgb` returns an Xcas image structure for the image (see section 14.2.1).

### 14.2.3 Viewing images

Xcas can display images in rectangles in two-dimensions or on surfaces in three-dimensions with the `gl_texture` property of the object.

Input:

```
rectangle(0,200,1/2,gl_texture="picture.jpg")
```

Input:

```
sphere([0,0,0],1,gl_material=[gl_texture,"picture.jpg"])
```

#### 14.2.4 Creating or recreating images: `writergb`

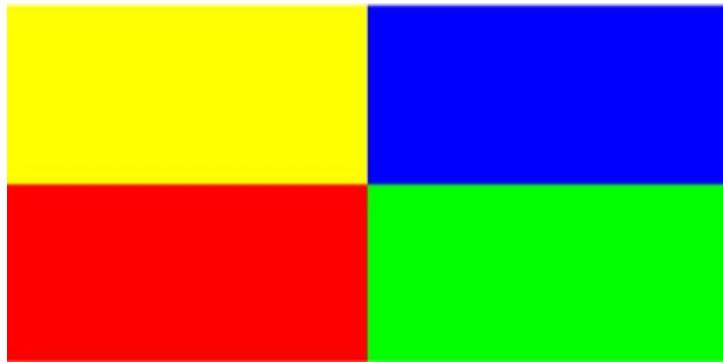
The `writergb` writes images to `png` files; the image can either be read in with `readrgb` or created by `writergb` itself.

##### Writing images given in `Xcas` format

To write an existing image, the `writergb` command takes two arguments, a file name and an image in `Xcas` format (see section 14.2.1).

`writergb` writes the image to the given file.

As an example, suppose the following image is stored in file `image1234.jpg`.



Using `readrgb`,

```
a := readrgb("image1234.jpg")
```

the variable `a` will contain a list,

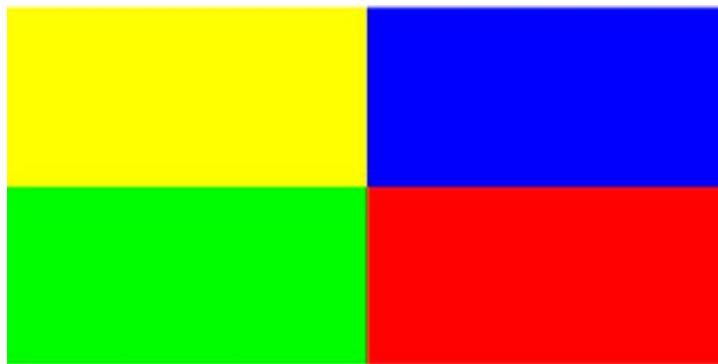
- `a[0]` will be `[4, 250, 500]`, the number of channels, the height and the width of the image.
- `a[1]`, the red channel,
- `a[2]`, the green channel,
- `a[3]`, the transparency channel,
- `a[4]`, the blue channel.

The command

Input:

```
writergb("image2134.png", [a[0], a[2], a[1], a[3], a[4]])
```

will produce an image file `image2134.png` which is simply `image1234.png` with the green and red colors switched.



### Creating images

The Xcas image format can be typed in by hand.

Input:

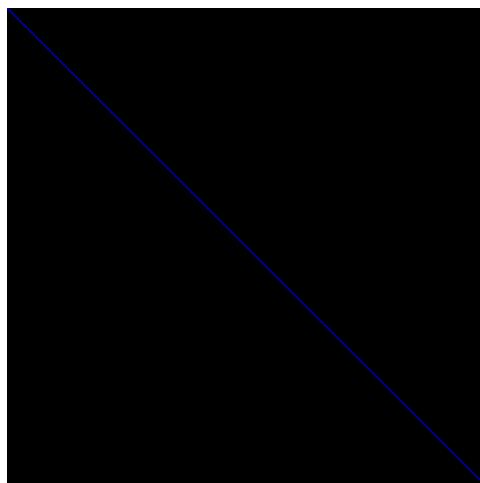
```
writergb("image1.png", [[4,2,2], [[255,0],[0,0]],[[0,255],[0,0]],  
[[255,125],[255,255]],[[0,0],[255,0]]])
```

creates a file `image1.png` containing an image 2 points by 2 points, the upper left point is red, the upper right point is a muted green, the lower left point is blue, and the lower right point is black. The transparency value of 125 for the upper right point makes it partially transparent and mutes the color.

For larger images, in some cases the matrix operations of Xcas can be used to create the channels.

Input:

```
writergb("image2.png", [[4,300,300],makemat(0,300,300),  
makemat(0,300,300),  
makemat(255,300,300),makemat(0,300,300) +  
idn(300)*255])
```



The `writergb` command can also take as input a simplified version of the Xcas image description, which doesn't involve stating the number of channels,

the size of the image, or the transparency. There is a full color version of this simplified form and a grayscale version.

To create a full color image, the `writergb` command takes four arguments, the name of the file to store the image, the red channel (matrix), the green channel and the blue channel.

Input:

```
writergb("image2.png", [[255,250],[0,120]],[[0,255],[0,0]],[[0,0],[255,
```

creates a file `image2.png` containing an image 2 points by 2 points, the upper left point is red (rgb value (255,0,0)), the upper right point is yellow (rgb value (250,255,0)), the lower left point is blue (rgb value (0,0,255)) and the lower right point is violet (rgb value (120,0,100)).

To create a grayscale image, the `writergb` command takes two arguments, the name of the file to store the image and a matrix representing how dark each point is (where 0 is black and 255 is white).

Input:

```
writergb("image3.png", [[65,125],[185,200]])
```

creates a file `image3.png` containing an image 2 points by 2 points, the upper left point is dark gray, the upper right point is medium gray, the lower left point is light gray and the lower right point is even lighter gray.

# Chapter 15

## Using **giac** inside a program

### 15.1 Using **giac** inside a C++ program

To use **giac** inside of a C++ program, put

```
#include <giac/giac.h>
```

at the beginning of the file. To compile the file, use

```
c++ -g programe.cc -lgiac -lgmp
```

After compiling, there will be a file `a.out` which can be run with the command

```
./a.out
```

For example, put the following program in a file named `pgcd.cc`.

```
// -*- compile-command: "g++ -g pgcd.cc -lgiac -lgmp" -*-
#include <giac/config.h>
#include <giac/giac.h>

using namespace std;
using namespace giac;

gen pgcd(gen a, gen b) {
    gen q,r;
    for (;b!=0;) {
        r=irem(a,b,q);
        a=b;
        b=r;
    }
    return a;
}

int main(){
    cout << "Enter 2 integers ";
    gen a,b;
    cin >> a >> b;
```

```

    cout << pgcd(a,b) << endl;
    return 0;
}

```

After compiling this with

```
c++ -g pgcd.cc -lgiac -lgmp
```

and running it with

```
./a.out
```

there will be a prompt

```
Enter 2 integers
```

After entering two integers, such as with

```
Enter 2 integers 30 36
```

the result will appear,

```
6
```

## 15.2 Defining new giac functions

New giac functions can be defined with a C++ program. All data in the program used in formal calculations needs to be gen type. A variable g can be declared to be gen type with

```
gen g;
```

In this case, g.type can have different values.

- If g.val is an integer type int, then g.type will be \_INT\_.
- If g.\_DOUBLE\_val is a real double, g.type will be \_DOUBLE\_.
- If g.\_SYMBptr is type symbolic, then g.type will be \_SYMB\_.
- If g.\_VECTptr is a vector, type vector, then g.type will be \_VECT\_.
- If g.\_ZINTptr is an integer type qint, then g.type will be \_ZINT\_.
- If g.\_IDNTptr is an identifier, type idnt, then g.type will be \_IDNT\_.
- If g.\_CPLXptr is a complex type complex, then g.type will be \_CPLX\_.

As an example, put the following program in a file called pgcd.cpp.

```

// -*- mode:C++ ; compile-command: "g++ -I.. -fPIC -DPIC -g -c pgcd.cpp
//      ln -sf pgcd.lo pgcd.o && \
//      gcc -shared pgcd.lo -lc -lgiac -Wl,-soname -Wl,libpgcd.so.0 -o \
//      libpgcd.so.0.0.0 && ln -sf libpgcd.so.0.0.0 libpgcd.so.0 && \
//      ln -sf libpgcd.so.0.0.0 libpgcd.so" -*-
using namespace std;

```

```

#include <stdexcept>
#include <cmath>
#include <cstdlib>
#include <giac/config.h>
#include <giac/giac.h>
//#include "pgcd.h"

#ifndef NO_NAMESPACE_GIAC
namespace giac {
#endif // undef NO_NAMESPACE_GIAC

gen monpgcd(const gen & a0,const gen & b0) {
    gen q,r,a=a0,b=b0;
    for (;b!=0;) {
        r=irem(a,b,q);
        a=b;
        b=r;
    }
    return a;
}
gen _monpgcd(const gen & args,GIAC_CONTEXT) {
    if ( (args.type!=_VECT) || (args._VECTptr->size() !=2) )
        setsizeerr();
    vecteur &v=args._VECTptr;
    return monpgcd(v[0],v[1]);
}
const string _monpgcd_s("monpgcd");
unary_function_eval __monpgcd(0,&_monpgcd,_monpgcd_s);
unary_function_ptr at_monpgcd (&__monpgcd,0,true);

#endif // namespace giac
#endif // undef NO_NAMESPACE_GIAC

```

After compiling this with the commands after the compile-command in the header, namely

```

g++ -I.. -fPIC -DPIC -g -c pgcd.cpp -o pgcd.lo && \
ln -sf pgcd.lo pgcd.o && \
gcc -shared pgcd.lo -lc -lgiac -Wl,-soname -Wl,libpgcd.so.0 -o \
libpgcd.so.0.0.0 && ln -sf libpgcd.so.0.0.0 libpgcd.so.0 && \
ln -sf libpgcd.so.0.0.0 libpgcd.so

```

the new command can be inserted with the insmod command in giac, where insmod takes the full absolute path of the libpgcd.so file as argument.

Input:

```
insmod("/path/to/file/libpgcd.so")
```

Afterwords, the monpgcd command will be another giac command.

Input:

```
monpgcd(30, 36)
```

Output:

```
6
```